



however ~~and~~ to

— 2
eg. 1
and

of James Hart

72nd James
44 m m

James Tait
James Tait Welhall

hymnals

18.10

James Tait

Sam

Sam

Tom



T H E
R U D I M E N T S
O F
L A T I N A N D E N G L I S H
G R A M M A R;

D E S I G N E D

TO FACILITATE THE STUDY OF BOTH LANGUAGES,
BY CONNECTING THEM TOGETHER.

Supper Boys

BY

ALEXANDER ADAM, LL. D.
RECTOR OF THE HIGH SCHOOL OF EDINBURGH.

Grammatice est ars, necessaria pueris, jucunda senibus, dulcis secreto-
rum comes, et quæ vel sola omni studiorum genere plus habet ope-
ris quam ostentationis. Ne quis igitur tanquam parva fastidiat
Grammatices elementa; quia interiora velut facri ~~hujus~~ adeun-
tibus, apparebit multa rerum subtilitas, quæ non modo acuere
ingenia puerilia, sed ~~excere~~ altissimam quoque eruditionem ac
scientiam possit.

QUINTILIAN. i. 4. 5.

FIFTH EDITION, WITH IMPROVEMENTS.

EDINBURGH:

Printed for BELL & BRADEYNE, JAMES DICKSON,
and WILLIAM CREECH;
And T. CADELL, jun. & W. DAVIES, LONDON.

MDCCXCVIII.

89

44

06-3

J

JA TAIT

James

spit



slumper Boys

LIBRARY OF
THE NATIONAL LAND
MUSEUM 1982

186

PREFACE to the FIRST EDITION.

MAN enjoys the singular advantage of being able to communicate his thoughts by articulate sounds. Different nations employ very different verbal signs for the expression of thought ; but with respect to the nature and use of the several parts of speech in general, they uniformly agree. Hence the Principles of Grammar in all languages are much the same.

The study of Grammar has been considered as an object of great importance by the wisest men in all ages. But, like other sciences, it has often been involved in mystery, and perplexed with needless difficulties. Instead of facilitating the acquisition of languages, which was its original design, it has frequently served to render that more laborious.

As language is regular in its general structure, rules must no doubt be useful to assist us in understanding it. We first learn to speak from imitation. We use the expressions which we hear from others. But when we have once gained a certain stock of words, we employ them according to general rules. When a child, for instance, has occasion to speak of two persons, he will say, " two mans," instead of " two men ;" because he learns the general method of forming the plural, before he attends to particular exceptions. The same may be observed of a person who endeavours to acquire any foreign language. Memory furnishes us with proper terms to express our thoughts, but judgement must be exerted in adapting these to particular circumstances.

Every science may be reduced to principles. The principles of Grammar may be traced from the progress of the mind in the acquisition of language. Chil-

dren first express their feelings by motions and gestures of the body, by cries and tears. This is the language of nature, and therefore universal. It fitly represents the quickness of sentiment and thought, which are as instantaneous as the impression of light on the eye. Hence we always express our stronger feelings by these natural signs. But when we want to make known to others the particular conceptions of the mind, we must represent them by parts, we must divide and analyze them. We express each part by certain signs, and join these together according to the order of their relations. Thus words are both the instrument and signs of the division of thought. But as words are only artificial signs of thought, and their connection with what they represent, merely arbitrary; the same thought may be expressed by different signs, and these signs variously arranged: Hence the diversity of languages and idioms. All languages, however, must consist of the same essential parts. There must be some words to mark the subject of discourse, and others to express what we affirm concerning it. The former excite our curiosity, and by the latter it is gratified. In this manner must language have been originally invented, if it be a human invention; and in this manner do children always acquire the use of speech. We are first taught the names of objects; and then we learn the words, which express their qualities and actions. As we grow up, we become acquainted with the use of Prepositions, Adverbs, and Conjunctions, together with the different variations of Verbs, employed to mark time, number, and person. By joining these together, we form sentences, which we compound and arrange variously, according to the sentiments we want to express. Thus we come to analyze our thoughts, and represent them by parts, so as to convey them properly to others, with all their circumstances and relations.

Grammar is founded on common sense. Every sentiment expressed by words exemplifies its rules, and the ignorant observe them, as well as the learned. The Principles of Grammar are the first abstract truths which a young mind can comprehend. Children discover their capacity for understanding the rules of Grammar, by putting them in practice. It is indeed difficult to make young people attend to what passes in their own minds. But perhaps this is partly owing to the abstruse manner in which it is laid before them. The Principles of Grammar will be most successfully taught by arranging and explaining them according to the order of nature. Every art is more or less involved in obscurity by the hard terms peculiar to it. In no art is this more remarkably the case than in Grammar. The terms it employs are so abstract, that, unless they be properly explained, even persons of advanced years cannot understand them. Could this inconvenience be thoroughly removed, the Principles of Grammar might be adapted to the meanest capacity: For were the nature of the different parts of speech, and their use in sentences properly explained, the mind would recognise its own operations, and perceive that Grammar is nothing else than a delineation of those rules which we observe in every expression of thought by words. Thus the study of Grammar would not only improve the memory, but serve in a high degree to strengthen and enlarge all the faculties of the mind.

Whatever we learn first, is the most familiar to us. For this reason children will most easily apprehend the Principles of Grammar, when explained and exemplified in that language which is natural to them. Hence it seems proper to begin in Grammar, as in reading, with the language of our own country. But as most of the modern languages in Europe are in a great measure founded on the Latin, and as a

very considerable part of our knowledge, with regard both to science and taste, is derived from Latin authors, the study of Latin Grammar has generally been preferred to that of the Grammar of the mother tongue. This has particularly been the practice in this country. Till of late very little attention has been paid to the study of English Grammar; in consequence of which many irregularities have crept into the language, which might otherwise have been prevented. Were the importance of the two languages to come into competition, that would no doubt deserve the preference which we have the most frequent occasion to use. But to such as aim at polite literature, the study of both seems necessary: and the knowledge of the one will be found highly conducive to that of the other. The English language has received its greatest improvements from those who were masters of classical learning; and perhaps it cannot be thoroughly understood, without some acquaintance with the Latin. It is certain, no one can properly translate from the one language into the other, without understanding the idioms of both. In order therefore to teach Latin Grammar with success, we should always join with it a particular attention to the rudiments of English. This is the design of the following attempt. And as in writing upon Grammar, materials entirely new cannot be expected, the compiler has with freedom borrowed from all hands whatever he judged fit for his purpose. He acknowledges himself particularly indebted to Mr Harris's *Hermes* with regard to the principles of universal Grammar; to Wallis and Dr Lowth, for most of his observations concerning the English; and to Gerard Vossius, and Ruddiman, with respect to the Latin.

The merit of any performance on this subject must in a great measure depend upon the method of illustration and arrangement. In the present essay that arrangement

arrangement has been observed, which appeared most natural. The several parts of Grammar are reduced to general principles; and after these are subjoined particular observations and exceptions. The most essential rules and remarks are printed in larger characters; and the committing of these to memory, together with the examples, will to a learner at first, it is thought, be found sufficient. A careful perusal of the particular observations, afterwards, joined with the reading of the classics, and the practice of writing and speaking Latin, will supersede the use of any other Grammar rules. If a further exercise for the memory be wanted, beautiful passages selected from the Classics seem much more proper for this purpose, than Latin verses about words and phrases, however accurately composed.

Whatever other Grammar may have formerly been taught, the perusal of the following, it is hoped, will be attended with advantage. The compiler has done every thing in his power to prepare it for the public. He has examined with care the method of education, and the several Grammars made use of both at home and abroad. He has communicated his own plan to many persons of the first character for letters in this kingdom; and the attention which they have been pleased to pay to it, and the many useful observations which he has received from them, he will always remember with gratitude. He is still afraid, that notwithstanding all his care, some defects may be found in the execution; but hopes that his design at least will meet with approbation, and earnestly entreats the assistance of the encouragers of learning, to enable him to bring his scheme to greater perfection.

EDINBURGH,
May 1772.

PREFACE to the FOURTH EDI- TION.

THE compiler was first led, at an early period of life, to think of composing this Book, by observing the hurtful effects of teaching boys Grammar Rules in Latin verse, which they did not understand; while they were ignorant, not only of the principles of that language, but also of those of their mother tongue. Experience has since afforded him the most convincing proofs of the impropriety of this practice; and his opinion has been still further confirmed by perusing the writings of the old Grammarians, and of the most eminent among the moderns. The old Grammarians, *Charisius, Diomēdes, Priscianus, Probus, Donatus, Servius, Victorinus, Augustinus, Cassiodorus, Macrobius, Beda, Alcuinus,* &c.* have no verse rules; and so in later times *Perotte, Manutius, Erasmus, Valerius, Buchanan, Milton, &c.* Nicolaus Perotte was one of the chief restorers of learning in the fifteenth century. He died Archbishop of Siponto in 1480. The compiler has a copy of the first edition of his Grammar, printed at Brescia anno 1474. It is composed by way of question and answer; but without any verse rules.—Soon after the invention of printing, and perhaps before, for the compiler has not been able to ascertain the precise period, the custom was introduced of expressing the principles of almost every art and science in Latin and Greek verse. The rules of Logic, and even the aphorisms of Hippocrates, were taught

* *TERENTIANUS MAURUS*, a learned Grammarian, by birth an African, who is supposed to have lived under Trajan, and wrote in verse, treats only of poetry.

in this manner. Among the versifiers of Latin Grammar *Despauter* and *Lily* were the most conspicuous. The first complete edition of Despauter's Grammar was printed at Cologne, anno 1522 ; his *Syntax* had been published anno 1509. Lily was made first Master of St Paul's school in London, by Dr Colet, its founder, anno 1510 ; so that he was contemporary with Despauter. His Grammar was appointed, by an act which is still in force, to be taught in the established schools of England. Various attempts were afterwards made by different authors ; as, *Sanctius*, *Alvarus*, *Scioppius*, *Kirkwood*, *Watt*, *Ruddiman*, &c. to improve on the plan of Despauter and Lily ; but with little success. The truth is, it seems impracticable to express with sufficient perspicuity the Principles of Grammar in Latin Verse ; and it appears strange, that when scholastic jargon is exploded from elementary books on other sciences, it shoud be retained by public authority, where it ought never to have been admitted, in Latin Grammars for children. But such is the force of habit and attachment to established modes, that we go on in the use of them, without thinking whether they be founded in reason or not. When there are a great many exceptions from a general rule, whatever can assist the memory is no doubt useful. On this account the principal rules for the genders of nouns, &c. are here subjoined, for local reasons, from Ruddiman's Grammar ; although many of them are by no means adapted to the capacity of boys : and more of them are inserted, in compliance with the opinion of others, than the compiler judges necessary. They are printed at the end of the book ; and such as chuse it, may have Lily's rules, Watt's rules, or any other, substituted in their place.

The authors of the *Nouvelle Methode*, or *Port Royal Grammar* in France, judging it as absurd to teach Latin by rules in Latin verse, as to teach Greek

Greek, by rules in Greek verse, or Hebrew by rules in Hebrew, composed the rules of Latin Grammar, in French verse. Some author^s in England, as, *Clarke, Philipps, &c.* have imitated their example. But this plan has not in either country been much followed. Nothing can be more uncouth than such versification. So that Latin rules, on the whole, seem preferable.—However this may be, the following remarks concerning the method of teaching Latin, it is hoped, will not be deemed improper.

When the learner is once master of the inflexion of nouns and verbs, he should be exercised in getting by heart words and phrases, while at the same time he is employed in reading some easy author, and in turning plain sentences from English into Latin. The sooner he can be brought to write part of his exercises, the better; but he should never be obliged to get Grammar rules in Latin verse, till he is capable of understanding them by himself; because although the teacher may explain them, the scholar will soon forget the interpretation, and repeat the words merely by rote, without attending to their meaning: Nor should he be forced to get rules in Latin verse, which may be remembered equally well in English prose. Rules in verse are only useful when they assist the memory; as when there is a number of exceptions from a general rule, where alone they are indeed of advantage: and even here, perhaps, any chime of words might answer the purpose as well as Latin hexameters. It is of importance, when the rule is long, that the learner be accustomed to repeat no more of it than is strictly applicable to the word or phrase in question. The repetition of the whole is an useless waste of time. The great object ought to be, to bring the learner, in as short time as possible, to join without hesitation an adjective with a substantive in any case, number, or degree of comparison; and in like manner to touch upon

upon any part of a verb, and tell readily by what case any adjective, verb, or preposition is followed. This facility practice alone can teach, and the method of acquiring it must in all languages be much the same.

The niceties of construction, the figures of Syntax, and the other parts of Grammar, should be occasionally taught, as the learner proceeds in reading the more difficult authors.

As the antient Romans joined the Grammar of their own language with that of the Greek ; so we ought to connect the study of English Grammar with that of the Latin ; and when the learner properly understands Latin Grammar, he ought to join with it the study of the Greek ; the knowledge of both these languages being requisite for the thorough understanding of the English. This is the practice in England, and other countries, where the best Greek and Latin scholars are formed. It is particularly necessary in Scotland to pay attention to the English in conjunction with the Latin, as by neglecting it boys at school learn many improprieties in point of Grammar, as well as of pronunciation, which it is difficult in after life to correct. This attention is less requisite in England ; though even there, in the opinion of Dr Lowth, to use his own words, “ the connection of the English with the Latin Grammar, if it could be introduced into schools, might be of good service.”

EDINBURGH, }
Oct. 25. 1793. }

In the present edition the Appendix to Etymology has been omitted, because a larger work on that subject is intended, and will probably soon be sent to the press.

EDINBURGH, }
Jan. 23. 1798. }

* In a letter concerning this book, after having read the manuscript, dated, Cuddeford, Sept. 27. 1771.

C O N T E N T S.

	Pag.
Part I. ORTHOGRAPHY, which treats of LETTERS,	I
Diphthongs	2
Syllables	3
Part II. ETYMOLOGY, which treats of WORDS,	4
Division of WORDS OF PARTS OF SPEECH	ib.
The ARTICLE;—wanting in Latin	5
I. NOUN or SUBSTANTIVE,	6
English Nouns	7
Latin Nouns	8
DECLINATION of NOUNS	ib.
GENDER of NOUNS	10
First Declension	13
Second Declension	19
Third Declension	28
Fourth Declension	47
Fifth Declension	49
IRREGULAR Nouns	ib.
DIVISION of NOUNS, according to their signification and derivation	56
ADJECTIVE	58
Numeral Adjectives	66
COMPARISON of Adjectives	69
II. PRONOUN	72
English Pronouns	ib.
Latin Pronouns	73
1. Simple Latin Pronouns	ib.
2. Compound Latin Pronouns	74
III. VERB	78
English Verbs	81
CONJUGATION of LATIN VERBS	86
First Conjugation	90
Second Conjugation	95
Third Conjugation	97
Fourth Conjugation	98
FORMATION of the different parts of Latin Verbs	99
SIGNIFICATION of the different TENSES	101
	VERBS

C O N T E N T S.

	Pag.
VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION	104
SECOND CONJUGATION	108
THIRD CONJUGATION	112
FOURTH CONJUGATION	122
DEONENT and COMMON VERBS	124
IRREGULAR VERBS	128
DEFECTIVE VERBS	133
IMPERSONAL VERBS	135
REDUNDANT VERBS	136
<i>Obsolete Conjugation</i>	138
DERIVATION and COMPOSITION of Verbs	ib.
IV. PARTICIPLE	140
V. ADVERB	142
VI. PREPOSITION	146
VII. INTERJECTION	148
VIII. CONJUNCTION	149
PART III. SYNTAX or CONSTRUCTION,	
which treats of SENTENCES, 151	
Division of Sentences into Simple and Compound	152
I. SIMPLE SENTENCES	ib.
CONCORD or Agreement of Words in Simple Sentences	ib.
GOVERNMENT of Words in Simple Sentences	157
I. Government of SUBSTANTIVES	ib.
II. Government of ADJECTIVES	160
III. Government of VERBS	166
1. VERBS governing one case	ib.
2. VERBS governing two cases	172
Government of PASSIVE VERBS	177
of IMPERSONAL VERBS	179
Construction of the INFINITIVE	181
of PARTICIPLES, &c.	182
of GERUNDS	183
of SUPINES	185
of ADVERBS	186
Government of Adverbs	189
of PREPOSITIONS	190
Construction of CIRCUMSTANCES	196
1. Price	ib.
2. Manner and Cause	ib.
3. Place	177
4. Measure and Distance	200
5. Time	201
II. COMPOUND	

C O N T E N T S.

	Pag.
II. COMPOUND SENTENCES	201
Sentences are compounded by Relatives and Conjunctions	ib.
Construction of RELATIVES	220
of CONJUNCTIONS	205
of COMPARATIVES	210
The ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE	211
APPENDIX to SYNTAX; containing	
I. Various SIGNIFICATION and CONSTRUCTION of VERBS	214
II. FIGURATIVE CONSTRUCTION, or FIGURES of SYNTAX	235
III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION	237
IV. Different kinds of STYLE	241
V. FIGURES of RHETORIC	243
1. Figures of Words or TROPS	ib.
2. Repetition of Words	248
3. Figures of Thought	249
Part IV. PROSODY, which treats of the Quantity	
of Syllables, of Accent and Verse,	252
I. QUANTITY of SYLLABLES	ib.
1. Quantity of first and middle Syllables	253
2. Quantity of final Syllables	261
Quantity of Derivatives and Compounds	264
II. ACCENT	266
III. VERSE	267
The measuring of Verses by Feet, or SCANNING	ib.
Different kinds of Verses	268
FIGURES in SCANNING	275
Different kinds of POEMS	277
Combination of Verses in Poems	278
Different kinds of Verse in Horace and Buchanan	279
ENGLISH VERSE	281
APPENDIX L Punctuation, Capitals, &c.	286
II. Rules from Ruddiman's Grammar	291

THE

THE
RUDIMENT S
OF
LATIN AND ENGLISH
GRAMMAR.

GRAMMAR is the art of speaking and writing correctly.

Latin or English Grammar is the art of speaking and writing the Latin or the English language correctly.

The *Rudiments* of Grammar are plain and easy instructions, teaching beginners the first principles and rules of it.

Grammar treats of sentences, and the several parts of which they are compounded.

Sentences consist of words; Words consist of one or more syllables; Syllables of one or more letters. So that Letters, Syllables, Words, and Sentences, make up the whole subject of grammar.

LETTERS.

A Letter is the mark of a sound, or of an articulation of sound.

That part of Grammar which treats of letters, is called *Orthography*.

The letters in Latin are twenty-five: A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z;

In English there is one letter more, namely, *W, w.*

Letters are divided into *Vowels* and *Consonants*.

Six are vowels; *a, e, i, o, u, y*. All the rest are consonants.

A vowel makes a full sound by itself; as, *a, e*.

A consonant cannot make a perfect sound without a vowel; as, *b, d*.

A vowel is properly called a *simple sound*; and the sounds formed by the concourse of vowels and consonants, *articulate sounds*.

Consonants are divided into *Mutes*, *Semi-vowels*, and *Double Consonants*.

A mute is so called, because it entirely stops the passage of the voice; as, *p* in *ap*.

The mutes are, *p, b; t, d; c, k, g*, and *g*: but *b, d, and g*, perhaps may more properly be termed *Semi-mutes*.

A semi-vowel, or half vowel, does not entirely stop the passage of the voice; thus, *al*.

The semi-vowels are, *l, m, n, r, s, f*. The first four of these are also called *Liquids*, particularly *l* and *r*; because they flow softly and easily after a mute in the same syllable; as, *bla, flra*.

The mutes and semi-vowels may be thus distinguished. In naming the mutes, the vowel is put after them; as, *pe, be, &c*: but in naming the semi-vowels, the vowel is put before them; as, *el, em, &c*.

The double consonants are, *x, z, and j*. *X* is made up of *cs, ks, or gs*. *Z* seems not to be a double consonant in English. It has the same relation to *s*, as *v* has to *f*, being sounded somewhat more softly.

In Latin *z*, and likewise *k* and *y*, are found only in words derived from the Greek.

Y in English is sometimes a consonant, as in *youth*.

H by some is not accounted a letter, but only a breathing.

DIPHTHONGS.

A diphthong is two vowels joined in one sound.

If

If the sound of both vowels be distinctly heard, it is called a *Proper Diphthong*; if not, an *Improper Diphthong*.

The proper diphthongs in Latin are commonly reckoned three; *au*, *eu*, *ei*; as in *aurum*, *Eurus*, *omneis*. To these, some, not improperly, add other three, namely, *ai*; as, in *Maia*; *oi*, as in *Troia*: and *ui*, as in *Harpua*, or in *cui* and *huc*, when pronounced as monosyllables.

The improper diphthongs in Latin are two, *ae*, or when the vowels are written together, *æ*; as *aetas*, or *ætas*: *oe*, or *ø*; as *poena* or *pæna*; in both of which the sound of the *e* only is heard. The ancients commonly wrote the vowels separately, thus, *aetas*, *poena*.

The English language abounds with improper diphthongs, the just pronunciation of which practice alone can teach. In some words derived from the French, there are three vowels in the same syllable, but two of them only are sounded; as in *beauty*, *lieutenant*.

SYLLABLES.

A syllable is the sound of one letter, or of several letters pronounced by one impulse of the voice; as *a*, *to*, *strength*.

In every word there are as many syllables as there are distinct sounds; as, *in-fa-li-bi-li-ty*.

In Latin, there are as many syllables in a word as there are vowels or diphthongs in it; unless when *u* with any other vowel comes after *g*, *q*, or *s*, as in *lingua*, *qui*, *sua-deo*; where the two vowels are not reckoned a diphthong, because the sound of the *u* vanishes, or is little heard.

Words consisting of one syllable, are called *Monosyllables*; of two, *Disyllables*; and of more than two, *Poly-syllables*. But all words of more than one syllable are commonly called *Poly-syllables*.

In dividing words into syllables, we are chiefly to be directed by the ear. Compound words should be divided into the parts of which they are made up; as, *up-on*, *with-out*, &c. and so in Latin words, *ab-ator*, *in-ops*, *propiēr-ea*, *et-ēnim*, *vel-ut*, &c. In like manner, when a syllable is added in the formation of the English verb, as, *lov-ed*, *lov-ing*, *lov-eth*, *will-ing*, &c.

Observe, A long syllable is thus marked [-]; as, *amāre*;

er with a circumflex accent thus, [^] ; as, *amáris*. A short syllable is marked thus [˘] ; as, *omnibus*.

What pertains to the quantity of syllables, to accent, and verse, will be treated of afterwards.

WORDS.

Words are articulate sounds significant of thought.

That part of Grammar which treats of words, is called *Etymology, or Analogy.*

All words may be divided into three kinds ; namely, 1. such as mark the names of things ; 2. such as denote what is affirmed concerning things ; and 3. such as are significant only in conjunction with other words ; or what are called *Substantives, Attributives, and Connectives.* Thus, in the following sentence, "The diligent boy reads the lesson carefully in the school, and at home," the words *boy, lesson, school, home,* are the names we give to the things spoken of ; *diligent, reads, carefully,* express what is affirmed concerning the boy ; *the, in, and, at,* are only significant when joined with the other words of the sentence.

All words whatever are either *simple* or *compound*, *primitive* or *derivative.*

The division of words into simple and compound, is called their *Figure* ; into primitive and derivative, their *Species* or kind.

A simple word is that which is not made up of more than one ; as, *pius*, pious ; *go*, I ; *d̄eo*, I teach.

A compound word is that which is made up of two or more words ; or of one word, and some syllable added ; as, *impius*, impious ; *d̄d̄eo*, I unteach ; *ḡmet*, I myself.

A primitive word is that which comes from no other ; as, *pius*, pious ; *disco*, I learn ; *d̄ceo*, I teach.

A derivative word is that which comes from another word ; as, *pietas*, piety, *doctrina*, learning.

The different classes into which we divide words, are called *Parts of Speech.*

PARTS OF SPEECH.

The parts of speech in Latin are eight ;

1. *Noun, Pronoun, Verb, Participle* ; declined :
2. *Adverb, Preposition, Interjection, and Conjunction* ; undeclined.

In English the adjective and participle are not declined.

Those words or parts of speech are said to be *declined* which receive different changes, particularly on the end, which is called the *Termination* of words.

The changes made upon words are by grammarians called *Accidents*.

Of old, all words which admit of different terminations were said to be declined. But *Declension* is now applied only to nouns. The changes made upon the verb are called *Conjugation*.

The English language has one part of speech more than the Latin, namely, the ARTICLE.

The *article* is a word put before substantive nouns, to point them out, and to shew how far their signification extends.

There are two articles, *a* and *the*: *a* becomes *an* before a vowel, or a silent *h*.

A is called the *Indefinite*, *The* the *Definite Article*.

A is used to point out one single thing of a kind, without fixing precisely what that thing is: *The* determines what particular thing is meant.

A man means simply some one or other of that kind: *the man* signifies that particular man who is spoken of.

The want of the article is a defect in the Latin tongue, and often renders the meaning of nouns undetermined: thus, *filius regis*, may signify, either, *a son of a king*, or *a king's son*; or *the son of the king*, or *the king's son*.

The placed before certain common names, marks either a whole kind, or some individual of that kind, with which we are acquainted; as, *the lion*, *the ox*, &c.

A can only be joined to substantive nouns in the singular number: *the* may also be joined to plurals. *A* is likewise used before adjectives which express number, when many are considered as one whole; as, *a thousand men*, *a few*, *a great many men*.

The is likewise applied to adjectives and adverbs in the comparative or superlative degree, to mark their sense more strongly; as, “*the wiser*,” “*the better*,” “*the more I think of it, the better I like it*.”

N O U N.

A noun is either substantive or adjective.

The adjective seems to be improperly called *noun*: it is only a word added to a substantive or noun, expressive of its quality; and therefore should be considered as a different part of speech. But as the substantive and adjective together express but one object, and in Latin are declined after the same manner, they have both been comprehended under the same general name.

S U B S T A N T I V E.

A Substantive, or Noun, is the name of any person, place, or thing; as, *boy, school, book*.

Substantives are of two sorts; *proper* and *common* names. Proper names are the names appropriated to individuals; as the names of persons and places; such are, *Cæsar, Rome*.

Common names stand for whole kinds, containing several sorts; or for sorts, containing many individuals under them; as, *animal, man, beast, fish, fowl, &c.*

Every particular being should have its own proper name; but this is impossible, on account of their innumerable multitude: men have therefore been obliged to give the same common name to such things as agree together in certain respects. These form what is called a *genus*, or kind; a *species*, or sort.

A proper name may be used for a common, and then in English it has the article joined to it; as, when we say of some great conqueror, "He is an Alexander;" or, "The Alexander of his age."

To proper and common names may be added a third class of nouns, which mark the names of qualities, and are called *abstract nouns*; as, *hardness, goodness, whiteness, virtue, justice, piety, &c.*

When we speak things, we consider them as one or more. This is what we call *Number*. When one thing is spoken of, a noun is said to be of the *singular number*; when two or more, of the *plural*.

Things considered according to their kinds, are either *male* or *female*; or neither of the two. Males are said to be of the *masculine gender*; females of the *feminine*; and all other things, of the *neuter gender*.

Such

Such nouns as are applied to signify either the male or the female, are said to be of the *common gender*, that is, either masculine or feminine.

Various methods are used, in different languages, to express the different connections or relations of one thing to another. In the English, and in most modern languages, this is done by prepositions, or particles placed before the substantive: in Latin, by declension, or by different cases; that is, by changing the termination of the noun; as, *rex*, a king, or *the king*; *rēgis*, of a king, or of the king.

ENGLISH NOUNS.

In English, nouns have only one case, namely, the genitive or possessive case, which is formed from the noun, by adding an *s*, with an apostrophe, or mark to separate it; as, *John's book*, the same with, *the book of John*. It was formerly written *Johnis book*.

Some have thought the 's a contraction for *bis*; but improperly; because, instead of *the woman's book*, we cannot say, *the woman bis book*. Others have imagined, and with more justness, that by the addition of the 's the substantive is changed into a possessive adjective.

When the noun ends in *s*, the sign of the possessive case is sometimes not added; as, *for righteousness sake*; and never to the plural number ending in *s*; as, *on eagles wings*. Perhaps it would be better in the plural, when it ends in *s*, always to use the particle, and not the possessive form; as, *on the wings of eagles*. Both the sign and the preposition seem sometimes to be used; as, *a soldier of the king's*: but here there are two possessives; for it means, *one of the soldiers of the king*.

A singular noun, in English, is made plural by adding to it *s*, or, for the sake of sound, *es*; as, *king, kings*; *church, churches*; *brush, brushes*; *witness, witnesses*; *fox, foxes*; *leaf, leaves*; in which last, and in many others, *f* is also turned into *v*, to make the pronunciation easier.

Several plurals are formed by adding *en*; as *ox, oxen*. Of these some are contracted, or interpose a letter on account of sound; as, *brethren, children, swine, kine, women, men, &c.* for *brotheren, sownen, &c.* Instead of *kine* we now commonly say *cows*; and we seldom use *brethren* but in solemn discourse.

Nouns in *y* change *y* into *ie*; as, *cherry, cherries*; *city, cities*. *Cherry's, city's, &c.* are in the possessive case.

Some

Some nouns form the plural more irregularly ; as, *mouse*, *mice* ; *louse*, *lice* ; *tooth*, *teeth* ; *foot*, *feet* ; *goose*, *geese* ; &c.

The words *sheep*, *deer*, are the same in both numbers. Some nouns, from the nature of the things which they express, are used only in the singular, or in the plural form ; as, *wheat*, *pitch*, *gold*, *sloth*, *pride*, &c. and *bellows*, *scissars*, *lungs*, *bowels*, &c.

Several nouns in English are changed in their termination, to express gender ; as *prince*, *princess* ; *actor*, *actress* ; *lion*, *lioness* ; *hero*, *heroine* ; *duke*, *duchess*, &c.

The English language has a peculiar advantage over most other languages, in making all words whatever, except the names of males and females, to be of the neuter gender : unless when inanimate beings are personified, or considered as persons ; as, when we say of the sun, *he shines* ; or of the moon, *she shines*.

LATIN NOUNS.

A Latin noun is declined by *Genders*, *Cases*, and *Numbers*.

There are three genders, *Masculine*, *Feminine*, and *Neuter*.

The cases are six, *Nominative*, *Genitive*, *Dative*, *Accusative*, *Vocative*, and *Ablative*.

There are two numbers, *Singular* and *Plural*.

There are five different ways of varying or declining nouns, called, the *first*, *second*, *third*, *fourth*, and *fifth declensions*.

Cases are certain changes made upon the termination of nouns, to express the relation of one thing to another.

They are so called, from *cado*, to fall ; because they fall, as it were, from the nominative ; which is therefore named *cāsus rectus*, the straight case ; and the other cases, *cāsus obliqui*, the oblique cases.

The different declensions may be distinguished from one another by the termination of the genitive singular. The first declension has a diphthong ; the second has *i* ; the third

third has *is* ; the fourth has *us* ; and the fifth has *ii* in the genitive.

Although Latin nouns be said to have six cases, yet none of them have that number of different terminations, both in the singular and plural.

GENERAL RULES of Declension.

1. Nouns of the neuter gender have the Accusative and Vocative like the Nominative, in both numbers ; and these cases in the plural end always in *a*.

2. The Dative and Ablative plural end always alike.

3. The Vocative for the most part in the singular, and always in the plural, is the same with the Nominative.

Greek nouns in *s* generally lose *s* in the Vocative ; as, *Thomas*, *Thoma* ; *Anchises*, *Anchise* ; *Paris*, *Pari* ; *Panthus*, *Panthu* ; *Pallas*, *-antis* ; *Palla*, names of men. But nouns in *es* of the third declension oftener retain the *s* ; as, *Archilles*, rarely *-e* ; *O Socrates*, seldom *-e* ; and sometimes nouns in *is* and *as* ; as, *O Thair*, *Myris*, *Pallas*, *-adis*, the goddess Minerva, &c.

4. Proper names for the most part want the plural :

Unless several of the same name be spoken of ; as, *dūdecim Cæsares*, the twelve Cæsars.

The cases of Latin nouns are thus expressed in English ;

1. With the indefinite article, *a king*.

Singular.	Plural.
Nom.	<i>a king</i> ,
Gen.	<i>of a king</i> ,
Dat.	<i>to or for a king</i> ,
Acc.	<i>a king</i> ,
Voc.	<i>O king</i> ,
Abl.	<i>with, from, in, by, a king</i> ;

2. With

2. With the definite article, *the king.*

Singular.	Plural.
Nom. <i>the king,</i>	Nom. <i>the kings,</i>
Gen. <i>of the king,</i>	Gen. <i>of the kings,</i>
Dat. <i>to or for the king,</i>	Dat. <i>to or for the kings,</i>
Acc. <i>the king,</i>	Acc. <i>the kings,</i>
Voc. <i>O king,</i>	Voc. <i>O kings,</i>
Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the king:</i>	Ab. <i>with, from, in, by, the kings.</i>

GENDER.

Nouns in Latin are said to be of different genders, not merely from the distinction of sex, but chiefly from their being joined with an adjective of one termination, and not of another. Thus, *penna*, a pen, is said to be feminine, because it is always joined with an adjective in that termination which is applied to females; as, *bīna penna*, a good pen, and not *bōnus penna*.

The gender of nouns which signify things without life, depends on their termination, and different declension.

To distinguish the different genders, grammarians make use of the pronoun *hic*, to mark the masculine; *hac*, the feminine; and *hoc*, the neuter.

GENERAL RULES concerning Gender.

1. Names of males are masculine; as, *Himērus*, Homer; *pāter*, a father; *poēta*, a poet.

2. Names of females are feminine; as, *Hēlēna*, Helen; *mālier*, a woman; *unor*, a wife; *māter*, a mother; *sīror*, a sister; *Tellus*, the goddess of the earth.

3. Nouns which signify either the male or female, are of the common gender; that is, either masculine or feminine; as,

Hic bōs, an ox; *hāc bōs*, a cow; *hic pārens*, a father; *hāc pārens*, a mother.

The following list comprehends most nouns of the common gender.

Adolescens, <i>a young man, or woman.</i>	Conjux, <i>a husband or wife.</i>	Nemo, <i>no body</i>
Jævnia, <i>woman.</i>	Conviva, <i>a guest.</i>	Obses, <i>an hostage.</i>
Affinis, <i>a relation by marriage.</i>	Custos, <i>a keeper.</i>	Patruelis, <i>a cousin-german by the father's</i>
Antistes, <i>a prelate.</i>	Dux, <i>a leader.</i>	Præs, <i>a surety. [fide.</i>
Auctor, <i>an author.</i>	Hæres, <i>an heir.</i>	Princeps, <i>a prince or princess.</i>
Augur, <i>a soothsayer.</i>	Hostis, <i>an enemy.</i>	Sacerdos, <i>a priest or priestess.</i>
Cænis, <i>a dog or bitch.</i>	Infans, <i>an infant.</i>	Sus, <i>a swine.</i>
Civis, <i>a citizen.</i>	Interpres, <i>an interpreter.</i>	Testis, <i>a witness.</i>
Cliens, <i>a client.</i>	Judex, <i>a judge. [ter.</i>	Vates, <i>a prophet.</i>
Cömes, <i>a companion.</i>	Martyr, <i>a martyr.</i>	Vindex, <i>an avenger.</i>
	Miles, <i>a soldier.</i>	
	Municeps, <i>a burgher.</i>	

But *antistes*, *cliens*, and *hostes*, also change their termination to express the feminine, thus, *antistita*, *clienta*, *hostita*: in the same manner with *leo*, a lion; *leana*, a lioness; *equus*, *equa*; *mulus*, *mula*; and many others.

There are several nouns, which, though applicable to both sexes, admit only of a masculine adjective; as, *advena*, a stranger; *agricola*, a husbandman; *affæcta*, an attendant; *accela*, a neighbour; *exul*, an exile; *latro*, a robber; *fur* a thief; *opifex*, a mechanic; &c. There are others, which, though applied to persons, are, on account of their termination, always neuter; as, *scortum*, a courtesan; *mancipium*, *servilium*, a slave, &c.

In like manner *opere*, slaves or day-labourers; *vigiliae*, *excubiae*, watches; *noxae*, guilty persons; though applied to men, are always feminine.

O B S E R V A T I O N S.

Obs. I. The names of brute animals commonly follow the gender of their termination.

Such are the names of wild beasts, birds, fishes, and insects, in which the distinction of sex is either not easily discerned, or seldom attended to. Thus, *passer*, a sparrow, is masculine, because nouns in *er* are masculine; so

æquila,

- * *Conjux, atque parent, infans, patruelis, et bares.*
- Affinis, vindex, judex, dux, miles, et hostis,*
- Augur, et antistes, juvenis, conviva, sacerdos,*
- Municeps, vates, adolescens, civis, et auctor,*
- Custos, nemo, comes, testis, sus, bosque, canisque,*
- Interpresque, cliens, princeps, præs, martyr, et oifer.*

āquila, an eagle, is feminine, because nouns in *a* of the first declension are feminine. These are called *Epicene* or promiscuous nouns. When any particular sex is marked, we usually add the word *mas* or *fēmina*; as, *mas passer*, a male sparrow; *fēmina passer*, a female sparrow.

Obs. 2. A proper name, for the most part, follows the gender of the general name under which it is comprehended.

Thus, the names of months, winds, rivers, and mountains, are masculine; because *mensis*, *ventus*, *mons*, and *fluvius*, are masculine; as, *hic Aprilis*, April; *hic Aquilo*, the north wind; *hic Africus*, the south-west wind; *hic Tib̄ris*, the river Tiber; *hic Othrys*, a hill in Thessaly. But many of these follow the gender of their termination; as, *hæc Matrona*, the river Marne in France; *hæc Ætna*, a mountain in Sicily; *hoc Sōraū*, a hill in Italy.

In like manner, the names of countries, towns, trees, and ships, are feminine, because *terra* or *rēgio*, *urbs*, *arbor*, and *nāvī*, are feminine; as, *hæc Ægyptus*, Egypt; *Sīmos*, an island of that name; *Cōrinthus*, the city Corinth; *pomus*, an apple-tree; *Centaurus*, the name of a ship: Thus also the names of poems *hæc ilias*, *-ados*, and *Odyssēa*, the two poems of Homer; *hæc Ænēis*, *-idos*, a poem of Virgil's; *hæc Eunēchus*, one of Terence's comedies.

The gender, however, of many of these depends on the termination; thus, *hic Pontus*, a country of that name; *hic Sulmo*, *-ōnis*; *Peſſinus*, *-untis*; *Hydrus*, *-untis*, names of towns; *hæc Perſis*, *-īdis*, the kingdom of Persia; *Carthago*, *-īnis*, the city Carthage; *hoc Albion*, Britain; *hoc Cere*, *Rette*, *Prænestē*, *Tibur*, *Ilium*, names of towns. But some of these are also found in the feminine; as, *Geſlida Prænestē*, Juvenal. iii. 190.; *Alta Ilion*, Ovid. Met. xiv. 466.

The following names of trees are masculine, *oleaster*, *-tri*, a wild olive tree; *rhamnus*, the white bramble.

The following are masculine or feminine; *cjtſus*, a kind of shrub; *rūbus*, the bramble-bush; *lārix*, the larch-tree; *lōtus*, the lot-tree; *cupressus*, the cypress-tree. The first two however are oftener masculine; the rest oftener feminine.

Those in *um* are neuter; as, *buxum* the bush, or box-tree; *ligustrum*, a privet; so likewise are *sūbor*, *-ēris* the cork-

cork-tree; *síler*, -*ēris*, the osier; *rōbur*, -*ēris*, oak of the hardest kind; *ācer*, -*ēris*, the mapple-tree.

The place where trees or shrubs grow is commonly neuter; as, *Arbuslum*, *quercētum*, *escūlētum*, *sālidūm*, *frūtīcētum*, &c. a place where trees, oaks, beeches, willows, shrubs, &c. grow: Also the names of fruits and timber, as, *pomum*, or *mālum*, an apple; *pīrum*, a pear; *ēbēnum*, ebony, &c. But from this rule there are various exceptions.

Obs. 3. Several nouns are said to be of the *doubtful gender*; that is, are sometimes found in one gender, and sometimes in another; as, *dīes*, a day, masculine or feminine; *vulgus*, the rabble, masculine or neuter.

FIRST DECLENSION.

Nouns of the first declension end in *a*, *e*, *as*, *es*.

Latin nouns end only in *a*, and are of the feminine gender.

The terminations of the different cases are; Nom. and Voc. Sing. *a*; Gen. and Dat. *e* diphthong; Acc. *am*; Abl. *ā*; Nom. and Voc. Plur. *e*; Gen. *ārum*; Dat. and Abl. *is*; Acc. *as*: Thus,

Singular.	Penna, a pen, fem.	Termina- tions.
Plural.		
<i>N.</i> penna,	<i>a pen</i> ;	<i>N.</i> pennæ, <i>pens</i> ;
<i>G.</i> pennæ,	<i>of a pen</i> ;	<i>G.</i> pennārum, <i>of pens</i> ;
<i>D.</i> pennæ,	<i>to a pen</i> ;	<i>D.</i> pennis, <i>to pens</i> ;
<i>A.</i> pennam,	<i>a pen</i> ;	<i>A.</i> pennas, <i>pens</i> ;
<i>V.</i> penna,	<i>O pen</i> ;	<i>V.</i> pennæ, <i>O pens</i> ;
<i>A.</i> pennā,	<i>with a pen</i> :	<i>A.</i> pennis, <i>with pens</i> .

In like manner decline,

Ācēra, a censer.	Ālūta, tanned leather.	Ancilla, an handmaid.
Ācta, the flare.	Ambrōsia, the food of	Ānchōra, an anchor.
Ātra, a period of time.	the gods.	Anguilla, an eel.
Ārumna, soil.	Āmīta, an aunt, the	Anīa, a bundle.
Agrīcōla, a husbandman.	father's fisher.	Antenna, a sail-yard.
Āla, a wing.	Āmphōra, a cask.	Antlia, a pump.
Ālāpa, a blear.	Ampullia, a jug. plur.	Āqua, water.
Ālānda, a lark.	bombast.	Āquila, an eagle.
Ālga, sea-weed.	Āmūrca, the leet of oil.	Āra, an altar.

Arānea, a spider.	Cātāpulta, an engine to cast darts.	Crēpida, a skipper.
Arca, a chest.	Cātēna, a chain.	Crēta, chalk.
Ardea, & cōla, a heron.	Cāterva, a body of men.	Crīta, a crest.
Ārea, an open place.	Cāthēdra, a chair, a pulpit.	Crūmēna, a purse.
Ārēna, sand.	Cauda, the tail.	Crūsta, &c - um, a morsel.
Argilla, potter's earth.	Caula, a sheep-cote.	Culcīta, a cushion.
Ārīla, an ear of corn.	Causa, a cause.	Cūlina, a kitchen.
Arrha, an earnest money.	Cāverna, a cavern.	Culpa, a fault.
Arvīna, fist.	Cāvilla, a banter.	Cūmēra, a corn basket.
Astīa, an ax.	Cella, a cell.	Cūpa, a tun.
Athlēta, m. a wrestler.	Cēra, wax.	Cūra, care.
Aula, a ball.	Cērēmonia, a ceremony.	Cūria, a senate-house.
Aura, a breeze.	Cervīsia, ale, beer.	Currūca, a hedge-sparrow.
Aurīga, m. a charioteer.	Cērūsta, white lead, paint.	Cymba, a boat.
Āvia, a grand mother.	Cetra, a square target.	Dēcempēda, a pole of ten feet.
Axilla, the armpit.	Charta, p. per,	Dīcta, dict. food.
Bālēna, a whale.	Chorda, a string.	Dōlabra, an ax.
Barba, a beard.	Cīcāda, a kind of insect.	Drachma, a drachm, a weigh or coin.
Bellua, any large beast.	Cīcōnia, a stink.	Epīstōla, a letter.
Bēta, beet, an herb.	Cīcūa, bimlock.	Fīca, a bait.
Bibliōpōla, a bookseller.	Cīnāta, an artichoke.	Fāba, a bean.
Bibliōthēca, a library.	Cīsta, a chest.	Fābūla, a fable.
Blätta, a moth.	Cīsterna, a cistern.	Fāma, fame.
Bractēa, a thin leaf of gold.	Cīthāra, a harp.	Fāina, meal.
Braſīca, collyflower.	Clāva, a club.	Fascia, a bandage.
Brūma, winter.	Clepsydra, an hour-glass.	Fāvilla, embers.
Bulla, a bubble, a ball or boſt.	Chāca, a sink.	Fēneſtra, a window.
Byrsa, an ox-bide.	Cochlea, a snail.	Fēra, a wild beast.
Calīga, a kind of shoe set with nails.	Cōena, a supper.	Fērūla, a rod.
Caltha, marygold.	Columba, a pigeon.	Festūca, the foot of a tree.
Calva & calvaria, a skull.	Cōma, the hair.	Fibra, a fibre.
Cālunīnia, flander.	Cōmēdia, a comedy.	Fibūla, a clasp. [Sel.
Cāmēna, amuse, a song.	Concha, a shell.	Fidēlia, an earthen ves-
Cāmēra, a vault.	Cōpia, plenty.	Fimbria, a fringe.
Campāna, a bell.	Cōpūla, a bond.	Fīſtīna, a bag, or basket.
Canna, a cane or reed.	Corrigīa, a shoe latchet.	Fīſtūca, a rammer.
Candēla, a candle.	Cōrōna, a crown, a circle.	Fīſtūla, a pipe.
Capra, a sheep-goat.	Cōrīna, a cauldron.	Flamīna, a flame.
Capſa, a coffer.	Costa, a rib.	Fōmīna, a woman.
Cārīna, the keel of a ſhip.	Cexa, the bounces,	Forma, a form.
Cāſa, a cottage.	Crāpūla, a surfeit.	Formīca, an ant.
Castānea, a chestnut.	Crātēra, a cup.	Fūſla, a ditch.
	Crātīcūa, a gridiron.	Fōvea, a pit.
	Crēna, a nest.	Frāmea, a short spear.
		Fūlīca, a sea fowl.
		Funda,

Funda, *a sling.*
 Furca, *a fork.*
 Fuscina, *a trident.*
 Gälča, *an helmet.*
 Gallina, *a hen.* [alcer.
 Gangraena, *an eating.*
 Gaza, *a treasure.*
 Gemma, *a gem.*
 Gēna, *the cheek.*
 Gēnista, *broom.*
 Gingiva, *the gum.*
 Glārea, *gravel.*
 Glēba, *a clod.*
 Göla, *the gullet.*
 Gutta, *a drop.*
 Häßena, *a rein.*
 Härä, *a bog fly.*
 Häťuga, *a sacrifice.*
 Hasta, *a spear.*
 Hédra, *ivy.*
 Herba, *an herb.*
 Herma, *v. -es, m. a statue of Mercury.*
 Hernia, *a rupture.*
 Hilla, *a fausage.*
 Höra, *an hour.*
 Hostia, *a victim.*
 Hydria, *a water-pot.*
 Jactura, *lost.*
 Jänua, *a gate.*
 Ídea, *a form, an idea.*
 Ídiota, *m. an illiterate person.*
 Ignōminia, *an affront.*
 Illécebra, *an allurement.*
 Impensa, *expence.*
 Indigēna, *m. a native.*
 Ynedia, *hunger.*
 Infūla, *a mitre.*
 Injūria, *a wrong.*
 Inōnia, *quant.*
 Infīta, *a fringe.*
 Insūla, *an island.*
 Ínū'a, *elicampante, an herb.*
 Invidia, *envy.*
 Íra, *anger.*
 Juba, *the mane.*

Läcerna, *a riding coat.*
 Läcerta, *a lizard.*
 Läcīnia, *a fringe.*
 Laerýma, *a tear.*
 Laetūca, *lettuce.*
 Läctūna, *a ditch.*
 Lägēna, *a flagon.*
 Läma, *a ditch.*
 Lämīa, *a sorceress.*
 Lämīna, *a plate.*
 Läna, *wool.*
 Lancea, *a lance or spear.*
 Länista, *m. a fencing-master.*
 Larva, *a mask.*
 Läterna, *a lantern.*
 Latrīna, *a house of office.*
 Lečīca, *a sedan or chair.*
 Lēna, *a bawd.*
 Lepra, *the leprosy.*
 Libra, *a pound.*
 Ligüla, *a latchet.*
 Līma, *a file.*
 Līnea, *a line.*
 Lingua, *the tongue.*
 Līra, *a ridge or furrow.*
 Lītēra, *a letter.*
 Lökusta, *a lovest.*
 Lūcerna, *a light.*
 Lūna, *the moon.*
 Luscīnia, *a nightingale.*
 Lymphā, *water.*
 Lyra, *a lyre.*
 Mächīna, *a machine.*
 Mačtra, *a kneading trough.*
 Mäčüla, *a slain.*
 Mäla, *the cheek-bone.*
 Mäläcia, *a calm.*
 Malva, *a mallow.*
 Mamma, *a pip.*
 Mänīca, *a sleeve.*
 Mantīca, *a wallet.*
 Mappa, *a napkin.*
 Margārīta, *a pearl.*
 Marra, *a mattock.*
 Massa, *a lump.*

Mätēria, *matter, stuff, timber.*
 Mäteriēra, *the mother's sister.* [tr̄fis.
 Matta, *a mat or mat.*
 Mä-üla, *a chamber-pot.*
 Médulla, *marrow.*
 Membrāna, *a thin skin, a film; parchment.*
 Mémōria, *memory.*
 Mensa, *a table.*
 Menüra, *a measure.*
 Merda, *dung.*
 Merga, *a pite-fork.*
 Mērūla, *a black bird.*
 Mēta, *a goat.*
 Mētāphōra, *a trope.*
 Mica, *a crumb.*
 Mitra, *a mitre.*
 Möla, *a mill.*
 Mönēiüla, *a jack-daw.*
 Mönēta, *money.*
 Mōra, *a delay.*
 Multa, *a fine.*
 Mürzēna, *a lamprey.*
 Mürria, *pickle, brine.*
 Mūsa, *a muse.*
 Musca, *a fly.*
 Muſčela, *a wasp.*
 Myrrha, *myrrb.*
 Myrica, *a tamarisk.*
 Myrta, *v. -es, m. a priest.*
 Nassa, *a net.*
 Nausea, *sea-sickness.*
 Nauta, *m. a mariner.*
 Nitē-üla, *a field-mouse.*
 Nœnia, *a funeral song.*
 Norma, *a rule.*
 Növācüla, *a razor.*
 Nö-erca, *a stepmother.*
 Nymphā, *a nymph.*
 Occa, *an harrow.*
 Ocrea, *a boot.*
 Õda *v. -e, an ode or song.*
 Offa, *a morsel.*
 Õlea, *an olive.*
 Olla, *a pot.*

Öra, a coast.	Pica, a magpy.	Räna, a frog.
Örbita, a path.	Pila, a ball.	Röpulja, a refusel.
Örca, a jar.	Pila, a pillar.	Résina, resin.
Orchestra, the stage, or the place next it, where the nobles sat.	Pincerna, m. a butler.	Rhëda, a chariot.
Ostrea, an oyster.	Pinna, a fin, a wing.	Rima, a ebink.
Rærüla, a riding coat.	Piräta, m. a pirate.	Ripa, a bank.
Pägina, a page.	Piscina, a fish-pond.	Rixa, a scold.
Pälä, a scowl.	Pitvita, pleger.	Rösa, a rose.
Pälästra, a wresling, or place for it.	Pläcenta, a cake.	Röta, a tubeel.
Pälä, shaff.	Pläga, a climate.	Rüga, a wrinkle.
Palinödia, a recanta- tion.	Planta, a plant.	Ruina, a downfall.
Palla, a large gotten.	Plätä, or Platäa, a broad street.	Runcina, a saw or
Palma, the palm.	Plüma, a feather.	Rüta, rue. Splane.
Palpebra, the eye-lid.	Plüvia, rain.	Säburra, ballof.
Päpilla, the nipple.	Pödagra, the gout.	Säga, a forerefet.
Päpüla, a pimple.	Pöena, a punishment.	Sägina, cramming.
Pärböla, comparing things together.	Pöeta, m. a poet.	Sägitta, an arrow.
Parma, a field.	Poetria, a poetess.	Sälebra, a rugged way.
Parra, a jay.	Pölenta, malt.	Säliunca, lavender.
Pätära, a goblet.	Pölitia, poliey.	Säliiva, spittle.
Pausa, a stop or pause.	Pompa, a procession.	Salpa, flock fish.
Pödica, a fetter.	Pöpa, m. a priest who sacrifices.	Sambuca, on harp, or engine of war.
Pénüla, a mantle.	Pöpina, a tavern.	Sanctimonia, devotion.
Pénuria, want.	Porta, a gate.	Sundäpila, a bier.
Pero, a purse.	Præda, plunder.	Sanna, a scff.
Perca, a pereb.	Prærogativa, sc. tri- bus, v. centuria, that voted first.	Sarcina, a burden.
Perfüga, m. a deserter.	Præcella, a stores.	Säriffa, a long spear.
Pergamena, sc. char- ta, parchment.	Pröra, the prow.	Saträpa, v. -es, m. a Persian governor.
Perna, a gammon of bacon.	Pröla, prose.	Sätyra, a satyr.
Persöna, a mesk.	Prölapia, a race.	Säla, a ladder.
Pertica, a pole.	Pruina, hoar-frost.	Scandülo, a latb to cov- er houses.
Petra, a rock.	Prünz, a burning coal.	Säpha, a boat.
Phäläräca, a long spear.	Psaltria, a music girl.	Säjäla, the shoulder.
Phärctra, a quiver.	Puella, a girl.	Scena, a stage.
Phäsiäna, sc. avis, a pheasant.	Pugna, a battle.	Schëda, a stet or scroll.
Phiäla, a vial.	Pulpa, the pulp.	Schöla, a school.
Philörräla, a nightin- gale.	Püpüla, the apple of the eye.	Scintilla, a spark.
Philyra, the linden tree, a leaf of paper.	Purpura, purple.	Scribilia, a tart or wafer.
Phöcca, a sea-solf.	Pusjäla, a blister.	Scrofula, the king's evil.
	Pýra, a funeral pile.	Scurra, m. a buffon.
	Quadra, sc. -um, a square.	Scütica, a scourge.
	Räbula, m. a wrangler.	Scytalia, a kind of ser- pent, or round staff.
		Sälibra, half a pound.
		Semihöra, half an hour.
		Semita,

Sēmita, a path.	Sublīca, a pile.	Tūba, a trumpet.
Sententia, an opinion.	Sübūla, a fibret.	Tūnīca, a tunic.
Sentina, a sink.	Sübūla, an awl. [con.	Turba, a crowd.
Sēra, a lock.	Succīdia, a fitcb of ba-	Turma, a troop.
Serra, a saw.	Summa, a sum, the whole.	Ulna, an ell.
Sesquihōra, an hour and a half.	Sūperbia, pride.	Ülōla, an owl.
Sēta, a bristle.	Sūra, the calf of the leg.	Ulva, sedge.
Sibylla, a prophetess.	Sutrina, fē. taberna, a shoemaker's shop.	Umbra, a shade.
Sīca, a dagger.	Sütūra, a seam.	Unda, a wave.
Siliqua, an bulk.	Sycōphanta, m. a sharpener.	Ungūla, a nail, the hoof.
Silva, a wood.	Syllāba, a syllable.	Üpūpa, the hoopoe, a bird.
Simia, an ape.	Symbōla, a club, a stare of a reckoning.	Ürīna, urine.
Simīla, flour.	Symphōnia, harmony.	Urna, an urn.
Sitūla, a bucket.	Syngrāpha, a bill or bond.	Urtica, a nettle.
Sōcordia, flotb.	Täberna, a shop.	Uva, a grape.
Sōlea, a shoe.	Täbūla, a table.	Vacca, a cow.
Sōphista, ὑ -es, m. a sophist.	Tæda, a torch.	Vägīna, a scabbard.
Spēcula, a watchtower.	Tænia, a ribbon.	Vappa, palled wine, a spendthrift.
Spēlunca, a cave.	Techna, a trick or wile.	Vena, a vein.
Sphæra, a sphere.	Tēgūla, a tile.	Vēnia, leave.
Spīca, an ear of corn.	Tēla, a web.	Verna, m. an home- born slave.
Spīna, the back bone.	Tērebra, a wimble.	Verrūca, a wart.
Spīra, a wreath.	Terra, the earth.	Vēsīca, the bladder.
Sponda, a bedstead.	Tēsēra, a dye.	Vespā, a wasp.
Spongia, a sponge.	Testa, an earthen pot.	Via, a way.
Sponia, a bride.	Textrīna, a weaver's shop.	Vicia, a vetch or tare.
Sporta, a basket.	Thēca, a case.	Victīma, a victim.
Spūma, foam.	Tibia, a pipe, the leg.	Victōria, a conquest.
Squāma, a scale.	Tilia, the linden tree.	Villa, a country seat.
Squilla, a prawn or shrimp.	Tīnea, a moth.	Vindēmia, vintage.
Stātēra, a balance.	Toustrīna, a barber's shop.	Vindicta, vengeance : a rod laid on the head of slavee when freed.
Stātua, a statue.	Trāgōdīa, a tragedy.	Viōla, a violet.
Stella, a star.	Trāgūla, a javelin with a barbed head.	Vipēra, a viper.
Stipūla, bubble.	Trahea, a sledge or dray.	Virga, a rod.
Sīria, an icle.	Trāma, the woof.	Vīta, life.
Stīva, the plow-tail.	Trochlea, a pulley.	Vīta, a fillet.
Stōla, a gown.	Trulla, a trowel.	Vīvīra, a ferret.
Sūangūria, the making of water with great pain.	Trūtīna, a balance.	Vōla, the palm of the hand.
Strēna, a new year's gift.		Zōna, a girdle, a zone.
Strūma, a botch.		
Stūpa, tow.		

EXCEPTIONS.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine: *Hadria*, the Adriatic sea; *comēta*, a comet; *planēta*, a planet; and sometimes *talpa*, a mole; and *dāma*, a fallow-deer. *Pascha*, the passover, is neuter.

Exc. 2. The ancient Latins sometimes formed the genitive singular in *āi*; thus, *aula*, a hall, gen. *aulāi*; and sometimes likewise in *as*; which form the compounds of *fāmilia* usually retain; as, *māter fāmilias*, the mistress of a family; genit. *matris familias*; nom. plur. *matres-familias*, or *matres familiarum*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns have more frequently *ābus* in the dative and ablative plural, to distinguish them in these cases from masculines in *us* of the second declension:

<i>Anūna</i> , the soul, the life.	<i>Filia</i> , & <i>Nāta</i> , a daughter.
<i>Dea</i> , a goddess.	<i>Liberta</i> , a freed woman.
<i>Equa</i> , a mare.	<i>Mīla</i> , a slave-mule.
<i>Fāmūla</i> , a female servant.	

Thus *deābus*, *filiābus*, rather than *filiis*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS.

Nouns in *as*, *es*, and *e*, of the first declension, are Greek. Nouns in *as* and *es* are masculine: nouns in *e* are feminine.

Nouns in *as* are declined like *penna*; only they have *am* or *an* in the accusative; as, *Aēneas*, *Aeneas*, the name of a man; gen. *Aēnēa*; dat. -*æ*; acc. -*am* or -*an*; voc. -*a*; abl. -*ā*. So *Bōreas*, -*ea*, the north wind; *Tiāras*, -*æ*, a turban. In prose they have commonly *am*, but in poetry oftener *an*, in the accusative. Greek nouns in *a* have sometimes also *an* in the acc. in poetry; as *Offa*, -*am*, or -*an*, the name of a mountain.

Nouns in *es* and *e* are thus declined,

Anchīses, *Anchises*, the name of a man.
Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>Anchīses</i> ,	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Anchisen</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Anchīsæ</i> ,	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Anchise</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Anchīsæ</i> ,	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Anchise</i> .

Pēnēlope, *Penēlope*, the name of a woman.
Singular.

<i>Nom.</i> <i>Pēnēlope</i> ,	<i>Acc.</i> <i>Penelopen</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i> <i>Pēnēlopes</i> ,	<i>Voc.</i> <i>Penelope</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i> <i>Pēnēlope</i> ,	<i>Abl.</i> <i>Penelope</i> .

These

These nouns, being proper names, want the plural, unless when several of the same name are spoken of, and then they are declined like the plural of *penna*.

The Latins frequently turn Greek nouns in *es* and *e* into *a*; as, *Atrida*, for *Atrides*; *Perfa*, for *Perse*, a Persian; *Ge metra*, for *-tres*, a Geometrician: *Circa*, for *Circe*; *Epitoma*, for *-me*, an abridgement; *Grammatica*, for *-ce*, grammar; *Rhetorica*, for *-ce*, oratory. So *Clinia*, for *Clinias*, &c. The accusative of nouns in *es* and *e* is found sometimes in *em*.

Note. We sometimes find the genit. plur. contracted; as, *Calicolum*, for *Calicolarum*; *Menadum*, for *-arum*.

SECOND DECLENSION.

Nouns of the second declension end in *er*, *ir*, *ur*, *us*, *um*; *os*, *on*.

Nouns in *um* and *on* are neuter; the rest are masculine.

Nouns of the second declension have the gen. sing. in *i*; the dat. and abl. in *o*; the acc. in *um*; the voc. like the nom. (But nouns in *us* make the vocative in *e*;) The nom. and voc. plur. in *i*, or *a*; the gen. in *orum*; the dat. and abl. in *is*; and the acc. in *os*, or *a*; as,

Gēner, a son in-law, masc.

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
<i>Nom. gēner,</i>	<i>Nom. gēnēri,</i>	<i>er, ir, us, i,</i>
<i>Gen. genēri,</i>	<i>Gen. generōrum,</i>	<i>i, orum,</i>
<i>Dat. genero,</i>	<i>Dat. generis,</i>	<i>o, is,</i>
<i>Acc. generum,</i>	<i>Acc. generos,</i>	<i>um, os,</i>
<i>Voc. gener,</i>	<i>Voc. generi,</i>	<i>er, ir, e, i,</i>
<i>Abl. genero.</i>	<i>Abl. generis.</i>	<i>o, is.</i>

After the same manner decline *sacer*, *-īri*, a father-in-law; *puer*, *-īri*, a boy: So *Furcifer*, a villain; *Lēcifer*, the morning star; *ādūter*, an adulterer; *armiger*, an armour bearer; *preſbīter*, an elder; *Mūcīber*, a name of the god vulcan; *veſper*, the evening; and *īber*, *-ēri*, a Spaniard, the only noun in *er* which has the genit. long, and its compound *Celiōr*, *-ēri*: Also, *vir*, *vīri*, a man, the only noun in *ir*; and its compounds, *Lēvir*, a brother in-law; *Semi-vir*, *cuumvir*, *triumvir*, &c. And likewise *sātur*, *-āri*, full, (of old *satūrus*,) an adjective.

But most nouns in *er* lose the *e* in the genitive; as,
Ager, *a field*, masc.

Sing.

Nom. äger,
Gen. agri,
Dat. agro,
Aor. agrum,
Voc. ager,
Abl. agro.

Plur.

Nom. agri,
Gen. agrōrum,
Dat. agris,
Aor. agros,
Voc. agri,
Abl. agris.

In like manner decline,

Äper; <i>a wild boar.</i>	Cäper, <i>an be goat.</i>	Fäber, <i>a workman.</i>
Arbiter, (U -tra,) a judge.	Cöläber, U -bra, a serpent.	Mägister, <i>a master.</i>
Auster, <i>the south-wind.</i>	Culter, <i>the coulter of a plough, a knife.</i>	Minister, <i>a servant.</i>
Cancer, <i>a croc-fish.</i>		Önäger, <i>a wild as.</i>

Also *liber*, the bark of a tree, or a book, which has *libri*; but *liber*, free, an adjective, and *Liber*, a name of Bacchus, the God of wine, have *liberi*. So likewise proper names, *Alexander*, *Evander*, *Periander*, *Ménander*, *Teucer*, *Méléäger*, &c. gen. *Alexandri*, *Evandri*, &c.

Döminus, *a lord*, masc.

Sing.

Nom. döminus,
Gen. dominī,
Dat. domino,
Acc. dominum,
Voc. domine,
Abl. domino.

Plur.

Nom. dömini,
Gen. dominōrum,
Dat. dominis,
Acc. dominos,
Voc. domini,
Abl. dominis.

In like manner decline,

Äbäcs, <i>a table or dñe.</i>	Argentarius, <i>a banker.</i>	Cächinnus, <i>a loudlaugh.</i>
Äcervus, <i>a beap.</i>	Arnus, <i>the shoulder of a b. asf.; also of a man.</i>	Cäduceus, <i>a wand.</i>
Äcüleus, <i>a sting.</i>	Äsñus, U -a, <i>an asf.</i>	Cädus, <i>a cask.</i>
Ägnus, <i>a lamb.</i>	Autumnus, <i>the autumn.</i>	Cälämus, <i>a reed.</i>
Älnur, f. <i>an alder tree.</i>	Ävus, <i>a grandfather.</i>	Cäläthus, <i>a basket.</i>
Älveus, <i>the abannck of a river.</i>	Ävuncüus, <i>the mother's brother.</i>	Callus, U -um, <i>hard f. sb.</i>
Ängülus, <i>a corner.</i>	Bajülus, <i>a porter.</i>	Cäniñus, <i>a chimney.</i>
Äninus, <i>the mind.</i>	Barrus, <i>an elephant.</i>	Campus, <i>a plain.</i>
Ännus, <i>a year.</i>	Bölus, <i>a morsel.</i>	Canthärus, <i>a cup or jug.</i>
Ännülus, <i>a ring.</i>	Bonibus, <i>a buzz.</i>	Carduus, <i>a thistle.</i>
Änus, <i>a tirele.</i>	Cäballus, <i>a pack-borse.</i>	Carpus, <i>the wrist.</i>
Ächiteälus, <i>a master-builder.</i>	Cäcäbus, <i>a kettle.</i>	Carrus, U -um, <i>a cart.</i>

Cafcus,

Cāsus, *cheese.*
 Cā:llögus, *a roll.*
 Cātinus, *a platter.*
 Caurus, *a west wind.*
 Cedrus, *f. a cedar-tree.*
 Cervus, *a stag.*
 Cētus, *a whale. pl. ce-
te, n. indecl.*
 Chīrurgus, *a surgeon.*
 Chōrus, *a choir.*
 Cibus, *meat.*
 Cincinnus, *a curl.*
 Cinnus, *a medley.*
 Cippus, *a grave-stone.*
 Circinus, *a pair of
compasses. (circle.)*
 Circus & circūlus, *a*
 Cirrus, *a tuft, or curl.*
 Citrus, *f. a citron-tree.*
 Clathrus, *a grate.*
 Clāvus, *a nail.*
 Clitānus, *a portable
oven.*
 Clivus, *a bill.*
 Clýpeus, *a round shield.*
 Coccus, *v. -um. scarlet.*
 Cöläphus, *a box on the
ear.*
 Condus, *a butler.*
 Condylus, *the knuckle.*
 Congius, *a gallion.*
 Consōbrinus, *a cousin-
german by the mo-
ther's side.*
 Contus, *a long pole.*
 Conus, *a cone.*
 Cōphinus, *a baulet.*
 Cōquus, *a cook.*
 Cornus, *f. the cornel
tree.*
 Corvus, *a raven.*
 Cōr̄ylus, *f. a beech-tree.*
 Cōrymbus, *a bunch of
ivy berries.*
 Cōryphæus, *a ring-
leader.*
 Cōrytus, *or -os, a beech-
cuse.*
 Cōthurnus, *a buskin,*

Cübitus, *a cubit.*
 Cūcullus, *a hood.*
 Cūcūlus vel cūcūlus, *a
cuckow.*
 Cūleus, *a leatheren bag.*
 Culmus, *a stalk.*
 Cūlullus, *a pot or jug.*
 Cūmūlus, *an heap.*
 Cūneus, *a wedge.*
 Cūnicūlus, *a rabbit.*
 Cyāhus, *a cup or glaſt.*
 Cygnus, *a swan.*
 Cylindrus, *a roller.*
 Diälögus, *a discourse
between two or more.*
 Dīgitus, *a finger.*
 Discus, *a quoit.*
 Divus, *a god.*
 Dōlus, *deceit.*
 Dūmus, *a bush.*
 Ēchānus, *an urchin.*
 Ēlegus, *an elegy.*
 Ēphēbus, *a youth.*
 Ēpilögus, *a conclusion.*
 Ēpilōpus, *an overseer,
a biſhop.*
 Ēquūleus, *an instru-
ment of torture.*
 Ēquus, *an horse.*
 Ērēbus, *hell.*
 Eurus, *the east wind.*
 Fagus, *f. a beech-tree.*
 Fānūlus, *a man-serv-
ant.*
 Fävōnius, *the west wind.*
 Fävus, *an honeycomb.*
 Figūlus, *a potter.*
 Filcus, *the exchequer.*
 Floccus, *a lock of wool.*
 Flūvius, *a river.*
 Fōcus, *a hearth.*
 Fraxīnus, *f. an ash tree.*
 Frībillus, *a dice-box.*
 Fūcus, *a drone bee,
paint.*
 Fūnius, *smoke. [daneer.]*
 Fūnambūlus, *a rope-*
 Fundus, *a farm.*
 Fungus, *a mushroom.*

Furñus, *an oven.*
 Fūsus, *a spindle.*
 Gallus, *a cock.*
 Gērūlus, *a porter.*
 Gibbus, *a swelling.*
 Glādius, *a sword.*
 Glōbus, *a globe.*
 Grābātus, *a couch.*
 Grācūlus, *a jackdaw.*
 Grāmus, *a billock.*
 Guttus, *a cruet or viol.*
 Gyrus, *a circle.*
 Hēdus, *a kid.*
 Hāmuš, *a hawk.*
 Hāriölus, *a diviner.*
 Hērus, *a master.*
 Hespērus, *the evening.*
 Hinnūleus, *a young
bind or fawn.*
 Hinnūs, *a mule.*
 Hircus, *a goat.*
 Hortus, *a garden.*
 Hūmērus, *a shoulder.*
 Hydrus, *a water-ser-
pent.*
 Internuncius, *a go be-
tween.*
 Isthmus, *a neck of land
between two seas.*
 Juncus, *a bulrush.*
 Jūvēnus, *a bullock.*
 Lāb̄yrinthus, *a maze.*
 Lācertus, *the arm.*
 Lānius, *a butcher.*
 Lāqueus, *a noose.*
 Leōtus, *a couch.*
 Lēgātus, *an ambassador.*
 Lēgūleius, *an ignorant
lawyer, a pettifiggere.*
 Lēthargus, *the lethargy.*
 Limbus, *a selvedge.*
 Limus, *slime.*
 Lātuus, *a crooked staff.*
 Lūcus, *a sacred grove.*
 Lumbricus, *an earth
worm.*
 Lumbus, *the loin.*
 Lūpus, *a wolf.*
 Lychnus, *a lamp.*

Mägus, *a magician.*
 Malleus, *a mallet.*
 Mälus, *the mast of a ship.*
 Mälus, *f. an apple-tree.*
 Mammæ, *a little horse.*
 Mäthämätkus, *a thematician.*
 Médiastinus, *a slave, a drudge.*
 Mélkus, *a physician.*
 Mendicus, *a beggar.*
 Mergus, *a cormorant.*
 Milvus, *a kite.*
 Mimus, *a mimic.*
 Mölius, *a boar.*
 Mödus, *a manner.*
 Mæchus, *an adulterer.*
 Mörus, *f. a mulberry-tree.*
 Mucus, *the filth of the nose, snot.*
 Mutilus, *a mullet fish.*
 Mûus, &c. *a, a mule.*
 Mûrus, *a wall.*
 Mufcus, *moss.*
 Myrtus, *f. a myrtle tree.*
 Nævus, *a spot.*
 Nâmus, *a dwarf.*
 Natus, *the nose.*
 Nervus, *a string.*
 Nidus, *a nest.*
 Nimbus, *a cloud.*
 Nodus, *a knot.*
 Nöchus, *a boar's t.*
 Nöetus, *the south wind.*
 Nucleus, *a kernel.*
 Nûmërus, *a number.*
 Nummus, *a piece of money.*
 Nutius, *a messenger.*
 Õbölus, *a farting.*
 Õceanus, *the ocean.*
 Õculus, *the eye.*
 Õcus, *beil.*
 Ormus, *f. a wild asp.*
 Ostracismus, *a voting with shells.*
 Pædagogus, *a servant who attended boys.*
 Págus, *a canton or village.*
 Pálus, *a stake.*
 Pannus, *cloth.*
 Päräitus, *a flatterer.*
 Pardus, *a panther.*
 Päröchus, *an entertainer.*
 Patruus, *the father's brother.*
 Patrōus, *a patron.*
 Pediulus, *a louse.*
 Pefküus, *a bolt.*
 Pëtäsus, *a br. ad brimmed hat.*
 Phärus, or -os, *a watch-tower.*
 Philö-öphus, *a lover of wisdom.*
 Phœbus, *poet. the sun.*
 Physis, *an enquirer into nature.*
 Picus, *a wood-pecker.*
 Pileus, *a hat.*
 Pîlus, *a hair.*
 Pius, *f. a pear-tree.*
 Plagiarius, *a plagiary, a man stealer; or one who steals from other's books.*
 Plâmus, *a vagrant, a beggar.*
 Pluteus, *a pent-house, a press for books.*
 Pölus, *the pale, heaven.*
 Pnatus, *the sea.*
 Pö-ülus, *a pe/le.*
 Populus, *f. a poplar.*
 Porcus, *a pig. (tree.*
 Porcus, *a leek.*
 Præpîlus, *the chief centurion.*
 Præsignus, *a person.*
 Procus, *a suitor.*
 Promus, *a steward.*
 Prunus, *f. a plumb-tree.*
 Psittacus, *a parrot.*
 Pugnus, *th. fist.*
 Pullus, *a child.*
 Pulvînus, *a pillow.*
 Pùvillus, *an orbæan.*
 Pûpus, *a young child, a babe.*
 Pütens, *a well.*
 Quâlus & quâfillus, *a basket.* [grapes]
 Räemus, *a cluster of Râmus, a ray.*
 Râmus, *a branch.*
 Renuus, *an ear.*
 Rhombus, *a turbot.*
 Rhonchus, *a snorting.*
 Riscus, *a trunk.*
 Rivus, *a rivulet.*
 Röqus, *a funeral pile.*
 Rhythmus, *metre, rhyme.*
 Saccus, *a sack.*
 Sarcophagus, *a stone, in which dead bodies were inclosed.*
 Säryru, *a satyr, a kind of demigod.*
 Scalmus, *a boat; a piece of wood where the oars hung.*
 Scäpus, *a stalk, a shaft or shank.*
 Scärus, *the sea, a fish.*
 Scirpus, *a rush.*
 Sciurus, *a squirrel.*
 Scöpulus, *a rock.*
 Scöpu, *a mark.*
 Scrupulus, *a doubt or scruple.*
 Scrupus, *a little fions.*
 Scyphus, *a bowl.*
 Servus, *a slave.*
 Sestertius, *two pounds and a half; a sesterce, a Roman coin.*
 Síarius, *an assaifin.*
 Simius, *ĩ-a, an ape.*
 Sírius, *the dog star.*
 Socus, *a kind of fons.*
 Sonnus, *sleep.*
 Sôrus, *a gland.*
 Síäsus, *a spear.*
 Sponius, *a bridegroom.*
 Stimulus,

Stimulus, a sting, a spur.	Thrōnus, a royal seat.	Typhus, a figure or type.
Stomachus, the stomach.	Thyāsus, a chorus in honour of Bacchus.	Ulmus, f. an elm tree.
Strūpus, a thong, a strap.	Thyrsus, a spear wrapt with ivy.	Umbilicus, the navel.
Stylus, a style, or iron pen to write with on wicker tables.	Titūs, a title.	Uncus, a hook.
Sūbulcus, a swine herd.	Tōmus, a volume.	Urceus, a pitcher.
Succus, juice.	Tōnus, a note in music.	Urtus, a bear.
Sulcus, a furrow.	Tōphus, a gravel stone.	Ūrus, a buffalo.
Surculus, a young twig.	Tornus, a turner's web etc.	Uterus, the womb.
Sūfurrus, a whisper.	Tōrus, a couch.	Vallus, a stake.
Tālus, the ankle, a die.	Tribūus, a tribe.	Vēnētus, a sorcerer.
Taurus, a bull.	Triumphus, a triumph.	Ventus, the wind.
Taxus, f. the yew tree.	Trōchus, a top.	Vicus, a village, a street.
Terninus, a bound.	Truncus, the trunk.	Vilicus, Ȑ-a, an overseer of a farm.
Thālāmus, a marriage bed- chamber.	Tūbus, a tube or pipe.	Villus, scraggy hair.
Thēolōgus, a divine.	Tūmūlis, a hillock.	Vitellus, the yolk of an egg.
Thēsaurus, a treasure.	Turdus, a thrush.	Vitellus, a field-father.
Thōlus, the roof of a temple.	Tyrannus, a tyrant.	Vitellus, a calf (wind).
		Zephyrus, the west-wind.

Regnum, a kingdom, neut.

Sing.

Plur.

Nom. regnum,	Nom. regna,
Gen. regni,	Gen. regnōrum,
Dat. regno,	Dat. regnis,
Acc. regnum,	Acc. regna,
Voc. regnum,	Voc. regna,
Abl. regno :	Abl. regnis.

In like manner decline,

Acētum, vinegar.	Armentum, an herd.	Fūrūrum, butter.
Acōnitum, wolfs-bane, a poisonous plant.	Arvum, Ȑ-us, a field.	Cævum, a graving tool.
Adāgium, a proverb.	Astrum, a star.	Cæmentum, materials for building.
Admīnīcūlum, a prep.	Āsylum, a sanctuary.	Cānistrum, a basket.
Ādūtum the most secret part of a temple.	Atrium, a court or hall.	Cāpistrum, a halter or muzzle.
Ālbum, a register.	Aulēum tapestry.	Castrum, a castle.
Altium, garlick.	Aurum, gold.	Centrum, the centre.
Āmentum, a thong.	Auxiliūm assistance.	Cērebrum, the brain.
Āmūlērum, a charm.	Āviārium, a cage.	Chirogrāphum, a hand-writing.
Ātē hum, anise.	Palsānum, balm.	Ciliūm, the eye-lashes.
Antīcum, a fore door.	Bārathrum, an abyss.	Citrum, citron wood.
Antrum, a cave.	Bāsum, a kīs.	Clāscūm, a trumpet.
Āpium, parsley.	Bellum, war.	Cēlum, pl. -i, heaven.
Argentum, silver.	Biduum, two days.	Cædūm,

Cœnum, <i>mire, dirt.</i>	Ervum, <i>wet-her.</i>	Initium, <i>a beginning.</i>
Coillōquium, <i>a conference.</i>	Efsđum, <i>a chariot,</i>	Intervallum, <i>distance between.</i>
Collum, <i>the neck.</i>	Everricūlum, <i>a drag net.</i>	Jūdīcīum, <i>judgment.</i>
Commōdum, <i>advan- tage.</i>	Exemplum, <i>an example.</i>	Jūgūlum, <i>the throat.</i>
Confinium, <i>a bound or limit.</i>	Exītium, <i>destruction.</i>	Jūgum, <i>a yoke, the ridge of a hill.</i>
Congiārium, <i>a forges.</i>	Exordium, <i>a beginning.</i>	Jurgium, <i>a quarrel.</i>
Convīcīum, <i>a reproach.</i>	Fānum, <i>a temple.</i>	Jussūm, <i>an order.</i>
Cōrium, <i>a bide.</i>	Fascīnum, <i>witchcraft.</i>	Justītūm, <i>a vacation.</i>
Costum, <i>spikenard.</i>	Fastīgīum, <i>the top.</i>	Lābīum, <i>the lip.</i>
Crēmīum, <i>a dry sick.</i>	Fercūlum, <i>a dish of meat.</i>	Lardūm, <i>bacon.</i>
Crēpulcūlum, <i>the twi- light.</i>	Ferrum, <i>iron.</i>	Lāvānum, <i>a chamber-pot.</i>
Cribrum, <i>a sieve.</i>	Filum, <i>a thread.</i>	Lībūm, <i>a sweet-cake.</i>
Cūbīcūlum, <i>a bed-chamber.</i>	Flābellūm, <i>a fan.</i>	Līcīum, <i>the woof.</i>
Cuminūm, <i>cumin, an herb.</i>	Flagrum & flāgellūm, <i>a whip.</i>	Līgnūm, <i>wood.</i>
Cymbālūm, <i>a cymbal.</i>	Flammēum, <i>a veil.</i>	Līlīum, <i>a lily.</i>
Damīnum, <i>loss.</i>	Fēnum, <i>bay.</i>	Līnteūm, <i>a skeet.</i>
Dēlūbrum, <i>a temple.</i>	Fōlium, <i>a leaf.</i>	Līnum, <i>lint.</i>
Dēmenſūm, <i>an allow- ance of meat.</i>	Fōrum, <i>a market-place.</i>	Lōrum, <i>a thong.</i>
Detrīmentūm, <i>damage.</i>	Frāgūm, <i>a strawberry.</i>	Lucrūm, <i>gain.</i>
Diārium, <i>a day's wages.</i>	Frētūm, <i>a narrow sea.</i>	Lūdībrium, <i>a laugh- ing-stock.</i>
Dilūcūlum, <i>the dawning of day.</i>	Frūmentūm, <i>corn.</i>	Lūstrūm, <i>a survey.</i>
Dīum, <i>poet. the open air.</i>	Frūstūm, <i>a bit or piece.</i>	Lūteūm, <i>the yolk of an egg.</i>
Dōlīum, <i>a cask.</i>	Fulcrūm, <i>a prop.</i>	Lūtūm, <i>clay.</i>
Dōmīcīlūm, <i>an abode.</i>	Furtūm, <i>theft.</i>	Macellūm, <i>the bazaar.</i>
Dōnum, <i>a gift.</i>	Grānārium, <i>a granary.</i>	Mānubrium, <i>a bilt or bandole.</i>
Dorsūm, <i>the back.</i>	Grānum, <i>a grain.</i>	Matrīmōnīum, <i>mar- riage.</i>
Effūgūm, <i>an escape.</i>	Grāphīum, <i>a pencil.</i>	Mausōlēum, <i>any sumptuous monument.</i>
Flectrūm, <i>amber.</i>	Grēmīum, <i>the bosom.</i>	Membrūm, <i>a member.</i>
Elēmentūm, <i>an element, a letter.</i>	Gymnāsīum, <i>a place of exercise</i>	Mendācīum, <i>a lie.</i>
Elōgūm, <i>a brief say- ing, a testimonial in one's praise.</i>	Gynæcēum, <i>the wo- men's apartment.</i>	Mentūm, <i>the chin.</i>
Emōlūmentūm, <i>profit.</i>	Gypsum, <i>plaster.</i>	Mētallūm, <i>metal, a mine.</i>
Emplaſtrūm, <i>a plaster.</i>	Hauſtrūm, <i>a bucket.</i>	Mīlīum, <i>millet, a kind of grain.</i>
Empōriūm, <i>a mart or market town.</i>	Hellēbōrum, <i>the -us, bellflower, a plant.</i>	Minūm, <i>vermilion.</i>
Ēphippūm, <i>a saddle.</i>	Hōrōlōgūm, <i>any thing that tells the hours.</i>	Mōmentūm, <i>weight, importance.</i>
Ēpitāphīum, <i>an in- ſcription on a tomb.</i>	Idōlūm, <i>an image.</i>	Mōnōpōliūm, <i>the sole right of selling any thing.</i>
Ergaſtūlūm, <i>a work- house.</i>	Idyllūm, <i>a pastoral poem.</i>	Meaſtrūm, <i>a manſter,</i>
	Impēriūm, <i>command.</i>	
	Iuceptūm, <i>an enter- prise.</i>	
	Iudīcīum, <i>a discovery.</i>	
	Indūlūm, <i>a foirt.</i>	
	Ingēnūm, <i>wit, genius.</i>	

any thing against the common course of nature.	Perpendiculum, a straight line upwards or downwards.	Rastrum, a rake.
Mortarium, a mortar.	Pētorium, a wagon.	Rēfūgium, a shelter.
Mūcūm, a study or library.	Pillētum, a chariot.	Rēmēdium, a cure.
Mūstum, new wine.	Pilam, a javelin.	Rēmulcum, a tow-barge.
Mysterium, a mystery, a thing not easily comprehended.	Pistillum, the pestle of a mortar.	Rēpāgūlum, a bar.
Nasturium, cresses.	Pīlum, pease.	Rēpūdium, a divorce.
Naulum, freight.	Plaūstrum, a wagon.	Responsum, an answer.
Naufrāgium, ship-wreck.	Plectrum, a quill or bow to play with on a musical instrument.	Rētinacūlum, a cable.
Nēgōtium, a thing, business.	Plumbum, lead.	Rōstrum, the bill of a bird, the beak of a ship.
Nitrum, mitre.	Pōmārium, an orchard.	Rūdimentum, pl. -a, the first principles of any art.
Obsēquium, compliance.	Pōmcerium, a void space on each side of a town-wall.	Rutrum, a piek-na.
ōdium, hatred.	Pōmum, an apple.	Sablatūrum, the sabbath.
ōmāsum, the paunch.	Posticum, a back-door.	Sābūlum, gravel.
Omentum, the caul, or skin which covers the bowels.	Postlimiūm, a return to one's country.	Sacchārum, sugar.
Oppidum, a town.	Prædium, a farm.	Sācellum, a chapel.
Opprobrium, a reproach.	Prējūdīcium, a fore-judging.	Sacerdōtium, the priesthood.
Opsōrium, fish, or any thing eaten with bread.	Prælium, a battle.	Sacrāmentum, a military oath.
Orgānum, any instrument. [the lips.	Præmīum, a reward.	Sacrīfīcium, a sacrifice.
Oscūlum, a kiss; pl.	Præsidium, a defence, a garrison.	Sacrīlēgium, stealing sacred things.
Ostrum, purple.	Prāndium, a dinner.	Sāgum, a soldier's cloak.
ōtium, repose.	Prātum, a meadow.	Sälārium, a salary.
Ostium, the door.	Prēlium, a priest.	Sālinum, a salt-cellar.
ōvum, an egg.	Prētium, a price.	Salsāmentum, salt-meat.
Pābūlum, fodder.	Prīmordium, a beginning.	Sālum, the sea.
Pactum, an agreement.	Prīncipium, a beginning.	Sandālium, a slipper.
Pālātium, a palace.	Prīvilegium, a private law or special right.	Sarcūlum, a wedding-book, a spade.
Pālātum, the palate.	Probrum, a disgrace.	Sarmentum, a twig.
Pallium, a cloak.	Prōdīgīum, a prodigy, any thing preternatural.	Sātisdatūm, a bond of security.
Pālūdāmentum, a general's robe.	Prōmissum, a promise.	Saxum, a large stone.
Pānārium, a bread basket.	Prōpōsītum, a purpose.	Scalprum, dim. Scalpellum, a knife.
Pātibūlum, a gibbet.	Prōpugnācūlum, a bulwark. [saying.	Scanīnum, dim. Scanbellum, a bench or form.
Pensum, a task. [rake.	Prōverbium, an old Pulpitum, a pulpit.	Sceptrum, a sceptre, a mace.
Peplum, a woman's	Rāmentum, a cibor or shaving.	Sētūm, a decree.
Perjūrium, perjury, taking a false oath.	C	Scortum, an harlot.
		Scrinium, a coffer.
		Scriptum,

Scriptum, a writing.	Sterquilinium, a dung-bill.	Tintinnabulum, a little bell.
Scrūpulum, a scruple, a certain weight.	Stipendium, pay.	Tirōcīnum, an apprenticeship.
Scutum, a shield.	Stragulum, a bl. Net.	Tormentum, an engine, a torment
Sēcūlum, an age.	Strātum, a couch.	Toxicum, poison.
Sēminārium, a nursery.	Strigmentum, a scraping.	Trībūtum, tax or cust.-pr.
Sēnācūlum, a senate-house.	Stūdium, desire, study.	Triclinium, a dining-room.
Sēnātūs consultum, a decree of the senate.	Stuprum, debauchery.	Triduum, three days.
Sērīcūm, silk.	Suāvium, a kiss.	Triennium, three years.
Servitium, slavery.	Subsellium, a bench.	Trīpūdium, a dancing.
Serpillum, wild thyme.	Subsīdium, help.	Trivium, a place where three ways meet.
Sertum, a garland.	Sūburhanum, a house near the town.	Tropæum, a trophy, a token of victory.
Sērum, woe.	Sūburbium, the suburbs, the part of a town without the walls.	Tūgūrium, a cottage.
Sesterium, a thousand sefertii.	Sūdārium, a handkerchief.	Tympānum, a drum.
Sēvum, tallow.	Suffrāgium, a vote.	Vaccinium, a berry.
Signum, a sign, a standard.	Suggeſtum, ḡ.-us, ūs, a place raised above others.	Vādīmōnium, bail; a promise to appear in court.
Sigillum, a seal.	Summārium, an abridgment.	Vādūm, a ford, the sea.
Silicernium, a funeral supper, an old man.	Supercīlium, the brow, pride.	Vallum, a rampart.
Sinum, a milk pail.	Suspirium, a sigh.	Vēlūm, a veil, a sail.
Sistrum, a timbrel.	Symbolum, a sign or token.	Vēnābūlum, a bunting pole.
Sōdālītūm, a company, a corporation.	Sympōsium, ḡ.-on, a banquet.	Vēnēnum, poison.
Sōlārium, a sun-dial.	Tabernācūlum, a tent.	Vēnīlabrum, a fan.
Sōlātūm, comfort.	Tābūlātum, a story.	Verbum, a word.
Sōlium, a throne.	Tābum, black gore.	Vestibūlum, a porch.
Sōlūm, the ground.	Tādium, weariness.	Vestigium, the print of the foot.
Somnium, a dream.	Tālētum, a talent.	Vēnilūm, a banner.
Spātium, a space.	Tēctum, the roof, a house.	Viātīcum, money, or provisions for a journey.
Spectācūlum, a show.	Tēlum, a weapon.	Vīncūlum, a chain.
Spectrūm, a phantom, or apparition.	Templum, a church.	Vīnum, wine.
Spēcūlum, a looking glass.	Tērgum, the back.	Vītium, vice, a fault.
Spēlēum, a den.	Tēstīmōnium, an evidence.	Vītrum, glass.
Spīcīlēgūm, agleaning.	Theatrum, a theatre.	Vīvārium, a place to keep beasts in, a warren or fish-pond.
Spīculum, a dart.	Thūrībūlum, a censer, a vessel to burn incense in.	Vōcābūlum, a name or word.
Spirācūlum, a breathing hole.		Vōtūm, a vow.
Spōlūm, spoil.		
Spūtūm, spittle.		
Stābūlum, a stable.		
Stādūm, a fur long.		
Stagnūm, a pond.		
Stannūm, tin.		

EXCEPTIONS in Gender.

Exc. 1. The following nouns in *us* are feminine, *būmus*, the ground; *alvus*, the belly; *vannus*, a sieve.

And the following, derived from Greek nouns in *os*:

Ābyssus, a bottomless pit.	Carbāsus, a sail.	Ārēmus, a desert.
Antidōtus, a preservative against poison.	Diālectus, a dialect, or manner of speech.	Mēthōdss, a method.
Ārctos, the Bear, a constellation near the north pole.	Diāmetros, the diameter of a circle.	Pēriōdus, a period.
	Diphthongus, a dipthong.	Pērīmetros, the circumference.
		Phārus, a watch tower.
		Synōdus, an assembly.

To these add some names of jewels and plants, because *gemma* and *planta* are feminine; as,

Āmethȳstus, an amethyst. [solite.	Sapp̄irūs, a sapphire.	Byssus, fine flax or linen.
Chryſellus, a chryſellus.	Tōpazius, a topaz.	Costus, costmary.
Chryſōphrāsus, a kind of topaz.	Biblus, an Egyptian reed of which paper was made.	Crōcus, saffron.
Chryſtallus, crystal.	Pāp̄yrus, which paper was made.	Hyl̄ōpus, hyſop.
Lencōchryſus, a jacinth.		Nardus, spikenard.

Other names of jewels are generally masculine; as, *Bēryllus*, the beryl; *carbunculus*, a carbuncle; *Pyrōpus*, a ruby; *Smāragdus*, an emerald: And also names of plants; as, *Aſpārāgus*, asparagus, or sparrowgrass; *ellebōrus*, ellebore; *raphānus*, radish or colewort; *int̄bus*, endive or succory, &c.

Exc. 2. The nouns which follow, are either masculine or feminine:

Ātōmus, an atom.	Barbītus, a barb.	Grottus, a green fig.
Balānus, the fruit of the palm-tree, ointment.	Cāmēlus, a camel.	Pēnus, a store-bouſe.

Exc. 3. *Vīrus*, poison; *pēlāgus*, the sea, are neuter.

Exc. 4. *Vulgus*, the common people, is either masculine or neuter, but oftener neuter.

EXCEPTIONS in Declension.

Proper names in *ius* lose *us* in the vocative; as,

Hōrātius, *Horāti*; *Virgilius*, *Virgili*: *Georgius*, *Georgi*, names of men; *Lārius*, *Lāri*; *Mincius*, *Minci*, names of lakes. *Filius*, a son, also hath *fili*: *gēnius*, one's guardian angel, *geni*; and *deus*, a god, hath *deus*, in the voc.

in the plural more frequently *dii* and *dīs*, than *dēi* and *dēs*. *Meus*, my, an adjective pronoun, hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus* in the vocative.

Other nouns in *iu* have *e*; as, *tābellārius*, *tobellarie*, a letter-carrier; *piās*, *pie*, &c. So these epithets, *Dēlius*, *Dēlie*; *Tīryntbius*, *Tīryntbie*; and &c. possessives, *Laertiūs*, *Laertie*; *Saturnius*, *Saturnie*, &c. which are not considered as proper names.

The poets sometimes make the voc. of nouns in *us* like the nom. as, *fluvius*, *Letinus*, for *fluvie*, *Latine*, Virg. This also occurs in prose, but more rarely. Thus, *Audi tu pōpūlus*, for *pōpūle*. Liv i. 24.

The poets also change nouns in *er* unto *us*; as *Evander*, or *Evandrus*, voc. *Evander*, or *Evandre*: So *Meander*, *Leander*, *Tēmber*, *Teucer*, &c. and so anciently *puer* in the voc. had *puēre* from *puērus*.

Note. When the gen. sing. ends in *ii*, the latter *i* is sometimes taken away by the poets, for the sake of quantity; as, *tugūrī*, for *tugurii*; *ingē-nī*, for *ingenii*, &c. And in the gen. plur. we find *deūm*, *libē-ūm*, *fabrum*, *duūmōrūm*, &c. for *dōrum*, *liberorum*, &c. and in poetry, *Teucrūm*, *Graīūm*, *Argivūm*, *Dānaūm*, *Pēlasgūm*, &c. for *Teucrorum*, &c.

GRĒEK NOUNS.

Os and on are Greek terminations; as, *Alphēos*, a river in Greece; *ilian*, the city Troy; and are often changed into *us* and *um*, by the Latins; *Alphēus*, *Ilīum*, which are declined like *dominus* and *regnum*.

Nouns in *eos* or *ēus* are sometimes contracted in the genitive; as *Orpbēus*, gen. *Orpbēi*, *Orpbēi* or *Orpbē*. So *Thesēus*, *Promēthēus*; &c. But nouns in *eus*, when the *eu* is a diphthong, are of the third declension.

Some nouns in *os* have the gen. sing. in *o*; as, *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeō*, or *-ēi*, the name of a man; *Athos*, *Atbo*, or *-i*, a hill in Macedonia: both which are also found in the third decl. thus, nom. *Androgeos*, gen. *Androgeōnis*: So *Atbo* or *Atbon*, *-onis*, &c. Anciently nouns in *os*, in imitation of the Greeks, had the gen. in *u*; as, *Mēnandru*, *Apollodōrū*, for *Mēnandri*, *Apollodori*, Ter.

Nouns in *os* have the acc. in *um* or *on*, as, *Delus* or *Delos*, acc. *Delūm* or *Delon*, the name of an island.

Some neuters have the gen. plur. in *ōn*; as, *Georgīca*, gen. pl. *Georgiōn*, books which treat of husbandry, as, Virgil's *Georgicks*.

THIRD DECLENSION.

There are more nouns of the third declension than of all the other declensions together. The number of its final syllables is not ascertained. Its final letters, are thirteen, *a*, *e*, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *n*, *r*, *s*, *t*, *x*; Of these, eight are peculiar to this declension, namely, *i*, *o*, *y*, *c*, *d*, *l*, *t*, *x*; *a* and *e* are common to it with the first declension; *n* and *r*,

with *

with the second; and *s*, with all the other declensions. *A*, *i*, and *y*, are peculiar to Greek nouns.

The terminations of the different cases are these: nom. sing. *a*, *e*, &c.; gen. *is*; dat. *i*; acc. *em*; voc. *the same with the nominative*; abl. *e*, or *i*: nom. acc. and voc. plur. *es*, *a*, or *ia*; gen. *um*, or *ium*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; thus,

Sermo, <i>speech, msc.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> sermo,	<i>N.</i> sermōnes,
<i>G.</i> sermōnis,	<i>G.</i> sermōnum,
<i>D.</i> sermoni,	<i>D.</i> sermonib⁹,
<i>A.</i> sermonem,	<i>A.</i> sermones,
<i>V.</i> sermo,	<i>V.</i> sermones,
<i>A.</i> sermone.	<i>A.</i> sermonibus.

Rupes, <i>a rock, fem.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> rūpes,	<i>N.</i> rupes,
<i>G.</i> rupis,	<i>G.</i> rupium,
<i>D.</i> rupi,	<i>D.</i> rupibus,
<i>A.</i> rupem,	<i>A.</i> rupes,
<i>V.</i> rupes,	<i>V.</i> rupes,
<i>A.</i> rupe.	<i>A.</i> rupibus.

Lapis, <i>a stone, msc.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> lāpis,	<i>N.</i> lāpides,
<i>G.</i> lapidis,	<i>G.</i> lapidum,
<i>D.</i> lapidi,	<i>D.</i> lapidib⁹,
<i>A.</i> lapidem,	<i>A.</i> lapides,
<i>V.</i> lapis,	<i>V.</i> lapides,
<i>A.</i> lāpide.	<i>A.</i> lapidibus.

Căput, <i>the head, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> căput,	<i>N.</i> capăta,
<i>G.</i> capătis,	<i>G.</i> capitum,
<i>D.</i> capiti,	<i>D.</i> capitib⁹,
<i>A.</i> caput,	<i>A.</i> capita,
<i>V.</i> caput,	<i>V.</i> capita,
<i>A.</i> capite.	<i>A.</i> capitibus.

Sedile, <i>a seat, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> sēdile,	<i>N.</i> sedilia,
<i>G.</i> sedilis,	<i>G.</i> sedilium,
<i>D.</i> sedili,	<i>D.</i> sedilib⁹,
<i>A.</i> sedile,	<i>A.</i> sedilia,
<i>V.</i> sedile,	<i>V.</i> sedilia,
<i>A.</i> sedili.	<i>A.</i> sedilib⁹.

Iter, <i>a journey, neut.</i>	
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
<i>N.</i> iter,	<i>N.</i> itinēra.
<i>G.</i> itinēris,	<i>G.</i> itinerum,
<i>D.</i> itineri,	<i>D.</i> itinērib⁹,
<i>A.</i> iter,	<i>A.</i> itinera,
<i>V.</i> iter,	<i>V.</i> itinera,
<i>A.</i> itinere.	<i>A.</i> itineribus.

Of the GENDER and GENITIVE of Nouns of the Third Declension.

A, *E*, *I*, and *Y*.

I. Nouns in *a*, *e*, *i*, and *y*, are neuter.

Nouns in *a* form the genitive in *atis*; as, *diadēma*, *diadematis*, a crown; *dogma*, *-atis*, an opinion. So,

Ænigma, a riddle. *Diplōma*, a charter. *Poēma*, a poem.

Apōthegma, a short pitiful saying. *Epigramma*, an inscription.

Äroma, sweet spices. *Nūmīsma*, a coin. *Schēma*, a scheme or figure.

Axiōma, a plain truth. *Phasma*, an apparition. *Sōphisma*, a deceitful argument.

Stemnia, a pedigree.	Strätägëma, an artful contrivance.	subjekt to. voritë or speak on.
Stigma, a mark or brand, a disgrace.	Thëma, a theme, a Töreuma a carved vessel.	

Nouns in <i>e</i> change <i>e</i> into <i>is</i> ; as, rëte, retis, a net.	So,	
Ancile, a shield.	Crinäle, a pin for the hair.	Nävälé, a dock or place for shipping.
Aplustre, the flag of a ship.	Cübile, a couch.	Övile, a sheep-fold.
Campestre, a pair of drawers.	Équile, a stable for horses.	Præsépe, a stall; a bee-hive.
Cochleäre, a spoon.	Läqueäre, a ceiled roof.	Sécäle, rye.
Coutläve, a room.	Mantile, a towel.	Süle, a cow-cote.
	Mönile, a necklace.	Tibiäle, a stocking.

Nouns in *i* are generally indeclinable ; as, gummi, gum ; zingibéri, ginger : but some Greek nouns add *itis* ; as, hydromeli, hydromelitis, water and honey sodden together, mead.

Nouns in *y* add *os* ; as, moly, molyos, an herb ; misy, -yos, vitriol.

O.

2. Nouns in *o* are masculine, and form the genitive in *ōnis* ; as,

Sermo, sermōnis, speech ; draco, dräcōnis, a dragon.—So,	Pēro, a kind of shoe.
Ägäso, a borse-keeper.	Præco, a common crier.
Äquollo, the north wind.	Prædo, a robber.
Arräbo, an earnest-penny, a pledge.	Pulmo, the lungs.
Bälattro, a pitiful fellow.	Pūlio, a little child.
Bambälio, a flutterer.	Salmo, a salmon.
Bäro, a blockhead.	Sannio, a buffoon.
Bübo, an owl.	Säpo, soap.
Büfo, a toad.	Slpho, a pipe or tube.
Cälo, a soldier's slave.	Spädo, an eunuch.
Cäno, a capon.	Stölo, a shoot or scion.
Carbo, a coal.	Sträbo, a goggle-eyed person.
Cupo, an innkeeper.	Temo, the pole or draught-tree.
Cerdo, a cobler, or one who follows a mean trade.	Tiro, a raw soldier.
Cimflo, a frizler of hair.	Umbo, the boss of a shield.
Crabro, a wasp, or hornet.	Üpilio, a shepherd.
	Völo, a volunteer.

Exc. 1. Nouns in <i>io</i> are feminine, when they signify any thing without a body; as,	<i>ratio</i> , <i>rationis</i> , reason.	—So,
Captio, <i>a quirk</i> .	Perduellio, <i>treason</i> .	Sectio, <i>the confiscation</i>
Cautio, <i>caution, care</i> .	Portio, <i>a part</i> .	<i>or forfeiture of one's goods</i> .
Concio, <i>an assembly, a speech</i> .	Potio, <i>drink</i> .	
Cessio, <i>a yielding</i> .	Pruditio, <i>treachery</i> .	Seditio, <i>a mutiny</i> .
Dictio, <i>a word</i> .	Proscriptio, <i>a proscription, ordering citizens to be slain, and confiscating their effects</i> .	Sellio, <i>a fitting</i> .
Deditio, <i>a surrender</i> .	Quaestio, <i>an enquiry</i> .	Statio, <i>a station</i> .
Lection, <i>a lesson</i> .	Ribellio, <i>rebellion</i> .	Suspicio, <i>mistrust</i> .
Legio, <i>a legion, a body of men</i> .	Regio, <i>a country</i> .	Titillatio, <i>a tickling</i> .
Mentio, <i>mention</i> .	Relatio, <i>a telling</i> .	Translatio, <i>a transfer</i> .
Notio, <i>a notion or idea</i> .	Religio, <i>religion</i> .	Usucapio, <i>the enjoyment of a thing by prescription</i> .
Opinio, <i>an opinion</i> .	Remissio, <i>a slackening</i> .	Vacatio, <i>freedom from labour, &c.</i>
Optio, <i>a choice</i> .	Sanctio, <i>a confirmation</i> .	Visio, <i>an apparition</i> .
Oratio, <i>a speech</i> .		
Penso, <i>a payment</i> .		

But when they mark any thing which has a body, or signify numbers, they are masculine; as,

Curculio, <i>the threat-</i>	<i>Scipio, a staff</i> .	Unio, <i>a pearl</i> .
pipe, <i>the weasand</i> .	<i>Scorpio, a scorpion</i> .	Vespertilio, <i>a bat</i> .
Papilio, <i>a butterfly</i> .	<i>Septentrio, the north</i> .	Ternio, <i>the number three</i> .
Pugio, <i>a dagger</i> .	<i>Stellio, a lizard</i> .	Quaternio, <i>— four</i> .
Pusio, <i>a little child</i> .	<i>Titio, a firebrand</i> .	Senio, <i>— six</i> .

Exc. 2. Nouns in *do* and *go* are feminine, and have the genitive in *inis*; as, *arundo*, *arunacnis*, a reed; *imago*, *imaginis*, an image.—So,

Aerugo, <i>rust, (of brass.)</i>	<i>Hirundo, a swallow</i> .	Sartago, <i>a frying-pan</i> .
Caligo, <i>darkness</i> .	<i>Intercapido, a space between</i> .	Scaturigo, <i>a spring</i> .
Cartilago, <i>a gristle</i> .	<i>Lanugo, down</i> .	Testudo, <i>a tortoise</i> .
Crepido, <i>a creek, a bank</i> .	<i>Lentigo, a pimple</i> .	Torpido, <i>a numbness</i> .
Farrago, <i>a mixture</i> .	<i>Origo, an origin</i> .	Ulo, <i>the natural moisture of the earth</i> .
Ferrugo, <i>rust, (of iron.)</i>	<i>Porrigo, scurf, or scales in the head; dandruff</i> .	Valento, <i>health</i> .
Formido, <i>fear</i> .	<i>Prapago, a lineage</i> .	Vertigo, <i>a dizziness</i> .
Fuligo, <i>soot</i> .	<i>Rubigo, rust, mildew</i> .	Vrgo, <i>a virgin</i> .
Grando, <i>bail</i> .		Vorago, <i>a gulf</i> .
Hirudo, <i>a horse-leech</i> .		

But the following are masculine;

Cardo, -inis, <i>a bine</i> ;	Margo, -inis, <i>the brink of a river</i> ;
Cudo, -onis, <i>a leather cap</i> .	also fem.
Harpago, -onis, <i>a drag</i> .	Ordo, -inis, <i>order</i> .
Ligo, -onis, <i>a spade</i> .	Tendo, -inis, <i>a tendon</i> .
Cupido, <i>desire</i> , is often masc. with the poets; but in prose always fem.	Udo, -onis, <i>a linen or woollen sock</i> .

Exc. 3. The following nouns have *inis*,

Āpollo, -*inis*, *the god Apollo*. *Nēmo*, -*inis*, m. or f. *no body*.
Hōmo, -*inis*, *a man or woman*. *Turbo*, -*inis*, m. *a whirlwind*.

Cāro, *flesh*, fem. has *carnis*: *Ānis*, masc. the name of a river, *Aniēnis*: *Nerio*, *Nerienis*, the wife of the god Mars; from the obsolete nominatives *Anien*, *Nerien*. *Turbo*, the name of a man, has *ōnis*.

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *o* are feminine, and have *us* in the genitive, and *o* in the other cases singular; as, *Dido*, the name of a woman; genit. *Didōs*; dat. *Didō*, &c. Sometimes they are declined regularly; thus, *Dido*, *Didōnis*: *fo ēcho*, -*ūs*, f. the resounding of the voice from a rock or wood; *Argo*, -*ūs*, the name of a ship; *hālo*, -*onis*, f. a circle about the sun or moon.

C, D, L.

3. Nouns in *c* and *l* are neuter, and form the genitive by adding *is*; as,

Ānimāl, *animālis*, a living creature; *tōral*, -*ālis*, a bed-cover; *hālc*, *halēcis*, a kind of pickle.—So,
Cervīcal, a bolster. *Mīnerval*, entry-money. *Pūteal*, a well cover.
Cūbītal, a cushion. *Mīnūtal*, minced meat. *Vēctīgal*, a tax.
 Except. *Consul*, -*ūlis*, m. a *consul*. *Mūgil*, *Ilis*, m. a mullet-fish.
Fel, *felli*, n. *gall*. *Sal*, *sīlis*, m. or n. *salt*.
Lac, *lactis*, n. *milk*. *Sālos*, -*ium*, pl. m. *witty sayings*.
Mel, *mellis*, n. *honey*. *Sol*, *sōlis*, m. *the sun*.

D is the termination only of a few proper names, which form the genitive by adding *is*; as, *Dāvid*, *Davīdis*.

N.

4. Nouns in *n* are masculine, and add *is* in the genitive; as,

Cānon, -*ōnis*, a rule. *Phȳsiognōmon*, -*ōnis*, one who
Dāemon, -*ōnis*, a spirit. *guesſes at the dispositions of men*
Delphin, -*inis*, a dolphin. *from the face*.
Gnōmon, -*ōnis*, the cock of a dial. *Ren*, *rēnis*, the reins.
Hȳmen, -*ēnis*, the god of marriage. *Splen*, *splēnis*, the spleen.
Lien, -*ēnis*, the milt. *Sȳren*, -*ēnis*, f. a Syren.
Pāean, -*ānis*, a song. *Tiran*, -*ānis*, the sun.

Exc. 1. Nouns in *men* are neuter, and make their genitive in *īnis*; as *flūmen*, *fluminis* a river.—So,

Abdōmen, the paunch. *Agmen*, an army on *Āūmen*, alum.
Ācūmen, sharpness. march. *Bitūmen*, a kind of clay.
Cācūmen,

Cäcümen, <i>the top.</i>	Germen, <i>a sprout.</i>	Sagmen, <i>verbain, an herb.</i>
Carmen, <i>a song, a poem.</i>	Grämen, <i>grass.</i>	
Cognömen, <i>a surname.</i>	Lögümen, <i>alt kind of pulse.</i>	Sëmen, <i>a seed.</i>
Cölümen, <i>a support.</i>	Lümen, <i>light.</i>	Spécimen, <i>a proof.</i>
Crimen, <i>a crime.</i>	Nömen, <i>a name.</i>	Stämen, <i>the warp.</i>
Discrimen, <i>a difference.</i>	Nämen, <i>the deity.</i>	Subtemen, <i>the woof.</i>
Exämen, <i>a swarm of bees.</i>	Ömen, <i>a presage.</i>	Tegmen, <i>a covering.</i>
Fötämen, <i>a bole.</i>	Pütämen, <i>a nut-shell.</i>	Vimen, <i>a twig.</i>
		Völümen, <i>a folding.</i>

The following nouns are likewise neuter :

Glüen, -Inis, <i>glue.</i>	Inguen, -inis, <i>the grain.</i>
Unguen, -Inis, <i>ment.</i>	Pollen, -Inis, <i>fine flour.</i>

Exc. 2. The following masculines have *inis*; *peden*, a comb; *tubicen*, a trumpeter; *tibicen*, a piper; and *oscen*, v. *oscinis*, sc. *avis*, f. a bird, which foreboded by singing.

Exc. 3. The following nouns are feminine: *Sindon*, -*inis*, fine linen; *äedon*, -*inis*, a nightingale; *Halcyon*, -*inis*, a bird called the King's fisher; *icon*, -*inis*, an image.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have *ontis*; as, *Laömädon*, -*ontis*, a king of Troy. So *Achäron*, *Chamäleon*, *Phaëthon*, *Chäron*, &c.

AR and UR.

5. Nouns in *ar* and *ur* are neuter, and add *is* to form the genitive; as,

<i>Calcar</i> , <i>calcäris</i> , a spur; <i>murmur</i> , <i>murmäris</i> , a noise.—So,	
<i>Gurtur</i> , - <i>üris</i> , <i>the throat.</i>	<i>Neðtar</i> , - <i>ärti</i> , <i>drink of the gods.</i>
<i>Jübär</i> , - <i>äris</i> , <i>a sun-beam.</i>	<i>Pulvinar</i> , - <i>äris</i> , <i>a pillow.</i>
<i>Läcüär</i> , - <i>äris</i> , <i>a ceiling.</i>	<i>Sulphur</i> , - <i>üris</i> , <i>sulphur.</i>
Except. <i>ëbur</i> , - <i>öris</i> , n. <i>ivory.</i>	<i>Jécur</i> , - <i>öris</i> , or <i>jecinöris</i> , n. <i>the liver.</i>
<i>Fat</i> , <i>farris</i> , n. <i>corn.</i>	<i>Röbur</i> , - <i>öris</i> , n. <i>strength.</i>
<i>Fémur</i> , - <i>öris</i> , n. <i>the thigh.</i>	<i>Sälar</i> , - <i>äris</i> , m. <i>a trout.</i>
<i>Furfur</i> , - <i>üris</i> , m. <i>bran.</i>	<i>Turtur</i> , - <i>äris</i> , m. <i>a turtle-dove.</i>
<i>Fur</i> , <i>füris</i> , m. <i>a thief.</i>	<i>Vultur</i> , - <i>üris</i> , m. <i>a vulture.</i>
<i>Hëpar</i> , - <i>äris</i> , or - <i>ätos</i> , n. <i>the liver.</i>	

ER and OR.

6. Nouns in *er* and *or* are masculine, and from the genitive by adding *is*; as,

<i>Anser</i> , <i>ansëris</i> , a goose or gander; <i>agger</i> , - <i>ëris</i> , a rampart; <i>äer</i> , - <i>ëris</i> , the air; <i>carcer</i> , - <i>ëris</i> , a prison; <i>affer</i> , - <i>ëris</i> , & <i>affis</i> , - <i>is</i> , a plank; <i>dölor</i> , - <i>öris</i> , pain; <i>cölor</i> , - <i>öris</i> , a colour.—So,	
---	--

Actōr, a dōr, a pleader.	Ödōr, ȫ-os, a smell.	Söpor, sleep.
Crēdōr, he that trusts or lends.	Ölōr, a spear.	Splendor, brightness.
Cruor, gore.	Pædōr, filib.	Sponsor, a surety.
Dēhōr, a dōr.	Patōr, a shepherd.	Squālōr, filibiness.
Fætōr, an ill smell.	Pratōr, a commander.	Stūpōr, dulness.
Hōnōr, honour.	Phōtōr, flame.	Sūtōr, a sewer.
Lēctor, a reader.	Rūtōr, blushing.	Tēpōr, warmth.
Licētor, an officer among the Romans who attended the magistrates.	Rūnōr, a report.	Terror, dread.
Livōr, paleness, malice.	Sāpōr, a taste.	Tīmar, fear.
Nidōr, a strong smell.	Sartōr, a cobler or tailor.	Tonōr, a borer.
Rbētor, a rhetorician, has rbētōris, callor, a beaver, ȫris.	Sātōr, a sewer, a fa-ther.	Tūtōr, a guardian.
		Vāpor, a vapour.
		Vēnātōr, a hunter.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are neuter :

Äcer, -ēris, a maple tree.	Marmōr, -ōris, marble.
Ädōr, ȫris, fire wheat.	Päpäver, -ēris, poppy.
Äequor, -ōris, a plain, the sea.	Pīper, -ēris, pepper.
Cälvār, -ēris, a dead carcass.	Spinther, -ēris, a closp.
Cicer, -ēris, vetches.	Tūber, -ēris, a swelling.
Cor, cordis, the heart.	Über, -ēris, a pop, or fatness.
Iter, itinēris, a journey.	Ver, veris, the spring.

Arbor, -ōris, a tree, is fem. Tuber, -ēris, the fruit of the tuber tree, is masc, but when put for the tree, fem.

Exc. 2. Nouns in ber have bris in the genitive ; as, hic imber, imbris, a shower. So Insüber, Oðöber, &c.

Nouns in ter have tris ; as venter, ventris, the belly ; päter, patris, a father ; frāter, tris, a brother ; accīpiter, -tris, a hawk ; but crāter, a cup, has crāteris ; sōter, -ēris, a saviour ; lāter, a tile, latēris ; Jūpiter, the chief of the Heathen gods, has Jōvis ; linter, -tris, a little boat, is masc. or fem.

A.S.

7. Nouns in as are feminine, and have the genitive in ätis ; as, ätas, ätatis, an age.—So,

Äftas, the summer.	Simultas, a feud, a grudge.	Vēritas, truth.
Piētas, piety.	Tempelias, a time, a temp̄.f.	Vōluntas, will.
Pōtestas, power.	Übertas, fertility.	Vōluptas, pleasure.
Prōbitas, probity.		Änas, a duck, bas.
Sätiētas, a glut or disg. gift.		änäatis.

Except. I. As, assis, m. a piece of money, or any thing which may be divided into twelve parts.

Mas, m.-äris, m. a male. Vas, vädis, m. a surety. Vas, väsis, n. a vessel.

Nett.

Note. All the parts of *as* are likewise masculine, except *uncia*, an ounce, fem.; as *sextans*, 2 ounces; *quadrans*, 3; *triens*, 4; *quinquans*, 5; *semis*, 6; *septuans*, 7; *bit*, 8; *dodrans*, 9; *duextans*, or *décunx*, 10; *deunx*, 11 ounces.

Exc. 2. Of Greek nouns in *as*, some are masculine; some feminine; some neuter. Those that are masculine have *antis* in the genit. as, *gigas*, *gigantis*, a giant; *ādāmas*, *-antis*, an adamant; *ēlēphas*, *-antis*, an elephant. Those that are feminine have *ādis*, or *ādos*; as, *lampas*, *lampādis*, or *lampādos*, a lamp; *drōmas*, *-ādis*, f. a dromedary: likewise *Arcas*, an Arcadian, though masculine, has *Ar-ādis*, or *-ados*. Those that are neuter have *ātis*; as, *bū-čeras*, *-ātis*, an herb; *artocreas*, *-ātis*, a pie.

E S.

8. Nouns in *es* are feminine, and in the genitive change *es* into *is*; as,

<i>rūpes</i> , <i>rupis</i> , a rock;	<i>nūbes</i> , <i>nubis</i> , a cloud.	— So,
<i>Āedes</i> , or <i>-is</i> , a temple;	<i>Lues</i> , a plague.	<i>Āēpes</i> , a hedge.
plur. a house.	<i>Mōles</i> , a heap.	<i>Sōbōles</i> , an offspring.
<i>Cautēs</i> , a rugged rock.	<i>Nātes</i> , the buttock.	<i>Strāges</i> , a slaughter.
<i>Clādes</i> , an overbrow, destruction.	<i>Pālumbes</i> , m. or f. a pigeon.	<i>Strūes</i> , a heap.
<i>Crātes</i> , a burdle.	<i>Prōles</i> , an offspring.	<i>Sūdes</i> , a flake.
<i>Fāmes</i> , hunger.	<i>Pūbes</i> , youth.	<i>Tābes</i> , a consumption.
<i>Fides</i> , a fiddle.		<i>Vulpes</i> , a fox.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and most of them likewise excepted in the formation of the genitive:

<i>Ales</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a bird.	<i>Palmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a vine-branch.
<i>Āmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a fowler's staff.	<i>Pāries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a wall.
<i>Āries</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a ram.	<i>Pes</i> , <i>pēdis</i> , the foot.
<i>Bes</i> , <i>beffis</i> , two thirds of a pound.	<i>Pēdes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a footman.
<i>Cespes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a turf.	<i>Poples</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , the ham of the leg.
<i>Ēques</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a horseman.	<i>Prāses</i> , <i>-īdis</i> , a president.
<i>Fōmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , fuel.	<i>Sātelles</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a life-guard.
<i>Gurges</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a whirlpool.	<i>Stīpes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , the flock of a tree.
<i>Hēres</i> , <i>-ēdis</i> , an heir.	<i>Termes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , an olive branch.
<i>Indīges</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , a man deified.	<i>Trāmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a path.
<i>Interpres</i> , <i>-ētis</i> , an interpreter.	<i>Vēles</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a light-armed soldier.
<i>Līmes</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a limit or bound.	<i>Vātēs</i> , <i>vatis</i> , a prophet.
<i>Miles</i> , <i>-ītis</i> , a soldier.	<i>Verres</i> , <i>verris</i> , a boar-pig.
<i>Obses</i> , <i>-īdis</i> , a hostage.	

But *ales*, *miles*, *beres*, *interprets*, *obses*, and *vates*, are also used in the feminine.

Exc.

Exc. 2. The following feminines are excepted in the formation of the genitive:

Ābies, ētis, a fir-tree.

Cērēs, -ēris, the goddess of corn.

Mērcēs, -ēdis, a reward, hire.

Mērgēs, -ētis, a handful of corn.

Quīes, -ētis, rest.

Rēquies, -ētis; or *requiēi*, (of the fifth declension), rest.

Sēges, -ētis, growing corn.

Tēges, -ēris, a mat or coverlet.

Tūdes, -is, or -ētis, a bannier.

To these add the following adjectives.

Āles, -ētis, swift.

Bīpes, -ēdis, two-footed.

Quadrūpēs, -ēdis, four-footed.

Desēs, -ēdis, flat-faced.

Dīves, -ētis, rich.

Hēbes, -ētis, dull.

Perpētua, -ētis, perpetual.

Prēpēs, -ētis, swift-winged.

Rēfēs, -ēdis, idle.

Sōfēs, -ētis, safe.

Sūpēstēs, -ētis, surviving.

Tērēs, -ētis, round and long, smooth.

Lōcuplēs, -ētis, rich.

Manfēs, -ētis, gentle.

Exc. 3. Greek nouns in *es* are commonly masculine; as *hīc ācīnācēs*, -is, a Persian sword, a scimitar; but some are neuter; as, *hoc cācōēthēs*, an evil custom, *hippōmānēs*, a kind of poison which grows in the forehead of a foal; *pānācēs*, the herb all-heal; *nēpēnēthēs*, the herb kill-grief. Dissyllables, and the monosyllable *Cres*, a Cretan, have *ētis* in the genitive, as, *hic magnēs*, *magnētis*, a load-stone; *tāpēs* -ētis, tapestry; *lēbes* -ētis, a cauldron. The rest follow the general rule. Some proper nouns have either *ētis* or *is*; as, *Dāres*, *Darētis*, or *Daris*; which is also sometimes of the first declension; *Achilles*, has *Achillēs*; or *Achillē*, contracted for *Achillēi* or *Achillei*, of the second decl. from *Achillēus*: So *ūlyssēs*, *Pērīcles*, *Verres*, *Aris-tōtēles*, &c.

I S.

9. Nouns in *is* are feminine, and have their genitive the same with the nominative; as, *aurīs*, *auris*, the ear; *āvīs*, *avis*, a bird.—So,

Āpis, a bee.

Bīlis, the gall, anger.

Clāfīs, a fleet.

Fēlis, a cat.

Fōri, a door; *ostēnē* plur. *fores*, -īum.

Mēlli, a bee-vee or crop.

Nāris, the nostril.

Neptīs, a niece.

ōvīs, a sheep.

Pellīs, a skin.

Pētīs, a plague.

Rātīs, a raft.

Rūdis, a red.

Vallīs, a valley.

Vētīs, a garment.

Vītīs, a vine.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine, and form the genitive according to the general rule:

Axis

Axis, axis, an axle-tree.
Äquālis, a water-pot, an ewer.

Collis, a beaten road.

Caulis, the stalk of an herb.

Collis, a hill.

Cenchrīs, a kind of serpent.

Ensis, a sword.

Fascis, a bundle.

Fēciālis, a herald.

Follis, a pair of bellows.

Fustis, a stoff.

Menis, a month.

Mūgilis, or -il a mullet fish. [world.

Orbis, a circle, the

Patruēlis, a cousin-german.

Pifcis, a fib.

Postis, a post.

Södālis, a companion.

Torris, a fire-brand.

Unguis, the nail.

Vectis, a lever.

Vermis, a worm.

To these add Latin nouns in *nis*; *as*, *pānis*, bread; *erīnis*, the hair; *ignis*, fire; *fūnis*, a rope, &c. But Greek nouns in *nis* are feminine, and have the genitive in *īdis*; *as*, *týrannīs*, *týrannīdis*, tyranny.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are also masculine, but form their genitive differently:

Cinīs, -ēris, *abes*.

Cūcūmis, -is, or -ēris, a cucumber.

Dis, dītis, the god of riches, or rich, an adj.

Glīs, glīris, a dormouse, a rat.

Impūbis, or impūbes, -is or -ēris, *not marriageable*.

Lāpis, -īdis, a stone.

Pūbis or pūbes, -is, or oftener -ēris, *marriageable*.

Pulvis, -ēris, dust.

Quiris, -īris, a Roman.

Samnis, -ītis, a Samnite.

Sanguis, -īnis, blood.

Sēmis, -īllis, the half of any thing.

Vōmis, or -er, -ēris, a ploughshare.

Publis and *cinis* are sometimes feminine. *Semis* is also sometimes neuter, and then it is indeclinable. *Publis* and *impubis* are properly adjectives, thus, *Puberibus caulem foliis*, a stalk with downy leaves, *Virg. Aēn. xii. 413.* *Impube corpus*, the body of a boy not having yet got the down (*pubes, -is, f.*) of youth, *Horat. epod. 5. 13.* *Exsanguis*, bloodless, an adj. has *exsanguis* in the gen.

Exc. 3. The following are either masc. or feminine, and form the genitive according to the general rule.

Amnis, a river.

Anguis, a snake.

Cānālis, a conduit-pipe.

Clūnis, the buttock.

Corbis, a bosome.

Finis, the end: *fines*, the boundaries of a field, or territories, is always masc.

Scrōbis, or scrobs a ditch.

Torquis, a chain.

Exc. 4. These feminines have *īdis*: *Caffis*, -īdis, a helmet; *cuspis*, -īdis, the point of a spear; *capis*, -īdis, a kind of cup *prōmulgis*, -īdis, a kind of drink, metheglin. *Līs*, strife, f. has *ītis*.

Exc. 5. Greek nouns in *is* are generally feminine, and form the genitive variously: Some have *eos* or *ios*; *as*, *hērēsis*, -eos, or -ios, or -is, a heresy; *so*, *bāsis*, f. the foot of a pillar; *phrāsis*, a phrase; *phthīsis*, a consumption: *poēsis*, poetry: *metrōpōlis*, a chief city, &c. Some have *īdis*, or

īdos ; as, *Pāris*, -īdis, or -īdos, the name of a man ; *aspis*, -īdis, f. an asp ; *ephēmēris*, -īdis, f. a day-book ; *īris*, -īdis, f. the rainbow ; *pyxis*, -īdis, f. a box. So, *Ēgis*, the shield of Pallas ; *canthāris*, a sort of fly ; *pēriscēlis*, a garter ; *proboscis*, an elephant's trunk ; *pȳramis*, a pyramid ; and *tigris*, a tiger, -īdis, seldom *tigris* : all fem. Part have īdis ; as, *Psōphis*, -īdis, the name of a city : others have īnis ; as, *Ēleūsis*, -īnis, the name of a city : and some have īntis ; as, *Sīmois*, *Simoentis*, the name of a river. *Chāris*, one of the graces, has, *Chāritis*.

O S.

10. Nouns in *os* are masculine, and have the genitive in *ōtis* ; as,

nēpos, -ōtis, a grandchild ; *sacerdos*, -ōtis, a priest, also fem.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine :

Arbos, or -or, -ōris a tree.

Eos, ēōis, the morning.

Cos, cōtis, a *wife*.

Glos, glōris, the *husband's sister*, or

Dos, dōtis, a *dowry*.

brotber's wife.

Exc. 2. The following masculines are excepted in the genitive :

Flos, flōris, a *flower*.

Custos, -ōdis, a *keeper* ; also fem.

Hōnos, or -or, -ōris, *honour*.

Hēros, herōis, a *hero*.

Lābos, or -or, -ōris, *labour*.

Mīnos, -ōis, a *king of Crete*.

Lēpos, or -er, -ōris, *quit*.

Tros, Trōis, a *Trojan*.

Mos, mōris, a *custom*.

Bos, bōvis, m. or f. an *ox* or *cow*.

Ros, rōris, *dew*.

Exc. 3. *Os*, offis, a bone ; and *ōs*, oris, the mouth, are neuter.

Exc. 4. Some Greek nouns have -ōis ; as *hēros*, -ōis, a hero, or great man : So *Mīnos*, a king of Crete ; *Tros*, a Trojan ; *thōs*, a kind of wolf.

U S.

11. Nouns in *us* are neuter, and have their genitive in *ōris* ; as,

pečtus, pečtōris, the *breast* ; *tempus*, temporis, *time*. So,

Cornus, a *body*.

Frigus, *cold*.

Pēnus, *provisions*.

Dēcūs, *honour*.

Littus, a *shore*.

Pignus, a *pledge*.

Dēdēcūs, *disgrace*.

Nēmus, a *grove*.

Stercus, *dung*.

Fāčinūs, a *great action*.

Pēčus, *cattle*.

Tergus, a *bide*.

Fēnus, *usury*.

Exc. 1.

Exc. 1. The following neuters have *ēris*.

Ācus, <i>ēbiff</i> .	Mūnu, <i>a gift, or office.</i>	Scēlūs, <i>a crime.</i>
Fūnus, <i>a funeral.</i>	Ölus, <i>pe-berbs.</i>	Sidus, <i>a star.</i>
Fœdus, <i>a covenant.</i>	Önus, <i>a burden.</i>	Vellus, <i>a fleece of wool.</i>
Génus, <i>a kind, or kin- dred.</i>	Öpus, <i>a work.</i>	Viscus, <i>an entrail.</i>
Glōmus, <i>a clew.</i>	Pondus, <i>a weight.</i>	Ulcus, <i>a bille.</i>
Lātus, <i>the side.</i>	Rūdus, <i>rubbish.</i>	Vulnus, <i>a wound.</i>

Thus, *acēris, funēris, &c.* *Glōmus*, a clew, is sometimes masculine, and has *glōmi*, of the second declension. *Vēnus*, the goddess of love, and *vēnus*, old, an adjective, likewise have *ēris*.

Exc. 2. The following nouns are feminine, and form the genitive variously :

Incus, -ūdis, <i>an anvil.</i>	Jūventus, -ūtis, <i>youth.</i>
Pālus, -ūdis, <i>a pool or marsh.</i>	Sālus, -ūtis, <i>safety.</i>
Pē. us (<i>not used</i>), -ūdis, <i>a sheep.</i>	Sēnēctus, -ūtis, <i>old age.</i>
Subīcus, -ūdis, <i>a dove-tail.</i>	Servītus, -ūtis, <i>slavery.</i>
Teīlus, -ūtis, <i>the earth, or goddess of the earth.</i>	Virtus, -ūtis, <i>virtue.</i>
<i>Intercus</i> is properly an adjective, having <i>aqua</i> understood.	
<i>Intercus</i> , -ūtis, <i>an hydrophsy.</i>	

Exc. 3. Monosyllables of the neuter gender have *ūris* in the genitive ; as,

Crus, crūris, <i>the leg.</i>	Rus, rūris, <i>the country.</i>
Jus, jūris, <i>law or right; also broth.</i>	Thus, thūris, <i>frankincense.</i>
Pus pūris, <i>the corrupt matter of any fore.</i>	So Mus, mūris, <i>masc. a mouse.</i>

Ligur, or -ūr, a Ligurian, has *Ligūris*; *lēpus*, *masc. a hare, lēpō-
ris*; *fūs*, *masc. or fem. a swine, fūs*; *grūs*, *masc. or fem. a crane, grūs.*

OEdipus, the name of a man, has *OEdipōdis*; sometimes it is of the second declension, and has *OEdīpi*. The compounds of *pūs* have *ōdis*; as, *tripūs*, *masc. a tripod, tripōdis*; but *lāgōpus*, -ōdis, *a kind of bird, or the herb hares-foot, is fem.* Names of cities have *untis*; as, *Trā-
pōzus, Trapezuntis*; *ōpus*, *Opunitis.*

TS.

12. Nouns in *ys* are all borrowed from the Greek, and are for the most part feminine. In the genitive, they have sometimes *yis* or *yo*; as, *hæc cħēlys, cħelyis, or -yis*, *a harp.* *Cōpys, Cōpyis, or -yis*, *the name of a man:* sometimes they have *ȳdis*, or *ȳdos*; as, *hæc cħlamȳ-
dis or cħlamȳdos*, *a soldier's cloak;* and sometimes *ȳnis*, or *ȳnos*; as, *Trā-
chys, Trachȳnis, or Trachȳnos*, *the name of a town.*

ÆS, AUS, EUS.

13. The nouns ending in *æs* and *aus* are,

Æs, æris, *n. bras, or money.*

Laus, laudis, *f. praise.*

Frau, fraudis, *f. fraud.*

Præs, prædis, *m. or f. a surety.*

Substantives ending in the syllable *eus* are all proper names, and

have the genitive in *eos* ; as, *Orpheus*, *Orpheos* ; *Tērcus*, *Tereos*. But these nouns are also found in the second declension, where *eos* is divided into two syllables : thus, *Orphei*, genit. *Orphei*, or sometimes contracted *Orphei*, and that into *Orpbi*.

S with a consonant before it.

14. Nouns ending in *s* with a consonant before it, are feminine ; and form the genitive by changing the *s* into *is* or *tis* ; as,

trabs, *trābis*, a beam ; *scobs*, *scōbis*, saw-duft ; *hiems*, *hiēmis*, winter ; *gens*, *gentis*, a nation ; *slips*, *slipis*, alms ; *pars*, *partis*, a part ; *sors*, *soritis*, a lot ; *mors*, *-tis*, death.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are masculine :

<i>Chālybs</i> , <i>ȳbis</i> , <i>steel</i> .	<i>Mērops</i> , <i>-ōpis</i> , <i>a wood-pecker</i> .
<i>Dens</i> , <i>tis</i> , <i>a tooth</i> .	<i>Mons</i> , <i>-tis</i> , <i>a mountain</i> .
<i>Fons</i> , <i>-tis</i> , <i>a well</i> .	<i>Pons</i> , <i>-tis</i> , <i>a bridge</i> .
<i>Gryps</i> , <i>grȳphis</i> , <i>a griffin</i> .	<i>Seps</i> , <i>sēpis</i> , <i>a kind of serpent</i> ; but,
<i>Hydrops</i> , <i>-ōpis</i> , <i>the dropsy</i> .	<i>Seps</i> , <i>sēpis</i> , <i>a hedge</i> , is fem.

Exc. 2. The following are either masc. or feminine :

<i>Ideps</i> , <i>adōpis</i> , <i>fatness</i> .	<i>Serpens</i> , <i>-tis</i> , <i>a serpent</i> .
<i>Rūdens</i> , <i>-tis</i> , <i>a cable</i> .	<i>Stirps</i> , <i>stirpis</i> , <i>the root of a tree</i> .
<i>Scrobs</i> , <i>scrōbis</i> , <i>a ditch</i> .	<i>Stirps</i> , <i>an offspring</i> , always fem.

Animans, a living creature, is found in all the genders, but most frequently in the feminine or neuter.

Exc. 3. Polysyllables in *eps* change *e* into *i* ; as, *hæc forceps*, *forcipis*, a pair of tongs ; *princeps*, *-ōpis*, a prince or princess ; *particeps*, *-cipis*, a partaker ; so likewise *cælebs*, *cælibis*, an unmarried man or woman. The compounds of *cāput* have *cipitis* ; as, *præceps*, *præcipitis*, headlong ; *anceps*, *ancipitis*, doubtful ; *biceps*, *-cipitis*, two-headed. *Auceps*, a fowler, has *aucūpis*.

Exc. 4. The following feminines have *dis* :

<i>Frons</i> , <i>frondis</i> , <i>the leaf of a tree</i> .	<i>Juglans</i> , <i>dis</i> , <i>a walnut</i> .
<i>Glans</i> , <i>glandis</i> , <i>an acorn</i> .	<i>Lens</i> , <i>lendis</i> , <i>a nit</i> .

So, *librīpens*, *libripendis*, m. a weigher ; *nefrens*, *-dis*, m. or f. a grice, or pig ; and the compounds of *cor* : as, *concors*, *concordis*, agreeing ; *discorr*, disagreeing ; *vēcors*, mad, &c. But *front*, the forehead, has *frontis*, fem. and *lens*, a kind of pulse, *lentis*, also fem.

Exc. 5. *Iens*, going ; and *quiens*, being able, participles from the verbs *eo* and *queo*, with their compounds, have *euntis* : thus, *iens*, *euntis* ; *quiens*, *queuntis* ; *rēdiens*, *redeuntis* ; *nēquiens*, *nequeuntis* : but *ambiens*, going round, has *ambientis*.

Exc. 6. *Tiryns*, a city in Greece, the birth-place of Hercules, has *Tirynthis*.

T.

15. There is only one noun in *t*, namely, *cāput, capītis*, the head, neuter. In like manner, its compounds, *sinciput, sincipītis*, the forehead; and *occiput, -ītis*, the hind-head.

X.

16. Nouns in *x* are feminine, and in the genitive change *x* into *cis*; as,

vox, vōcis, the voice : *lux, lūcis*, light.—So,

Appendix, -īcis, an ad-	Crux, crūcis, a croſs.	Merx, -cis, merchandiſe
dition; dim. -icūla.	Fæx, -cis, dregs.	Nutrix, -īcis, a nurse.
Arx, arcis, a castle.	Falx, -cis, a ſcythe.	Nux, nūcis, a nut.
Cēlox, -ōcis, a pinnace.	Fax, -ācis, a torch.	Pax, -ācis, peace.
Cervix, -īcis, the neck.	Filix, -īcis, a fern.	Pix, pīcis, pitch.
Cicātrix, -īcis, a ſcar.	Lanx, -īcis, a plate.	Rādix, -īcis, a root.
Cornix, īcis, a crow.	Lōdix, -īcis, a ſheet.	Sālix, -īcis, a willow.
Cōturnix, -īcis, a quail.	Mēretrix, -īcis, a cour-	Vibix, or -ex, -īcis, the
Coxendix, -īcis, the bip.	teſan.	mark of a wound.

Exc. 1. Polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are masculine; as, *thōrāx* -ācis, a breast-plate; *Cōrāx* -ācis, a raven. *Ex* in the genitive is changed into *īcis*; as, *pollex*, -īcis, m. the thumb.—So the following nouns, also masculine,

Āpex, the tuft or tassel	Cīmex, a bug.	Pōdex, the breech,
on the top of a prieſt's	Cōdex, a book.	Poncīflex, a chief prieſt,
cap, the cap itſelf, or	Cūlex, a gnat, a midge.	Pūlex, a flea.
the top of any thing.	Frūtex, a ſhrub.	Rāmex, a rupture.
Artīflex, an artist.	Index, an informer.	Sōrex, a rat.
Carnīflex, an executioner.	Lātex, any liquor.	Vertex, the croton of
Caudex, the trunk of a	Mūrex, a ſhell-fish,	the head.
tree.	purple.	Vortex, a whirlpool.

Vervex, a wedder ſheep, has *vervēcis*; *fanīflex*, a mower of hay, *fanīscēcis*: *Rīflex*, m. -īcis, a vine branch cut off.

To these masculines add,

Cālix, -īcis, a cup.	Ōryx, -ȳcis, a wild goat.
Cālyx, -ȳcis, the bud of a flower.	Phœnix, īcis, a bird ſo called.
Coccyx, ūgis, vel -ȳcis, a cuckow.	Trādūx, -ūcis, a graff, or offeſt
Fornix, -īcis, a vault.	of a vine; also ſcm.

But the following polysyllables in *ax* and *ex* are feminine.

Fornax, -ācis, <i>a furnace.</i>	Smilax, -ācis, <i>the herb rope-weed.</i>
Pānax, -ācis, <i>the herb all-heal.</i>	Cērex, -īcis, <i>a sedge.</i>
Climax, -ācis, <i>a ladder.</i>	Sūpellex, supellec̄tilis, <i>household-furniture.</i>
Forfex, -īcis, <i>a pair of scissars.</i>	
Hālex, -ēcis, <i>a berring.</i>	

Exc. 2. A great many nouns in *x* are either masculine or feminine; as,

Calx, -īcis, <i>the heel, or the end of any thing, the goat; but calix, lime, is always fem.</i>	Līmax, -ācis, <i>a snail.</i>
Cortex, -īcis, <i>the bark of a tree.</i>	Obex, -īcis, <i>a bolt or bar.</i>
Hystrix, -īcis, <i>a porcupine.</i>	Perdix, -īcis, <i>a partridge.</i>
Imbrex, -īcis, <i>a gutter or roof-tile.</i>	Pūmex, -īcis, <i>a pumice-stone.</i>
Lynx, -īcis, <i>an ounce, a beast of a very quick sight.</i>	Rūmex, -īcis, <i>forrel, an herb.</i>
	Sandix, -īcis, <i>a purple colour.</i>
	Silex, -īcis, <i>a flint.</i>
	Vārix, -īcis, <i>a jewel vein.</i>

Exc. 3. The following nouns depart from the general rule in forming the genitive:

Äquilex, -ēgis, <i>a weaver.</i>	Phālanx, -āngis, f. <i>a phalanx.</i>
Conjunx, ex. -ux, -ūgis, <i>a husband or wife.</i>	Rēmex, -īgis, <i>a rower.</i>
Frūx, <i>(not used)</i> , frūgis, f. <i>corn.</i>	Rex, rēgis, <i>a king.</i>
Grex, grēgis, m. or f. <i>a flock.</i>	Nix, nīvis, f. <i>snow.</i>
Lex, legis, f. <i>a law.</i>	Nox, noctis, f. <i>night.</i>
	Sēnēx, sēnis, <i>(an. adj.), old.</i>

Exc. 4. Greek nouns in *x*, both with respect to gender and declension, are as various as Latin nouns: thus, *bombyx*, *bombycis*, a silk-worm, masc. but when it signifies silk, or the yarn spun by the worm, it is feminine; *onyx*, masc. or fem. *onychis*, a precious stone; and so *sardonyx*; *larynx*, *laryngis*, fem. the top of the wind-pipe; *Phryx*, *Phrygīs*, a Phrygian; *sphinx*, -ngis, a fabulous hag; *strix*, -īgis, f. a screechowl; *Styx*, -īgis, f. a river in hell; *Hylax*, -ācis, the name of a dog; *Bibrax*, *Bibratīs*, the name of a town, &c.

DATIVE SINGULAR.

The Dative singular anciently ended also in *e*; as, *Eſu-riente leoni ex ore exculpere prādam*, To pull the prey out of the mouth of a hungry lion, Lucil. *Haret pede pes*, Foot sticks to foot. *Æn.* x. 361. for *efurienti* and *pedi*.

Ex-

EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. The following nouns have the accusative in *im* :

<i>Amulius</i> , f. <i>a master's rule</i> .	<i>Canabis</i> , f. <i>hemp</i> .
<i>Buris</i> , f. <i>the beam of a plough</i> .	<i>Cucumis</i> , m. <i>a cucumber</i> .
<i>Gummis</i> , f. <i>gum</i> .	<i>Sitis</i> , f. <i>thirst</i> .
<i>Mephitis</i> , f. <i>a damp or strong smell</i> .	<i>Tuffis</i> , f. <i>the cough</i> .
<i>Ravis</i> , f. <i>boursiness</i> .	<i>Vis</i> , f. <i>strength</i> .
<i>Sinapis</i> , f. <i>mustard</i> .	

To these add proper names, 1. of cities, and other places; as, *Hispalis*, Seville, a city in Spain; *Syrtis*, a dangerous quicksand on the coast of Libya;—2. of rivers; as, *Tiberis*, the Tiber, which runs past Rome; *Batis*, the Guadalquivir in Spain: *So Athensis*, *A-raris*, *Albis*, *Liris*, &c.—3. Of gods; as, *Anubis*, *Apis*, *Osius*, *Se-roptis*, deities of the Egyptians. But these sometimes make the accusative also in *in*; thus, *Syrtim* or *Syrtin*, *Tiberim* or *-in*, &c.

Exc. 2. Several nouns in *is* have either *em* or *im*; as,

<i>Clavis</i> , f. <i>a key</i> .	<i>Pelvis</i> , f. <i>a basin</i> .	<i>Sécüris</i> , f. <i>an ax</i> .
<i>Cádis</i> , f. <i>the skin</i> .	<i>Puppis</i> , f. <i>the stern of a vessel</i> .	<i>Sémentis</i> , f. <i>a sowing</i> .
<i>Fehris</i> , f. <i>a fever</i> .	<i>a ship</i> .	<i>Strigilis</i> , f. <i>a borse-comb</i> .
<i>Navia</i> , f. <i>a ship</i> .	<i>Reslis</i> , f. <i>a rope</i> .	<i>Turris</i> , f. <i>a tower</i> .

Thus *navem*, or *navim*; *puppem*, or *puppim*, &c. The ancients said *avim*, *aurim*, *ovim*, *peſſim*, *vallim*, *vitim*, &c. which are not to be imitated.

Exc. 3. GREEK NOUNS form their accusative variously:

1. Greek nouns, whose genitive increases in *is* or *es* impure, that is, with a consonant going before, have the accusative in *em* or *a*, as, *lampas*, *lampadis*, or *lampádes*, *lampádem*, or *lampáda*. In like manner, these three, which have *is* pure in the genitive, or *is* with a vowel before it: *Tros*, *Trōis*, *Troem*, and *Trea*, a Trojan; *bēros*, a hero; *Minos*, a king of Crete. The three following have almost always *a*: *Pan*, the god of shepherds; *atber*, the sky; *delpbin*, a dolphin; thus, *Pāna*, *atbera*, *delpbīna*.

2. Masculine Greek nouns in *is*, which have their genitive in *is* or *es* impure, form the accusative in *im* or *in*; sometimes in *idem*, never *ida*, as *Pāris*, *Paridis*; or *Parīdos*; *Parim*, or *Parin*, sometimes *Parīdem*, never *Parīda*.—So *Daphnis*.

3. Feminines in *is*, increasing impurely in the genitive, have commonly *idem* or *ida*, but rarely *im* or *in*; as, *Elis*, *Elīdis* or *Elīdos*, *Elīdem* or *Elīda*; seldom *Elim* or *Elin*; a city in Greece. In like manner, feminines in *ys*, *ȳdos*, have *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *ym* or *yn* in the accusative; as, *iblämys*, *ȳdem*, or *ȳda*, not *iblamyn*, a soldier's cloak.

4. But all Greek nouns in *is* or *ys*, whether masculine or feminine, having *is* or *es* pure in the genitive, form the accusative by changing *s* of the nominative into *m* or *n*; as, *metāmorphōsis*, *-eos*, or *ios*, *metāmorphōsim* or *-in*, a change: *Tētby*, *-yos*, or *-yis*; *Tētbym*, or *-yn*; the name of a goddess.

5. Nouns ending in the diphthong *eis*, have the accusative in *ea*: as, *Tēfēs*, *Tēfēa*; *Tydeus*, *Tydea*.

EXCEPTIONS in the ABLATIVE SINGULAR.

Exc. 1. Neuters in *e*, *al*, and *ar*, have *i* in the ablative ; as, *ſedile*, *ſedili* ; *ānimāl*, *animāli* ; *calcar*, *calcāri*. Except proper names ; as, *Prænſte*, abl. *Prænſte*, the name of a town ; and the following neuters in *ar* :

Far, <i>farre</i> , <i>corn</i>	Nectar, <i>ärē</i> , <i>drink of the gods</i> .
Hēpar, -āte, <i>the liver</i> .	Par, <i>pāre</i> , <i>a match, a pair</i> .
Jūbar, <i>ärē</i> , <i>a sun-beam</i> .	Sal, <i>sāle</i> , <i>salt</i> .

Exc 2. Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, have *i* in the ablative ; as, *vis*, *vim*, *vi* : but *canābis*, *Bætis*, and *tigris*, have *e* or *i*.

Nouns which have *im* or *in* in the accusative, make their ablative in *e* or *i* ; as, *turris*, *turre*, or *turri* ; but *reflis*, a rope ; and *cūtis*, the skin, have *e* only.

Several nouns which have only *em* in the accusative, have *e* or *i* in the ablative ; as, *fēnis*, *ſupellex*, *veſtis*, *pūgil*, a champion ; *mūgil* or *mugilis* ; so, *rus*, *occīput* : Also names of towns, when the question is made by *ubi* ; as *habitāt Cartagīne* or *Cartagīni*, he lives at Carthage. So, *cīvis*, *clāffis*, *fors*, *imber*, *anguis*, *avis*, *poſtis*, *fūſlis*, *amnis*, and *ignis* ; but these have oftener *e*. *Canalis* has only *i*. The most ancient writers made the ablative of many other nouns in *i* ; as, *æſtati*, *cani*, *lapidi*, *ovi*, &c.

Exc. 3. Adjectives used as substantives have commonly the same ablative with the adjectives ; as, *bīpennīs*, -*i*, an halbert ; *mōlāris*, -*i*, a millstone ; *quadrīrēmīs*, -*i*, a ship with four banks of oars. So names of months, *Aprilīs*, -*i* ; *Dēcember*, -*bri*. &c. But *rūdis*, f. a rod given to gladiators when discharged ; *jūvēnis*, a young man, have only *e* ; and likewise nouns ending in *il*, *x*, *ceps*, or *ns* ; as,

Ädōleſcens, <i>a young man</i> .	Princeps, <i>a prince</i> .	Torrens, <i>a brook</i> .
Infans, <i>an infant</i> .	Sēnēx, <i>an old man</i> .	Vigil, <i>a watchman</i> .
Thus, <i>adoleſcente</i> , <i>infante</i> , <i>sene</i> . &c.		

Exc. 4. Nouns in *ys*, which have *ym* in the accusative, make their ablative in *ye* or *y* ; as, *ātys*, *Atye*, or *Aty*, the name of a man.

NOMINATIVE PLURAL.

1. The nominative plural ends in *es*, when the noun is either masculine or feminine ; as, *ſermones*, *rūpes*.

Nouns in *is* and *es* have sometimes in the nominative plural also *eis* or *is*, as, *puppes*, *puppeis*, or *puppis*.

2. Neuters

2. Neuters which have *e* in the ablative singular, have *a* in the nominative plural ; as, *capita*, *itinera* : but those which have *i* in the ablative, make *ia* ; as, *sedilia*, *calcaria*.

GENITIVE PLURAL.

Nouns which in the ablative singular have *i* only, or *e* and *i* together, make the genitive plural in *ium* ; but if the ablative be in *e*, the genitive plural has *um* ; as, *sedile*, *sedilia*, *sedilium* ; *turris*, *turre* or *turri*, *turrium* ; *caput*, *capite*, *capitum*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *as* have *ium*, though their ablative end in *e* ; as, *mas*, a male, *māre*, *marium* ; *vas*, a surety, *vādium* ; but polysyllables have rather *um* ; as, *civitas*, a state or city, *civitātum*, and sometimes *civitatum*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *es* and *is*, which do not increase in the genitive singular, have also *ium* ; as *hostis*, an enemy, *hostium*. So likewise nouns ending in two consonants ; as, *gens*, a nation, *gentium* ; *urbs*, a city, *urbium*.

But the following have *um* : *parens*, *vātes*, *pānis*, *jūvēnis*, and *cānis*.

Exc. 3. The following nouns form the ablative plural in *ium*, though they have *e* only in the ablative singular :

Caro, carnis, t. <i>fl. fb.</i>	Lis, litis, f. <i>strife</i> .
Cohors, -tis, f. a company.	Mus, mūris, m. a mouse.
Cor, cordis, n. the heart.	Nix, nivis, f. snow.
Cus, cotis, f. a bone or whetstone.	Nox, noctis, f. the night.
Dos, dōtis, f. a dowry.	Os, ossis, n. a bone.
Faux, faucis, f. the jaws.	Quiris, -ītis, a Roman.
Glis, glīris, m. a rat.	Samnis, -ītis, m. or f. a Samnite.
Lar, laris, m. a household-god.	Uter, utris, m. a bottle.
Linter, -tris, m. or f. a little boat.	

Thus *Samnitium*, *lintrium*, *littium*, &c. Also the compounds of *uncia* and *as* ; as, *septunx*, seven ounces, *septuncium* ; *bes*, eight ounces, *beffium*. *Bos*, an ox or cow, has *bōum*, and in the dative, *bōbus* or *bōbus*.

Greek nouns have generally *um* ; as, *Mācēdo*, a Macedonian ; *Ārabs*, an Arabian ; *Ēthiōps*, an Ethiopian ; *Mōnōcēros*, an unicorn ; *Lynx*, a beast so called : *Tbrax*, a Thracian : *Macedōnum*, *Arābum*, *Ēthiōpum*, *Monocerōtum*, *Lynēum*, *Thrācum*. But those which have *a* or *is* in the nominative singular, sometimes form the genitive plural in *ōn* ; as *Epigramma*, *epigrammātum*, or *epigrammātōn*, an epigram ; *metamorphosis*, *-iūm*, or *-ēōn*.

Obs. 1. Nouns which want the singular, form the genitive plural as if they were complete ; thus *mānes*, m. souls departed, *mānium* ; *calites*,

m. inhabitants of heaven, *cœlitum*; because they would have had in the sing. *manis* or *manes*, and *caelos*. But names of feasts often vary their declension; as, *Saturnalia*, the feasts of Saturn, *Saturnalium* and *Saturnaliorum*. So, *Bacchanalia*, *Compitalia*, *Terminalia*, &c.

Obs. 2. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, are, by the poets, often contracted into *um*; as *nōcentūm* for *nōcentium*: and sometimes, to increase the number of syllables, a letter is inserted; *ā*, *cālītūm* for *cālītum*. The former of these is said to be done by the figure *syncope*; and the latter by *Epenthesis*.

EXCEPTIONS in the DATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Greek nouns in *a* have commonly *tis* instead of *tibus*; as, *poēma*, a poem, *poematis*, rather than *poematisbus*, from the old nominative *poemātum* of the second decl.

Exc. 2. The poets sometimes form the dative plural of Greek nouns in *si*, or when the next word begins with a vowel, in *sin*; as, *Troāsi* or *Troāsin*, for *Troādibus*, from *Troas*, *Troādis*, a Trojan woman.

EXCEPTIONS in the ACCUSATIVE PLURAL.

Exc. 1. Nouns which have *ium* in the genitive plural, make their accusative plural in *es*, *eis*, or *is*; as, *partes*, *partium*, acc. *partes*, *parteis*, or *partis*.

Exc. 2. If the accusative singular end in *a*, the accusative plural also ends in *as*; as, *lampas*, *lampādem*, or *lampāda*, *lampādes* or *lampādas*. So *Tros*, *Treas*; *heros*, *heroas*; *Æthiops*, *Æthiopas*, &c.

GREEK NOUNS through all the Cases.

Lampas, a lamp, f. *lampādis*, or *-ādos*; *-ādi*, *-ādem*, or *-āda*; *-as*; *-āde*: Plur. *-ādes*; *-ādum*; *-ādibus*; *-ādes*, or *-ādas*; *-ādes*; *-ādibus*.

Troas, f. *Troādis*, or *-ādos*; *-i*; *em* or *a*; *as*; *e*: Pl. *Troades*; *-um*; *ibus*, *si* or *sin*; *es* or *as*; *es*; *ibus*.

Tros, m. *Trois*; *Troi*; *Troem* or *-a*; *Tros*; *Troe*, &c.

Phillis f. *Phillidis* or *-dos*, *di*, *dem*, or *da*; *i* or *is*; *de*.

Paris, m. *Paridis* or *-dos*; *di*; *dem*, *Parim* or *in*; *i*; *de*.

Chlāmys, f. *Chlamydis* or *-ydos*, *ydi*, *ydem* or *yda*, *ys*, *yde*, &c.

Cōpys, m. *Capyis*, or *-yos*; *yi*; *ym* or *yn*; *y*; *ye* or *y*.

Mētāmorphōsis, f. *-is* or *-eos*, *i*, *em* or *in*, *i*, *i*, &c.

Orpheus, m. *-eos*, *ēi* or *ei*, *ea*, *eu*, abl. *eo* of the second decl.

Dido, f. *Didūs* or *Didōnis*, *Dido* or *Didoni*, &c.

FOURTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fourth declension end in *us* and *u*.

Nouns in *us* are masculine; nouns in *u* are neuter, and indeclinable in the singular number.

The terminations of the cases are; nom. sing. *us*; gen. *us*; dat. *ui*; acc. *um*; voc. *like the nom.*; nom. acc. voc. plur. *us* or *ua*; gen. *uum*; dat. and abl. *ibus*; as,

Fructus, fruit, masc.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. fructus,</i>	<i>N. fructus,</i>
<i>G. fructus,</i>	<i>G. fructuum,</i>
<i>D. fructui,</i>	<i>D. fructibus,</i>
<i>A. fructum,</i>	<i>A. fructus,</i>
<i>V. fructus,</i>	<i>V. fructus,</i>
<i>A. fructu.</i>	<i>A. fructibus.</i>

Cornu, a horn, neut.

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. cornu,</i>	<i>N. cornua,</i>
<i>G. cornu,</i>	<i>G. cornuum,</i>
<i>D. cornu,</i>	<i>D. cornibus,</i>
<i>A. cornu,</i>	<i>A. cornua,</i>
<i>V. cornu,</i>	<i>V. cornua,</i>
<i>A. cornu.</i>	<i>A. cornibus.</i>

In like manner decline,

Aditus, an access.

Anfractus, a winding.

Auditus, the sense of bearing. [song.]

Cantus, a singing or

Casus, a fall, an accident or chance.

Cæstus, a gauntlet.

Cæstus, a marriage-girdle.

Cœtus, an assembly.

Cultus, worship, dress.

Currus, a chariot.

Cursus, a race.

Décessus, a departure.

Eventus, an event.

Exercitus, an army.

Exitus, an issue.

Faustus, pride.

Flatus, a blast.

Fletus, weeping.

Fluctus, a wave.

Fœtus, an offspring.

Gelu, ice.

Gemitus, a groan.

Grælus, a step, a degree.

Gustus, the taste.

Habitus, a habit, the state of mind or body.

Hælitus, breath.

—

Haustus, a draught.

Iclus, a stroke.

Impetus, an attack.

Incessus, a sanguine gate.

Lucretus, grief.

Luxus, luxury, riot.

Mētus, fear.

Missus, a throw; a turn or beat in races.

Motus, a motion.

Nexus, servitude for debt.

Nūrus, a daughter-in-

Nūtus, a nod. [law.]

Obtūrus, a look.

Odorātus, the sense of smelling.

Passus, a pace.

Principatus, pre-eminence.

Prōcessus, a progress.

Progressus, an advancement.

Prospectus, a view.

Prōventus, an increase, revenue.

Quæsus, gain.

Questus, a complaint.

Rēditus, a return, an income.

Rictus, a grinning.

Ritus, a rite, a ceremony.

Rīsus, laughter. [ney.]

Ructus, a belching.

Situs, a leap, a foresight.

Sénatus, the senate, the supreme council among the Romans.

Sensus, a sense, feeling, meaning.

Sexus, a sex.

Sinus, a bosom.

Singultus, a sob, the hiccup.

Situs, a situation.

Stātus, a posture.

Socrus, a mother-in-law.

Spiritus, a breathing, spirit.

Successus, success.

Sumptus, expense.

Tactu, the touch.

Tōnitru, thunder.

Transitus, a passage.

Tumultus, an uproar.

Vénatus, hunting.

Vīsus, the sight.

Victus, food.

Vultus, the countenance.

Exe.

Exc. 1. The following nouns are feminine :

Ācus, <i>a needle.</i>	Ficus, <i>a fig.</i>	Porticus, <i>a gallery.</i>
Ānus, <i>an old woman.</i>	Mānus, <i>the hand.</i>	Spēcūs, <i>a den.</i>
Dōmus, <i>a house.</i>	Pēnus, <i>a storehouse.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>

Penus and *specus* are sometimes male. *Ficus*, *penus*, and *domus*, with several others, are also of the second declension. *Caprīcornus*, m. the sign Capricorn, although from *cornu*, is always of the second decl. and so are the compounds of *manus*; *unimānus*, having one hand, *centimānus*, &c. adj. *Domus* is but partly of the second declension; thus,

Dōmus, *a house, fem.*

Sing.	Plur.
Nom. domus,	Nom. domus,
Gen. domūs, or -mi,	Gen. domorum, or -uum,
Dat. domui, or -mo,	Dat. domibus,
Acc. domum,	Acc. domos, or -us,
Voc. domus,	Voc. domus,
Abl. domo.	Abl. domibus,

Note. *Domūs*, in the genit. signifies, of a house; and *domi*, at home, or of home; as, *memineris domi*. Terent. iv. 7. 45.

Exc. 2. The following nouns have *ibus*, in the dative and ablative plural.

Ācus, <i>a needle.</i>	Lācus, <i>a lake.</i>	Spēcūs, <i>a den.</i>
Arcus, <i>a bow.</i>	Partus, <i>a birth.</i>	Tribus, <i>a tribe.</i>
Artus, <i>a joint.</i>	Portus, <i>a barbour.</i>	Vēru, <i>a spit.</i>
Gēnu, <i>the knee.</i>		

Portus, *genu*, and *veru*, have likewise *ibus*; as, *portiōbus* or *portūbus*.

Exc. 3. IESUS, the venerable name of our Saviour, has *um* in the accusative, and *u* in the all other cases.

Nouns of this declension anciently belonged to the third, and were declined like *grus*, *gruis*, a crane; thus *fructus*, *fructuis*, *fructui*, *fructuem*, *fructue*; *fructus*, *fructuum*, *fructibus*, *fructues*, *fructues*, *fructibus*. So that all the cases are contracted, except the dative singular, and genitive plural. In some writers, we still find the genitive singular in *uis*; as, *Ejus anuis causā*, for *anūs*. Terent. Heaut. ii. 3. 46. and in others, the dative in *u*; as, *Rūsferē impetu*, for *impetui*, Cic. Fam. x. 24. *Effe usu sibi*, for *usui*, Ib. xiii. 71. The gen. plur. is sometimes contracted; as, *currūm* for *curruum*.

FIFTH DECLENSION.

Nouns of the fifth declension end in *es*, and are of the feminine gender: as,

Res, *a thing, som.*

Sing.	Plur.	Terminations.
Nom. res,	Nom. res,	es,
Gen. r̄ei,	Gen. r̄erūm,	ēi,
Dat. r̄ei,	Dat. r̄ebūs,	ēi,
Acc. rem,	Acc. res,	em,
Voc. r̄es,	Voc. res,	es,
Abl. r̄e.	Abl. r̄ebūs.	e.

In like manner decline,

Äcīes, <i>the edge of a thing, or an army in order of battle.</i>	Inglūvīes, <i>gluttony.</i>	Stābīes, <i>the scab, or itch.</i>
Mācīes, <i>leanness.</i>	Mātērīes, <i>matter.</i>	Sērīes, <i>an order.</i>
Cārīes, <i>rotteness.</i>	Pernācīes, <i>destruction.</i>	Spēcīes, <i>an appearance.</i>
Cēsāries, <i>the hair.</i>	Prōlūvīes, <i>a looseness.</i>	Sūpēfīcīes, <i>the surface.</i>
Fācīes, <i>the face.</i>	Rābīes, <i>madness.</i>	Tempērīes, <i>temperateness.</i>
Gācīes, <i>ice.</i>	Sānīes, <i>gore.</i>	

Except *dīes*, a day, masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masc. in the plural; and *mērīdīes*, the mid day, or noon, masc.

The poets sometimes make the genitive, and more rarely the dative, in *e*.

The nouns of this declension are few in number, not exceeding fifty, and seem anciently to have been comprehended under the third declension. Most of them want the genitive, dative, and ablative plural, and many the plural altogether.

All nouns of the fifth declension end in *ies*, except three, *fīdes*, faith; *spēs*, hope; *res*, a thing: and all nouns in *ies* are of the fifth, except these four, *äbīes*, a fir-tree; *ärīes*, a ram; *pārīes*, a wall; and *quīes*, rest; which are of the third declension.

IRREGULAR NOUNS.

Irregular nouns may be reduced to three classes, *Variable*, *Defective*, and *Redundant*.

I. VARIABLE NOUNS.

Nouns are variable, either in gender, or declension, or in both.

I. Those which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*, and may be reduced to the following classes:

1. *Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

Avernus, a lake in Campania, bell. Mænælus, a bill in Arcadia.
Dindymus, a bill in Phrygia. Pangæus, a promontory in Thrace.
Tismarus, a bill in Thrace. Tænærus, a promontory in Laconia.
Mæsicus, a bill in Campania, famous for excellent wines. Tartærus, bell.
Täygætus, a bill in Laconia.

Thus, *Averna, Avernum*; *Dindyma, -orūm, &c.* These are thought by some to be properly adjectives, having *mons* understood in the singular, and *juga* or *cacumina*, or the like, in the plural.

2. *Masc. in the sing. and in the plur. masc. and neuter.*

Focuſ, a jest, pl. joci and joca; *lōcus, a place, pl. loci and loca.* When we speak of passages in a book, or topics in discourse, *loci* only is used.

3. *Feminine in the singular, and neuter in the plural :*

Carbæſus, a sail, pl. carbæſa; *Pergamus, the citadel of Troy, pl. Pergama.*

4. *Neuter in the singular, and masculine in the plural :*

Cælum, pl. cæli, heaven; *Elÿſium, pl. Elÿſiū, the Elysian fields;* *Argos, pl. Argi, a city in Greece.*

5. *Neuter in the sing. in the plur. masc. or neuter :*

Raſtrum, a rake, pl. raſtri and raſtra; *frēnum, a bridle, pl. freni and frena.*

6. *Neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural :*

Dēličium, a delight, pl. deliciae; *Epūlum, a banquet, pl. epūla;* *Balneum, a bath, pl. balneæ and balnea.*

II. Nouns which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*; as, *vas, vāſis*, a vessel, plur. *vāſa, vasorum*; *jūgērum, jugēri*, an acre, plur. *jūgēra, jūgērum, jugeribus*, which has likewise sometimes *jugēris* and *jugēre* in the singular, from the obsolete *jugus*, or *juger*.

II. DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

Nouns are defective, either in cases or in number.

Nouns are defective in cases different ways.

1. Some are altogether indeclinable; as, *pondō, a pound or pounds;* *fas, right;* *nēfas, wrong;* *sīnāpi, mustard;* *enāne, the morning;* as *clārum māne, Perf.* *A mane ad vesperam, Plaut.* *Multo mane, &c.*; *cēpe, an onion;* *gauſāpe,*

süpe, a rough coat, &c. ; all of them neuter. We may rank among indeclinable nouns, any word put for a noun; *as*, *velle suum*, for *sua voluntas*, his own inclination, *Perf.* *Istud cras*, for *iste crastinus dies*, that to-morrow. *Mart.* *O magnum Gracorum*, the *Omēga*, or the large O of the Greeks; *Infidus est compositum ex in et fidus*; *infidus* is compounded of *in* and *fidus*. To these add foreign or barbarous names; that is, names which are neither Greek nor Latin, as *Job*, *Elisabet*, *Jerusalem*, &c.

2. Some are used only in one case, and therefore called *mōnoptōta*: as, *inquietus*, want of rest, in the nominative singular; *dīcis*, and *nauci*, in the genit. sing.; thus, *dīcis gratiā*, for form's sake; *res nauci*, a thing of no value; *inficias*, and *incīta* or *incītas*, in the acc. plur.; thus *ire inficias*, to deny; *ad incītas redactus*, reduced to a strait or non-plus; *ingrātiis*, in the abl. plur. in spite of one; and these ablatives singular, *noctu*, in the night-time; *diu*, *interdiu*, in the day-time; *promptu*, in readiness; *nātu*, by birth; *injussu*, without command or leave: *ergō* for the sake, as, *ergo illius*, *Virg.* *Ambāge*, f. with a winding or a tedious story; *Compēde*, m. with a fetter; *Caffe*, m. with a net; *veprem*, m. a briar: Plur. *Ambāges*, -ibus; *compedes*, -ibus; *casses*, -ium; *vepres*, -ium, &c.

3. Some are used in two cases only, and therefore called *dīptōta*; as, *nēcessē* or -um, necessity; *vōlūpe* or *volup*, pleasure; *inflar*, likeness, bigness; *aslu*, a town; *bir*, the palm of the hand; in the nom. and acc. sing.; *vesper*, m. abl. *vespēre* or *vespēri*, the evening; *firemps*, the same all alike, abl. *ſirempse*; *ſpontis*, f. in the genitive, and *ſponte* in the ablative, of its own accord: so *impētis*, m. and *impēte*, force; *verbēris*, n. genit. and *verbēre*, abl. a stripe; in the plural entire; *verbēra*, *verberum*, *verbēribus*, &c. *rēpētundarum*, abl. *repetundis*, sc. *pecuniis*, money unjustly taken in the time of one's office, extortion; *ſuppētia*, nom. pl. *ſuppētias*, in the acc. help; *infēriæ*, *infērias*, sacrificees to the dead.

4. Several nouns are only used in three cases, and therefore called *triptōta*; as, *prēci*, *precem*, *prece*, f. a prayer, from *prex*, which is not used: in the plural it is entire, *preces*, *precum*, *precibūs*, &c. *Fēminis*, gen. from the obsolete *femen*, the thigh; in the dat. and abl. sing.; in the

nom. acc. and voc. plur. *femina*. *Dīca*, a process, acc. sing. *dicam*, pl. *dicas*; *tantundem*, nom. and acc. *tantidem*, genit. even as much. Several nouns in the plural want the genitive, dative, and ablative; as, *biems*, *rus*, *thus*, *mētus*, *mel*, *far*, and most nouns of the fifth declension.

To this class of defective nouns may be added these neutrers, *mēlos*, a song; *mēle*, songs; *ēpos*, a heroic poem; *cācoēthes*, an evil custom; *cēte* whales; *Tempe*, plur. a beautiful vale in Thessaly, &c. used only in the nom. acc. and voc.; also *grātes*, f. thanks.

5. The following nouns want the nominative, and of consequence the vocative, and therefore are called *tetrapōta*: *vīcis*, f. of the place or stead of another; *pēcūdis*, f. of a beast; *fordis*, f. of filth; *dītīōnis*, f. of dominion, power; *ōpis*, f. of help. Of these *pēcūdis* and *fordis* have the plural entire; *dītīōnis* wants it altogether: *vīcis* is not used in the genitive plural; *ōpis* in the plural, generally signifies wealth, or power, seldom help. To these add *nex*, slaughter; *daps*, a dish of meat; and *frux*, corn; hardly used in the nominative singular, but in the plural mostly entire.

6. Some nouns only want one case, and are called *pentapōta*: thus, *os*, the mouth; *lux*, light; *fax*, a torch, together with some others, want the genitive plural. *Chaos*, n. a confused mass, wants the genit. sing. and the plural entirely; dat. sing. *chao*. So *sātias*, i. e. *satietas*, a glut or fill of any thing. *Sītus*, a situation, naftinefs, of the fourth decl. wants the gen. and perhaps the dat. sing. also the gen. dat. and abl. plur.

Of nouns defective in number there are various sorts.

1. Several nouns want the plural, from the nature of the things which they express. Such are the names of virtues and vices, of arts, herbs, metals, liquors, different kinds of corn, most abstract nouns, &c. as, *jūstitia*, justice; *ambītus*, ambition; *aflus*, cunning; *mūsica*, music; *āpium*, parsley; *argentum*, silver; *aurum*, gold; *lac*, milk; *trīticum*, wheat; *bordeum*, barley; *āvēna*, oats; *jūventus*, youth, &c. But of these we find several sometimes used in the plural.

2. The

2. The following masculines are hardly ever found in the plural :

Aér, aéris, *the air.*
 Æther, -éris, *the sky.*
 Fimus, -i, *dung.*
 Hespérus, -i, *the evening star.*
 Limus, -i, *slime.*
 Mēridies, -icē, *mid-day.*
 Mundus, *a woman's ornaments.*
 Muscus, -i, *moss.*

Nēmo, -īnis, *no body.*
 Pēnus, -i, or -ūs, *all manner of provisions.*
 Pontus, -i, *the sea.*
 Pulvis, -ēris, *dust.*
 Sanguis, -īnis, *blood.*
 Sōpor, -ōris, *sleep.*
 Viscus, -i, *bird-lime.*

3. The following feminines are scarcely used in the plural :

Argilla, -æ, *potters earth.*
 Fāma, -æ, *fame.*
 Hūmus, -i, *the ground.*
 Lues, -is, *a plague.*
 Plebs, plēbis, *the common people.*
 Pūbes, -is, *the youth.*
 Quies, -ētis, *rest.*

Sālus, -ūtis, *safety.*
 Sītis, -is, *thirst.*
 Sūpellex, -ētīlis, *household-furniture.*
 Tābes, -is, *a consumption.*
 Tellus, -ūris, *the earth.*
 Vespcra, -æ, *the evening.*

4. These neuters are seldom used in the plural :

Album, -i, *a list of names.*
 Dilūcūlum, -i, *the dawning of day.*
 Ēbur, -ōris, *ivory.*
 Gēlu, *ind. frost.*
 Hilum, -i, *the black speck of a bean, a trifle.*
 Justītium, -i, *a vacation, the time when courts do not sit.*
 Lēthum, *death.*

Lütum, -i, *clay.*
 Nihil, nihilum, or nil, *nothing.*
 Pēlagus, -i, *the sea.*
 Pēnum, -i, and penus, -ōris; *all kind of provisions.*
 Sal, sālis, *salt.*
 Scēnum, -ii, *old age.*
 Ver, vēris, *the spring.*
 Vīrus, -i, *poison.*

5. Many nouns want the singular; as the names of feasts, books, games, and several cities; thus,

Āpollināres, -ium, *games in honour of Apollo.*
 Bacchānālia, -ium, & -iōrum, *the feasts of Bacchus.* [torals.
 Būcōlica, -ōrum, *a book of past-*

ōlympia, -ōrum, *the Olympic games.*
 Syracūsæ, -arum, *Syracuse.*
 Hierosolyma, -ōrum, *Jerusalem;* or Hierosolyma, -æ, *of the first declension.*

6. The following masculines are hardly used in the singular :

Cancelli, *lattices, or windows, made with crost bars like a net; a rail or balustrade round any place; bounds or limits.*

Cāni, *gray hairs.*

Cāfes, -ium, *a bunter's net.*

Cēlēres, -um, *the light borse.*

Cōdīcilli, *writings.*

Druīdes, -um, *the Druids, priests of the ancient Britons and Gauls.*

Fāces, -ium, *a bundle of rods, carried before the chief magistrates of Rome.*

Fasti, -orum, or fastus, -um, *calendars*, in which were marked *festival days*, the names of *magnates*, &c.

Fines, -ium, *the borders of a country*, or *a country*.

Fōri, *the gang-ways of a ship*, *seats in the Circus*, or *the cells of a beehive*.

Furfūres, -um, *scales in the bead*.

Infēri, *the gods below*.

Lēmūres, -um, *babgeblins*, or *spiders in the dark*.

Libēri, *children*.

Majōres, -um, *ancestors*.

Minōres, -um, *successors*.

Nātāles, -ium, *parentage*.

Postēri, *posteriority*.

Prōcēres, -um, *the nobles*.

Pūgillāres, -ium, *writing-tables*.

Sentes, -ium, *thorns*.

Sūpēri, *the gods above*.

Vēpres, -ium, *briars*.

7. The following feminines want the singular number:

Alpēs, -ium, *the Alps*.

Angustiāe, *difficulties*.

Apīnē, *gewagetus*.

Argūtiāe, *quirks*, *witticisms*.

Bigē, *a chariot drawn by two horses*.

Trigē, —— *by three*.

Quadrige, —— *by four*.

Bractē, *breeches*.

Branchiāe, *the gills of a fish*.

Charites, -um, *the three graces*.

Cūnē, *a cradle*.

Dēcimē, *tithes*.

Dirē, *imprecations*, *the furies*.

Divitiae, *riches*.

Dryādes, -um, *the nymphs of the woods*.

Excūbiāe, *watches*.

Exsēquiae, *funerals*.

Exuviae, *spoils*. [*ings.*]

Fācētiāe, *pleasant say-*

Fācūtates, -ium, *one's goods and chattels*.

Fēriāe, *holidays*.

Gādes, -ium, *Cadiz*.

Gerrē, *trifles*.

Hyādes, -um, *the seven stars*.

Indūciāe, *a truce*.

Indūviāe, *cloaths to put on*.

Inceptiāe, *folly florries*.

Insidiae, *snares*.

Kälendāe, Nōnāe, I-

dūs, -um, *names which the Romans gave to certain days in each month*.

Lāpīcidināe, *stone-quarries*.

Literāe, *an epistle*.

Lactē, -ium, *the small guts*.

Mānūbiāe, *spoils taken in war*.

Minē, *treats*.

Minūtiāe, *little necessities*.

Nūgē, *trifles*.

Nundināe, *a market*.

Nuptiāe, *a marriage*.

Offūciāe, *cheats*.

Opēriāe, *workmen*.

Pārītīnāe, *ruinous walls*.

Partes, -ium, *a party*.

Phālērāe, *trappings*.

Plāgē, *nets*.

Pleiādes, -um, *the seven stars*. [*ments.*]

Prēstigiae, *enchantments*.

Primitiāe, *first fruits*.

Quisquiliāe, *sweepings*.

Rēliquiae, *a remainder*.

Sālebrāe, *rugged places*.

Sālināe, *salt-pits*.

Scālē, *a ladder*.

Scātebrāe, *a spring*.

Scōpē, *a besom*.

Tēnēbrāe, *darkness*.

Thermē, *bat batbs*.

Thermōjylē, *straits of mount Octa*.

Tricē, *toys*.

Valvāe, *folding doors*.

Vergiliāe, *the seven stars*.

Vindictiāe, *a claim of liberty*, *a defence*.

8. The following neuter nouns want the singular:

Acta, *public acts or records*.

Æstiva, sc. castra, *summer quarters*.

Arma, *arms*.

Bellāria, -orum, *sweet meats*.

Bona, *goods*.

Brēvia, -ium, *shelves*.

Castra, *a camp*.

Chāristia, -orum, *a peace-feast*.

Cibāria, *viands*.

Cōmitia, *an assembly of the people to make laws, elect magistrates, or hold trials*.

Crēpundia,

Cribellia, children's batubles.	Pātāpherna, all things the wife brings her husband except her dowry.
Cūnabūla, a cradle, an origin.	Pārentālia, -ium, solemnities at the funeral of parents.
Dičteria, scoffs, witticisms.	Philtra, love potions.
Exta, the entrails.	Peccordia, the bowels.
Februa, -orum, purifying sacrifices.	Principia, the place in the camp where the general's tent stood.
Flabria, blasts of wind.	Pýthia, games in honour of Apollo.
Frāga, strawberries.	Rostra, a place in Rome made of the beaks of ships, from which orators used to make orations to the people.
Hyberna sc. castra, winter quarters.	Scūra, old cloaths.
Ilia, -ium, the entrails.	Sponsālia, -ium, espousals.
Incūnabūla, a cradle.	Sātiva, sc. castra, a standing camp.
Insecta, insects.	Suōvētaurīlia, -ium, a sacrifice of a swine, a sheep, and an ox.
Justa, funeral rites.	Tālaria, -ium, winged shoes.
Lamenta, lamentations.	Tesqua, rough places.
Lautia, provisions for the entertain- ment of foreign ambassadors.	Transtra, the seats where the rovers sat in ships.
Iustra, dens of wild beasts.	Utensilia, -ium, utensils.
Māgālia, -ium, cottages.	
Mōenia, -ium, the walls of a city.	
Mūnia, -ierum, offices.	
Orgia, the sacred rites of Bacchus.	
Övila, -ium, an inclosure, where the people went to give their votes.	
Pälcaria, ium, the dew-lap of a beast.	

Several nouns in each of the above lists are found also in the singular, but in a different sense; thus, *casirum*, a castle; *litera*, a letter of the alphabet, &c.

III. REDUNDANT NOUNS.

Nouns are redundant in different ways: 1. In termination only; as, *arbos* and *arbor*, a tree. 2. In declension only; as, *laurus*, genit. *lauri*, and *laurūs*, a laurel tree, *réqueſter* -tri, or -tris, a mediator. 3. Only in gender; as, *hic* or *hoc vulgus*, the rabble. 4. Both in termination and declension; as, *māteria*, -æ, or, *materies*, -iēi, matter; *plebs*, -is, the common people, or *plebes*, -is, -ēi, or contracted *plebi*. 5. In termination and gender; as, *tōnitrus*, -ūs, masc. *tonitru*, neut. thunder. 6. In declension and gender, as, *pēnus*, -i, and -ūs, m. or f. or *penus*, -ōris, neut. all kind of provisions. 7. In termination, gender, and declension; as, *atber*, -ēris, masc. and *atbra*, -æ, fem. the sky. 8. Several nouns in the same declension are differently varied; as, *tigris*, -is, or *īdis*, a tyger: to which may be added, nouns which have the same signification in different numbers; as, *Fidēna*, -æ; or *Fidēna*, -arum, the name of a city.

The most numerous class of redundant nouns consists of those which express the same meaning by different terminations; as, *menda*, -æ; and *viendum*, -i, a fault; *cassis*, -īdis; and *cassida*, -de, a helmet.—So,

Xcīnus, & -um, a grape-stone.
 Alveār, & -e, & -ium, a bee-hive.
 Āmārācūs, & -um, sweet mar-joram.
 Ancīle, & -ium, an oval shield.
 Angīportus, -ūs, & -i, & -um, a narrow lane.
 Aphraētus, & -um, an open ship.
 Aplūstre, & -um, the flag, colours.
 Bācūlus, & -um, a staff.
 Balteus, & -um, a belt.
 Bātillus, & -um, a fire-shovel.
 Cāpūlus, & -um, a bilt.
 Cāpus, & -o, a capon.
 Cēpa, & -e indec. an onion.
 Clypeus, & -um, a shield.
 Collūvies, & -io, filth, dirt.
 Compāges, & -go, a joining.
 Conger, & -grus, a large eel.
 Crōcus, & -um, saffron.
 Cūbitus, & -um, a cubit.
 Dilūvium, & -es, a deluge.
 Īlēphantus, & īlephas, -antis, an elephant.
 Īlēgus, & -ēia, an elegy.
 Esiēda, & -um, a chariot.
 Īventus, & -um, an event.
 Fulgetra, & -um, lightning.
 Gālērus, & -um, a hat.
 Gibbus, & -a; & -er, -ēris, or -ēri, a buncb, a swelling.
 Glūtīnum, & -en, glue.

Hebdōmas, & -āda, a week.
 Intrīta, & -unt, fine mortar, minced meat.
 Librārium, & -a, a book-cafe.
 Mācēria, & -es, īēi, a wall.
 Milliāre, & -ium, a mile.
 Mōnītum, & -us, -ūs, an admonition.
 Muria, & -es, -īēi, brine or pickle.
 Nāsus, & -um, the nose.
 Obsīdio, & -um, a siege.
 Oestrus, & -um, a gad bee.
 Ostrea, & -um, an oyster.
 Peplūs, & -um, a veil, a robe.
 Pistrīna, & -um, a bake-house.
 Prætextus, us, & -um, a pretext.
 Rāpa, & -um, a turnip.
 Rūma, & -men, the cud.
 Ruscus, & -um, a brush.
 Seps, & sēpes, f. an hedge.
 Segmen, & -mentum, a piece or paring.
 Sibīlus, & -um, a biffing.
 Sinus, & -um, a milk-pail.
 Spurcītia, & -es, nastiness.
 Strāmen, & -um, straw.
 Suffīmen, & -um, a perfume.
 Tignus, & -um, a plank.
 Tōra], & -āle, a bed-covering.
 Torcūlar, & -are, a wine press.
 Viscus, & -um, bird lime.
 Vēternus, & -um, a lethargy.

Note. The nouns which are called variable and defective, seem originally to have been redundant: thus *vāsa*, -orūm, properly comes from *vāsūm*, and not from *vās*; but custom, which gives laws to all languages, has dropt the singular, and retained the plural; and so of others.

Division of Nouns according to their signification and derivation.

1. A substantive which signifies many in the singular number, is called a *Collective* noun; as, *pōpūlus*, a people; *exercītūs*, an army.

2. A substantive derived from another substantive proper, signifying one's extraction, is called a *Patronymic* noun; as, *Priāmīdes*, the son of Priamus; *Æētīas*, the daughter

daughter of *Æetes*; *Nérine*, the daughter of Nereus. Patronymics are generally derived from the name of the father; but the poets, by whom they are chiefly used, derive them also from the grandfather, or from some other remarkable person of the family; sometimes likewise from the founder of a nation or people; as, *Æacides*, the son, grandson, great-grandson, or one of the posterity of *Æacus*; *Römülide*, the Romans, from their first king Romulus.

Patronymic names of men end in *des*; of women, in *is*, *as*, or *ne*. Those in *des* and *ne* are of the first declension, and those in *is* and *as*, of the third; as, *Priamides*, *-dæ*, &c. pl. *-da*, *darum*, &c.; *Nérine*, *-es*; *Tyndæris*, *-idæ* or *-idos*; *Æetias*, *-ädis*, &c.

3. A noun derived from a substantive proper, signifying one's country, is called a *Patrial* or *Gentile* noun; as, *Tros*, *Trois*, a man born at Troy; *Troas*, *-ädis*, a woman born at Troy. *Siculus*, *-i*, a Sicilian man; *Sicelis*, *-ädis*, a Sicilian woman: so, *Mæcedo*, *-önis*; *Arpinas*, *-ätis*, a man born in Macedonia, Arpinum; from *Troja*, *Sicilia*, *Macedonia*, *Arpinum*. But patrials for the most part are to be considered as adjectives, having a substantive understood, as, *Romanus*, *Athénienfis*, &c.

4. A substantive derived from an adjective, expressing simply the quality of the adjective, without regard to the thing in which the quality exists, is called an *Abstract*; as, *justitia*, justice; *bonitas*, goodness; *dulcēdo*, sweetneis: from *justus*, just; *bonus*, good; *dulcis*, sweet. The adjectives from which these abstracts come, are called *Concretes*; because, besides the quality, they also suppose something to which it belongs. Abstracts commonly end in *a*, *as*, or *do*, and are very numerous, being derived from most adjectives in the Latin tongue.

5. A substantive derived from another substantive, signifying a diminution or lessening of its signification, is called a *Diminutive*; as, *libellus*, a little book; *chartula*, a little paper; *opusculum*, a little work; *corculum*, a little heart; *rēticulum*, a small net; *scabellum*, a small form; *lāillus*, a little stone; *cultellus*, a little knife; *pāgella*, a little

little page: from *liber*, *charta*, *opus*, *cor*, *rête*, *scamnum*, *lapis*, *culter*, *página*. Several diminutives are sometimes formed from the same primitive; as, from *puer*, *puerulus*, *puellus*, *puellulus*; from *cista*, *cistula*, *cistella*, *cistellula*; from *homo*, *hominio*, *hominulus*. Diminutives for the most part end in *lus*, *la*, *lum*; and are generally of the same gender with their primitives. When the signification of the primitive is increased, it is called an *Amplificative*, and ends in *o*: as, *Capito*, *-onis*, having a large head: So, *naso*, *labeo*, *bucco*, having a large nose, lips, cheeks.

6. A substantive derived from a verb is called a *Verbal* noun; as, *amor*, love; *doctrina*, learning: from *amo*, and *dōceo*. Verbal nouns are very numerous, and commonly end in *io*, *or*, *us*, and *ura*; as, *legio*, a lesson: *amator*, a lover; *luctus*, grief, *creatūra*, a creature.

A D J E C T I V E.

An adjective is a word *added* to a substantive, to express its quality; as, *hard*, *soft*.

We know things by their qualities only. Every quality must belong to some subject. An adjective therefore always implies a substantive expressed or understood, and cannot make full sense without it.

An adjective may be thus distinguished from a substantive: If the word *thing* be joined to an adjective, it will make sense; but if it be joined to a substantive, it will make nonsense: thus we can say, "a good thing;" but we cannot say, "a book thing."

Adjectives in English admit of no variation, except that of the degrees of comparison.

L A T I N A D J E C T I V E S.

Adjectives in Latin are varied by gender, number, and case, to agree with substantives in all these accidents.

An adjective properly hath neither genders, numbers, nor cases; but certain terminations answering to the gender, number, and case of the substantive with which it is joined.

Adjectives are varied like three substantives of the same termination and declension.

All adjectives are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

Adjectives of three terminations are of the first and second declension; but adjectives of one or two terminations are of the third.

Ex. The following adjectives, though they have three terminations, are of the third declension.

Äcer, <i>sharp.</i>	Céléber, <i>famous.</i>	Pédester, <i>on foot.</i>
Äläcer, <i>charful.</i>	Céler, <i>swift.</i>	Säñher, <i>wholesome.</i>
Campester, <i>belonging to a plain.</i>	Équester, <i>belonging to a horse.</i>	Sylvester, <i>woody.</i>

Páluster, *marshy.*

Völücer, *swift.*

ADJECTIVES of the FIRST and SECOND DECLENSION.

Adjectives of the first and second declension have their masculine in *us* or *er*, their feminine always in *a*, and their neuter always in *um*; as, *bonus*, for the masc. *bona*, for the fem. *bonum*, for the neut. good: thus,

Sing.

N. bön-us, -a, -um,
G. bon-i, -æ, -i,
D. bon-o, -æ, -o,
A. bon-um, -am, -um,
V. bon-e, -a, -um,
A. bon-o, -å, -o.

Plur.

N. bon-i, -æ, -a,
G. bon-orum, -arum, -orum,
D. bon-is -is, -is,
A. bon-os, -as, -a,
V. bon-i, -æ, -a,
A. bon-is, -is, -is.

In like manner decline,

Äcerbus, <i>unripe, bitter.</i>	Arctus, <i>strait.</i>	Cæcus, <i>blind.</i>
Äcidus, <i>sour, tart.</i>	Arduus, <i>lofty.</i>	Callidus, <i>cunning.</i>
Äcütus, <i>sharp.</i>	Argütus, <i>quick, fibrill.</i>	Calvus, <i>bald.</i>
Äultérinus, <i>counter-fit.</i>	Aflus, <i>roasted, hot,</i> <i>pure.</i>	Cämürus, <i>crooked.</i>
Ägrötus, <i>sick.</i>	Aftütus, <i>cunning.</i>	Candidus, <i>fair, sincere.</i>
Äniülus, <i>vyning with.</i>	Ävärus, <i>covetous.</i>	Cänus, <i>boary.</i>
Äquus, <i>equal, just.</i>	Ävidus, <i>greedy.</i>	Cärus, <i>dear.</i>
Ahénus, <i>of bræsi.</i>	Augustuſ, <i>venerable.</i>	Caffus, <i>void.</i>
Albus, <i>white.</i>	Austerus, <i>barſb, rougb.</i>	Caſtus, <i>chaste.</i>
Altus, <i>bigb.</i>	Balbus, <i>flammering.</i>	Cautus, <i>wary.</i>
Ämärus, <i>b tter.</i>	Barbärus, <i>savage.</i>	Cävus, <i>bollow.</i>
Ämænus, <i>pleafant.</i>	Bardus, <i>dull, slow.</i>	Celfus, <i>bigb, lofty.</i>
Ambiguus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Beäthus, <i>blessed.</i>	Cernuus, <i>stooping.</i>
Ämicus, <i>friendly.</i>	Bellus, <i>pretty.</i>	Certus, <i>certain, sure.</i>
Amplus, <i>large.</i>	Bénignus, <i>kind.</i>	Clärus, <i>famous.</i>
Annus, <i>yearly.</i>	Bimus, <i>two year old.</i>	Claudus, <i>lame.</i>
Angustus, <i>narrow.</i>	Blæſuſ, <i>lisping.</i>	Cærülus, <i>er · éus, a-</i> <i>zure, sky-coloured.</i>
Antiquus, <i>ancient.</i>	Blandus, <i>flattering.</i>	Commödus, <i>convenient.</i>
Apricus, <i>sunny.</i>	Brütus, <i>brutib, sense-les.</i>	Concinnus, <i>fine, neat.</i>
Aptus, <i>fit.</i>	Cädücus, <i>fading.</i>	Cöruscus, <i>glittering.</i>
Arcanus, <i>secret.</i>		Cræſſus, <i>thick.</i>
		Crep̄crus,

Crēpērus, <i>doubtful.</i>	Frētus, <i>trifling.</i>	Lārgus, <i>large.</i>
Crīspus, <i>curled.</i>	Frīvolus, <i>trifling.</i>	Līcīvus, <i>want.</i>
Crūdus, <i>raw.</i>	Fulvus, <i>yellow.</i>	Lātus, <i>weary.</i>
Cūctus, <i>alt.</i>	Furvus, <i>fiery.</i>	Lātus, <i>broad.</i>
Curtus, <i>short.</i>	Fuscus, <i>brown.</i>	Lāxus, <i>loose; flock.</i>
Curvus, <i>crooked.</i>	Garrūlus, <i>prattling.</i>	Lāntus, <i>flex., pliant.</i>
Cyñicus, <i>curlish.</i>	Gēlidus, <i>cold as ice.</i>	Lēpīdus, <i>pretty, witty.</i>
Dādālus, <i>poet. curi-</i> <i>ously made.</i>	Gēniūns, <i>double.</i>	Limpīdus, <i>clear, pure.</i>
Dēcōrus, <i>graceful.</i>	Gēmānus, <i>of the same</i> <i>black, real.</i>	Līpnus, <i>squinting.</i>
Dēnīus, <i>thick.</i>	Gibbus, <i>convex.</i>	Lippus, <i>blear-eyed.</i>
Dignus, <i>worthy.</i>	Gilvus, <i>fls.-coloured.</i>	Longīnqūs, <i>far off.</i>
Lātus, <i>direful.</i>	Glaucus, <i>grey.</i>	Longus, <i>long.</i>
Disertus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Gnārus, <i>skilful.</i>	Luhriūs, <i>slippery.</i>
Diūturnus, <i>lasting.</i>	Gnāvus, <i>alitv.</i>	Lūcīdus, <i>bright.</i>
Doctus, <i>learned.</i>	Grātus, <i>thankful.</i>	Lūridus, <i>pale, ghastly.</i>
Dūbius, <i>doubtful.</i>	Hirsūtus, <i>hirtus, rough.</i>	Luscus, <i>blind of one eye.</i>
Dūrus, <i>hard.</i>	Hisplītus, <i>rugged.</i>	Mācīlēntus, <i>lon.</i>
Ebrītus, <i>crunk.</i>	Hōnelītus, <i>honourable,</i> <i>bonst.</i>	Mālīgnus, <i>spiteful.</i>
Effētus, <i>past having</i> <i>young.</i>	Hornus, <i>of this year.</i>	Mānētus, <i>maimed, lame.</i>
Ēgenus, <i>poor.</i>	Hūmānus, <i>humon, be-</i> <i>longing to a man:</i> <i>humane, polite.</i>	Mānifestus, <i>evident.</i>
Egrēgius, <i>remarkable.</i>	Hūmīdus, <i>moist.</i>	Mācīdus, <i>rotten.</i>
Ēlixus, <i>boiled.</i>	Idōneus, <i>fit.</i>	Mēcius, <i>mid or middle.</i>
Exīguus, <i>small.</i>	Jejūnus, <i>fasting.</i>	Mēndīcēs, <i>beggar-like.</i>
Exīmīus, <i>excellent.</i>	Ignātus, <i>ignorant.</i>	Menstruus, <i>monthly.</i>
Exōrīcīus, <i>from a for-</i> <i>reign country.</i>	Ignāvus, <i>foolish.</i>	Mērācūs, <i>without mix-</i> <i>ture.</i>
Externus, <i>outward.</i>	Imprōbus, <i>wicked.</i>	Mērūs, <i>pure.</i>
Fācētus, <i>witty.</i>	Incestus, <i>unchaste.</i>	Mīrus, <i>wonderful.</i>
Fācundus, <i>eloquent.</i>	Inclītus, <i>renowned.</i>	Mōdēstus, <i>modest.</i>
Falsus, <i>false, lying.</i>	Indīgus, <i>neig.</i>	Mōtītus, <i>sad.</i>
Fāmēlicus, <i>favished.</i>	Indūstrius, <i>diligent.</i>	Mōlēstus, <i>troublesome.</i>
Fātuus, <i>foolish.</i>	Ineptus, <i>unfit.</i>	Mōrōnus, <i>foolish.</i>
Faustus, <i>lucky.</i>	Inīdūs, <i>unfaithful.</i>	Mūcīdus, <i>misf.</i>
Fērus, <i>wild, savage.</i>	Ingēnuus, <i>free-born.</i>	Mundus, <i>neat.</i>
Fessus, <i>weary.</i>	Inī-īcēs, <i>unfriendly.</i>	Mutīlus, <i>maimed, with-</i> <i>out born.</i>
Festīnus, <i>hastening.</i>	Inīquus, <i>uneven, unjust.</i>	Mūcīus, <i>dumb.</i>
Fētus, <i>festival</i>	Intētūs, <i>intense, strait.</i>	Mūrītus, <i>m-tual, lent</i> <i>or borrowed.</i>
Fidūs, <i>faithful.</i>	Inīvidūs, <i>envious.</i>	Nītītus, <i>too much.</i>
Fīnītīmūs, <i>neighbour-</i> <i>ing.</i>	Inīvītūs, <i>unwilling.</i>	Nōxītus, <i>burstful.</i>
Firmus, <i>firm, steady.</i>	Irācūndus, <i>passionate.</i>	Nūtītus, <i>weak.</i>
Flaccus, <i>flap eared.</i>	Irātūs, <i>angry.</i>	Nūtītus, <i>bringing news.</i>
Flāvus, <i>yellow.</i>	Irrītūs, <i>fruitless, vain.</i>	ōcētus, <i>fat, full.</i>
Fēdūs, <i>ugly.</i>	Jācūndus, <i>pleasant.</i>	Obliqūs, <i>crooked.</i>
Fētus, <i>big with young.</i>	Lāetus, <i>joyful.</i>	Obfēcētus, <i>obscene, omi-</i> <i>nous.</i>
Formōsūs, <i>fair.</i>	Lāvūs, <i>on the left hand.</i>	Obfēcūrūs,

Obſcūrus, <i>dark, mean.</i>	Prōfundus, <i>deep.</i>	Sentus, <i>rough.</i>
Obſolētus, <i>old, out of use.</i>	Prōmīſcus, <i>confused.</i>	Sērēnus, <i>clear.</i>
Obſtīpus, <i>stiff, wry.</i>	Promptus, <i>ready.</i>	Sērius, <i>earnest.</i>
Obtūlus, <i>blunt.</i>	Prōnus, <i>with the face downward.</i>	Sērus, <i>late.</i>
Ödiōfus, <i>hateful.</i>	Prōpērus, <i>hasty.</i>	Sēvērus, <i>severe, harsh.</i>
Öpācus, <i>dark, shady.</i>	Prōpinqūs, <i>near.</i>	Siccus, <i>dry.</i>
Öpīmus, <i>rich, fat.</i>	Proprius, <i>proper.</i>	Sīmus, <i>flat-nosed.</i>
Öpīpārūs, <i>coſily, dainty.</i>	Prōtervus, <i>saucy.</i>	Sincērūs, <i>sincere, pure.</i>
Oppōrtūnus, <i>seasonable.</i>	Pūblicus, <i>public.</i>	Sītūs, <i>situate, placed.</i>
Öpūlēntus, <i>v.-ens, rich.</i>	Pūdīcūs, <i>chaste.</i>	Sobrīns, <i>sober, temperate.</i>
Orbus, <i>deflītute.</i>	Pullus, <i>blockish.</i>	Sōcius, <i>in alliance, a companion.</i>
Ötīfus, <i>at leisure.</i>	Pūrus, <i>pure, clean.</i>	Sōlidus, <i>solid.</i>
Pattus, <i>pink-eyed.</i>	Pūtūs, <i>without mixture.</i>	Sordidus, <i>dirty.</i>
Pallidus, <i>pale.</i>	Quantus, <i>how great.</i>	Spīnōfus, <i>prickly.</i>
Patcūs, <i>sparing,</i> <i>saving fa-</i>	Quādrīmūs, <i>four year old.</i>	Spīffus, <i>thick.</i>
Patrīmūs, <i>tber and</i> <i>Matrimūs, mother</i> <i>alive.</i>	Quōtīdīānus, <i>daily.</i>	Splendidus, <i>bright.</i>
Pātūlus, <i>wide, spread-ing.</i>	Rābīdus, <i>mad.</i>	Spūrius, <i>base-born, not genuine.</i>
Paulus, <i>little.</i>	Rancidus, <i>rank, stale.</i>	Squālīdus, <i>naſty.</i>
Pauci, -cē, -ca, <i>few.</i>	Rārūs, <i>rare, thin.</i>	Stōlīdus, <i>foolish.</i>
Pārītūs, <i>ſkilful.</i>	Raucus, <i>hoarſe.</i>	Strēnuus, <i>active, stout.</i>
Perīdūs, <i>treacherous.</i>	Rectus, <i>right, straight.</i>	Strīgōfus, <i>lean, lank.</i>
Perpētuus, <i>continual.</i>	Reus, <i>impeached.</i>	Stultus, <i>foolish.</i>
Perīpīcūs, <i>evident.</i>	Rīgīdus, <i>cold, stiff, ſevere.</i>	Stūpīdus, <i>ſtupid. dull.</i>
Pīus, <i>pious.</i>	Rīguus, <i>moiſt, well watered.</i>	Sūbītus, <i>ſudden.</i>
Plānus, <i>plain.</i>	Rōbūtus, <i>ſtrong.</i>	Subīcīvus, <i>cut off, or taken from other bernes.</i>
Plēnus, <i>full.</i>	Roscīdus, <i>deozy.</i>	Sūdūs, <i>fair, without clouds.</i>
Plērīque, -æque, -äque, <i>the moſt part : sing. fem. plerāque.</i>	Rōtundus, <i>round.</i>	Sūperbus, <i>proud.</i>
Pōtīcūs, <i>on the back part of a house.</i>	Rūbīcūndus, <i>bluſing.</i>	Sūpīnus, <i>lying on the back.</i>
Prādītus, <i>endued with.</i>	Rūfus, <i>reddiſh.</i>	Surdus, <i>deaf.</i>
Prāvus, <i>wicked.</i>	Rūſſus, <i>of a carnation colour.</i>	Tācītus, <i>ſilent.</i>
Prēcārius, <i>at another's pleasure.</i>	Rūtīlūs, <i>fiery, red.</i>	Tantus, <i>ſo great.</i>
Prīſcūs, <i>old, out of use.</i>	Sāvus, <i>cruel.</i>	Tardus, <i>ſlow.</i>
Prīſtīnus, <i>ancient.</i>	Sāgus, <i>knowing.</i>	Tēmērārius, <i>raſh.</i>
Prīvātus, <i>private, retired.</i>	Salfus, <i>ſalted, ſmart.</i>	Tempeſtīvus, <i>ſeasonable.</i>
Prīvus, <i>ſingle, peculiar.</i>	Salvus, <i>ſafe.</i>	Tēmēlēntus, <i>drunken.</i>
Prōbus, <i>good, beneſt.</i>	Sanctus, <i>holy.</i>	Tēpīdus, <i>lukewarm.</i>
Prōcērus, <i>big, tall.</i>	Sānus, <i>ſound.</i>	Timēdus, <i>fearful.</i>
Prōfānus, <i>profane, un-boly.</i>	Saucius, <i>wounded.</i>	Torvus, <i>ſtern.</i>
	Scēvus, <i>left.</i>	Tranquillus, <i>calm.</i>
	Scambus, <i>boor legged.</i>	Trēpīdus, <i>trembling for fear.</i>
	Scāurus, <i>club-footed.</i>	Trūcūlēntus,
	Sēcūrus, <i>secure, out of danger.</i>	
	Sēdūlus, <i>careful.</i>	

62 ADJECTIVES of the First and Second Declension.

Trūculentus, <i>cruel.</i>	Vācūus, <i>empty, void.</i>	Verbosus, <i>talkative.</i>
Truncus, <i>maimed, wanting.</i>	Vāgus, <i>wandering.</i>	Vērēcūlus, <i>buffal.</i>
Tūmidus, <i>swollen.</i>	Valgus, <i>bow-legged.</i>	Vernācūlus, <i>born in one's house.</i>
Turbidus, <i>muddy.</i>	Vātīdus, <i>strong.</i>	Vērus, <i>true.</i>
Tūtus, <i>safe.</i>	Vānus, <i>vain, empty.</i>	Vescus, <i>fit for eating.</i>
Ēdus, <i>wet.</i>	Vārius, <i>various, different.</i>	Vicinus, <i>neighbouring.</i>
Uncus, <i>crooked.</i>	Vārus, <i>bandy-legged.</i>	Viduus, <i>deprived.</i>
Ūnicus, <i>only.</i>	Vastus, <i>huge.</i>	Viētus, <i>withered.</i>
Urbānus, <i>courteous.</i>	Vēgētus, <i>vigorous.</i>	Vividus, <i>lively.</i>
Vācīvus, <i>at leisure.</i>	Vēnustus, <i>comely.</i>	Vivus, <i>alive.</i>

Tēner, tenēra, tenērum, *tender.*

Sing.

N. tēn-er,	-ēra	-ērum, N. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēra,
G. ten-ēri,	-ēræ,	-ēri,	G. ten-erorum,	-erarum, -erorum,
D. ten-ero,	-eræ,	-ero,	D. ten-eris,	-eris,
A. ten-erum, -eram, -erum,			A. ten-eros,	-eras,
V. ten-er,	-era,	-erum, V. ten-eri,	-eræ,	-era,
A. ten-ero,	-erā,	-ero.	A. ten-eris,	-eris,

Plur.

In like manner decline,

Asper, <i>rough.</i>	Läcer, <i>torn.</i>	Miser, <i>wretched.</i>
Ceter, <i>(hardly used) the rest.</i>	Liber, <i>free.</i>	Prosper, <i>prosperous.</i>
Gibber, <i>crook-backed.</i>		

Also the compounds of *gero* and *fero*: as, *lāngēr*, bearing wool: *spīfer*, bringing help, &c. Likewise, *sātūr*, *sātūra*, *sātūrum*, full. But most adjectives in *er* drop the *e*: as, *āter*, *atra*, *atrum*, black: gen. *atri*, *atra*, *atri*; dat. *atro*, *atra*, *atro*, &c.—So,

Æger, <i>suk.</i>	Mäcer, <i>lean.</i>	Säcer, <i>sacred.</i>
Crēber, <i>frequent.</i>	Niger, <i>black.</i>	Scäber, <i>rough.</i>
Gläber, <i>smooth.</i>	Piger, <i>cow.</i>	Tēter, <i>ugly.</i>
Intēger, <i>entire.</i>	Pulcher, <i>fair.</i>	Väter, <i>crafty.</i>
Lüdiger, <i>ludicrous.</i>	Rüber, <i>red.</i>	

Dexter, *right*, has -tra, trum, or -tēra, -tērum.

Obs. 1. The following adjectives have their genitive singular in *ius*, and the dative in *i*, through all the genders: in the other cases like *bonus* and *tener*.

Unus, -a, -um; gen. unius, dat. uni,	one	Alter, altērius, <i>one of two, the other.</i>
Alius, -iūs, <i>one of many, another.</i>		Neuter, -trius, <i>neither.</i>
Nullus, nullius, <i>none.</i>		Uter, utrius, <i>whether of the two.</i>
Sōlus, -iūs, <i>alone.</i>		Uterque, utriusque, <i>both.</i>
Tōtus, -iūs, <i>whole.</i>		Uterlibet, -triuslibet, <i>which of the two.</i>
Līlus, -iūs, <i>any.</i>		Utervis, -triusvis, <i>the two you please.</i>
		Alteruter,

Alterūter, *the one or the other*, alterutrius, alterutri, and sometimes alterius utrius, alteri utri, &c.

These adjectives, except *totus*, are called *Partitives*; and seem to resemble, in their signification as well as declension, what are called pronominal adjectives. In ancient writers we find them declined like *bonus*.

Obſ. 2. To decline an adjective properly, it should always be joined with a substantive in the different genders: as, *bonus liber*, a good book; *bona penna*, a good pen; *bonum fætus*, a goodfeat. But as the adjective in Latin is often found without its substantive joined with it, we therefore, in declining *bonus*, for instance, commonly say, *bonus*, a good man, understanding *vir* or *homo*; *bona*, a good woman, understanding *fæmina*; and *bonum*, a good thing, understanding *negotium*.

ADJECTIVES of the THIRD DECLENSION.

1. Adjectives of one termination; as *felix*, for the masc. *felix*, for the fem. *felix*, for the neut. happy; thus,

Sing.	Plur.
<i>N. fēl-ix</i> , -ix, -ix, -ix,	<i>N. fel-ices</i> , -ices, -icia,
<i>G. fel-īcis</i> , -īcis, -īcis, -īcis,	<i>G. fel-icium</i> , -icium, -icium,
<i>D. fel-ici</i> , -ici, -ici, -ici,	<i>D. fel-icibus</i> , -icibus, -icibus,
<i>A. fel-icem</i> , -icem, -ix, -ices,	<i>A. fel-ices</i> , -ices, -icia,
<i>V. fel-ix</i> , -ix, -ix, -ices,	<i>V. fel-ices</i> , -ices, -icia,
<i>A. fel-ice</i> , or -ici, &c.	<i>A. fel-icibus</i> , -icibus, -icibus.

In like manner decline,

<i>Amens</i> , -tis, <i>mod.</i>	<i>Fallax</i> , <i>deceitful.</i>	<i>Prūdens</i> , <i>prudent.</i>
<i>Atorx</i> , -ōcis, <i>cruel.</i>	<i>Fērāx</i> , <i>fertile.</i>	<i>Rēcens</i> , <i>frejēb.</i>
<i>Audax</i> , -ācis, &c. <i>-ens</i> , -tis, <i>bold.</i>	<i>Fērōx</i> , <i>fierce.</i>	<i>Rēpens</i> , <i>sudden.</i>
<i>Bīlīx</i> , -īcis, <i>woven with a double thread.</i>	<i>Frequens</i> , <i>frequent.</i>	<i>Sāgax</i> , -ācis, <i>sagacious.</i>
<i>Cāpax</i> , <i>capacious.</i>	<i>Ingen</i> , <i>huge.</i>	<i>Sālax</i> , -ācis, <i>lūffītul.</i>
<i>Cīcur</i> , -ūris, <i>tame.</i>	<i>Iners</i> , -tis, <i>fluggīsīb.</i>	<i>Sāpiens</i> , <i>wise.</i>
<i>Cīmens</i> , -tis, <i>merciful.</i>	<i>Insōns</i> , <i>guiltīfēs.</i>	<i>Sōlers</i> , <i>foresad.</i>
<i>Contūmax</i> , <i>stubborn.</i>	<i>Mendax</i> , <i>lying.</i> <i>[cal.</i>	<i>Sōns</i> , <i>guilty.</i>
<i>Dēmens</i> , <i>mad.</i>	<i>Mordax</i> , <i>biting.</i> <i>[satirī-</i>	<i>Tēnax</i> , <i>tenacious.</i>
<i>Ēdax</i> , <i>gluttonous.</i>	<i>Pernix</i> , -īcis, <i>swift.</i>	<i>Trux</i> , -ūcis, <i>cruel.</i>
<i>Efficax</i> , <i>efficual.</i>	<i>Pervīcax</i> , <i>wilful.</i>	<i>Über</i> , -ēris, <i>fertile.</i>
<i>Ēlegans</i> , <i>handsome.</i>	<i>Pētūlans</i> , <i>forward,</i> <i>sauvē.</i>	<i>Vēhemens</i> , <i>vehement.</i>
	<i>Prægnans</i> , <i>with child.</i>	<i>Vēlox</i> , -ōcis, <i>swift.</i>
		<i>Vōrax</i> , <i>devouring.</i>

2. Adjectives of two terminations; as, *mitis*, for the masc. and fem. *mite*, for the neut. meek; so, *mitior*, *mitius*, meeker; thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
<i>N.</i> mītis,	mitis,	mite,	<i>N.</i> mītes,	mites,	mitia,
<i>G.</i> mitis,	mitis,	mitis,	<i>G.</i> mitium,	mitium,	mitium,
<i>D.</i> miti,	miti,	miti,	<i>D.</i> mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus,
<i>A.</i> mitem,	mitem,	mite,	<i>A.</i> mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>V.</i> mitis,	mitis,	mite,	<i>V.</i> mites,	mites,	mitia,
<i>A.</i> miti,	miti,	miti.	<i>A.</i> mitibus,	mitibus,	mitibus.

In like manner decline,

Ägilis, <i>active.</i>	Ignobilis, <i>of mean pa-</i> <i>rentage.</i>	Rūdis, <i>raw.</i>
Ämabilis, <i>lovely.</i>		Sagax, <i>shrewd.</i>
Biennis, <i>of two years.</i>	Immānis, <i>huge,</i> <i>cruel.</i>	Segnis, <i>slow.</i>
Brēvis, <i>short.</i>	Änānis, <i>empty.</i>	Sōlennis, <i>annual,</i> <i>sa-</i> <i>lemon,</i>
Civilis, <i>courteous.</i>	Incōlūmis, <i>safe.</i>	Stērīlis, <i>barren.</i>
Celestis, <i>heavenly.</i>	Infāmis, <i>infamous.</i>	Suāvis, <i>sweet.</i>
Cōmis, <i>mild,</i> <i>affable.</i>	Insignis, <i>remarkable.</i>	Sublīmis, <i>lofty.</i>
Crūdēlis, <i>cruel.</i>	Jūgis, <i>perpetual.</i>	Subcīlis, <i>subtile,</i> <i>fine.</i>
Debīlis, <i>weak.</i>	Lāvis, <i>smooth.</i>	Tālis, <i>such.</i>
Dēformis, <i>ugly.</i>	Lēnis, <i>gentle.</i>	Tēnūis, <i>small.</i>
Dōcīlis, <i>teachable.</i>	Lēvis, <i>light.</i>	Terrestrīs, <i>earthly.</i>
Dulcis, <i>sweet in taste.</i>	Mēdiocris, <i>middling.</i>	Terribīlis, <i>dreadful.</i>
Exilis, <i>slender.</i>	Mirābilis, <i>wonderful.</i>	Trīstis, <i>sad.</i>
Extanguis, <i>bloodless.</i>	Mollis, <i>soft.</i>	Turpis, <i>base.</i>
Fortis, <i>brave.</i>	Omnis, <i>all.</i>	Ütilis, <i>useful.</i>
Frägilis, <i>brittle.</i>	Pernix, <i>swift,</i> <i>fleet.</i>	Vilis, <i>worthless.</i>
Grandis, <i>great.</i>	Putris, <i>rotten.</i>	Virīdis, <i>green.</i>
Grāvis, <i>heavy.</i>	Pinguis, <i>fat.</i>	Vitilis, <i>pliant.</i>
Hilāris, <i>cheerful.</i>	Quālis, <i>of what kind.</i>	

Sing.

<i>N.</i> mīti-or,	-or,	-us,	<i>N.</i> mīti-ōres,	-ōres,	-ōra,
<i>G.</i> mīti-ōris,	-ōris,	-ōris,	<i>G.</i> mīti-orum,	-orum,	-orum,
<i>D.</i> mīti-ori,	-ori,	-ori,	<i>D.</i> mīti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus,
<i>A.</i> mīti-ōrem,	-ōrem,	-us,	<i>A.</i> mīti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
<i>V.</i> mīti-or,	-or,	-us,	<i>V.</i> mīti-ores,	-ores,	-ora,
<i>A.</i> mīti-ore,	or-ori,	&c.	<i>A.</i> mīti-oribus,	-oribus,	-oribus.

In this manner all comparatives are declined.

3. Adjectives of three terminations; as, *äcer*, or *acris*, for the masc. *acris*, for the fem. *acre*, for the neut. sharp; thus,

Sing.

<i>N.</i> ä-cer or äcris,	acris,	acre,	<i>N.</i> a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
<i>G.</i> a-cris,	-cris,	-cris,	<i>G.</i> a-crium,	-crium,	-crium,
<i>D.</i> a-cri,	-cri,	-cri,	<i>D.</i> a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus,
<i>A.</i> a-crem,	-crem,	-cre,	<i>A.</i> a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
<i>V.</i> a-cer, or acris,	-cris,	-cre,	<i>V.</i> a-cres,	-cres,	-cria,
<i>A.</i> a-cri,	-cri,	-cri.	<i>A.</i> a-cribus,	-cribus,	-cribus.

In

In like manner, *äläcer* or *alacris*, *cäler* or *celeris*, *cälcber* or *celebris*, *sälüber* or *salubris*, *volücer* or *volucris*, &c.

R U L E S.

1. Adjectives of the third declension have *e* or *i* in the ablative singular: but if the neuter be in *e*, the ablative has *i* only.

2. The genitive plural ends in *ium*, and the neuter of the nominative, accusative, and vocative, in *ia*: except comparatives, which have *um* and *a*.

E X C E P T I O N S.

Exc. 1. *Dives*, *bosper*, *soſper*, *süperſles*, *jüvēnl*, *sēnēx*, and *pauper* have *e* only in the ablative singular, and consequently *um* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. The following have also *e* in the abl. sing. and *um*, not *um*, in the genit. plur. *Comper*, -*ötis*, master of, that hath obtained his desire; *impos*, -*ötis*, unable; *inops*, -*öpis*, poor; *supplex*, -*icis*, suppliant, humble; *uber*, -*eris*, fertile; *confors*, -*tis*, sharing, a partner; *değener*, -*eris*, degenerate, or degenerating; *vigil*, watchful; *püber*, -*eris*, of age, marriageable; and *celer*: Also compounds in *ceſs*, *ſex*, *pes*, and *corper*; as, *partic*.*pt*, partaking of; *artifex*, -*icis*, cunning, an artist; *bipes*, -*pēdis*, two-footed; *bicorpor*, -*ōris*, two-bodied, &c. All these have seldom the neut. sing. and almost never the neut. plur. in the nominative and accusative. To which add *mēmor*, mindful, which has *memōri*, and *memōrum*: also *dēſes*, *rēſes*, *bēbes*, *perpes*, *præpes*, *tēres*, *concōlor*, *versicōlor*, which likewise for the most part want the genitive plural.

Exc. 3. *Par*, equal, has only *päri*: but its compounds have either *e* or *i*; as *comparē*, or *-ri*. *Vetus*, old, has *vētēra*, and *vētērum*: *plus*, more, which is only used in the neut. sing. has *plure*: and in the plural, *plūres*, *plura*, or *pluria*, *plurium*.

Exc. 4. *Exſper*, hopeless; and *pōtis*, -*e*, able, are only used in the nominative. *Potis* has also sometimes *potis* in the neuter.

R E M A R K S.

1. Comparatives, and adjectives in *ns*, have *e* more frequently than *i*; and participles in the ablative called absolute have generally *e*; as, *Tiberio regante*, not *reganti*, in the reign of Tiberius.

2. Adjectives joined with substantives neuter for the most part have *i*; as *viſtrīci ferro*, not *viſtrīce*.

3. Different words are sometimes used to express the different genders; as, *viſtor*, *viſtorious*, for the masc. *viſtrix*, for the fem. *Viſtrix*, in the plur. has likewise the neuter gender; thus, *viſtrīces*, *viſtrīcia*: so *ultror*, and *ultrix*, revengeful. *Viſtrix* is also neut. in the singular.

4. Several adjectives compounded of *clivus*, *frenum*, *bacillum*, *arma*, *jugum*, *limus*, *sonnus*, and *animus*, end in *is* or *us*; and therefore are either of the first and second declension, or of the third; as, *declivis*, *-is*, *-e*; and *declivus*, *-a*, *-um*, steep; *imbēcillus*, and *imbēcillus*, weak; *semisomnus*, and *semisomnus*, half asleep; *exanimis*, and *exanimus*, lifeless. But several of them do not admit of this variation; thus we say *magnāimus*, *sexfanimus*, *effrenus*, *levisomnus*; not *magnanimis*, &c. On the contrary, we say, *pusillanimis*, *injūgit*, *illimis*, *insomnis*, *exomnis*; not *pusillanimus*, &c. So *semianimus*, *inermis*, *sublimis*, *acclivis*, *declivis*, *prodīvis*; rarely *semianimus*, &c.

5. Adjectives derived from nouns are called *Denominatives*; as *cordatus*, *mōrātus*, *calefītis*, *ādāmantinus*, *corpōrēus*, *agrefītis*, *estītus*, &c. from *cor*, *mos*, *cālum*, *adamas*, &c. Those which diminish the signification of their primitives are called *Diminutives*; as, *mīsellus*, *parvūlus*, *dūriuscūlus*, &c. Those which signify a great deal of a thing are called *Amplificatīvus*, and end in *ofus* or *entus*; as, *vīnōsus*, *vīndēlentus*, given to much wine; *opērōsus*, laborious; *plumbōsus*, full of lead; *nōdōsus*, knotty, full of knots; *corpūlentus*, corpulent, &c. Some end in *tus*; as, *aurītus*, having long or large ears; *nasūtus*, having a large nose; *literatus*, learned, &c.

6. An adjective derived from a substantive or from another adjective, signifying possession or property, is called a *Possessive adjective*; as, *Scōtīcus*, *paternus*, *berīlit*, *aliēnus*, of or belonging to Scotland, a father, a master, another: from *Scotia*, *pater*, *berus*, and *alius*.

7. Adjectives derived from verbs are called *Verbals*; as, *amabilis*, amiable; *capax*, capable; *dacīlis*, teachable: from *amo*, *capio*, *dōceo*.

8. When participles become adjectives, they are called *Participials*; as, *sapiens*, wise; *acutus*, sharp; *disertus*, eloquent. Of these many also become substantives; as, *adolescens*, *animans*, *rudens*, *serpens*, *advocatus*, *sponsus*, *natus*, *legatus*; *sponsa*, *nata*, *fēta*, sc. *corona*, a garland; *prætexta*, sc. *vestis*; *debitum*, *decretum*, *præceptum*, *fatum*, *tectum*, *vatum*, &c.

9. Adjectives derived from adverbs, are called *Adverbials*; as, *bōdiernus*, from *bodie*; *crassinus*, from *cras*; *binus*, from *bis*; &c. There are likewise adjectives derived from prepositions; as, *contrarius* from *contra*; *anticus*, from *ante*; *posticus*, from *post*.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives which signify number, are divided into four classes, *Cardinal*, *Ordinal*, *Distributive*, and *Multiplicative*.

1. The *Cardinal* or *Principal* numbers are:

<i>ūnus</i> ,	<i>one.</i>	<i>Septem</i> ,	<i>seven.</i>
<i>Duo</i> ,	<i>two.</i>	<i>Octo</i> ,	<i>eight.</i>
<i>Tres</i> ,	<i>three.</i>	<i>Nōvem</i> ,	<i>nine.</i>
<i>Quātuor</i> ,	<i>four.</i>	<i>Dēcem</i> ,	<i>ten.</i>
<i>Quīque</i> ,	<i>five.</i>	<i>Undēcim</i> ,	<i>eleven.</i>
<i>Sex</i> ,	<i>six.</i>	<i>Duōdēcim</i> ,	<i>twelve.</i>
			<i>Trēdecim</i> ,

Trédecim,	<i>tbirteen.</i>	Nōnaginta.	<i>ninety.</i>
Quatuordecim,	<i>fourteen.</i>	Centum,	<i>a hundred.</i>
Quindecim,	<i>fifteen.</i>	Dūcenti,	<i>two hundred.</i>
Sexdecim,	<i>sixteen.</i>	Trēcenti,	<i>tbree hundred.</i>
Septendecim,	<i>seventeen.</i>	Quadringenti,	<i>four hundred.</i>
Octōdecim,	<i>eighteen.</i>	Quingenti,	<i>five hundred.</i>
Nōvemdecim,	<i>nineteen.</i>	Sexcenti,	<i>six hundred.</i>
Viginti,	<i>twenty.</i>	Septingenti,	<i>seven hundred.</i>
Viginti unus, or	<i>twenty-one.</i>	Octingenti,	<i>eight hundred.</i>
Unus & viginti,		Nongenti,	<i>nine hundred.</i>
Viginti duo, or	<i>twenty two.</i>	Mille,	<i>a thousand.</i>
Duo & viginti,		Duo millia, or	<i>two thousand.</i>
Triginta,	<i>thirty.</i>	bis mille,	
Quadrāginta,	<i>forty.</i>	Dēcem millia, or	<i>ten thousand.</i>
Quinquāginta,	<i>fifty.</i>	dēcies mille,	
Sexāginta,	<i>sixty.</i>	Viginti millia, or	<i>twenty thousand.</i>
Septuāginta,	<i>seventy.</i>	vicies mille,	
Octōginta,	<i>eighty.</i>		

The Cardinal numbers, except *unus* and *mille*, want the singular.

Unus is not used in the plural, unless when joined with a substantive which wants the singular; as, *in unis aēibus*, in one house, *Terent. Eun. ii. 3. 75.* *Unus nuptia*, *Id. And. iv. I. 51.* *In una mēnia convenēre*, *Sallust. Cat. 6.* or when several particulars are considered as one whole; as, *una vestimenta*, one suit of cloaths, *Cic. Flacc. 29.*

Duo and *tres* are thus declined:

Plur.	Plur.
<i>N.duo,</i>	<i>duæ,</i>
<i>G.duōrum,</i>	<i>duārum</i>
<i>D.duōbus,</i>	<i>duābus,</i>
<i>A.duos or duo,</i>	<i>duas,</i>
<i>V.duo,</i>	<i>duæ,</i>
<i>A.duobus,</i>	<i>duabus,</i>
	<i>duōrum,</i>
	<i>duōbus,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duobus.</i>
	<i>duōrum,</i>
	<i>duōbus,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duobus.</i>
	<i>duōrum,</i>
	<i>duōbus,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duobus.</i>
	<i>duōrum,</i>
	<i>duōbus,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duo,</i>
	<i>duobus.</i>

In the same manner with *duo*, decline *ambo*, both.

All the Cardinal numbers from *quatuor* to *centum*, including them both, are indeclinable; and from *centum* to *mille*, are declined like the plural of *bonus*; thus, *ducenti*, *-ta*, *-ta*; *ducentorum*, *-tarum*, *-torum*, &c.

Mille is used either as a substantive or adjective; when taken substantively it is indeclinable in the singular number; and in the plural has *millia*, *millium*, *millibus*, &c.

Mille, an adjective, is commonly indeclinable, and to express more than one thousand; has the numeral adverbs joined with it; thus, *mille homines*, a thousand men; *mille hominum*, of a thousand men, &c. *Bis mille homines*, two thousand men; *ter mille homines*, &c. But with *mille*, a substantive, we say *mille hominum*, a thousand men; *duo millia hominum*, *tria millia*, *quatuor millia*, *centum* or *centena millia hominum*; *Dēcies centena millia*, a million; *Vicies centena millia*, two millions, &c.

2. The Ordinal numbers are, *prīmus*, first; *sēcundus*, second, &c. declined like *bonus*.

3. The distributive are, *singūli*, one by one; *bīni*, two by two, &c. declined like the plural of *bonus*.

The following table contains a list of the Ordinal and Distributive Numbers, together with the Numeral Adverbs, which are often joined with the Numeral Adjectives.

<i>Ordinal.</i>	<i>Distributive.</i>	<i>Numeral Adverbs.</i>
1 Prīmus, a, um.	Singūli, æ, a.	Semel, once.
2 sēcundus.	bīni.	bis, twice.
3 tertius.	terni.	ter, thrice.
4 quartus.	quaterni.	quāter, four times.
5 quintus.	quini.	quinquies, &c.
6 sextus.	sēni.	sexies.
7 septimus.	septēni.	septies.
8 octāvus.	octōni.	octies.
9 nōnus.	nōvēni.	nōvies.
10 dēcimus.	dēni.	dēcies.
11 undēcimus.	undēni.	undecies.
12 duodecimus.	duodēni.	duodecies.
13 decimus tertius.	trēdēni, terni dēni.	tredecies.
14 decimus quartus.	quaterni dēni.	quatuordecies.
15 decimus quintus.	quindenī.	quindecies.
16 decimus sextus.	seni dēni.	sexdecies.
17 decimus septimus.	septeni dēni.	decies ac septies.
18 decimus octāvus.	octōni dēni.	decies ac octies.
19 decimus nonus.	nōveni dēni.	decies et novies.
20 vīgesimus, vīcesimus.	vīcēni.	vīcīes.
21 vīgesimus prīmus.	vīcēni singuli.	vīcīes semel.
30 trīgesimus, trīcesimus.	trīcēni.	trīcīes.
40 quadragēsimus.	quadrāgēni.	quadrāgīes.
50 quinquagēsimus.	quinquāgēni.	quinquagīes.
60 sexagesimus.	sexāgēni.	sexagīes.
70 septuagēsimus.	septuāgēni.	septuagīes.
80 octogēsimus.	octōgēni.	octōgīes.
90 nonagesimus.	nonagēni.	nonagīes.
100 centēsimus.	centēni.	centīes.
200 dūcentēsimus.	dūcēni.	dūcentīes.
300 trēcentēsimus.	trēcentēni.	trēcentīes.
400 quadringēntēsimus.	quāter centēni.	quadringēntīes.
500 quingēntēsimus.	quinquies centēni.	quingēntīes.
600 sēxcentēsimus.	sexies centēni.	sēxcentīes.
700 septingēntēsimus.	septies centēni.	septingēntīes.
800 octingēntēsimus.	octies centēni.	octingēntīes.
900 nōningēntēsimus.	nōvies centēni.	nōningēntīes.
1000 mīllēnius.	millēni.	millīes.
2000 bīs mīllēsimus.	bīs millēni.	bīs millīes.

4. The multiplicative numbers are *simplex*, simple; *duplex*, double, or two-fold; *triplex*, triple, or three-fold; *quadruplex*, four-fold, &c.; all of them declined like *felix*; thus, *simplex*, *-icis*, &c.

The interrogative words, to which the above numerals answer, are *quot*, *quotus*, *quoteni*, *quoties*, and *quotuplex*.

Quot, how many? is indeclinable: So *Tot*, so many; *totidem*, just so many; *quotquot*, *quotcunque*, how manysoever; *aliquot*, some.

To these numeral adjectives may be added such as express division, proportion, time, weight, &c. as, *bipartitus*, *tripartitus*, &c. *duplicis*, *triplicis*, &c. *bimus*, *trimus*, &c. *biennts*, *triennts*, &c. *binistris*, *tristris*, &c. *bilibris*, *trilibris*, &c. *binarius*, *ternarius*, &c. which last are applied to the number of any kind of things whatever; as *versus*, *senarius*, a verse of six feet; *dennarius nummus*, a coin of ten asles; *etrogenarius senex*, an old man eighty year-old; *grex centenarius*, a flock of an hundred, &c.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

The comparison of adjectives expresses the quality in different degrees; as, *hard*, *harder*, *hardest*.

Those adjectives only are compared, whose signification admits the distinction of *more* and *less*.

The degrees of comparison are three, the *Positive*, *Comparative*, and *Superlative*.

The *Positive* seems improperly to be called a degree. It simply signifies the quality: as, *durus*, hard: and serves only as a foundation for the other degrees. By it we express the relation of equality; as *he is as tall as I*.

The *Comparative* expresses a greater degree of the quality, and has always a reference to a less degree of the same; as, *stronger*, *wiser*.

The *Superlative* expresses the quality carried to the greatest degree; as, *strongest*, *wisest*.

Comparison of ENGLISH Adjectives.

In English the comparative is formed from the positive, by adding to the end of the word *er* or *er*; and the superlative, by adding *est* or *est*; as, *wife*, *wiser*, *wisest*; *cold*, *colder*, *coldest*. The adverbs *more* and *most*, put before the adjective, have the same effect; as *brave*, *more brave*, *most brave*.

Monosyllables for the most part are compared by *er* and *est*; as, *fair*, *fairer*, *fairest*: and polysyllables, by *more* and *most*; as *beautiful*, *more beautiful*, *most beautiful*.

In some few adjectives, the superlative is formed by adding *most*; as, *undermost*, *uttermost*, or *utmost*, *uppermost*, *nethermost*, *foremost*.

Comparison

Comparison of LATIN Adjectives.

The comparative degree is formed from the first case of the positive in *i*, by adding the syllable *or*, for the masculine and feminine, and *us* for the neuter: The superlative is formed from the same case, by adding *ssimus*; as, *Altus*, high, genit. *alti*; Comparative *altior*, for the masc. *altior*, for the fem. *altius*, for the neut. higher: Superlative, *altissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, highest. So *mītis*, meek; dat. *miti*: *mitior*, *-or*, *-us*, meeker: *mitissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, meekest.

If the positive end in *er*, the superlative is formed by adding *rīmus*; as, *pauper*, poor; *pauperrīmus*, poorest.

The comparative is always of the third declension: The superlative of the first and second; as, *altus*, *altior*, *altissimus*; *alta*, *altior*, *altissima*; *altum*, *altius*, *altissimum*; gen. *alti*, *altiōris*, *altissimi*, &c.

Irregular and Defective Comparison.

1. <i>Bonus</i> ,	<i>mēlior</i> ,	<i>optīnius</i> ,	<i>good</i> ,	<i>better</i> ,	<i>bēst</i> .
<i>Mālus</i> ,	<i>pejor</i> ,	<i>pejōnius</i> ,	<i>bad</i> ,	<i>worse</i> ,	<i>worſt</i> .
<i>Magnus</i> ,	<i>major</i> ,	<i>maxīmus</i> ,	<i>great</i> ,	<i>greater</i> ,	<i>greatest</i> .
<i>Parvus</i> ,	<i>minor</i> ,	<i>mīnīmus</i> ,	<i>small</i> ,	<i>less</i> ,	<i>leſt</i> .
<i>Multus</i> ,	—	<i>plūrīmus</i> ,	<i>much</i> ,	<i>more</i> ,	<i>moſt</i> .

Fem. *Multa*, plurima; *neut.* *moltum*, plus, plurimum; *plur.* multi, plures, plurimi; *multæ*, plures, plurimæ, &c.

In several of these, both in English and Latin, the comparative and superlative seem to be formed from some other adjective, which in the positive has fallen into disuse: in others, the regular form is contracted; as, *maximus*, for *magnissimus*; *moſt*, for *moreſt*; *leſt*, for *leſſeſt*; *worſt*, for *trorſt*.

2. These five have their superlative in *limus*;

Facīlis, *facilior*, *facillimus*, *eſy*. *Imbēcīlis*, *imbecillior*, *imbecil-*
Grācīlis, *gracilior*, *gracillimus*, *lean*. *limus*, *weak*.
Hūmīlis, *humilior*, *humillimus*, *low*. *Simīlis*, *similior*, *simillimus*, *like*.

3. The following adjectives have regular comparatives, but form the superlative differently;

Cīter, *cīterior*, *cītimus*, *near*. *Mātūrus*, *-iōr*, *maturīmus*, *or*
Dexter, *dexterior*, *dextimus*, *right*. *maturissimus*, *ripe*.
Sinister, *sinīterior*, *sinītimus*, *left*. *Postērus*, *posterior*, *postremus*,
Exter, *-ērior*, *extimus*, *or* *extrē-* *bebind*.
mus, *outward*. *Sūpērus*, *-iōr*, *suprēmus*, *or*
Infērus, *-iōr*, *infīmus* or *imēs*, *below*. *fumīus*, *bigb*.
Intērus, *intērior*, *intīmus*, *inward*. *Vētus*, *vētērior*, *vēterrīmus*, *old*.

4. Compounds

4. Compounds in *dicus*, *lōquus*, *ſicuſ*, and *voluſ*, have *entior*, and *entifimius*; as, *mälēdīcuſ*, railing, *mälēdicentior*, *maledicentifimius*: So *magnilōquuſ*, one that boasteth; *bē-nēſicuſ*, beneficent; *mälēvōluſ*, malevolent; *mīriſicuſ*, wonderful, *-entior*, *-entifimius*, or *miriſicifimius*. *Nēquam*, indecl. worthless, vicious, Iras *nēquior*, *nequifimius*.

There are a great many adjectives, which, though capable of having their signification increased; yet either want one of the degrees of comparison, or are not compared at all.

1. The following adjectives are not used in the positive: *Dēterior*, *worse*, *deterrimius*. *Prōpior*, *nearer*, *proxīmuſ*, *nearſt* or *next*. *ōcior*, *ſwifter*, *ocifimius*. *Prior*, *former*, *prīmuſ*. *Ultērior*, *farther*, *ultīmuſ*.

2. The following want the comparative:

<i>Inclītuſ</i> , <i>ānclītissimus</i> , <i>renowned</i> .	<i>Nūpēruſ</i> , <i>nuperrīmuſ</i> , <i>late</i> .
<i>Mērituſ</i> , <i>meritifimius</i> , <i>deserving</i> .	<i>Par</i> , <i>pāriſſimus</i> , <i>equal</i> .
<i>Nōvuſ</i> , <i>novifimius</i> , <i>new</i> .	<i>Sācer</i> , <i>facerrīmuſ</i> , <i>sacred</i> .

3. The following want the superlative:

<i>Ādōleſeens</i> , <i>adolescentior</i> , <i>young</i> .	<i>Prōnuſ</i> , <i>pronior</i> , <i>inclined downwards</i> .
<i>Diūturnuſ</i> , <i>diuturnior</i> , <i>lasting</i> .	
<i>Ingens</i> , <i>ingentior</i> , <i>huge</i> .	<i>Sātūr</i> , <i>ſatūrior</i> , <i>full</i> .
<i>Jūvēniſ</i> , <i>junior</i> , <i>young</i> .	<i>Sēnēx</i> , <i>ſenior</i> , <i>old</i> .
<i>Opīnuſ</i> , <i>opimior</i> , <i>rich</i> .	

To supply the superlative of *jūvēniſ* or *ādōleſeens*, we fay, *minimus natu*, the youngest; and of *ſenēx*, *maximus natu*, the oldest.

Adjectives in *ilis*, *ālis*, and *ōlis*, also want the superlative; as *cī-vīliſ*, *cīvīlior*, *civil*; *rēgāliſ*, *rēgālior*, *regal*; *ſtēbilis*, *-iōr*, *lamentable*. So, *juvēnīliſ* youthful; *exīliſ*, *small*, &c.

To these add ſeveral others of different terminations: Thus, *arcā-nuſ*, *-iōr*, *ſecret*; *declīviſ*, *-iōr*, *bending downwards*; *longīguuſ*, *-iōr*, *far off*; *prōpinguuſ*, *-iōr*, *near*.

Antērior, *former*; *sēquioſ*, *worse*; *sātior*, *better*; are only found in the comparative.

4. Many adjectives are not compared at all: ſuch are thoſe compounded with nouns or verbs; as, *versiſcōlior*, of diverse colours; *peſiſſer*, *poiſonous*: also adjectives in *uſ* *pure*, in *īvus*, *īnus*, *ōrūſ*, or *īmūſ*, and diminutives; as, *dūbiuſ*, *doubtful*; *vācuuſ*, *empty*; *fūgītīvus*, *that flieth away*; *mārūtīnus*, *early*; *cānōrūſ*, *ſhrill*; *lēgiārūſ*, *lawful*; *tēnēlūſ*, *ſomewhat tender*; *mājuscuſlus*, &c.: together with a great many others of various terminations; as, *almuſ*, *gracious*; *prācoſ*, *-ōcīſ*, *ſoon or early ripe*; *mīruſ*, *ēgēnuſ*, *lācer*, *mēmōr*, *fōſper*, &c.

This defect of comparison is ſupplied by putting the adverb *magis* before the adjective, for the comparative degree; and *valde* or *maxime* for

for the superlative; thus, *egēnūs*, needy; *magis egēnūs*, more needy; *valde* or *maxime egēnūs*, very or most needy. Which form of comparison is also used in those adjectives which are regularly compared

P R O N O U N.

A Pronoun is a word which stands instead of a Noun.

Thus, *I* stands for the name of the person who speaks; *thou* for the name of the person addressed.

Pronouns serve to point out objects, whose names we either do not know, or do not want to mention. They also serve to shorten discourse, and prevent the too frequent repetition of the same word; thus, instead of saying, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, Cæsar turned Cæsar's arms against Cæsar's country*, we say, *When Cæsar had conquered Gaul, he turned his arms against his country*.

E N G L I S H P R O N O U N S.

In English there are five substantive pronouns, *I*, *thou*, *he*, *she*, and *it*.

The first is used, when one speaks of himself; as *I love*; the second, when the person spoken to is the subject of the discourse; as, *thou lovest*: and the last three, in speaking of any other person or thing; as, *he*, *she*, or *it* falls.

I is said to be of the first person; *thou*, of the second; and *he*, *she*, or *it*, together with all other words, of the third: and so in the plural number, *we*, *ye*, *they*. Hence these are called *Personal Pronouns*.

The person speaking, and the person spoken to, do not need the distinction of gender; because they are supposed to be present, and therefore their sex is commonly known. But the third person, or thing spoken of, being frequently absent, and often unknown, requires to be distinguished by different genders; thus, *he*, *she*, *it*.

Substantive pronouns in English have three cases, the *nominative*, the *genitive* or *possessive*, and the *objective* or *accusative* case, which follows the verb active, or the preposition.

Substantive Pronouns, according to their Cases, Numbers, and Persons.

Singular.			Plural:		
Persons.			Persons.		
<i>Cases.</i>	<i>1.</i>	<i>2.</i>	<i>1.</i>	<i>2.</i>	<i>3.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	<i>I,</i>	<i>thou, he, she, it;</i>	<i>we,</i>	<i>ye or you,</i>	<i>they.</i>
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mine,</i>	<i>thine, his, hers, its;</i>	<i>ours,</i>	<i>yours,</i>	<i>theirs.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>me,</i>	<i>thee, him, her, it;</i>	<i>us,</i>	<i>you,</i>	<i>them.</i>
					<i>All</i>

All other pronouns are adjectives; as, *this*, *that*, *our*, *your*, &c. A pronominal adjective differs from a common adjective in this, that it does not express quality.

Several adjective pronouns do not admit the article before them, because they very much resemble it in their signification; as, *that man*, &c.

From the personal pronouns are formed these pronominal adjectives, *my*, *thy*, *his*, *her*, *our*, *your*, *their*. *Mine* and *thine* are often used as adjectives for *my* and *thy*, when the substantive following them begins with a vowel.

Some adjective pronouns are varied to mark number; as, *this*, *these*; *that*, *those*. To these add the adjectives *other*, *one*, which, when their substantive is not expressed, have in the plural *others*, *ones*; as, *many others*, *great ones*; in which case they seem to be used as substantives.

Who, *which*, *that*, are called RELATIVES, because they refer to some substantive going before, which is therefore called the ANTECEDENT. *Who* is varied by cases, *thus*, *who*, *whose*, *whom*. *His* and *whose* seem to be contractions for *him's* and *whom's*, the possessive case being formed from the objective; as *hers* from *her*; *mine* from *me*, &c.

Who, *which*, *what*, *whether*, are called INTERROGATIVES, when used in asking questions; when used otherwise, they are called INDEFINITES.

Own, and *self*, in the plural *selves*, are joined to the possessives, *my*, *our*, *thy*, *your*, *his*, *her*, *their*; as, *my* or *mine own hand*, *myself*, *yourself*. *Self* is likewise joined to the substantive pronoun *it*, as *itself*. *Himself*, *themselves*, seem to be used by corruption for *hisself*, *theirselfs*.

LATIN PRONOUNS.

The simple pronouns in Latin are eighteen; *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; *ille*, *ipse*, *iste*, *hic*, *is*, *quis*, *qui*; *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *nostrus*, *vestrus*; *nostras*, *vestras*, and *cujas*,

Three of them are substantives, *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; the other fifteen are adjectives.

Ego, I.

Sing.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>ego</i> , <i>I</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>mei</i> , of <i>me</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>mihi</i> , to <i>me</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>me</i> , <i>me</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>me</i> , with <i>me</i> .

Plur.

<i>Nom.</i>	<i>nos</i> , <i>we</i> ,
<i>Gen.</i>	<i>nostrum</i> or <i>nostris</i> , of <i>us</i> ,
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>nobis</i> , to <i>us</i> ,
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>nos</i> , <i>us</i> ,
<i>Voc.</i>	—
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>nobis</i> , with <i>us</i> .

Tu, thou,

Sing.

N. tu, thou,
G. tui, of thee,
D. tibi, to thee,
A. te, thee,
V. tu, O thou,
A. te, with thee,

or you.

Plur.

N. vos, ye or you,
G. vestrum or vestri, of you,
D. vobis, to you,
A. vos, you,
V. vos, O ye or you,
A. vobis, with you.

Sui, of himself, of herself, of itself.

Sing.

N. _____

G. sui, of himself, of herself, of itself,
D. sibi, to himself, to herself, &c.
A. se, himself, &c.

V. _____*A.* se, with himself, &c.

Plur.

N. _____

G. sui, of themselves,
D. sibi, to themselves,
A. se, themselves,

V. _____*A.* se, with themselves.

Obs. 1. *Ego* wants the vocative, because one cannot call upon himself, except as a second person: thus we cannot say, *O ego*, *O I*; *O nos*, *O we*.

Obs. 2. *Mibi* in the dative is sometimes by the poets contracted into *mi*.

Obs. 3. The genitive plural of *ego* was anciently *nostrorum* and *nestrum*; of *tu*, *vestrorum* and *vestrum*, which were afterwards contracted into *nostrum* and *vestrum*.

We commonly use *nostrum* and *vestrum* after partitives, numerals, comparatives, or superlatives; and *nostræ* and *vestri* after other words.

The English substantive pronouns, *he*, *she*, *it*, are expressed in Latin by these pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *iste*, *hic*, or *is*; as,

Ille, for the masc. *illa*, for the fem. *illud*, for the neut. that; or, *ille*, he; *illa*, she; *illud*, it, or that; thus,

Sing.

N. ille, illa, illud,
G. illius, illius, illius,
D. illi, illi, illi,
A. illum, illam, illud,
V. ille, illa, illud,
A. illo, illâ, illo.

Plur.

N. illi, illæ, illa,
G. illorum, illarum, illorum,
D. illis, illis, illis,
A. illos, illas, illa,
V. illi, illæ, illa,
A. illis, illis, illis.

Ipse, he himself, *ipsa*, she herself, *ipsum*, itself; and *iste*, *ista*, *istud*, that, are declined like *ille*; only *ipse* has *ipsum* in the nom. acc. and voc. sing. neut.

Ipse is often joined to *ego*, *tu*, *sui*; and has in Latin the same force with *self* in English, when joined with a possessive pronoun; as, *ego ipse*, I myself.

Hic, hæc, hoc, this.

Sing.			Plur.		
<i>N.</i> hic,	hæc,	hoc,	<i>N.</i> hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>G.</i> hujus,	hujus,	hujus,	<i>G.</i> horum,	harum,	horum,
<i>D.</i> huic,	huic,	huic,	<i>D.</i> his,	his,	his,
<i>A.</i> hunc,	hanc,	hoc,	<i>A.</i> hos,	has,	hæc,
<i>V.</i> hic,	hæc,	hoc,	<i>V.</i> hi,	hæ,	hæc,
<i>A.</i> hoc,	hac,	hoc.	<i>A.</i> his,	his,	his.

Is, ea, id; he, she, it; or that.

Sing.			Plur.		
<i>N.</i> is,	ea,	id,	<i>N.</i> ii,	eæ,	ea,
<i>G.</i> ejus,	ejus,	ejus,	<i>G.</i> eorum,	earum,	eorum,
<i>D.</i> ei,	ei,	ei,	<i>D.</i> iis or eis,	&c.	
<i>A.</i> eum,	eam,	id,	<i>A.</i> eos,	eas,	ea,
<i>V.</i> _____			<i>V.</i> _____		
<i>A.</i> eo,	eâ,	eo.	<i>A.</i> iis or eis,	&c.	

Quis, *qua*, *quod*, or *quid*? which, what? Or *Quis*? who? or what man? *qua*? who? or what woman? *quod* or *quid*? what? which thing? or what thing? thus,

Sing.			Plur.		
<i>N.</i> quis,	qua,	quod or quid,	<i>N.</i> qui,	qua,	qua,
<i>G.</i> cuius,	cuius,	cuius,	<i>G.</i> quorum,	quarum,	quorum,
<i>D.</i> cui,	cui,	cui,	<i>D.</i> queis or quibus,	&c.	
<i>A.</i> quem,	quam,	quod or quid,	<i>A.</i> quos,	quas,	qua,
<i>V.</i> _____			<i>V.</i> _____		
<i>A.</i> quo,	qua,	quo;	<i>A.</i> queis or quibus,	&c.	

Qui, *qua*, *quod*, who, which, that; Or *vir qui*, the man *who* or *that*; *fæmina qua*, the woman *who* or *that*; *negotium quod*, the thing *which* or *that*; *genit. vir cuius*, the man *whose* or *of whom*; *mulier cuius*, the woman *whose* or *of whom*; *negotium cuius*, the thing *of which*, seldom *whose*, &c. thus,

	Sing.		Plur.
<i>N.</i> qui,	quæ,	quod,	<i>N.</i> qui,
<i>G.</i> cuius,	cuius,	cuius,	<i>G.</i> quorum, quarum, quorum,
<i>D.</i> cui,	cui,	cui,	<i>D.</i> queis or quibus, &c.
<i>A.</i> quem,	quam,	quod,	<i>A.</i> quos,
<i>V.</i> —	—	—	<i>V.</i> —
<i>A.</i> quo,	qua,	quo.	<i>A.</i> queis or quibus, &c.

The other pronouns are derivatives, coming from *ego*, *tu*, and *sui*. *Meus*, my or mine; *tuus*, thy or thine; *suus*, his own, her own, its own, their own, are declined like *bonus*, -a, -um; and *noſter*, our; *veſter*, your, like *pulcher*, -chra, -chrum, of the first and second declension.

Noſtras, of our country; *veſtras*, of your country; *cujas*, of what or which country, are declined like *felix*, of the third declension: gen. *noſtrātis*, dat. *noſtrāti*, &c.

Pronouns as well as nouns, that signify things, which cannot be addressed, or called upon, want the vocative. *Meus* hath *mi*, and sometimes *meus*, in the voc. sing. masc.

The relative *qui* has frequently *qui* in the ablative, and that, which is remarkable, in all genders and numbers.

Qui is sometimes used for *quis*: and instead of *cujus* the gen. of *quis*, we find an adjeſtive pronoun *cujus*, -a, -um.

Simple pronouns, with respect to their signification, are divided into the following classes:

1. *Demonſtratives*, which point out any person or thing present, or as if present: *Ego*, *tu*, *bis*, *iſte*, and sometimes *ille*, *is*, *ipſe*.

2. *Relatives*, which refer to something going before: *ille*, *ipſe*, *iſte*, *bis*, *is*, *qui*.

3. *Poffeffives*, which signify poffeffion: *meus*, *tuus*, *suus*, *noſter*, *veſter*.

4. *Patrials or Gentiles*, which signify one's country: *noſtras*, *veſtras*, *cujas*.

5. *Interrogatives*, by which we ask a question: *quis*? *cujas*? When they do not ask a question, they are called *Indefinites*, like other words of the fame nature.

6. *Reciprocals*, which again call back or represent the fame object to the mind: *ſyi*, and *ſuus*.

COMPOUND LATIN PRONOUNS.

Pronouns are compounded variouly:

1. With other pronouns; as, *iſtbi*, *iſtbac*, *iſtbac*, *iſtbc*, or *iſtac*, Acc. *iſtbunc*, *iſtbanc*, *iſtbac*, or *iſtbc*. Abl. *iſtboc*, *iſtbac*, *iſtbac*. Nom. and acc. plur. neut. *iſtbac*, of *iſte* and *bis*. So *illie*, of *ille* and *bis*.

2. With ſome other parts of ſpeech; as *bujusmōdi*, *cujusmōdi*, &c. *mēcum*, *tēcum*, *sēcum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*, *quiccum* or *quiccum* and *quibuscum* &

cum : *eccum*, *eccam*; *ecos*, *eccas*, and sometimes *ecca*, in the nom. sing. of *ecce* and *is*. So *ellum*, of *ecce* and *ille*.

3. With some syllable added : as, *tute* of *tu* and *te*, used only in the nom. *eḡmet*, *tūc̄met*, *suīmet*, through all the cases, thus, *meīmet*, *tuīmet*, &c. of *ego*, *tu*, *sui*, and *met*. Instead of *tumet* in the nom. we say, *tūc̄met*: *biccine*, *bæccine*, &c. in all the cases that end in *C*; of *bic* and *cine*: *Meopte*, *tuopte*, *suopte*, *noſtrapte*, *veſtrapte*, in the ablat. fem. and sometimes *meopte*, *tuopte*, &c. of *meus*, &c. and *pte*: *bicce*, *bæcce*, *bocce*: *bujusce*, *bice*, *bice*, *bocce*: of *bic* and *ce*: whence *bujusīčmōdi*, *eјnscemōdi*, *cujuscemōdi*. So *IDEI*, the same, compounded of *is* and *dem*, which is thus declined :

Sing. *Plur.*

<i>N.</i> <i>idem</i> , <i>eādem</i> , <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>N.</i> <i>īidem</i> , <i>eādem</i> , <i>eādem</i> ,
<i>G.</i> <i>cjusdem</i> , <i>cjusdem</i> , <i>cjusdem</i> ,	<i>G.</i> <i>corundem</i> , <i>carundem</i> , <i>corundem</i> ,
<i>D.</i> <i>cīdem</i> , <i>cīdem</i> , <i>cīdem</i> ,	<i>D.</i> <i>eīdem</i> or <i>īidem</i> , &c.
<i>A.</i> <i>eūdem</i> , <i>eādem</i> , <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>A.</i> <i>eōidem</i> , <i>eādem</i> , <i>eādem</i> ,
<i>V.</i> <i>īdem</i> , <i>eādem</i> , <i>īdem</i> ,	<i>V.</i> <i>īidem</i> , <i>eādem</i> , <i>eādem</i> ,
<i>A.</i> <i>cōdem</i> , <i>eādem</i> , <i>eōdem</i> ;	<i>A.</i> <i>eīdem</i> or <i>īidem</i> , &c.

The pronouns which we find most frequently compounded, are *quis* and *qui*.

Quis in composition is sometimes the first, sometimes the last, and sometimes likewise the middle part of the word compounded: but *qui* is always the first.

1. The compounds of *quis*, in which it is put first, are, *quifnam*, who? *quifpiam*, *quifquam*, any one; *quifque*, every one; *quifquis*, who-ever; which are thus declined :

Nom. *Gen.* *Dat.*

<i>Quifnam</i> , <i>quānam</i> , <i>quodnam</i> or <i>quidnam</i> ;	<i>cujuſnam</i> , <i>cuinam</i> ,
<i>Quifpiam</i> , <i>quāpiam</i> , <i>quodpiam</i> or <i>quidpiam</i> ;	<i>cujuſpiam</i> , <i>cuipiam</i> ,
<i>Quisquam</i> , <i>quāquam</i> , <i>quodquam</i> or <i>quidquam</i> ;	<i>cujuſquam</i> , <i>euiquam</i> ,
<i>Quisque</i> , <i>quāque</i> , <i>quodque</i> or <i>quidque</i> ;	<i>eujusque</i> , <i>euique</i> ,
<i>Quisquis</i> , — <i>quidquid</i> or <i>quicquid</i> ;	<i>cujuſcujus</i> , <i>cucui</i> .

And so in the other cases, according to the simple *quis*. But *quifquis* has not the feminine at all, and the neuter only in the nominative and accusative. *Quisquam* has also *quicquam* for *quidquam*. Accusative, *guenguam*, without the feminine. The plural is scarcely used.

2. The compounds of *quis*, in which *quis* is put last, have *qua* in the nominative sing. fem. and in the nominative and accusative plur. neut. as, *aliquis*, some; *sequis*, who? of *et* and *quis*; also *neguis*, *numquis*, which for the most part are read separately, thus, *ne quis*, *si quis*, *num quis*. They are thus declined :

Nom. *Gen.* *Dat.*

<i>Aliquis</i> , <i>aliqua</i> ,	<i>aliquod</i> or <i>aliquid</i> ,	<i>alicujus</i> , <i>alicui</i> ;
<i>Equis</i> , <i>ecqua</i> or <i>ecquæ</i> ,	<i>ecquod</i> or <i>ecquid</i> ,	<i>eccuſus</i> , <i>eccuī</i> ,
<i>Si quis</i> , <i>si qua</i> ,	<i>si quod</i> or <i>si quid</i> ,	<i>si cujus</i> , <i>si cui</i> ,
<i>Ne quis</i> , <i>ne qua</i> ,	<i>ne quod</i> or <i>ne quid</i> ,	<i>ne cujus</i> , <i>ne cui</i> ,
<i>Num quis</i> , <i>num qua</i> ,	<i>num quod</i> or <i>num quid</i> ,	<i>num cujus</i> , <i>num cui</i> ,

3. The compounds which have *quis* in the middle, are, *equisnam*, who? *unusquisque*, gen. *uniusquisque*, every one. The former is used only in the nom. sing. and the latter wants the plural.

4. The compounds of *qui* are *quicunque*, whotoever; *quidam*, some; *quilibet*, *quivis*, any one, whom you please; which are thus declined.

Nom.

Gen.

Dat.

<i>Quicunque</i> , <i>quæcunque</i> , <i>quodcunque</i> ,	<i>cujuscunque</i> , <i>cuicunque</i> ,
<i>Quidam</i> , <i>quædam</i> , <i>quoddam</i> or <i>quiddam</i> , <i>cujusdam</i> ,	<i>cuidam</i> ,
<i>Quilibet</i> , <i>quælibet</i> , <i>quodlibet</i> or <i>quidlibet</i> , <i>cujuslibet</i> ,	<i>cuiilibet</i> ,
<i>Quivis</i> , <i>quævis</i> , <i>quodvis</i> or <i>quidvis</i> , <i>cujusvis</i> ,	<i>cuivis</i> .

Obs. 1. All these compounds have seldom or never *queis*, but *quibus*, in their dat. and abl. plur.; thus, *aliquibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. *Quis*, and its compounds in comic writers, have sometimes *quis* in the feminine gender.

Obs. 3. *Quidam* has *quendam*, *quandam*, *quodam* or *quiddam*, in the acc. sing. and *quorundam*, *quarundam*, *quorundam*, in the gen. plur. *n* being put instead of *m*, for the better sound.

Obs. 4. *Quod*, with its compounds, *aliquid*, *quodvis*, *quoddam*, &c. are used, when they agree with a substantive in the same case; *quid*, with its compounds *aliquid*, *quidvis*, &c. for the most part have either no substantive expressed, or govern one in the genitive. For this reason they are by some reckoned substantives.

V E R B.

A verb is a word which expresses what is affirmed of things; as, The boy *reads*. The sun *shines*. The man *loves*.

Or, *A verb is that part of speech which signifies to be, to do, or to suffer.*

It is called *Verb* or *Word*, by way of eminence, because it is the most essential word in a sentence, without which the other parts of speech can form no complete sense. Thus, *the diligent boy reads his lesson with care*, is a perfect sentence; but if we take away the affirmation, or the word *reads*, it is rendered imperfect, or rather becomes no sentence at all; thus, *the diligent boy his lesson with care*.

A verb therefore may be thus distinguished from any other part of speech: Whatever word expresses an affirmation or assertion is a verb; or thus, Whatever word, with a substantive noun or pronoun before or after it, makes full sense, is a verb; as, *stones fall*, *I walk*, *walk thou*. Here *fall* and *walk* are verbs, because they contain an affirmation; but when we say, *a long walk*, *a dangerous fall*, there is no affirmation expressed; and the same words *walk* and *fall* become substantives or nouns. We often find likewise in Latin the same word used as a verb, and also as some other part of speech; thus, *amor*, *-ōris*, love, a substantive; and *amor*, I am loved, a verb.

Verbs, with respect to their signification, are divided into three different classes, *Active*, *Passive*, and *Neuter*; because we consider things either as acting, or being acted upon; or as neither acting, nor being acted upon; but simply existing, or existing in a certain state or condition; as in a state of motion or rest, &c.

1. An *Active* verb expresses an action, and necessarily supposes an agent, and an object acted upon, as, *amāre*, to love; *amo te*, I love thee.

2. A verb *Passive* expresses a passion or suffering, or the receiving of an action; and necessarily implies an object acted upon, and an agent, by which it is acted upon; as, *amāri*, to be loved; *tu amāris a me*, thou art loved by me.

3. A *Neuter* verb properly expresses neither action nor passion, but simply the being, state, or condition of things; as, *dormio*, I sleep; *sedeo*, I sit.

The verb *Active* is also called *Transitive*, when the action *passeth over* to the object, or hath an effect on some other thing; as, *scribo literas*, I write letters: but when the action is confined within the agent, and *passeth not over* to any object, it is called *Intransitive*; as, *ambulo*, I walk; *curro*, I run, which are likewise called *Neuter Verbs*. Many verbs in Latin and English are used both in a transitive and in an intransitive or neuter sense; as, *sistere*, to stop; *incipere*, to begin; *durare*, to endure, or to harden, &c.

Verbs which simply signify *being*, are likewise called *Substantive verbs*; as, *esse* or *existere*, to be or to exist. The notion of existence is implied in the signification of every verb; thus, *I love*, may be resolved into, *I am loving*.

When the meaning of a verb is expressed without any affirmation, or in such a form as to be joined to a substantive noun, partaking thereby of the nature of an adjective, it is called a *Participle*; as, *amans*, loving; *amatus*, loved. But when it has the form of a substantive, it is called a *Gerund*, or a *Supine*: as, *amandum*, loving; *amatum*, to love; *amatu*, to love, or to be loved.

A verb is varied or declined by *Voices*, *Modes*, *Tenses*, *Numbers*, and *Persons*.

There are two voices; the *Active* and *Passive*.

The

The modes are four; *Indicative*, *Subjunctive*, *Imperative*, and *Infinitive*.

The tenses are five; the *Present*, the *Preter-imperfect*, the *Preter-perfect*, the *Preter-pluperfect*, and the *Future*.

The numbers are two; *Singular* and *Plural*.

The persons are three; *First*, *Second*, *Third*.

1. *Voice* expresses the different circumstances in which we consider an object, whether as acting, or being acted upon. The *Active voice* signifies action; as, *amo*, I love; the *Passive*, suffering, or being the object of an action; as, *amor*, I am loved.

2. *Modes or Moods* are the various *manners* of expressing the signification of the verb.

The *Indicative* declares or affirms positively; as, *amo*, I love; *amabo*, I shall love; or asks a question; as, *an tu amas?* dost thou love?

The *Subjunctive* is usually joined to some other verb, and cannot make a full meaning by itself; as, *si me obsecret, redibo*, if he intreat me, I will return. *Ter.*

The *Imperative* commands, exhorts, or intreats; as, *ama*, love thou.

The *Infinitive* simply expresses the signification of the verb, without limiting it to any person or number; as, *amare*, to love.

3. *Tenses or Times* express the time when any thing is supposed to be, to act, or to suffer.

Time in general is divided into three parts, the present, past, and future.

Past time is expressed three different ways. When we speak of a thing, which was doing, but not finished at some former time, we use the *Preter-imperfect*, or past time not completed; as, *scribēbam*, I was writing.

When we speak of a thing now finished, we use the *Preter-perfect*, or past time completed; as, *scripsi*, I wrote, or have written.

When we speak of a thing finished at or before some past time, we use the *Preter-pluperfect*, or past time more than completed; as, *scripsēram*, I had written.

Future time is expressed two different ways. A thing may be considered either as simply about to be done, or as actually finished, at some future time; as, *scribam*, I shall write, or, I shall [*tunc*] be writing; *scripserō*, I shall have written.

4. *Number* marks *how many* we suppose to be, to act, or to suffer.

5. *Person* shews to what the meaning of the verb is applied, whether to the person speaking, to the person addressed, or to some other person or thing.

Verbs have two numbers and three persons, to agree with substantive nouns and pronouns in these respects: for a verb properly hath neither numbers nor persons, but certain terminations answering to the person and number of its nominative.

A verb is properly said to be *conjugated*, when all its parts are properly clasped, or, as it were, yoked together, according to Voice, Mode, Tense, Number, and Person.

ENGLISH VERBS.

English verbs change their termination to express only the present and the past time of the Active voice; and in regular verbs, the Perfect participle is always the same with the perfect or past time, both of them ending in *ed* or *'d*. The present participle always ends in *ing*. The English has no future participle, which defect is supplied by a circumlocution; as *about to love*.

An English Verb is thus varied:

To LOVE.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

Person.	1. I love,	We love,	1. I loved,	We loved,
	2. Thou lovest,	Ye or you love,	2. Thou lovedst,	Ye or you loved,
	3. He loveth or loves;	They love.	3. He loved;	They loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Imperative Mode.

Present Time.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

1. I love,	We love,	2. Love thou,	Love ye, or love you.
2. Thou love,	Ye or you love,		Infinitive Mode.
3. He love;	They love.		Present, To love.

Participle Present, Loving; Perfect, Loved.

The several remaining parts of the English verb are formed by the assistance of other verbs, called therefore *Auxiliaries* or *Helpers*. The chief of these are *have*, *be*, *shall*, and *will*, which are thus varied.

To HAVE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time.

Past Time.

Sing.

Plur.

Sing.

Plur.

Person.	1. I have,	We have,	1. I had,	We had,
	2. Thou hast,	Ye have,	2. Thou hadst,	Ye had,
	3. He hath, or has;	They have.	3. He had,	They had.

Subjunctives

Subjunctive Mode.

Present.

Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I have,	We have,	2. Have thou ;	Have ye.
2. Thou have,	Ye have,		Infinitive Mod.
3. He have;	They have.		Present, To have.
<i>Participle Present, Having; Perfect, Had.</i>			

Imperative Mode.

To BE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Time.

Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I am,	We are,	1. I was,	We were,
2. Thou art,	Ye are,	2. Thou wast,	Ye were,
3. He is;	They are.	3. He was;	They were.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present.

Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I be,	We be,	1. I were,	We were,
2. Thou be,	Ye be,	2. Thou wert,	Ye were,
3. He be;	They be.	3. He were;	They were.

Imperative Mode.

Sing.	Plur.
2. Be thou ;	Be ye.

Infinitive Mode.

Present, To be.

Participle.

Present, Being.

Perfect, Been.

SHALL.

WILL.

Sing.	Plur.	Sing.	Plur.
1. I shall,	We shall,	1. I will,	We will,
2. Thou shalt,	Ye shall,	2. Thou wilt,	Ye will,
3. He shall;	They shall	3. He will;	They will.

The terminations of their auxiliary verbs seem to be irregular. Most of them however are only contractions of the regular form. Thus, *baſt* is contracted for *baſt*; *baſt*, for *baſt*; *baſt*, for *baſt*; and *wilſt*, for *wilſt*; which *laſt* is likewise used from the regular verb, *to will*; thus, *I will*, *thou wilſt*, *he wilſt*, or *wilſt*, &c.

The tenses of the subjunctive mode are expressed by *may* or *can*; *might*, *could*, *would*, and *ſhould*, together with the other auxiliary verbs.

Would, *wouldſt*, comes from *will*; and *ſhould*, *ſhouldſt*, from *ſhall*. *Might* and *could* seem to be the past time of *may* and *can*.

To express with greater force the present and past time of the indicative Mode, we use the auxiliary verb *do*; as, *I do love*; *I did love*. And so in the Imperative, *do thou love*, *do ye love*. In the third person of the Imperative, we always use *let*, which, being an active verb, has always an accusative after it; as, *let him love*, *let them love*.

When we speak of present time indeterminately, we use the simple form;

form; as *I love, I loved*: but when we speak of it with some particular limitation, we use an auxiliary; as, *I am loving* just now; *I was* (then) *loving*. The termination *th*, in the third person of the present of the Indicative, properly belongs to solemn discourse; as, *be batb, be doth, &c.*

The whole of the passive voice in English is formed by the auxiliary verb *to be*, and the participle perfect; as, *I am loved, I was loved, &c.* In many verbs the present participle also is used in a passive sense; as, *These things are doing, were doing, &c.; The house is building, was building, &c.*

When an auxiliary is joined to a verb, the auxiliary is varied according to number and person, and the verb itself always continues the same. When there are two or more auxiliaries joined to the verb, the first of them only is varied according to person and number. The auxiliary *must* admits of no variation.

Shalt and *will* are always employed to express future time. *Will*, in the first person singular and plural, promises or threatens; in the second and third persons, only foretels: *shall*, on the contrary, in the first person, simply foretels; in the second and third persons, promises, commands, or threatens. But the contrary of this holds, when we ask a question: thus, “*I shall go;*” “*you will go;*” express event only; but “*will you go?*” imports intention; and “*shall I go?*” refers to the will of another.

The neuter verb is varied like the active; but sometimes it assumes the passive form; as, *I had fallen, or I was fallen.*

IRREGULAR ENGLISH VERBS.

The English language abounds in irregular verbs.

A verb in English is said to be irregular, which has not the Past Time and the Participle Perfect in *ed*.

Most English verbs are liable to some irregularity from contraction.

To this we are led by the nature of the language, and the manner of pronouncing it. Thus, instead of *loved, lovedest*, we say, *lov'd, lovedst*. Hence in many verbs *ed* is changed into *t*; as *snatcht, checkt, snapt, mixt, drivelt, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* for *snatched, checked, snapt, mixt, driven, past, meant, felt, left, bereft, &c.* In such words, however, the entire form is also used, and in general to be preferred. They are not therefore commonly ranked among irregular verbs.

Irregular verbs in English, properly so called, are all monosyllables, unless compounded; and may be reduced to the three following classes, in which those marked thus *, are likewise used in the regular form.

I. Irregulars by Contraction.

These commonly end in *d* or *t*, and have the Present, the Past Time, and the Participle Perfect, all alike, without any variation: as, *beat, burst, cast, cost, cut, bit, burt, knit, let, lift*, light*, put, quit*, read, rent, rid, set, shew, shred, shut, slit, split, spread, tburst, wet**; all of which are contracted for *beated, bursted, casted, &c.*

The following in the Past Time, and Participle Perfect, vary a little from the Present; as, *lead, led; sweat, swet²; meet, met; breed, bred; feed, fed; speed, sped; bend, bent²; lend, lent; rend, rent; send, sent; spend, spent; build, built²; geld, gelt²; gild, gilt²; gird, girt²; lose, lost.*

Sold, told, had, made, fled, stood, clad²; from sell, tell, have, make, flee, stoe, clothe; are contracted for sell'd, tell'd, &c. Stand has stood; smell, smelt: dare, durst, in the participle dared.

2. Irregulars in ght.

These are few in number, and have the Past Time and Participle in ght; as *bring, brought; buy, bought; catch, caught; fight, fought; teach, taught; think, thought; seek, sought; work, wrought.*

3. Irregulars in en.

This is by far the most numerous class of irregular verbs. They have commonly the Participle Perfect in en, and form the Past Time by changing the vowel or diphthong of the Present. Some form the Past Time regularly.

Present.	Past.	Participle.	Present.	Past.	Participle.
Fall,	fell,	fallen.	Creep,	crope ² ,	crept ² .
Awake,	awoke ² ,	(awaked).	Freeze,	froze,	frozen.
Forsake,	forsook,	forsaken.	Seethe,	fod,	fodden.
Shake,	shook,	shaken.	See,	saw,	seen.
Take,	took,	taken.	Bite,	bit,	bitten.
Draw,	drew,	drawn.	Chide,	chid,	chidden.
Slay,	flew,	slain.	Hide,	hid,	hidden.
Get,	gat or got,	gotten.	Slide,	slid,	slidden.
Help,	(helped)	holpen ² .	Abide,	abode,	
Melt,	melted,	molten ² .	Climb,	clomb,	(climbed).
Swell,	swelled,	swollen ² .	Drive,	drove,	driven.
Eat,	ate,	eaten.	Ride,	rode,	ridden.
Bear,	bare, or bore,	born.	Rise,	rose,	risen.
Break,	brake, or broke;	broken.	Shine,	shone ² ,	shined.
Cleave,	clave, or clove ² ,	cloven.	Strive,	strove ² ,	striven ² .
Speak,	spake or spoke,	spoken.	Smite,	smote,	smitten.
Swear,	fware, or swore,	sworn.	Stride,	strode,	stridden.
Tear,	tare or tore,	torn.	Shrive,	shrove,	shriven.
Wear,	ware or wore,	worn.	Thrive,	throve,	thriven.
Heave,	hove ² ,	hoven ² .	Write,	wrote,	written.
Shear,	shore,	shorn.	Strike,	struck,	stricken or strucken.
Steal,	stole,	stolen.	Bid,	bade,	bidden.
Tread,	trod,	trodden.	Give,	gave,	given.
Weave,	wove,	woven.	Sit,	sat,	sitten.
			Spit,	spat,	spitten.
			Dig,	dug ² ,	digged.
			Lie,	lay,	lain or lien.
			Chuse,	chose,	chosen.
			Hold,	held,	holden.
					Do,

Present.	Past.	Participle.	Present.	Past.	Participle.
Do,	did,	done.	Rive,	(rived),	riven,
Blow,	blew,	blown.	Saw,	(sawed),	sawn*.
Crow,	crew,	(crowed).	Shave,	(shaved),	shaven*.
Grow,	grew,	grown.	Shew,	(shewed),	shewn*.
Know,	knew,	known.	Show,	(showed),	shown.
Throw,	threw,	thrown.	Sow,	(sowed),	sown*.
Fly,	flew,	flown.	Straw,	(strawed,	
Bake,	(baked),	baken*.	strew, or	(ſc.)	ſtrown*.
Grave,	(graved),	graven*.	ſtrow,		
Hew,	(hewed),	hewn or	Wash,	(washed),	washen*.
Lade,	(laded),	laden.	Wax,	(waxed),	waxen*.
Load,	(loaded),	loaden*.	Wreath,	(wreathed),	wreathen*.
Mow,	(mowed),	mown*.	Writhe,	(writhed),	writhen.

Several verbs seem to have dropt the termination *en* in the Participle; as,

Present.	Past.	Participle.	Present.	Past.	Participle.
Begin	began,	begun.	Stink,	ſtank or	ſtunk.
Cling,	clang or	clung.	String,	ſtrung,	ſtrung.
Drink,	drank,	drunk or	Swim,	ſwam or	ſwum.
Fling,	flung,	flung.	Swing,	ſwung,	ſwung.
Ring,	rang or	rung.	Wring,	wrung,	wrong.
Shrink,	ſhrank or	ſhrunk.	Bind,	bound,	bound or
Sing,	fang or fung,	fung.	Find,	found,	found.
Sink,	fank or funk,	funk.	Grind,	ground,	ground.
Sling,	ſling or	ſlung.	Wind,	wound,	wound.
Slink,	ſlunk,	ſlunk.	Hang,	hung*,	hung*.
Spin,	ſpan or spun,	ſpun.	Shoot,	ſhot,	ſhot.
Spring,	ſprung or	ſprung.	Stick,	ſtuck,	ſtuck.
Sting,	ſtung,	ſtung.	Come,	came,	come.
			Run,	ran,	run.
			Win,	won,	won.

Frequent mistakes are committed with regard to those verbs which make the Participle Perfect different from the Past Time: thus it is said, *be begun*, for *be began*; *be run*, for *be ran*; the Participle being used instead of the Past Time: and much more frequently the Past Time instead of the Participle; as, *I bad wrote*, for *I bad written*; *it was wrote*, for *it was written*; *ſo bore* for *bore*; *choſe* for *choſen*; *bid*, for *bidden*; *drove*, for *driven*: *broke* for *broken*; *rode* for *ridden*, &c.

Several verbs are either defective, or made up of parts derived from different verbs of the same signification; as, *go*, *went*, *gone*; *went*, *wit* or *wat*, *wot*; *wit*, *wif*; *aught*, *quotb*, *muſt*, together with most of the auxiliary verbs.

LATIN VERBS.

The Latins have four different ways of varying verbs, called the *First*, the *Second*, the *Third*, and the *Fourth Conjugation*.

The Conjugations are thus distinguished :

The First has *a* long before *re* of the Infinitive ; the Second has *e* long, the Third has *e* short, and the Fourth has *i* long, before *re* of the Infinitive.

Except *dāre* to give, which has *a* short, and also its compounds ; thus. *Circundāre*, to surround : *circundāmus*, *-dātis*, *-dābam*, *-dābo*. &c.

The different conjugations are likewise distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the following tenses :

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

Singular.

Persons.

Plural.

Persons.

Conjugation	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
	1. -o, -as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.	
	2. -eo, -es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.	
	3. -o, -is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-unt.	
	4. -io, -is,	-it ;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-iunt.	

Imperfect.

1. -ābam, -ābas,	-ābat ;	-ābāmus,	-ābātis,	-ābant.
2. -ēbam, -ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant
3. -ēbam, -ēbas,	-ēbat ;	-ēbāmus,	-ēbātis,	-ēbant.
4. -iēbam, -iēbas,	-iēbat ;	-iēbāmus,	-iēbātis,	-iēbant.

Future.

1. -ābo, -ābis,	-ābit ;	-ābīmus,	-ābītis,	-ābunt.
2. -ēbo, -ēbis,	-ēbit ;	-ēbīmus,	-ēbītis,	-ēbunt.
3. -am, -ēs,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
4. -iam, -ies,	-et,	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -em, -es,	-et ;	-ēmus,	-ētis,	-ent.
2. -ām, -ās,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
3. -am, -as,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-ant.
4. -iam, -ias,	-at ;	-āmus,	-ātis,	-iant.

Imperfect.

Imperfect.

1. -ārem, -āres, -āret;	-ārēmus, -ārētis, -ārent.
2. -ērem, -ēres, -ēret;	-ērēmus, -ērētis, -ērent.
3. -ērem, -ēres, -ēret;	-ērēmus, -ērētis, -ērent.
4. -īrem, -īres, -īret;	-īrēmus, -īrētis, -īrent.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -a or -āto,	-āto;	-āte or -ātōte,	-ānto.
2. -e or -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ēnto.
3. -e or -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte or -ētōte,	-ēnto.
4. -i or -īto,	-īto;	-īte or -ītōte,	-īnto.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -or, -āris or -āre,	-ātur;	-āmur, -āmīni,	-antur.
2. -eor, -ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur, -ēmīni,	-entur.
3. -or, -ēris or -ēre,	-ētur;	-ēmur, -ēmīni,	-untur.
4. -iōr, -īris or -īre,	-ītur;	-īmur, -īmīni,	-iuntur.

Imperfect.

1. -ābar, -ābāris or -ābāre, -ābātur;	-ābāmur, -ābāmīni, -ābāntur.
2. -ēbar, -ēbāris or -ēbāre, -ēbātur;	-ēbāmur, -ēbāmīni, -ēbāntur.
3. -ēbar, -ēbāris or -ēbāre, -ēbātur;	-ēbāmur, -ēbāmīni, -ēbāntur.
4. -iēbar, -iēbāris or -iēbāre, -iēbātur;	-iēbāmur, -iēbāmīni, -iēbāntur.

Future.

1. -ābor, -ābēris or -ābēre, -ābētur;	-ābēmur, -ābēmīni, -ābēntur.
2. -ēbor, -ēbēris or -ēbēre, -ēbētur;	-ēbēmur, -ēbēmīni, -ēbēntur.
3. -ar, -ēris or -ēre, -ētur;	-ēmur, -ēmīni, -entur.
4. -iar, -iēris or -iēre, -iētur;	-iēmur, -iēmīni, -iēntur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense.

1. -er, -ēris or -ēre, -ētur;	-ēmur, -ēmīoi, -entur.
2. -ear, -ēaris or -ēāre, -ēātur;	-ēāmur, -ēāmīni, -eantur.
3. -ar, -āris or -āre, -ātur;	-āmur, -āmīni, -antur.
4. -iar, -iāris or -iāre, -iātur;	-iāmur, -iāmīni, -iantur.

Imperfect.

1. -ārer, -ārēris or -ārēre, -ārētur;	-ārēmur, -ārēmīni, -ārentur.
2. -ērer, -ērēris or -ērēre, -ērētur;	-ērēmur, -ērēmīni, -ērentur.
3. -ērer, -ērēris or -ērēre, -ērētur;	-ērēmur, -ērēmīni, -ērentur.
4. -īrer, -īrēris or -īrēre, -īrētur;	-īrēmur, -īrēmīni, -īrentur.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
1. -āre or -ātor,	-ātor ;	-āmīni,	-āntor.
2. -ēre or -ētor,	-ētor ;	-ēmīni,	-ēntor.
3. -ēre or -ētor,	-ētor ;	-imīni,	-untor.
4. -īre or -ītor,	-ītor ;	-imīni,	-iuntor.

Observe, Verbs in *io* of the third conjugation have *iunt* in the third person plur. of the present indic. active, and *iuntur* in the passive; and so in the imperative, *iunto* and *iuntor*. In the imperfect and future of the indicative they have always the terminations of the fourth conjugation, *iēbam* and *iam*; *iēbar* and *iar*, &c.

The terminations of the other tenses are the same through all the Conjugations. Thus,

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Perf. -i,	-isti,	-it;	-īmus,	-īstis,	-ērunt or -ērc.
Plu. -ēram, -ēras, -ērat;		-ērāmus, -ērātis,	-ērant.		

Subjunctive Mode.

Perf. -ērim, -ēris, -ērit; -ērimus, -ēritis, -ērint.

Plu. -issēm, -issēs, -issēt; -issēmus, -issētis, -issēnt.

Fut. -ēro, -ēris, -ērit; -ērimus, -ēritis, -ērint.

These Tenses, in the Passive Voice, are formed by the Participle Perfect, and the auxiliary verb *sum*, which is also used to express the Future of the Infinitive Active.

SUM is an irregular verb, and thus conjugated :

Principal Parts. .

Pres. Indic.	Perf. Indic.	Pres. Infin.
Sum,	sui,	esse, To be.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. am.

Sing.

Plur.

Person.	1. Sum, <i>I am,</i>	Sūmus, <i>We are,</i>
	2. Es, <i>Thou art, or you are,</i>	Estis, <i>Ye or you are,</i>
	3. Est, <i>He is;</i>	Sunt, <i>They are.</i>

Imperfect.

Imperfect. was.

1. Īram, *I was*, Erāmus, *We were*,
 2. Eras, *Thou wast*, or *you were*, Erātis, *Ye were*,
 3. Erat, *He was*; Erant, *They were*.

Perfect. have been or was.

1. Fui, *I have been*, Fuīmus, *We have been*,
 2. Fuiti, *Thou hast been*, Fuītis, *Ye have been*,
 3. Fuit, *He hath been*; Fuērunt, or -ēre, *They have been*.

Plu-perfect. had been.

1. Fuēram, *I had been*, Fuērāmus, *We had been*,
 2. Fueras, *Thou hadst been*, Fueratis, *Ye had been*,
 3. Fuerat, *He had been*; Fuerant, *They had been*.

Future. shall or will.

1. Īro, *I shall be*, Erīmus, *We shall be*,
 2. Eris, *Thou shalt be*, Erītis, *Ye shall be*,
 3. Erit, *He shall be*; Erunt, *They shall be*.

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. may or can.

1. Sim, *I may be*, Sīmus, *We may be*,
 2. Sis, *Thou mayest be*, Sītis, *Ye may be*,
 3. Sit, *He may be*; Sint, *They may be*.

Imperfect. might, could, would, or should.

1. Essem, *I might be*, Esēmus, *We might be*,
 2. Esse, *Thou mightest be*, Esētis, *Ye might be*,
 3. Esset, *He might be*; Esent, *They might be*.

Perfect. may have.

1. Fuērim, *I may have been*, Fuērīmus, *We may have been*,
 2. Fueris, *Thou mayest have been*, Fueritis, *Ye may have been*,
 3. Fuerit, *He may have been*; Fuerint, *They may have been*.

Plu-perfect. might, could, would, or should have; or had,

1. Fuissēm, *I might have been*, Fuissēmus, *We might have been*,
 2. Fuisses, *Thou mightest have been*, Fuissetis, *Ye might have been*,
 3. Fuisset, *He might have been*; Fuissent, *They might have been*.

Future. shall have.

1. Fuēro, *I shall have been*, Fuērīmus, *We shall have been*,
 2. Fueris, *Thou shalt have been*, Fueritis, *Ye shall have been*,
 3. Fuerit, *He shall have been*; Fuerint, *They shall have been*.

Imperative Mode.

2. Es vel esto, *Be thou,* Este vel estōte, *Be ye.*
 3. Esto, *Let him be;* Sunto, *Let them be.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pref. *Esse,* *To be.*

Perf. *Fuisse,* *To have been.*

Fut. *Esse futurus, -a, -um,* *To be about to be.*

Fuisse futurus, -a, -um, *To have been about to be.*

Participle.

Future, *Fūtūrus, -a, -um,* *About to be.*

Obs. 1. The personal pronouns, which in English are, for the most part, added to the verb, in Latin are commonly understood; because the several persons are sufficiently distinguished from one another by the different terminations of the verb, though the persons themselves be not expressed. The learner however at first may be accustomed to join them with the verb; thus, *ego sum*, I am; *tu es*, thou art, or you are; *ille est*, he is; *nos sumus* we are, &c. So *ego amo*, I love; *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *ille amat*, he loveth or loves; *nos amamus*, we love, &c.

Obs. 2. In the second person singular in English, we commonly use the plural form, except in solemn discourse; as, *tu es*, thou art, or much oftener, you are; *tu eras*, thou wast, or you were; *tu sis*, thou mayest be, or you may be, &c. So *tu amas*, thou lovest, or you love; *tu amabas*, thou lovedst, or you loved, &c.

Verbs are thus varied in the different Conjugations.

FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Principal Parts.

<i>Pref. Indic.</i>	<i>Perfect.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>	<i>Pref. Infinit.</i>
<i>Amo,</i>	<i>ämāvi,</i>	<i>ämātum,</i>	<i>ämāre,</i> <i>To love.</i>

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. *love, do love, or am loving,*

<i>Sing. 1.</i>	A M-o,	<i>I love,</i>
	2. Am-as,	<i>Thou lovest, or you love;</i>

3. Am-at, *He loveth, or he loves;*

<i>Plur. 1.</i>	Am-ämus,	<i>We love,</i>
	2. Am-atis,	<i>Ye or you love,</i>

3. Am-ant, *They love.*

Imperfect.

Imperfect. *loved, did love, or was loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-ābam,	<i>I loved,</i>
	2. Am-abas,	<i>Thou lovedst,</i>
	3. Am-abat,	<i>He loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-abamus,	<i>We loved,</i>
	2. Am-abatis,	<i>Ye or you loved,</i>
	3. Am-abant,	<i>They loved,</i>

Perfect. *loved, have loved, or did love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-āvi,	<i>I have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avisti,	<i>Thou hast loved,</i>
	3. Am-avit,	<i>He hath loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-āvimus,	<i>We have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avistis,	<i>Ye have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avērunt, v.-avēre,	<i>They have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-āvēram,	<i>I had loved,</i>
	2. Am-averas,	<i>Thou hadst loved,</i>
	3. Am-averat,	<i>He had loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-averamus,	<i>We had loved,</i>
	2. Am-averatis,	<i>Ye had loved,</i>
	3. Am-averant,	<i>They had loved.</i>

Future. *shall or will.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-ābo,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	2. Am-abis,	<i>Thou shalt love,</i>
	3. Am-abit,	<i>He shall love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-abimus,	<i>We shall love,</i>
	2. Am-abitis,	<i>Ye shall love,</i>
	3. Am-abunt,	<i>They shall love.</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-em,	<i>I may love,</i>
	1. Am-es,	<i>Thou mayest love,</i>
	3. Am-et,	<i>He may love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-ēmus,	<i>We may love,</i>
	2. Am-etis,	<i>Ye may love,</i>
	3. Am-ent,	<i>They may love.</i>

Imperfect,

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-ārem,	<i>I might love,</i>
	2. Am-ares,	<i>Thou mightest love,</i>
	3. Am-aret,	<i>He might love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-arēmus,	<i>We might love,</i>
	2. Am-aretis,	<i>Ye might love,</i>
	3. Am-arent,	<i>They might love.</i>

Perfect.

may have.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-āvērim,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou mayest have loved,</i>
	3. Am-averit,	<i>He may have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We may have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye may have loved.</i>
	3. Am-averint,	<i>They may have loved.</i>

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have ; or had.*

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-avissēm,	<i>I might have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avissēs,	<i>Thou mightest have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avissēt,	<i>He might have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-avissēmus,	<i>We might have loved,</i>
	2. Am-avissētis,	<i>Ye might have loved,</i>
	3. Am-avissēnt,	<i>They might have loved.</i>

Future.

shall have.

<i>Sing.</i>	1. Am-āvēro,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averis,	<i>Thou shalt have loved,</i>
	3. Am-averit,	<i>He shall have loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	1. Am-averīmus,	<i>We shall have loved,</i>
	2. Am-averitis,	<i>Ye shall have loved,</i>
	3. Am-averint,	<i>They shall have loved.</i>

Imperative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	2. Am-a, <i>vel</i> am-āto,	<i>Love thou, or do thou love,</i>
	3. Am-ato,	<i>Let him love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	2. Am-āte, <i>vel</i> amatōte,	<i>Love ye, or do ye love,</i>
	3. Am-anto,	<i>Let them love.</i>

Infinitive Mode.

<i>Pref.</i>	Am-āre,	<i>To love.</i>
<i>Perf.</i>	Am-avissē,	<i>To have loved.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	Esse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To be about to love.</i>
	Fuisse amaturus, -a, -um,	<i>To have been about to love.</i>

Participle.

Participle.

Present, Am-ans,	Loving.
Future, Am-atus, -a, -um,	About to love.

Gerunds.

Nom. Am-andum,	Loving,
Gen. Am-andi,	Of loving,
Dat. Am-ando,	To loving,
Acc. Am-andum,	Loving,
Abl. Am-ando,	With loving.

Supine.

Former. Am-ātum,	To love,
Latter. Am-atu,	To love, or to be loved.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present Indicative.	Perfect Participle.	Infinitive.
Amor,	amātus,	amāri, to be loved.

Indicative Mode.

Present Tense. am.

Sing. 1. Am-or,	I am loved,
2. Am-āris, vel-āre,	Thou art loved,
3. Am-atur,	He is loved;
Plur. 1. Am-amur,	We are loved,
2. Am-amini,	Ye or you are loved,
3. Am-antur,	They are loved.

Imperfect. was.

Sing. 1. Am-ābar,	I was loved,
2. Am-abāris vel-abāre,	Thou wast loved,
3. Am-abatur,	He was loved;
Plur. 1. Am-abamur,	We were loved,
2. Am-abamini,	Ye were loved,
3. Am-abantur,	They were loved.

Perfect. am; have been, or was.

Sing. 1. Amatus sum, vel fui,	I have been loved,
2. Amatus es, v. fuisti,	Thou hast been loved,
3. Amatus est, v. fuit,	He bath been loved;
Plur. 1. Amati sumus, v. fuimus,	We have been loved,
2. Amati es, v. fuistis,	Ye have been loved,
3. Amati sunt, fuērunt, v. fuēre,	They have been loved.

Plu-perfect.

Plu-perfect. *had been, or was.*

Sing. 1. Amatus eram *vel* fueram, *I had been loved,*
 2. Amatus eras *v.* fueras, *Thou hadst been loved,*
 3. Amatus erat *v.* fuerat, *He had been loved;*
Plur. 1. Amati eramus *v.* fueramus, *We had been loved,*
 2. Amati eratis *v.* fueratis, *Ye had been loved,*
 3. Amati erant *v.* fuerant, *They had been loved.*

Future. *shall, or will be.*

Sing. 1. Am-ābor, *I shall be loved,*
 2. Am-abēris *vel* -abēre, *Thou shalt be loved,*
 3. Am-abitur, *He shall be loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-ābimur, *We shall be loved,*
 2. Am-abimini, *Ye shall be loved,*
 3. Am-abuntur, *They shall be loved.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Present Tense. *may or can be.*

Sing. 1. Am-er, *I may be loved,*
 2. Am-ēris *vel* -ēre, *Thou mayest be loved,*
 3. Am-etur, *He may be loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-ēmur, *We may be loved,*
 2. Am-emini, *Ye may be loved,*
 3. Am-entur, *They may be loved.*

Imperfect. *might, could, would, or should be.*

Sing. 1. Am-āter, *I might be loved,*
 2. Am-arēris *vel* -arēre, *Thou mightest be loved,*
 3. Am-aretur, *He might be loved;*
Plur. 1. Am-ārēmur, *We might be loved,*
 2. Am-aremini, *Ye might be loved,*
 3. Am-arentur, *They might be loved.*

Perfect. *may have been.*

Sing. 1. Amatus sim *vel* fuerim, *I may have been loved,*
 2. Amatus sis *v.* fueris, *Thou mightest have been loved,*
 3. Amatus fit *v.* fuerit, *He may have been loved;*
Plur. 1. Amati simus *v.* fuerimus, *We may have been loved,*
 2. Amati sitis *v.* fueritis, *Ye may have been loved,*
 3. Amati sint *v.* fuerint, *They may have been loved.*

Plu-perfect. *might, could, would, or should have been; or had been.*

Sing. 1. Amatus essem *vel* fuisset, *I might have been loved,*
 2. Amatus esses *v.* fuisses, *Thou mightest have been loved,*
 3. Amatus esset *v.* fuisset, *He might have been loved;*

Plur.

Plur. 1. Amati essemus *v.* fuissemus, *We might have been loved,*
 2. Amati essetis *v.* fuissetis, *Ye might have been loved,*
 3. Amati essent *v.* fuissent, *They might have been loved.*

Future. *shall have been.*

Sing. 1. Amatus fučro, *I shall have been loved,*
 2. Amatus fueris, *Thou shall have been loved.*
 3. Amatus fuerit, *He shall have been loved;*
Plur. 1. Amati fučrimus, *We shall have been loved,*
 2. Amati fueritis, *Ye shall have been loved,*
 3. Amati fucrent, *They shall have been loved.*

Imperative Mode.

Sing. 2. Am-āre vel am-ātor, *Be thou loved,*
 3. Am-ātor, *Let him be loved;*
Plur. 2. Am-amini, *Be ye loved.*
 3. Am-antor, *Let them be loved.*

Infinitive Mode.

Pres. Am-āri, *To be loved.*
Perf. Esse *v.* fuisse amatus, -a, -um, *To have been loved.*
Fut. Am-ātum iri, *To be about to be loved.*

Participle.

Perf. Am-atus, -a, -um, *Loved.*
Fut. Am-andus, -a, -um, *To be loved.*

SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Dóceo, dōcui, doctum, dōcere, *To teach.*

Indicative Mode.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>				
	1.	2.	3.	1	2	3
<i>Pres.</i>	Doc-eo, -es, -et;	-ēmus, -ētis, -ent.				
<i>Imp.</i>	Doc-ēbam, -ebas, -ebat;	-ebāmus, -ebatis, -ebant.				
<i>Perf.</i>	Doc-ui, -uisti, -uit;	-uīmus, -uīstis, -uērunt,				
<i>Plu.</i>	Doc-uēram, -ueras, -uerat;	-uerāmus, -ueratis, uerant.				
<i>Fut.</i>	Doc-ēbo, -ebis, -ebit;	-ebīmus, -ebitis, -ebunt.				

Subjunctive Mode.

Pres. Doc-eam, -ea, -eat; -eāmus, -eatis, -eānt.
Imp. Doc-ērem, -eres, -eret; -erēmus, -eretis, -erent,
Perf. Doc-uērim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.
Plu. Doc-uissēm, -uissēs, -uisset; -uissēmus, -uissetis, -uissent,
Fut. Doc-uēro, -ueris, -uerit; -uerīmus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Imperative.

Imperative Mode.

2. 3. 2. 3.

Pref. Doc-e vel -ēto, -ēto; ēte vel -etote, -ento.

Infinitive. Participles. Gerunds. Supines.

Pref. Doc-ēre. Pr. Doc-ens, Doc-endum, 1. Doc-tum,

Perf. Doc-uisse. Fut. Doc-tūrus. Doc-endi, 2. Doc-tu.

Fut. Esse-docturus, -a, um. Doc-endo, &c.

Fuisse docturus, a, -um.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Dōceor, doctus, dōcēri, To be taught.

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

Pr. Doc-eur, -ēris, -etur; -emur, -emīni, -entur.
vel -ēre,Im. Doc-ēbar, -ēbaris, -ebatur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.
vel -ebare,

Perf. Doctus sum vel fui, doctus es vel fuisti, &c.

Plu. Doctus eram v. fueram, doctus eras v. fueras, &c.

Fut. Doc-ebor, -ēbēris
vel -ebere. -ebitur; -ebimur, -ebimini, ebuntur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Doc-eār, -ēāris, -eatur; -eāmur, -eāmīni, -eāntur.
vel -eāre,Im. Doc-erēr, -erēris, -erētur; -erēmūr, -erēmīni, -erēntur.
vel -erēre,

Perf. Doctus sim vel fuerim, doctus sis vel fueris, &c.

Plu. Doctus essem v. fuissim, doctus esse v. fuisses, &c.

Fut. Doctus fuerō, doctus fueris, doctus fuerit, docti fuerimus, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2.

3.

2.

3.

Pref. Doc-ēre vel -ētor, -ctor; -emīni, -entor.

Infinitive.

Participles.

Pref. Doc-eri,

Perf. Doc-tus, -a, -um.

Perf. Esse vel fuisse doctus, -a, -um, Fut. Doc-endus, -a, um.

Fut. Doctum iri,

THIRD

THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Lēgo, lēgi, lectum, lēgēre, *To read.*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i>	L	Eg-o, -is,	-it;	-imus,	-itis,	-unt.
<i>Imp.</i>	Leg-ēbam, -ebas,	-ebat;	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant,	
<i>Perf.</i>	Lēg-i	-ifti,	-it;	-imus,	-iftis,	-ērunt, -ēre.
<i>Plu.</i>	Lēg-ēram, -eras,	-erat;	-eramus,	-eratis,	-erant.	
<i>Fut.</i>	Lēg-am, -es,	-et;	-ēmus,	-etis,	-ent.	

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pres.</i>	Lēg-am, -as,	-at;	-amus,	-atis,	-ant.
<i>Imp.</i>	Lēg-ērem, -eres,	-eret;	-ērēmus,	-eretis,	-erent.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lēg-ērim, -eris,	-erit;	-ērimus,	-eritis,	-erint.
<i>Plu.</i>	Lēg-issēm, -issēs,	-issēt;	-issēmus,	-issētis,	-issēnt.
<i>Fut.</i>	Lēg-ēro, -eris,	-erit;	-ērimus,	-eritis,	-erint.

Imperative Mode.

2.

3.

2.

3.

<i>Pres.</i>	Lēg-e, <i>vel</i> -ēto,	-ēto;	-ēte, <i>vel</i> -ētōte,	-unto.
--------------	-------------------------	-------	--------------------------	--------

Infinitive.

Participles.

Gerunds.

Supines.

<i>Pres.</i>	Lēg-ēre,	<i>Pr.</i> Leg-ens.	Lēg-endum.	1. Lec-tum.
<i>Perf.</i>	Lēg-issē,	<i>Fut.</i> Lec-tūrus.	Leg-endi.	2. Lec-tu.
<i>Fut.</i>	Esse lectūrus, -a, -um,		Leg-endo, &c.	

Fuisse lectūrus, -a, -um,

PASSIVE VOICE.

Lēgor, lectus, lēgi, *To be read.*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Pr.</i>	Leg-or,	-ēris,	-ētū;	-ēmur,	-imēni,	-untur.
<i>Im.</i>	Leg-ēbar,	-ēbaris,	-ēbatur;	-ēbamur,	-ēbamini,	-ēbantur.

Per. Lectus sum *vel* fui, lectus es *vel* fuiſti, &c.

Plu. Lectus eram *vel* fueram, lectus eras *vel* fueras, &c.

Fut. Legar, -ēris,

-ētū;

-ēmur,

-ēmini.

-entur.

I

Subjunctive

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Lēg-ar, -āris, -āre, -atur; -amur, -amini, -antur.
Im. Leg-ērer, -ērēris, -ērēre, -eretur; -eremur, -cremī, -erentur.
Perf. Lectus sim *vel* fuerim, lectus sis *vel* fueris, &c.
Plu. Lectus essem *v.* fuisse, lectus essem *v.* fuisses, &c.
Fut. Lectus fuerō, lectus fueris, lectus fuerit, &c.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Leg-ēre, <i>vel</i> -ētor,	-ētor;	-imī, -untor,	
<i>Infinitive.</i>		<i>Participles.</i>	

Pres. Lēg-i. *Perf.* Lee-tus, -a, -um,
Perf. Esse *v.* fuisse lectus, -a, -um. *Fut.* Leg-endus, -a, -um.
Fut. Lectum iri.

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

Audio, audīvi, audītum, audīre, *To hear.*

Indicative Mode.

<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>					
A Ud-io, -is, -it;	1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i> Ud-io, -is, -it;	-īmus,	-ītis,	-īunt.			
<i>Im.</i> Aud-iēbam, -iebas, -iebat;	-iebas,	-iebat;	-iebamus,	-iebatis	-iebant.	
<i>Per.</i> Aud-īvi, -ivisti, -ivit;	-ivisti,	-ivit;	-ivīmus,	-ivītis,	-ivērunt,	<i>vel</i> -ivēre.
<i>Pl.</i> Aud-ivēram, -iveras, -iverat;	-iveras,	-iverat;	-iveramus,	-iveratis,	-iverant.	
<i>Fu.</i> Aud-īam, -ies, -iet;	-ies,	-iet;	-īemus,	-īetis,	-ient.	

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Aud-īam, -ias, -iat; -īamus -īatis, -īant.
Im. Aud-īrem, -ires, -iret; -īremus, -īretis, -īrent.
Per. Aud-iverim, -iveris, -iverit; -iverīmus -iverītis, -iverint.
Pl. Aud-ivissem, -ivessem, -ivesset; -ivissemns, -ivisfetis, -ivisfent.
Fu. Aud-ivero, -iveris, -iverit; -iverimus, -iveritis, -iverint.

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pr.</i> Aud-i, <i>vel</i> -īto,	-īto;	-īte, <i>vel</i> -ītōte,	-īunto.
<i>Infinitive.</i>			

<i>Infinitive.</i>	<i>Participles.</i>	<i>Gerunds.</i>	<i>Supines.</i>
<i>Pr.</i> Aud- <i>ire.</i>	<i>Pr.</i> Aud- <i>iens.</i>	Aud- <i>iendum.</i>	1. Aud <i>itum.</i>
<i>Per.</i> Aud- <i>ivisse.</i>	<i>Fu.</i> Aud- <i>iturus.</i>	Aud- <i>iendi.</i>	2. Aud <i>itu.</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Esse auditurus, -a, -um,		Aud- <i>iendo,</i> &c.	
Fuisse auditurus, -a, -um.			

PASSIVE VOICE.

Audior, *Auditus,* *Audīri,* *To be heard.*

Indicative Mode.

Sing.

Plur.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud- <i>ior,</i>	<i>·iris,</i> <i>vel ·ire,</i>	- <i>itur;</i>	- <i>imur,</i>	- <i>imini,</i>	- <i>iuntor.</i>
<i>Im.</i> Aud- <i>iebar,</i>	<i>·iebaris,</i> <i>vel ·iebare,</i>	- <i>iebatur;</i>	- <i>iebamur,</i>	- <i>iebamus,</i>	- <i>iebantur.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sum <i>vel</i> fui, Auditus es <i>v.</i> fuisti, &c.					
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus eram <i>v.</i> ueram, Auditus eras <i>v.</i> fueras, &c.					
<i>Fut.</i> Aud- <i>iar,</i>	<i>·ieris,</i> <i>vel ·iere,</i>	- <i>ietur;</i>	- <i>iemur,</i>	- <i>iemini,</i>	- <i>ientur.</i>

Subjunctive Mode.

<i>Pr.</i> Aud- <i>iar,</i>	<i>·iaris,</i> <i>vel ·iare,</i>	- <i>iatur;</i>	- <i>iamur,</i>	- <i>iamini,</i>	- <i>iantur.</i>
<i>Im.</i> Aud- <i>irer,</i>	<i>·ireris,</i> <i>vel ·irere,</i>	- <i>iretur;</i>	- <i>iremur,</i>	- <i>iremini,</i>	- <i>irentur.</i>
<i>Perf.</i> Auditus sim <i>vel</i> fuerim, Auditus sis <i>v.</i> fueris, &c.					
<i>Plu.</i> Auditus essem <i>v.</i> suissem, Auditus esses <i>v.</i> fuisses, &c.					
<i>Fut.</i> Auditus fuero, Auditus fueris, &c.					

Imperative Mode.

2.	3.	2.	3.
<i>Pres.</i> Aud- <i>ire,</i> <i>vel</i> - <i>itor,</i>	- <i>itor;</i>	- <i>imini,</i>	- <i>iuntor.</i>

Infinitive.

Participles.

<i>Pres.</i> Aud- <i>iri,</i>		<i>Perf.</i> Aud- <i>itus,</i>	- <i>a,</i> - <i>um,</i>
Perf. Esse <i>vel</i> fuisse aud- <i>itus,</i> - <i>a,</i> - <i>um,</i>		<i>Fut.</i> Aud- <i>iendus,</i>	- <i>a,</i> - <i>um,</i>
<i>Fut.</i> Aud- <i>itum</i> iri.			

FORMATION of VERBS.

There are four principal parts of a verb, from which all the rest are formed; namely, *o* of the present, *i* of the perfect, *um* of the supine, and *re* of the infinitive; according to the following rhyme:

1. From *o* are formed *am* and *em*.
2. From *i*; *ram*, *rim*, *ro*, *ſſe*, and *ſſem*.
3. *U*, *us*, and *rus*, are formed from *um*.
4. All other parts from *re* do come; as, *bam*, *bo*, *rem*; *e*, and *i*; *ns* and *dus*; *dum*, *do*, and *di*; as,

AM-o, -em; **AM-AVI**, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; **AMAT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **AM-ARE**, -abam, -abo, -arem, -a, -ans, -andum, di, do; -andus.

Doc-EO, -eam; **Doc-US**, -ueram, &c.; **Doct-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **Doc-ERE**, -ebam, -ebo, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

LEG-o, -am; **LEG-i**, -eram, &c.; **LECT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **LEG-ERE**, -ebam, -erem, -e, -ens, -endum, &c.

AUD-IO, -iam; **AUD-IVI**, -iveram, &c.; **AUDIT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us; **AUD-IRE**, -ebam, -irem, -i, -iens, -endum, di, do, -endus. — So verbs of the third conjugation in *io*; as, **CAP-IO**, -iam; **CAP-I**, -eram, &c.; **CAPT-UM**, -u, &c.; **CAP-ERE**, -ebam, -erem, -e, -iens, -endum, di, do, -endus.

The passive voice is formed from the active, by adding *r* to *e*, or changing *u* into *r*.

But it is much more easy and natural to form all the parts of a verb from the present and perfect of the indicative, and from the supine; thus,

AM-o, -abam, -abo, -em, -erem, -a or -ato, -are, -ans, -andum, di, do, **Ue**. -andus:

AMAV-I, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; **AMAT-UM**, -u, -urus, -us. So **Doc-EO**, -ebam, -ebo, -eam, -erem, -e or -eto, -ere, -ens, -endum, di, **Ue**. -endus; **Doc-US**, -eram, -erim, -iſſem, -ero, -iſſe; **Doct-UM**, -u, -urus:

LEG-o, -ebam, -am, -e, et, **Ue**. -am, as, at, **Ue**. -erem, -e or **ito**, -ere, -ens, -endum, **Ue**. -endus:

LEG-i, -eram, **Ue**. **LECT-UM**, -u, -urus:

CAP-IO, -ebam, -iam, -e, et, **Ue**. -iam, -as, **Ue**. -erem, -e or **ito**, -ere, -iens, -endum, -endus; **CAP-I**, -eram, **Ue**. **CAPT-UM**, -u, -urus.

AUD-IO, -ebam, **Ue**. **AUDIV-I**, -eram, **Ue**.

A verb is commonly said to be conjugated, when only its principal parts are mentioned, because from them all the rest are derived.

The first person of the Present of the Indicative is called the *Theme* or the *Root* of the verb, because from it the other three principal parts are formed.

The letters of a verb which always remain the same, are called *Radical* letters; as *am* in *am-o*. The rest are called the *Termination*; as, *abamus* in *am abamus*.

All the letters which come before *-āre*, *-ēre*, *-ēre*, or *-īre*, of the infinitive, are radical letters. By putting these before the terminations, all the parts of any regular verb may be readily formed, except the compound tenses.

SIGNIFICATION of the TENSES in the various Modes.

The tenses formed from the present of the indicative or infinitive signify in general the continuance of an action or passion, or represent them as present at some particular time: the other tenses express an action or passion completed; but not always so absolutely, as entirely to exclude the continuance of the same action or passion; thus, *Amo*, I love, do love, or am loving; *amabam*, I loved, did love, or was loving, &c.

Amavi, I loved, did love, or have loved, that is, have done with loving, &c.

In like manner, in the passive voice; *Amor*, I am loved, I am in loving, or in being loved, &c.

Past time in the passive voice is expressed several different ways, by means of the auxiliary verb *sum*, and the participle perfect; thus,

Indicative Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I am, or have been loved, or *estim*, I was loved.

Amatus fuī, I have been loved, or I was loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus eram*, I was or had been loved.

Amatus fueram, I had been loved.

Subjunctive Mode.

Perfect. *Amatus sum*, I may be or may have been loved.

Amatus fuerim, I may have been loved.

Plu-perfect. *Amatus essē*, I might, could, would, or should be or have been loved.

Amatus fuisset, I might, could, would, or should have been loved; or I had been loved.

Future. *Amatus fuero*, I shall have been loved.

The verb *sum* is also employed to express future time in the indicative mode, both active and passive; thus,

Amaturus sum, I am about to love, I am to love, I am going to love, or I will love. We chiefly use this form, when some purpose or intention is signified.

Amatus ero, I shall be loved.

Obs. 1. The participles *amatus* and *amaturus* are put before the auxiliary verb, because we commonly find them so placed in the classics.

Obs. 2. In these compound tenses the learner should be taught to vary the participle like an adjective noun, according to the gender and number of the different substantives to which it is applied; thus, *amatus est*, he is or was loved, when applied to a man; *amata est*, she was loved, when applied to a woman; *amatum est*, it was loved, when applied to a thing; *amati sunt*, they were loved, when applied

applied to men, &c. The connecting of syntax, so far as is necessary, with the inflection of nouns and verbs, seems to be the most proper method of teaching both.

Obs. 3. The past time and participle perfect in English are taken in different meanings, according to the different tenses in Latin which they are used to express. Thus, "I loved," when put for *amabam*, is taken in a sense different from what it has when put for *amavi*: so *amor*, and *amatus sum*, I am loved; *amabar*, and *amatus eram*, I was loved; *amer*, and *amatus sim*, &c. In the one, *loved* is taken in a present, in the other, in a past sense. This ambiguity arises from the defective nature of the English verb.

Obs. 4. The tenses of the subjunctive mode may be variously rendered, according to their connection with the other parts of a sentence. They are often expressed in English as the same tenses of the indicative, and sometimes one tense apparently put for another.

Thus, *Quāsi intelligent, qualis sit*, As if they understood, what kind of person he is, Cic. *In facinus jurāsse putas*, You would think, &c. Ov. *Eloquar an fileam*? Shall I speak out, or be silent? *Nec vos arguerim*, *Tetcri*, for *arguam*, Virg. *Si quid te fuderit, ego pericrīm*, for *perire*, Ter. *Hunc ego si potui tantum sperare dolorem*; *Et præfere, soror, patero*: for *potuissim* and *possem*, Virg. *Singula quid referam*? Why should I mention every thing? Id. *Prædiceres mihi*, you should have told me before hand, Ter. *At tu dixis, Albane, maneres*, ought to have stood to your word, Virg. *Citius crediderim*, I should sooner believe, Juv. *Hauerit ensis*, The sword would have destroyed, Virg. *Fuerint irati*, Grant or suppose they were angry. *Si id fecisset*, If he did or should do that, Cic. The same promiscuous use of the tenses seems also to take place sometimes in the indicative and infinitive; and the indicative to be put for the subjunctive; as, *Animus meminisse borret*, *Influsque refūgit*, for *refūgit*, Virg. *Fuerat melius*, for *fāisset*, Id. *Invidia dilapsa erat*, for *fāisset*, Sall. *Quamdiu in portum venis*? for *venisti*, Plaut. *Quam mox navigo Eppesum*, for *navigabo*, Id. *Tu si hic sis, aliter sentias*, Ter. for *es* and *sentires*. *Cato affimat*, se vivo, illum non *triumphare*, for *triumphaturum esse*, Cic. *Perfudet Caſtico, ut occuparet*, for *occupet*, Cæſ.

Obs. 5. The future of the subjunctive, and also of the indicative, is often rendered by the present of the subjunctive in English; as, *nisi hoc faciat* or *facerit*, unless he do this, Ter.

Obs. 6. Instead of the imperative we often use the present of the subjunctive; as, *valeas*, farewell; *buc venias*, come hither, &c. And also the future both of the indicative and subjunctive; as, *non occides*, do not kill; *ne feceris*, do not do it; *valebis*, *meque amabis*, farewell, and love me. Cic.

The present time and the preter-imperfect of the infinitive are both expressed under the same form. All the varieties of past and future time are expressed by the other two tenses. But in order properly to exemplify the tenses of the infinitive mode, we must put an accusative, and some other verb, before each of them: thus,

Dicit me scribere; he says that I write, do write, or am writing.

Dixit me scribere; he said that I wrote, did write, or was writing.

Dicit me scriptisse; he says that I wrote, did write, or have written.

Dixit me scriptisse; he said that I had written.

Dicit me scripturum esse; he says that I will write.

Dixit nos scripturos esse; he said that we would write.

Dicit nos scripturos fuisse; he says that we would have written.

Dicit literas scribi; he says that letters are written, writing, a-writing, or in writing.

Dixit literas scribi; he said that letters were writing, or written.

Dicit literas scriptas esse; he says that letters are or were written.

Dicit literas scriptas fuisse; he says that letters have been written.

Dicit literas scriptas fuisse; he said that letters had been written.

Dicit literas scriptumiri; he says that letters will be written.

Dixit literas scriptumiri; he said that letters would be written.

The future, *scriptumiri*; is made up of the former supine, and the infinitive passive of the verb *eo*, and therefore never admits of any variation.

The future of the infinitive is sometimes expressed by a *periphrasis* or circumlocution; thus, *scio fore vel futurum esse ut scribant*,—*ut literæ scribantur*; I know that they will write,—that letters will be written. *Scivi fore vel futurum esse ut scriberent*,—*ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that they would write, &c. *Scivi futurum fuisse, ut literæ scriberentur*; I knew that letters would have been written. This form is necessary in verbs which want the supine.

Obi. 7. The different tenses, when joined with any expediency or necessity, are thus expressed:

Scribendum est mibi, puerō, nobis, &c. literas; I, the boy, we, &c. must write letters.

Scribendum fuit mibi, puerō, nobis, &c. I must have written, &c.

Scribendum erit mibi; I shall be obliged to write.

Scio scribendum esse mibi literas; I know that I must write letters.

—*Scribendum fuisse mibi*; —that I must have written.

Dixit scribendum fore mibi; He said that I would be obliged to write.

Or with the participle in *dus*,

Literæ sunt scribenda mibi, puerō, hominibus, &c. or a me, puerō, &c.; Letters are to be, or must be written by me, by the boy, by men, &c. So *literæ scribenda erant, fuerunt, erunt, &c.* *Si literæ scribenda sunt, essent, forent, &c.* *Scio literas scribendas esse*; I know that letters are to be or must be written. *Scivi literas scribendas fuisse*; I knew that letters ought to have been, or must have been written.

Note. Most of the simple tenses of a verb in Latin may be expressed, as in English, by the participle and the auxiliary verb *sum*; as, *Sum amans*, for *amo*, I am loving; *eram amans*, for *amabam*, I was loving; *Fui te carrens*, for *carui*, Plaut. *Ut fisi sciens*, for *ut scias*, Ter. Only the tenses in the active which come from the preterite, and those in the passive which come from the present, cannot be properly expressed in this manner; because the Latins have no participle perfect active, nor participle present passive. This manner of expression however does not often occur.

F O R M A T I O N O F T H E P R E T E R I T E A N D S U P I N E.

G E N E R A L R U L E S.

1. Compound and simple verbs form the preterite and supine in the same manner; as,

Voco, vocāvi, vocātum, to call: so rēvoco, revocāvi, revocātum, to recall.

Exc. 1. When the simple verb in the preterite doubles the first syllable of the present, the compounds lose the former syllable; as, *pello, pēpūli, to beat; rēpello, rēpūli, never repēpūli, to beat back.* But the compounds of *do, sto, disco, and posco, follow the general rule; thus, ēdisco, ēdidi, to get by heatt; dēposco, dēpōposci, to demand; So, praeccurro, praeccurri; rēpungo, rēpūpūgi.*

Exc. 2. Compounds which change *a* of the simple verb into *i*, have *e* in the supine; as, *fācio, fēci, fāctum, to make; perficio, perfeci, perfectum, to perfect.* But compound verbs ending in *do* and *go*; also the compounds of *hābeo, plāceo, sāpīo, sālio, and flātuo, observe the general rule.*

2. Verbs which want the preterite, want likewise the supine.

S P E C I A L R U L E S.

First Conjugation.

Verbs of the first conjugation have *āvi* in the preterite, and *ātum* in the supine; as,

<i>Creo, creāvi, creātum, to create; pāro, pārāvi, pārātum, to prepare.—So,</i>	<i>Āriēto, to push like an owl.</i>
<i>Ābundo, to abound.</i>	<i>Būlūlo, to howl like an owl.</i>
<i>Accūlo, to charge with a crime.</i>	<i>Cāco, to go to flood.</i>
<i>Ādunibro, to shade, to delineate.</i>	<i>Cæco, to blind or dazzle.</i>
<i>Āēlīlico, to build.</i>	<i>Cælo, to carve.</i>
<i>Āestimo, to value.</i>	<i>Calceo, to put on shoes, to shoe.</i>
<i>Ambūlo, to walk.</i>	<i>Calcitro, to kick.</i>
<i>Amplio, to enlarge, to put off a cause.</i>	<i>Calco, to tread.</i>
<i>Ānimo, to encourage.</i>	<i>Ālīgo, to be dark or dim sighted.</i>
<i>Antīcipo, to anticipate.</i>	<i>Carmino, to card wool.</i>
<i>Antīquo, i. e. antiqua probō, to reject a law.</i>	<i>Castigo, to chastise.</i>
<i>Appello, to call.</i>	<i>Castro, to cut off.</i>
<i>Apprōpiquo, to appropriate.</i>	<i>Cēlebro, to make famous.</i>
	<i>Cēlō, to concub.</i>
	<i>Centūrio, & concen-</i>
	<i>tūlo,</i>

tūrio, to divide into companies.	Dēdico, to dedicate.	Flo, to blow.
Certo, to strive, to fight.	Dēlecto, to delight.	Fōcillo, rēfocillo, to cberish, to warm.
Cesso, to cease.	Dēlibero, to deliberate.	Fōdico, to pierce or pust.
Clāmo, to cry.	Dēlinco, to trace, to balk out.	Fōro, to bore.
Claudico, to limp.	Dēlīro, to boast, to rave.	Forlūno, to prosper.
Coāgulo, to curdle.	Dēlumbo, to weaken.	Fragro, to smell sweetly.
Cōgito, to think.	Dēlōro, to desire.	Fraudo, to defraud.
Collīmo, to aim at, to hit the mark.	Dēsōlo, to lay waste.	Frio, to crumble.
Cōlo, to strain.	Dēstino, to design.	Frustro, & -or, to dis- appoint.
Commūnico, to impart.	Dico, to dedicate.	Fūco, to colour, to paint.
Compāro, to compare.	Dīscepto, dispūto, to debate.	Fūgo, to put to flight.
Compensō, to make amends.	Dīsipo, to scatter.	Fundo, to found.
Compērendīno, to put off a cause to the day after to-morrow.	Dōlo, to bew or cut.	Gēnēro, to beget.
Compilō, to pile up, to pottage.	Dōno, to present.	Grāvo, to weigh down.
Conclūo, to gain, to reconcile.	Duplico, to double.	Gūberno, to govern.
Concordo, to agree.	Ēdūco, to bring up.	Gusto, to taste.
Consūto, rēfūto, to disprove.	Ējūlo, to wall, to weep.	Hābito, to dwell.
Congēlo, to freeze.	Ēmancipo, to free a son from the power of his father.	Hēsito, to doubt.
Considēro, to consider.	Ēmendo, to amend.	Hālo, to breathe.
Contāmīo, to pollute.	Ēnucleo, to take out the kernel, to explain.	Hio, to gape.
Cōpūlo, to couple.	Ēnōdo, to unknit, to explain.	Hōnōro, to honour.
Corrīgo, to wrinkle.	Ēquīo, to ride.	Jacto, to boast, to brag.
Corruīco, to brandish.	Erro, to wander.	Jento, to breakfast.
Crēmo, to burn.	Exāino, to examine, to try.	Ignōro, to be ignorant.
Creo, to create.	Exantlo, to empty, to endure.	Immōlo, to sacrifice.
Cribro, to sift.	Exārō, to plough up, to scrawl, to write just.	Impēro, to command.
Crispo, to curl.	Exentēro, to take out the gates.	Impetro, to obtain.
Crūcio, to torment.	Existimo, to blink.	Inauro, to gild.
Cūrō, to care.	Exploro, to search.	Inchōo, to begin.
Dāmino, to condemn.	Exuīco, to disentangle.	Inclino, to incline.
Dēcimo, to take the tenth part, or puniūb every tenth man.	Fabrico, to frame.	Indāgo, to trace out.
Declāro, to declare.	Fascīo, to bewitch.	Indīco, to sober.
Decollō, to loose a thing from off the neck, to behead.	Fātīgo, to weary.	Inquīno, to pollute.
Dēbōro, to adorn.	Fermento, to leaven with dough, to ferment.	Insipico, to sharpen at the end.
Dēclīrio, to divide soldiers into files or small companies, or citizens into wards.	Fettīo, to soften.	Intauro, to reveto.
	Flāgīto, to ban.	Insligo, to push on.
	Flagro, to be on fire.	Intēcāo, to insert one or more days, to make the year agree with the course of the sun.
		Intro, to enter.
		Invīto, to invite.
		Irādio, to scine upon.
		Irīto, to provoke.
		Itēo, to do again.
		Jūbīo, to shout for joy.
		Jūrgo,

Jurge, &c. -or, to abide or scold.	Narro, to tell.	Prōbo, to approve.
Jūro, to swear.	Nausco, to be sea-sick.	Procrastino, to delay.
Lābōrō, to labour.	Nāvīgo, to sail.	Profligo, to rout.
Lācerō, to tear.	Nāvo, to act vigorously.	Prōmulgo, to publish.
Lachrýmo, &c. -or, to weep.	Nēgo, to deny.	Propago, to propagate.
Lazigo, to smotb or polish.	Nic̄to, to wink.	Prōpēro, to baslen.
Lallo, to sing as a nurse to a child.	No, to swim.	Propino, to drink to.
Lānio, to tear.	Nōdo, to knot, rar. a&.	Prōtēlo, to chase away.
Latro, to bark.	Nōmiso, to name.	Publico, to publish, to confiscate.
Laxo, to loose.	Nōto, to mark.	Pugno, to fight.
Lēgo, to send as an am- bassador, to bequeath.	Nōvo, to renew.	Pullūlo, to bud.
Lēvo, to lighten.	Nūdo, to make bare.	Purgō, to cleanse.
Libo, to taste.	Nūnēro, to count.	Pūlo, to think.
Libēro, to free.	Nuncūpo, to call.	Quadro, to square.
Ligo, to bind.	Nuntio, to tell.	Rēcūpēro, to recover.
Liquo, to melt.	Nūto, to nod.	Rēfūlo, to refuse.
Litigo, to quarrel.	Obsecro, to beseech.	Retrigēro, to evol.
Lito, to appease by sa- crifice.	Obsēro, to look.	Rēgēlo, to thow.
Lūcubro, to fit up late, to study.	Obtempēro, to obey.	Rējāro, to repair.
Lustro, to survey.	Obtrunco, to kill.	Rēprālēto, to resem- ble, to shew; to pay money in advance.
Luxo, to put out of joint.	Obūro, to flop up.	Rēčēro, to unlock.
Macto, to slay, to su- fice.	Occo, to harrow.	Rīgo, to water.
Mando, to command, to commit.	Ödōro, to perfume.	Rōgo, to ask.
Māno, to fist.	Önēro, to load.	Rōlo, to wheel about.
Mātūro, to baslen.	Opto, to wif.	Rūcto, &c. -or, to belch.
Mēdico, &c. -or, to cure.	Orbo, to deprive.	Rūmīlo to chew the
Mēmōro, to tell.	Ordino, to put in order.	Runcō, to weed. (cud.
Meo, to go or pass.	Orno, to deck, to adorn.	Sacro, to consecrate.
Mērīdio, &c. -or, to sleep at noon.	Öro, to beg.	Sāgino, to fatten.
Migro, to remove.	Osc̄ito, &c. -or, to yawn, to be listless.	Sālivo, to spit or slaver.
Milito, to be a soldier.	Pāen, to subdue.	Salto, to dance.
Ministro, to serve.	Palpito to beat or throb.	Sālūto, to salute.
Mitigo, to pacify.	Palpo, to stroke, to gain by flattery.	Sāno, to heal.
Munstro, to bew or tell.	Pārento, to perform fu- neral rites, to revenge.	Sātio, to satisfy.
Mulco, to beat.	Pāro, to prepare.	Sātūro, to fill, to glut.
Multo, &c. -to, to fine.	Patro, to perform.	Scārifico, to lance or open.
Mussi, &c. -to, to mutter.	Pecco, to sin.	Screo, to hawk or retch in spitting.
Mūtilo, to maim.	Pēnetrō, to pierce.	Sēcundo, to prosper.
Mūto, to change.	Persēvēro, to continue constant.	Sēdo, to allay.
	Pio, to expiate.	Sēpāro, to sever.
	Piāco, to appraise.	Servo, to keep.
	Plōro, to bewail.	Sibilo, to bite.
	Porto, to carry.	Sicco, to dry.
	Potūlo, to demand.	Signo, to mark out.
	Privō, to deprive.	

Signifīco, to mean, to give notice.	Sulco, to furrow.	Vasto, to lay waste.
Simūlo, to pretend.	Sūpēto, to overcome.	Vellico, to flick, twitch or pinch; to taunt or rail at.
Sōcio, to match, to join.	Suppēdīte, to afford.	Vēlo, to cover.
Sōllečto, to stir up, to disquiet.	Sūfurro, to whisper.	Ventilo, to fan.
Somnio, to dream.	Tardo, to stop.	Verbēro, to whisper.
Specō, to behold.	Taxo, to rate, to reprove.	Vestigo, to search for.
Spēro, to hope.	Tēmēro, to desile.	Vibro, to brandish, to shake.
Spīro, to breathe.	Tempēro, to temper.	Viduo, to deprive.
Spōlio, to rob.	Tēnuo, to make small.	Vigilo, to watch.
Spūmo, to foam.	Tērebro, to bore.	Vindīco, to claim, to revenge.
Stagno, to stand in water.	Termīno, to bound.	Viōlo, to violate.
Stillo, to drop.	Titillo, to tickle.	Vitio, to spoil.
Stimūlo, to goad, to vex.	Titūba, to stagger.	Vito, to fling.
Stīpo, to stuff, to guard.	Tōlēro, to bear.	Vitūpēro, to blame.
Strangūlo, to strangle.	Trāno, to swim over.	Vōco, to call.
Strīgo, to breathe, or rest, in work, as oxen, or horses do.	Trīpūdio, to caper.	Vōlo, to fly.
Sūdo, to sweat.	Triumpho, to triumph.	Vōro, to devour.
Suffīco, to strangle.	Trūcīdo, to kill.	Vulgo, to spread abroad.
Suffīco, to burn incense.	Turbo, to disturb.	Vulnero, to wound.
Sugillo, to taunt or jeer.	Ülūlo, to bowl.	
	Umbro, to shade.	
	Vācillo, to waver.	
	Vāco, to want, to be at leisure.	

Exc. 1. *Do, dēdī, dātum, dāre, to give: so, venundo, to sell; circundo, to surround; pessundo, to overthrow; satisfīdo, to give surety; venundēdī, venundātum, venundāre, &c.* The other compounds of *do* are of the third conjugation.

Sto, stēti, statum, to stand. Its compounds have *stīti*, *stītum*, and oftener *stātum*; as, *presto*, *pressīli*, *prestītum*, or *prestātum*, to excel, to perform. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-flo*.

Exc. 2. *Lāvo, lāvi, lōtum, lautum, lāvālum, to wash.*

Pōto, pōtari, pōtum, or pōtātum, to drink.

Jūvo, jūvi, jūtum, to help; fut. part. juvaturus. So adjūvo.

Exc. 3. *Cūbo, cūbui, cūbītum, to ly.* So, *ac-*, *ex-*, *oc-*, *rē-cūbo*. The other compounds insert an *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dōmo, dōmūi, dōmītum, to subdue. So *ē-*, *per-dōmo*.

Sōno, sōnui, sōnītum, to sound. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-sōno*.

Tōno, tōnūi, tōnītum, to thunder. So *at-* *circum-*, *in-*, *superin-*, *rē-tōno*. Horace has *intōnatus*.

Vēto, vētui, vētītum, to forbid.

Crēpo, crēpui, crēpūm, to make a noise. So *con-, in-, per-, rē-crēpo*: *discrēpo* has rather *discrēpāvi*.

Exc. 4. *Frīco, frīcui, frīctūm, to rub.* So *af-, circum-, con-, de-, ef-, in-, per-, re-frīco*. But some of these have also *atum*.

Sēco, sēcui, sēctūm, to cut. So *circum-, con-, dē-, dis-, ex-, in-, inter-, per-, prae-, rē-, sub-sēco*.

Nēco, nēcui, or nēcāvi, nēcātūm, to kill. So *inter-, ē-nēco*: but these have oftener *ētūm*; *eneētūm, interneētūm*.

Mīcō, mīcui, — to glitter, to shine. So *inter-, prō-mīcō*. *Emīcō, has ēmīcui, ēmīcātūm: dīmīcō, dīmīcāvī, dīmīcātūm, rarely, dīmīcui, to fight.*

Exc. 5. These three want both pret. and sup. *lābo, to fall or faint*; *nexo, to bind*; and *plico, to fold*.

*Plico, compounded with a noun, or with the prepositions *re*, *sub*, has āvi, ātūm; as, duplīco, duplīcāvī, duplīcātūm, to double.* So *multi-, sup-, re-plico*.

The other compounds of *plico* have either *āvi* and *ātūm*, or *ui* and *ītūm*; as *applico, applicui, applicātūm, or -āvi, ātūm, to apply.* So *im-, com-plico*. *Explīco, to unfold, has commonly explicui, explicātūm; but when it signifies to explain or interpret, explicāvī, explicātūm.*

Second Conjugation.

Verbs of the second conjugation have *ui* and *ītūm*; as *hābēo, habui, habitūm, to have.*—So,

Ādhībeo, to admit, to use.

Cohībeo, īhībeo, to restrain.

Exhibeo, to shew, to give.

Pēthībeo, to say, to give out.

Prohibeo, to hinder.

Posthābeo, to value less.

Prēbeo, to afford.

Rēdhībeo, to return or take back a thing that was sold for some fault.

Dēbeo, to owe.

Mēreo, to deserve: Com-, de-, e-, per-, pro-mēreo, or mercor.

Mōneo, to admonish: Ad-, com-, prae-mōneo.

Terreo, to terrify: Abs-, con-, de-, ex-, per-terreo.

Dirībeo, to count over, to distribute.

Neuter verbs which have *ui* want the supine; as, *ārēo, ārūi, to be dry*: So,

Āgeo, ē-sco, to be sour.

Algeo, to be white.

Candeo, to be white.

Calleo, to be hard.

Cāneo, to be boary.

Clāreo, to be bright.

Ēgeo, indīgeo, to want.

Ēmīneo, to stand above others.

Flacceo, to wither.

Flōreo, to flourish.

Fāeteo, to sink.

Frendeo, to gnash the teeth.

Frondeo, to bear leaves.

Horreo, to be rough.

Hūmeo, to be wet.

Immīneo, to hang over.

Langueo,

Langueo, to languish.	Päteo, to be open.	Stüdeo, to favour.
Liqueo, licui, to melt, to be clear.	Püteo, to flink.	Stüpeo, to be amazed.
Mäceo, to be lean.	Putreo, to rot.	Splendeo, to shine
Mädeo, to be wet.	Ranceo, to be mouldy.	Täpeo, to be warm.
Marceo, to wither.	Rägeo, to be stiff.	Torpeo, to be benumbed.
Müceo, to be mouldy.	Rükeo, to be red.	Tümeo, to swell.
Niteo, to shine.	Squäleo, to be foul.	Vigen, to be strong
Palleo, to be pale.	Sordeo, to be nasty.	Vireo, to be green.

But the neuter verbs which follow, together with their compounds, have the supine, and are regularly conjugated: *Väleo*, to be in health; and *equi*-, *con*-, *e*-, *in*-, *præ*-*väleo*: *Pläceo*, to please; and *com*-, *per*-*pläceo*: *displäceo*, to displease: *Cäreo*, to want; *Päreo*, to appear, to obey; and *ap*-, *com*-*päreo*: *Jäceo*, to lie; and *ad*-, *circum*-, *inter*-, *ob*-, *præ*-, *sub*-, *super*-*jäceo*: *Cäleo*, to be warm; and *con*-, *in*-, *ob*-, *per*-, *re*-*cäleo*: *Nöceo*, to hurt; *Döleo*, to be grieved; and *con*-, *de*-, *in*- *per*-*döleo*: *Coaleo*, to grow together: *Liceo*, which in the active signifies, to be lawful, to be valued; and, what is singular, in the passive, to bid a price: *Läteo*, to lurk, the compounds of which want the supine, *deliteo*, *inter*-, *sub*-*lateo*: as likewise do those of *Täceo*, *-cui*, *-citung*, to be silent, *con*-, *ob*-, *re*-*ticeo*.

These three active verbs likewise want the supine: *Tümeo*, *-ui*, to fear; *Sileo*, *-ui*, to conceal; *Arceo*, *-cui*, to drive away: But the compounds of *arceo* have the supine; as, *exerceo*, *exercui*, *exercitung*, to exercise. So *co-erceo*, to restrain.

Exc. 1. The following verbs in *BEO* and *CEO*:

Jübeo, *jussi*, *jussum*, to order. So *fidë-jübeo*, to bail, or be surety for.

Sorbeo, *sorbui*, *sorptum*, to sup. So *ab-sorbeo*, to suck in; *ex*-, *re*-*sorbeo*. We also find *absorpsi*, *exsorpsi*: *Exsorptum*, *re*-*sorptum*, are not in use.

Döceo, *döcui*, *döctum*, to teach. So *ad*-, *con*-, *de*-, *e*-, *per*-, *sub*-*döceo*.

Misceo, *mis cui*, *mis tum* or *mixtum*, to mix. So *ad*-, *com*-, *im*-, *inter*-, *per*-, *re*-*misceo*.

Mulceo, *mul si*, *mul sum*, to stroak, to soothe. So *ad*-, *circum*-, *com*-, *de*-, *per*-, *re*-*mulceo*.

Lüceo, *luxi*, — to shine. So *al*-, *circum*-, *col*-, *di*-, *ē*-, *il*-, *inter*-, *per*-, or *pel*-, *præ*-, *pro*-, *re*-, *sub*-, *trans*-*lüceo*.

Exc. 2. The following verbs in *DEO*:

Prandeo, *prandi*, *pranſum*, to dine.

Video, *vidi*, *vifum*, to see. So *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *rē-**video*.

Sēdeo, *sēdi*, *ſeffum*, to sit. So *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *poſ-*, *præ-*, *rē*, *ſub*-*ideo*: *Circumsēdeo*, or *circumſēdeo*, *ſupersēdeo*. But *dē-*, *diſ-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *ſub*-*ideo*, seem to want the supine.

Strideo, *ſtridi*, — to make a noise.

Pendeo, *pēpendi*, *penſum*, to hang. So *de-*, *im-*, *pro-*, *ſuper-pendeo*.

Mordeo, *mōmordi*, *morfum*, to bite. So *ad-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *re-mordeo*.

Spondeo, *ſpōpondi*, *ſponſum*, to promise. So *de-*, *reſpondeo*.

Tondeo, *tōtondi*, *tonſum*, to clip. So *at-*, *circum-*, *de-tondeo*.

But the compounds of these verbs do not double the first syllable; thus, *dependi*, *remordi*, *reſpondi*, *attondi*, &c.

Rideo, *rīſi*, *rīſum*, to laugh. So *ar-*, *de-*, *ir-*, *ſub-rīdeo*.

Suādeo, *ſuāſi*, *ſuāſum*, to advise. So *diſ-*, *per-ſuādeo*.

Ardeo, *arſi*, *arſum*, to burn. So *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-ardeo*.

Exc. 3. The following verbs in *GEO*:

Augeo, *auxi*, *auclum*, to increase. So *ad-*, *ex-augeo*.

Lūgeo, *luxi*, — to mourn. So *e-*, *pro-*, *ſub-lugeo*.

Frīgeo, *frixi*, — to be cold. So *per*, *re-frīgeo*.

Tergeo, *terſi*, *terſum*, to wipe. So *abs-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergeo*.

Mulgeo, *mulſi*, *mulſum*, or *mulclum*, to milk. So *e-*, *im-mulgeo*.

Indulgeo, *indulſi*, *indulſum*, to grant, to indulge.

Urgeo, *urſi*, — to press. So *ad-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *ſub-*, *ſuper-urgeo*.

Fulgeo, *fulſi*, — to shine. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *ſuper-fulgeo*.

Turgeo, *turſi*, — to fwell. *Algeo*, *alſi*, — to be cold.

Exc. 4. The following verbs in *IEO* and *LEO*:

Vieo, *viēvi*, *viētum*, to bind with twigs, to hoop a vessel.

Cieo, (*cīvi*) *cītum*, to stir up, to rouse. So *ac-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-cieo*. *Cīvi* comes from *cīo* of the fourth conjugation.

Fleo, *flevi*, *fletum*, to weep. So *af-*, *de-fleo*.

Compleo, *complēvi*, *complētum*, to fill. So the other compounds of *pleo*; *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *adim-*, *op-*, *re-*, *ſup-pleo*.

Dēleo,

Dēleo, dēlēvi, dēlētum, to destroy, to blot out.

*ōleo, to smell, has ūlui, ūlītum. So likewise its compounds which have a similar signification; ob-, per-, red-, sub-ōleo. But such of the compounds as have a different signification make ēvi and ētum; thus *exōleo, exōlēvi, exēlētum, to fade*. So *īnōleo, -ēvi, -ētum, or -ītum, to grow into use; obsōleo, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow out of use. ḥōleo, to abolish, has ḥōlēvi, ḥōlītum; and ḥōlēco, to grow up, to burn, adōlēvi, adulītum.**

Exc. 5. Several verbs in *NEO, QUEO, REO, and SEO.*

Māneo, manſi, mansum; to stay. So per-, rē-mānco.

Neo, nōvi, nētum, to spin. So per-neo.

Tēneo, tēnui, tentum, to hold. So con-, de-, dis-, ob-, re-, sus-tēneo. But attīneo, pertīneo, are not used in the supine; and seldom abſtīneo.

Torqueo, torſi, tortum, to throw, to whirl, to twist. Thus, con-, de-, dis-, ex-, in-, ob-, re-torqueo.

Hārco, hāſi, hāſum, to stick. Thus, ad-, con-, in-, ob-, sub-hārco.

Torreo, torrui, torſum, to roast. So extorreo.

Censeo, censūl, censum, to judge. So ac-, per-, re-censeo, to review; succenseo, to be angry.

Exc. 6. Verbs in *VEO* have *vi, tum*; *as, mōveo, mōvi, mōtum, to move; fōveo, fōvi, fōtum, to cherish. So con-, rē-foveo. So vōveo, to vow, or wish, and dēvōveo.*

Fāveo, to favour; has fāvi, fautum; and cāveo, to beware of; cāvi, cautum. So prē-cāveo.

Neuter verbs in *veo* want the supine; *as, pāveo, pāvi, to be afraid.*

Ferveo, to boil, to be hot, makes ferbui. So de-, cf-, in-, per-, rē-serveo.

Conniveo, to wink, has connīvi and connixi.

Exc. 7. The following verbs want both preterite and supine: *Lačeo, to suck milk, līveo, to be black and blue; scāteo, to abound; renīdeo, to shine; māreо, to be sorrowful; āveo, to desire; polleo, to be able; flāveo, to be yellow; denſeo, to grow thick; glabreо, to be smooth or bare. To these add calveo, to be bald; cēveo, to wag the tail, as dogs do when they fawn on one; hēbeo, to be dull; ūveo, to be moist; and some others.*

Third Conjugation.

Verbs of the third conjugation form their preterite and supine variously, according to the termination of the present.

10.

1. *Facio, fēci, fācūm*, to do, to make. So the compounds which retain *a*: *lucrī-, magnī-, ārē-, cālē-, mādē-, tēpē-, bēnē-, mālē-, sātis-fācio*, &c. But those which change *a* into *i* have *eām*; as, *afficio, affēci, affectum*. So, *con-, de-, ef-, in-, inter-, of-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, suf-*
ficio. Note; *FACIO*, compounded with a noun, verb, or adverb, retains *a*; but when compounded with a preposition, it changes *a* into *i*.

Some compounds of *facio* are of the first conjugation; as, *Amplifīco, sacrifico, terrifīco, magnifīco*; *gratifīcor*, to gratify, or do a good turn, to give up; *lūdīfīcor*, to mock.

Jācio, jēci, jačūm, to throw. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dif-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, re-, sub-, super-, superin-, tra-jūcio*; in the supine *-eām*.

The compounds of *spēcio* and *lācio*, which themselves are not used, have *exi*, and *eām*; as, *aspīcio, aspēci, a-*
spēctum, to behold. So *circum-, con-, de-, dif-, in-, intro-, per-, pro-, re-, retro-, su-*
spīcio.

Allīcio, allexi, alleām, to allure. So *il-, pel-līcio*; but *elīcio*, to draw out, has *elūciūtum*.

2. *Fōdio, fōdī, fōfūm*, to dig, to delve. So *ad-, circum-, con-, ef-, in-, inter-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-, transfōdīo*.

Fūgio, fūgi, fūgītum, to fly. So *au-*, (for *ab-*), *con-, de-, dif-, ef-, per-, pro-, re-, suf-, subter-, transfūgio*.

3. *Cāpio, cēpi, captūm*, to take. So *av-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, oc-, per-, præ-, re-, suf-cīpīo*, (in the supine *-ceptum*;) and *ante-cāpīo*.

Rāpio, rāpī, raptūm, to pull or snatch. So *ab-, ar-, cor-, de-, di-, e-, præ-, pro-, sur-rāpīo, -rāpī, -reptūm*.

Sāpio, sōpī, — to favour, to be wise. So *consīpīo*, to be well in one's wits; *desīpīo*, to be foolish; *resīpīo*, to come to one's wits.

Cūpīo, cūpīvī, cūpītūm, to desire. So *con-, dif-, per-cūpīo*.

4. *Pārio, pēpēri, parītūm*, or *partūm*, to bring forth a child, to get. Its compounds are of the fourth conjugation.

Quātīo,

Quātio quāssi, quāssum, to shake: but *quāssi* is hardly used. Its compounds have *cussi*, *cussum* as, *concūtio*, *con-cussi* *concussum*, So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-*, *reper-*, *sub-cūtio*.

UO has *ui*, *ūtum*; as,

Arguo, argui, argūtum, to shew, to prove, or argue, to reprove. So *co-*, *red-arguo*, to confute.—So,

Acuo, Exācuo, to sharpen.

Batuo, vel battuo, to beat, to fight, to fence with foils.

Induo, to put-on cloths.

Exuo, to put off cloths.

Imbuo, to wet or imbrue, to season or instruct.

Mīnuo, to lessen: Com-, de-, di-, im-minuo.

Spuo, to spit: Con-, de-, ex-, in-spuo.

Exc. 1. *Fluo, fluxi, fluxum*, to flow. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *trans-fluo*.

Struo, struxi, strūctum, to put in order, to build. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *sub-*, *super-* *struo*.

Exc. 2. *Luo, lui, luītum*, to pay, to wash away, to suffer punishment. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as *abluo, -ui, -ūtum*, to wash away, to purify. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *pol-*, *pro-*, *sub-luo*.

Ruo, rui, ruītum, to rush, to fall. Its compounds have *ūtum*; as *diruo, dirui, dirūtum*, to overthrow. So *ē-*, *ob-*, *prō-*, *sub-ruo*. *Corruo*, and *irruo*, want the supine; as likewise *do mētuo*, to fear; *pluo*, to rain; *ingruo*, to assail; *congruo*, to agree; *respuo*, to reject, to slight; *annuo*, to assent; and the other compounds of the obsolete verb *nuo*; *abnuo*, to refuse; *innuo*, to nod or beckon with the head; *rēnuo*, to deny: all which have *ui* in the preterite.

BO has *bi*, *būtum*; as,

Bībo, bībi, bibītum, to drink, So *ad-*, *com-*, *e-*, *im-*, *per-*, *præ-bībo*.

Exc. 1. *Scribo, scripti, scriptum*, to write. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *supra-*, *trans-scribo*.

Nūbo, nūpsi, nuptum, to veil, to be married. So *de-, e-, in-, ob-nubo.* Instead of *nūpsi*, we often find *nupta sum.*

Exc. 2. The compounds of *cūbo* in this conjugation insert an *m* before the last syllable; as, *accumbo, accūbui, accūbitum.* to recline at table. So *con-, de-, dis-, in-, oc-, pro-, re-, suc-, superin-cumbo, -cūbui, -cūbitum.*

These two verbs want the supine; *scābo, scābi, to scratch; lambo, lambi, to lick.* So *ad-, circum-, dē-, p̄e-lambo.*

Glūbo and *deglūbo*, to strip, to flay, want both pret. & sup. C O.

1. *Dīco, dīxi, dītum, to say.* So *ab-, ad-, con-, contra-, e-, in-, inter-, p̄e-, pro-dīco.*

Dūco, dūxi, dūctum, to lead. So *ab-, ad-, circum-, con-, de-, dī-, e-, in-, intro-, ob-, per-, p̄e-, pro-, re-, sc-, sub-, tra-, or trans-dūco.*

2. *Vīco, vīci, vīctum, to overcome.* So *con-, de-, e-, per-, rē-vīco.*

Parco, pēpercī, parsūn, seldom parsī, parsītum, to spare. So *comparco, or compērco, which is seldom used.*

Ico, īci, īctum, to strike.

SCO has *vi, tum; as,*

Nōsco, nōvi, nōtum, to know; fut. part, nosciturus. So *Dignōsto, to dīsinguīsō; ignōsco, to pardon; also inter-, per-, p̄e-nosco.*

Cresco, -ēvi, -ētum, to grow: Con- de-, ex-, re-, and without the supine, ac, in-, per-, pro-, suc-, super-cresco.

Quiesco, -ēvi, -ētum, to rest: Ac-

con-, inter-, rē-quiesco.

Scisco, -īvi, -ītum, to ordain; ad-,

or ascisco, to take to, to associate;

concisco, to vote, to commit; also p̄e-, re-cisco; descisco, to revolt.

Suesco, to be accustomed: Af-, con-,

de-, in-suesco, -ēvi, -ētum.

Exc. 1. *Agnōsco, agnōvi, agnōtum, to own; cognōsco, cognōvi, cognōtum, to know.* So *rēcognōsco, to review.*

Pasco, pāvi, pāstum, to feed. So *com-, dē-pasco,*

Exc. 2. The following verbs want the supine.

Disco, dīdīci, to learn. So *ad-, con-, de-, e-, per-, p̄e-dīsco, dīdīci.*

Posco, pōpōsci, to demand. So *ap-, dē-, ex-, rē-posco.*

Compēsco, compēscui, to stop to restrain. So *disposco, dispeſcui, to separate.*

Exc. 3. *Glīsco, to grow; fatīsco, to be weary; and likewise*

likewise inceptive verbs, want both preterite and supine; as *arefco*, to become dry. But these verbs borrow the preterite and supine from their primitives; as *ardefco*, to grow hot, *arfi*, *arsum*, from *ardeo*.

DO has *di*, *sum*; as,

Scando, *scandi*, *scansum*, to climb; *ēdo*, *ēdi*, *ēsum*, to eat. So,

<i>Ascendo</i> , to mount.	<i>Cūdo</i> , to forge, to stamp	<i>Mando</i> , to send: <i>Præ-</i> ,
<i>Descendo</i> , to go down:	or coin: <i>Ex-</i> , <i>in-</i> ,	<i>re-mando</i> .
<i>Con-</i> , <i>c-</i> , <i>ex-</i> , <i>in-</i> ,	<i>per-</i> , <i>pro-</i> , <i>re-cūdo</i> .	<i>Prehendo</i> , to take hold
<i>transcendo</i> .	<i>Defendo</i> , to defend.	of: <i>Ap-</i> , <i>com-</i> , <i>de-</i>
<i>Accendo</i> , to kindle:	<i>Offendo</i> , to strike a-	<i>prehendo</i> .
<i>In-</i> , <i>suc-cendo</i> .	<i>gainf</i> , to offend, to find.	

Exc. 1. *Divido*, *diviſi*, *diviſum*, to divide.

Rādo, *rāfi*, *rāſum*, to shave. So *ab-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *sub-rādo*.

Claudo, *clauſi*, *clauſum*, to close. So *circum-*, *con-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sc-clūdo*.

Plaudo, *plauiſi*, *plauiſum*, to clap hands for joy. So *ap-*, *circum-plaudo*: also *com-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *sup-plōdo*, *plōſi*, *plōſum*.

Lūdo, *lūſi*, *lūſum*, to play. So *ab-*, *al-*, *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-lūdo*.

Trūdo, *trūſi*, *trūſum*, to thrust. So *abſ-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *pro-*, *re-trūdo*.

Lēdo, *lēſi*, *lēſum*, to hurt. So *al-*, *col-*, *e-*, *il-līdo*, *-līſi*, *-līſum*.

Rōdo, *rōſi*, *rōſum*, to gnaw. So *ab-*, *ar-*, *circum-*, *cor-*, *de-*, *e-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-rodo*.

Vādo, to go, wants both preterite and supine: but its compounds have *ſi*, *ſum*; as *invādo*, *invāſi*, *invāſum*, to invade, or fall upon. So *circum-*, *ē-*, *super-vādo*.

Cēdo, *ceſſi*, *ceſſum*, to yield. So *abſ-*, *at-*, *antē-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *diſ-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *rē-*, *retro-*, *ſe-*, *suc-cēdo*.

Exc. 2. *Pando*, *pandi*, *paſſum*, and sometimes *paſſum*, to open, to spread. So *diſ-*, *ex-*, *op-*, *præ-*, *rē-pando*.

Comēdo, *comēdi*, *comēſum*, or *comēſtum*, to eat. But *ēdo* itself and the rest of its compounds have always *ēſum*; as, *ad-*, *amb-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *sub-*, *super-ēdo*, *-ēdi*, *-ēſum*.

Fundo, *fūdi*, *fūſum*, to pour forth. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *diſ-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *of-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *rē-*, *ſuſ-*, *super-*, *superin-*, *trans-fundo*,

Scindo, scidi, scissum, to cut. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *trans-**scindo*.

Findo, fidi, fissum, to cleave. So *con-*, *dis-*, *in-**findo*.

Exc. 3. *Tundo, tūtūdi, tunsum, and sometimes tūsum, to beat.* The compounds have *tūdi*, *tūsum*; as, *contundo*, *contūdi*, *contūsum*, to bruise. So *ex-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *re-**tundo*.

Cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, to fall. The compounds want the supine; as, *ac-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *pro-*, *suc-**cido*, *-cidi*, —: except, *incido*, *incidi*, *incāsum, to fall in*; *recido*, *recidi*, *recāsum, to fall back*; and *occido*, *occidi*, *oc-**cāsum, to fall down*.

Cādo, cēcidi, cāsum, to cut, to kill. The compounds change *ē* into *ī* long; as, *accido*, *accidi*, *accāsum, to cut* about. So *abf-*, *con-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *oc-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *rē-*, *suc-cido*.

Tendo, tētēndi, tensum, or tentum, to stretch out. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *ob-*, *præ-*, *pro-**tendo*, *-tēndi*, *-tensum* or *-tentum*. But the compounds have rather *tentum*, except *of-**tendo*, to shew; which has commonly *oflensum*.

Pēdo, pēpēdi, pedītum, to break wind backwards. So *op-**pēdo*.

Pendo, pēpendi, pensum, to weigh. So *ap-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *re-*, *sus-**pendo*, *-pendi*, *-pensum*.

Exc. 4. The compounds of *do* have *didi*, and *dītum*; as, *abdo*, *abdidi*, *abdītum, to hide.* So *ad-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *dī-*, *ē-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trado*: also *decon-*, *recon-do*: and *coad-*, *supperad-do*; and *deper-*, *disper-do*. To these add *crēdo*, *crēdidi*, *crēdītum, to believe*; *vendo*, *vendidi*, *vendītum, to sell.* *Abscondo*, to hide, has *abscondi*, *abscondītum*, rarely *abscondidi*.

Exc. 4. These three want the supine: *strido, stridi, to creak*; *rūdo, rūdi, to bray like an ass*; and *sīdo, sīdi, to sink down*. The compounds of *sīdo* borrow the preterite and supine from *sēdeo*; as, *consido*, *consēdi*, *consēssum, to sit down*. So *af-*, *circum-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *rē-*, *sub-sīdo*.

Note, Several compounds of verbs in *do* and *deo*, in some respects resemble one another, and therefore should be carefully distinguished; as, *concido*, *concedo*, *concido*; *consido* and *consideo*; *confundo*, *confundo*, &c.

GO, GUO has *xi*, *etum*; as,

Rēgo, *rexī*, *rectūm*, to rule, to govern; *dirīgo*; *-exī*, *-ētūm*, to direct; *arrīgo*, & *ērīgo*, *-exī*, *-ētūm*, to raise up: *corrīgo*, to correct; *porrīgo*, to stretch out; *subrīgo*, to raise up. So

Cingo, *cinxī*, *cinctūm*, to gird, to surround: *Ac-*, *dis-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suc-**cingo*.

Flīgo, to dash or beat upon: *Af-*, *con-*, *in-**flīgo*: also *proflīgo*, to rout, of the first conj.

Jungo, to join; *abjungo*, to separate: *Ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *se-*, *sub-**jungo*.

Līgo, to lick: *de-*, *c-**lingo*; & *pollīgo*, to anoint a dead body.

Mungo, to wipe or clean the nose.

ēmungo, to wipe, to beat.

Plango, to beat, to lament.

Stingo, or *Stinguo*, to dash out, to extinguish: *Di-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *præ-*, *re-**stinguo*.

Tēgo, to cover: *Circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-**tēgo*.

Tingo, or *Tinguo*, to dip or dye: *Con-*, *in-**tingo*.

Ungo, or *Unguo*, to anoint: *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *super-**ungo*.

Exc. 1. *Surgo*, to rise, has *surrexī*, *surrectūm*. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-**surgo*.

Pergo, *perrexī*, *perrectūm*, to go forward.

Stringo, *strinxi*, *strictūm*, to bind, to strain, to lop: So *ad-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-**stringo*.

Fīngō, *finxi*, *fiētūm*, to feign. So *af-*, *con-*, *ef-*, *re-**fīngō*.

Pīngō, *pinxi*, *piētūm*, to paint. So *ap-*, *de-**pīngō*.

Exc. 2. *Frango*, *frēgi*, *fractūm*, to break. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-**fringo*, *-frēgi*, *-fractūm*.

āgo, *ēgi*, *ātūm*, to do, to drive. So *ab-*, *ad-*, *ex-*, *red-*, *sub-*, *trans-*, *transad-īgo*; and *circum-*, *per-āgo*: *cōgo*, for *coāgo*, *coēgi*, *coātūm*, to bring together, to force.

These three compounds of *āgo* want the supine: *sātāgo*, *sātēgi*, to be busy about a thing; *prōdīgo*, *prodēgi*, to lavish, or spend riotously; *dēgo*, for *deāgo*; *dēgi*, to live or dwell. *Ambīgo*, to doubt, to dispute, also wants the preterite.

Lēgo, *lēgi*, *lectūm*, to gather, to read. So *al-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-**lēgo*: also *col-*, *de-*, *e-*, *recol-*, *selīgo*, which change *e* into *i*.

Dīlīgo, to love, has *dilexī*, *dilectūm*. So *neglīgo*, to neglect; and *intellīgo*, to understand; but, *neglīgo* has sometimes *neglēgi*, Sall. Jug. 40.

Exc. 3. *Tango*, *tēlīgi*, *taētūm*, to touch. So *at-*, *con-*, *ob-*, *per-**tingo*; thus, *attīngō*, *attēgi*, *attātūm*, &c.

Pungō,

Pungo, *pūpūgi*, *punctum*, to prick or sting. The compounds have *punxi*; as, *compungo*, *compunxi*, *compunctionum*. So *dis-*, *ex-*, *inter-pungo*: but *repungo* has *repunxi*, or *repūpūgi*.

Pango, *panxi*, *patum*, to fix, to drive in, to compose: or *pēpīgi*, which comes from the obsolete verb *pāgo*, to bargain, for which we use *paciscor*. The compounds of *pango*, have *pēgi*; as, *compingo*, *compēgi*, *compatūm*, to put together. So *im-*, *ob-*, *sup-pingo*.

Exc. 4. *Spargo*, *sparsi*, *sparsum*, to spread. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-spengo*.

Mergo, *merfi*, *mersum*, to dip, or plunge. So *de-*, *e-*, *im-*, *sub-mergo*.

Tergo, *terfi*, *tersum*, to wipe, or clean. So *abs-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *per-tergo*.

Figo, *fixi*, *fixum*, to fix or fasten. So *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *of-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *suf-*, *trans-figo*.

Frigo, *frixi*, *frixum*, or *fribūm*, to fry.

Exc. 5. These three want the supine: *clango*, *clanxi*, to sound a trumpet; *ningo*, or *ninguo*, *ninxi*, to snow; *ango*, *anxi*, to vex. *Vergo*, to incline or lie towards, wants both preterite and supine. So *e-*, *de-*, *in-vergo*.

HO, JO.

1. *Trābo*, *traxi*, *tractum*, to draw. So *abs-*, *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-trābo*.

Vebo, *vexi*, *vedūm*, to carry. So *a-*, *ad-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *di-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præter-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-*, *trans-vēbo*.

2. *Mejo*, or *mingo*, *minxi*, *mitūm*, to make water. So *immejo*.

LO.

1. *Cōlo*, *cōlui*, *cultum*, to adorn, to inhabit, to honour, to till. So *ac-*, *circum-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-cōlo*: and likewise *occōlo*, *occului*, *occultum*, to hide.

Consōlo, *consului*, *consultum*, to advise or consult.

ālo, *ālui*, *alitum*, or contracted *altum*, to nourish.

Mōlo, *molui*, *molitum*, to grind. So *com-*, *e-*, *per-mōlo*. The compounds of *cello*, which itself is not in use, want the supine; as, *ante-*, *ex-*, *præ-cello*, *-cellui*, to excel. *Per-cello*, to strike, to astonish, has *percūli*, *percūsum*

Pelle,

Pello, *pēfūli*, *pulfum*, to thrust. So *ap-*, *af-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-pello*; *appūli*, *appulsum*, &c.

Fallo, *fēfelli*, *falfum*, to deceive. But *rēfello*, *refelli*, to confute, wants the supine.

3. *Vello*, *velli*, or *vulfi*, *vulfum*, to pull or pinch. So *a-*, *con-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *prē*, *re-vello*. But *de-*, *di-*, *per-vello*, have rather *velli*.

Sallo, *salli*, *salfum*, to salt. *Psallo*, *psalli*, — to play on a musical instrument, wants the supine.

Tollo, to lift up, to take away, in a manner peculiar to itself, makes *suſtūli*, and *ſublatum*; *Extollo*, *extūli*, *elātum*; but *attollo*, to take up, has neither preterite nor supine.

MO has *ui*, *itum*; as,

Gēmo, *gēmui*, *gemītum*, to groan. So *ad-*, or *ag-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *re-gēmo*.

Frēmo, *fremui*, *fremītum*, to rage or roar, to make a great noise. So *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-*, *per-frēmo*.

Vōmo, *ēvōmo*, *-ui*, *-itum*, to vomit or spew, to cast up.

Exc. 1. *Dēmo*, *dēmfi*, *dēmptum*, to take away.

Prōmo, *prōmfi*, *prōmptum*, to bring out. So *de-*, *ex-prōmo*.

Sūmo, *ſumpfi*, *ſumptum*, to take. So *ab-*, *af-*, *con-*, *de-*, *in-*, *prē-*, *re-*, *tranſūmo*.

Cōmo, *compfī*, *comptum*, to deck or dress.

These verbs are also used without the *p*; as *dēmfi*, *dēmtum*; *ſumfi*, *ſumtum*, &c.

Exc. 2. *Ēmo*, *ēmi*, *emptum*, or *emtum* to buy. So *ad-*, *dir-*, *ex-*, *inter-*, *per-*, *red-ēmo* and *co-ēmo*, *-emi*, *-emptūr* or *-emtum*.

Prēmo, *preſfi*, *preſsum*, to pres. So *ap-*, *com-*, *de-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *op-*, *per-*, *re-*, *ſup-prēmo*.

Trēmo, *trēmui*, to tremble, to quake for fear, wants the supine. So *at-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *in-trēmo*.

NO.

1. *Pōno*, *pōſui*, *pōſitum*, to put or place. So *ap-*, *ank-*, *circum-*, *com-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *im-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *poſt-*, *prē-*, *pro-*, *re-*, *ſe-*, *ſup-*, *ſuper-*, *ſuperim-*, *trans-pōno*.

Gigno, *gēnui*, *gēnītum*, to beget. So *con-*, *e-*, *in-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *re-gigno*.

Cāno, *cēcīni*, *cantum*, to sing. But the compounds have *cinui* and *centum*; as, *accīno*, *accīnui*, *accentum*, to sing in

in concert. So *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *su-cīno*; *oc-cīno*, and *oc-cāno*; *re-cīno* and *re-cāno*. But *oceanui*, *re-canui*, are not in use.

Temno, to despise, wants both preterite and supine: but its compound *Contemno*, to despise, to scorn, has *contempñi*, *contemptum*; or, without the *p*, *contensi*, *contemtum*.

2. *Sperno*, *sprēvi*, *sprētum*, to disdain or slight. So *desperno*.

Sterno, *strāvi*, *strātum*, to lay flat, to strow. So *ad-*, *con-*, *in-*, *præ-*, *pro-*, *sub-sterno*.

Sīno, *sīvi*, or *sīi*, *sītum*, to permit. So *desīno*, *desīvi*, oftener *desīi*, *desītum*, to leave off.

Līno *līvi*, or *lēvi*, *lītum*, to anoint or daub. So *al-*, *circum-*, *col-*, *de-*, *il-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *subter-*, *super-*, *superil-līno*.

Cerno, *crēvi*, seldom *crētum*, to see, to decree, to enter upon an inheritance. So *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *se-cerno*.

PO, QUO.

Verbs in *po* have *pī* and *pīum*; as, *Carpo*, *carpī*, *carpītum*, to pluck or pull, to crop, to blame.—So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *præ-cerpo*, *-cerpī*, *-cerpītum*.

Clēpo, *-pī*, *-pītum*, to steal. *Scalpo*, to scratch or engrave. So *Rēpo*, to creep: *Ad-*, *v. ar-*, *cor-*, *circum-*, *ex-scalpo*.

de-, *di-*, *e-*, *ir-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *Sculpo*, to grave or carve. So *ex-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-rēpo*, *-pī*, *in-sculpo*, *-pītum*.

Serpo, to creep as a serpent.

Exc. 1. *Strēpo*, *strēpui*, *strēpītum*, to make a noise. So *ad-*, *circum-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *ob-*, *per-strepo*.

Exc. 2. *Rumpo*, *rūpi*, *ruptum*, to break. So *ab-*, *cor-*, *di-*, *e-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ir-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *pro-rumpo*.

There are only two simple verbs ending in *QUO*, viz.

Cōquo, *coxi*, *cōtum*; to boil. So *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-cōquo*.

Linguo, *līqui*, —, to leave. The compounds have *lītum*; as, *rēlinquo*, *reliqui*, *reliūtum*, to forsake. So *de-*, and *dērē-linguo*.

RO.

1. *Quero* makes *quæsīvi*, *quæsītum*, to seek. So *ac-*, *an-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *per-*, *re-quīro*, *-quisīvi*, *-quisītum*.

Tēro, *trīvi*, *trītum*, to wear, to bruise. So *at-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *pro-*, *sub-tēro*.

Verro, *verri*, *versum*, to sweep, brush, or make clean. So *ā-*, *con-*, *dē-*, *ē-*, *præ-*, *rē-verro*.

Uro, usſi, usſum, to burn. So *ăd-, amb-, comb-, de-, ex-, in-, pér-, sub-uro.*

Gero, geſſi, geſſum, to carry. So *ag-, con-, dī-, in-đrō-, rē-, ſug-gero.*

2. *Curro, cūcurri, curſum, to run.* So *ac-, con-, dē-, diſ-, ex-, in-, oc-, per-, prā-, prō-curro,* which sometimes double the first syllable, and sometimes not; as, *ac-currī, or ac-cūcurrī, &c.* *Circum-, rē-, ſuc-, trans-curro,* hardly ever redouble the first syllable.

3. *Sēro, sēvi, sātum, to sow.* The compounds which signify *planting* or *sowing*, have *sēvi, sātum*; as, *conſēro, conſēvi, conſitum, to plant together.* So *af-, circum-, dē-, diſ-, in-, inter-, ob-, pro-, rē-, ſub-, tranſēro.*

*Sēro, — to knit, had anciēntly sērui, ſertum which its compounds still retain; as, *afſēro, afferui, aſſertum, to claim.* So *con-, circum-, dē-, diſ-, ex-, in-, inter-sēro.**

4. *Fūro, to be mad, wants both preterite and supine.*

So has *sīvi, sītum; as,*

Arceſſo, arceſſi-vi, arceſſitum, to call or iend for. So *cā-pēſſo, to take; fāceſſo, to do, to go away; lāceſſo, to provoke.*

Exc. 1. *Vīſo, vīſi, — to go to see, to visit.* So *in-, rē-vīſo.* *Inceſſo, inceſſi, — to attack, to ſeize.*

Exc. 2. *Depſo, depſui, deſſulum, to knead.* So *con-, per-depſo.*

Pinſo, pinſui, or pinſi, pinſum, piſtum, or piſſitum, to bake.

TO.

1. *Fleſſo, has fleſſi, fleſſum, to bow.* So *circum-, de-, in-, re-, retro-fleſſo.*

Pleſſo, plexi, and plexui, plexum, to plait. So *impleſſo.*

Netto, nexi, and nexui, nexum, to tie or knit. So *ad-, vel an-, con-, circum-, in-, ſub-netto.*

Pedo, pexi and peſui, peſum, to drefs or comb. So *de-, ex-, re-peſo.*

2. *Mēto, meſſui, meſſum, to reap, mow, or cut down.* So *de-, e-, prā-mēto.*

3. *Pēto, pētīvi, pētītum, to ſeek, to pursue.* So *ap-, com-, ex-, im-, op-, re-, ſup-pēto.*

Mīto, mīſi, mīſum, to ſend. So *a-, ad-, com-, circum-, de-,*

dē-, dī-, ē-, ī-, inter-, intro-, ō-, per-, præ-, præter-, prō-, rē-, sub-, super-, trans-mittō.

Vertō, verī, versum, to turn. So a-, ad-, animad-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, præter-, re-, sub-, trans-vertō.

Sterto, stertui, — to snore. So de-sterto.

4. *Siflo*, an active verb, to stop, has *ſiliti, ſlātum*: but *ſiflo*, a neuter verb, to stand still, has *ſlēti, ſlātum*, like *ſlo*. The compounds have *ſiliti*, and *ſlātum*; as, *affiſlo, afflēti, afflātum*, to stand by. So *ab-, circum-, con-, de-, ex-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, re-, ſub-ſiflo*. But the compounds are seldom used in the supine.

VO, Xo.

There are three verbs in *vo*, which are thus conjugated:

1. *Vivo, vixi, vidum, to live. So ad-, con-, per-, pro-, re-, ſuper-vo.*

Solvo, ſolvi, ſolūtum, to loose. So abſolvo, to acquit, diſ- ex-, per-, re-ſolvo.

Volvo, volvi, volūtum, to roll. So ad-, circum-, con-, dē-, ē-, in-, ob-, per-, prō-, rē-, ſub-vo.

2. *Texo, to weave, (the only verb of this conjugation ending in *xo*), has *texui, textum*. So at-, circum- con-, de-, in-, inter-, ob-, per-, præ-, pro-, re-, ſub-texo.*

Fourth Conjugation.

Verbs of the fourth conjugation make the preterite in *avi*, and the supine in *ātum*; as,

Mūnio, mūnīvi, mūnītum, to fortify.

<i>Balbūtio, to flammer,</i>	<i>Glūtio, to swallow.</i>	<i>So,</i>
<i>to lisp, to flutter.</i>	<i>Grunnio, to grunt.</i>	<i>Mūglo, to belloſo.</i>
<i>Bullio, to boil or bubble.</i>	<i>Hinnio, to meig.</i>	<i>Mūtio, to mutter.</i>
<i>Condio, to ſeaſon.</i>	<i>Impēdio, to entangle,</i>	<i>Nutrio, to nouriſh.</i>
<i>Crōcio, to croak.</i>	<i>to binder.</i>	<i>Obēdio, to obey.</i>
<i>Cuſtōdio, to keep.</i>	<i>Insānio, to be mad.</i>	<i>Pāvio, to beat.</i>
<i>Dormio, to ſleep.</i>	<i>Irrētio, to enſnare.</i>	<i>Pipio, to peep like a</i>
<i>Effūtio, to babble or</i>	<i>Lafcīvio, to be wanton.</i>	<i>chicken.</i>
<i>blab out.</i>	<i>Lēnio, to eafe or mi-</i>	<i>Pōlio, to poliſh.</i>
<i>Frūtio, to inſtruct.</i>	<i>tigate.</i>	<i>Prūrio, to itab, to tickle.</i>
<i>Expēdio, to diſentangle,</i>	<i>Līgūrio, to eat delici-</i>	<i>Pūnio, to puniſh.</i>
<i>to free.</i>	<i>ouſly, to ſlabbet up.</i>	<i>Rēdimio, to bind.</i>
<i>Gannio, to yelp, or</i>	<i>Lippio, to be dim-</i>	<i>Rūgio, to roar like a</i>
<i>whine.</i>	<i>ſighted.</i>	<i>lion.</i>
<i>Gartio, to prate.</i>	<i>Mollio, to ſoften.</i>	<i>Szvio, to rage.</i>
		<i>Sāgio,</i>

Ságio, <i>præ-ságio</i> , <i>to guess</i> , to foresee.	Servio, <i>to serve</i> .	Tinnio, <i>to tinkle</i> .
Sário, <i>to weed</i> , <i>to rake</i> .	Sítio, <i>to thirst</i> .	Tuffio, <i>to cough</i> .
Scio, <i>to know</i> .	Sópio, <i>to tuck asleep</i> .	Vágio, <i>to cry or squeal</i> as a child.
Nescio, <i>not to know</i> .	Stábili-, <i>to stablysh</i> .	Súperbio, <i>to be proud</i> .
Scártúrio, <i>to gush out</i> .	Suffio, <i>to perfume</i> .	Vestio, <i>to clothe</i> .

Exc. 1. *Singultio*, *singultívi*, *singultum*, to sob.

Sepélío, *sepélivi*, *sepultum*, to bury.

Vénio, *vénī*, *ventum*, to come. So *ad-*, *ante-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *contra-*, *de-*, *e-*, *in-*, *inter-*, *intro-*, *ob-*, *per-*, *post-*, *præ-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-vénio*.

Véneo, *vénī*, — to be sold.

Sállo, *sálvi*, and *sálvi*, *saltum*, to leap. The compounds have commonly *sílvi*, sometimes *filii*, or *sílivi*, and *sul-tum*; as, *transílio*, *transílvi*, *transílli*, and *transílivi*, *trans-fultum*, to leap over. So *ab-*, *af-*, *circum-*, *con-*, *de-*, *dis-*, *ex-*, *in-*, *re-*, *sub-*, *super-sállo*.

Exc. 2. *Amicio*, has *amicūi*, *amicum*, seldom *amixi*, to cover or clothe.

Vincio, *vinxi*, *vincum*, to tie. So *circum-*, *de-*, *e-*, *re-vincio*,

Sancio, *sancxi*, *sancum*; and *sancívi*, *sancitum*, to establish or ratify.

Exc. 3. *Cambio*, *campsi*, *campsum*, to change money.

Sépio, *sep̄si*, *septum*, to hedge or inclose. So *circum-*, *dis-*, *inter*, *ob-*, *præ-sépio*.

Haurio, *hausi*, *haustum*, rarely *hausum*, to draw out, to empty, to drink. So *de-*, *ex-haurio*.

Sentio, *sensi*, *sensum*, to feel, to perceive, to think. So *af-*, *con-*, *dis-*, *per-*, *præ-*, *sub-sentio*.

Raucio, *rausi*, *rausum*, to be hoarse.

Exc. 4. *Sarcio*, *sarsi*, *sartum*, to mend or repair. So *ex-*, *re-sarcio*.

Farcio, *farsi*, *fartum*, to cram. So *con-farcio*, *ef-fercio*, or *ef-farcio*; *in-farcio*, or *in-farcio*; *re-farcio*.

Fulcio, *fulfi*, *fultum*, to prop or uphold. So *con-*, *ef-*, *in-*, *per-*, *sub-fulcio*.

Exc. 5. The compounds of *pário*, have *pérui*, *perfum*; as, *ápérío*, *apérui*, *áptum*, to open. So *úpérío*, to shut, to cover. But *compérío*, has *compéri*, *compertum*, to know a thing for certain. *Répérío*, *repéri*, *repertum*, to find.

E x c . 6 . The following verbs want the supine. *Cæcūtio*, *cæculi vi*, to be dimi-lighted. *Gestio*, *gesti vi*, to shew one's joy by the gesture of his body. *Glōcio*, *glōcivi*, to cluck or keckle as a hen. *Dementio*, *dementi vi*, to be mad. *Ineptio*, *inepti vi*, to play the fool. *Prōsiko*, *prosilvi*, to leap forth. *Fērōcio*, *ferōcivi*, to be fierce.

Fērio, to strike, wants both preterite and supine. So *rēfērio*, to strike again.

D E P O N E N T a n d C O M M O N V E R B S .

A deponent verb is that which, under a passive form, has an active or neuter signification ; as, *Liquor*, I speak ; *mōrīor*, I die.

A common verb, under a passive form, has either an active or passive signification ; as, *Crīmīnor*, I accuse ; or I am accused.

Most deponent verbs of old were the same with common verbs. They are called *Deponent*, because they have laid aside the passive sense.

Deponent and common verbs form the participle perfect in the same manner as if they had the active voice ; thus, *Lætor*, *lætātus*, *lætāri*, to rejoice ; *vēreor*, *veritus*, *vērēri*, to fear ; *fungor*, *functus*, *fungi*, to discharge an office ; *pōtior*, *pōtitus*, *pōtiri*, to enjoy, to be master of.

The learner should be taught to go through all the parts of deponent and common verbs, by proper examples in the several conjugations ; thus, *lætor*, of the first conjugation, like *amor* :

I n d i c a t i v e M o d e .

Pref. *Lætor*, I rejoice ; *lætāris*, vel *-āre*, thou rejoicest, &c.

Imp. *Lætabur*, I rejoiced, or did rejoice ; *lætabaris*, &c.

Perf. *Lætatus sum vel sui²*, I have rejoiced, &c.

Plu.-perf. *Lætatus eram vel fueram*, I had rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lætabor*, I shall or will rejoice ; *lætaberis*, or *-āber*, &c.

Lætaturus sum, I am about to rejoice, or I am to rejoice, &c.

S u b j u n c t i v e .

Pref. *Lætor*, I may rejoice ; *lætāris*, or *-āre*, &c.

Imp. *Lætarer*, I might rejoice ; *lætarēris*, or *-ārē*, &c.

Perf. *Lætatus sum vel fuerim*, I may have rejoiced, &c.

Plu.-perf. *Lætatus esses vel fuisset*, I might have rejoiced, &c.

Fut. *Lætatus fuerō*, I shall have rejoiced, &c.

* *Fui*, *fueram*, &c. are seldom joined to the participles of deponent verbs ; and not so often to those of passive verbs as *sum*, *eram*, &c.

Imperative.

Imperative.

Pref. *Lætare*, vel -ātor, rejoice thou; *lætator*, let him rejoice, &c.
Infinitive.

Pref. *Lætari*, to rejoice.

Perf. *Lætatus esse* vel *lætuisse*, to have rejoiced.

Fut. *Lætaturus esse*, to be about to rejoice.

Lætaturus suisse, to have been about to rejoice.

Participles.

Pref. *Lætans*, rejoicing.

Perf. *Lætatus*, having rejoiced.

Fut. *Lætaturus*, about to rejoice.

Lætandus, to be rejoiced at.

In like manner conjugate, in the First Conjugation,

Ābōmīnor, to abhor.	Commentor, to meditate on.	Infīcīor, to deny.
Ādūlor, to flatter.	tate on, or write what one is to say.	Infector, to pursue, to inveigh against.
Āmūlor, to vie with, to envy.	Concōnor, to ba.	Insīdīor, to lie in wait.
Altercor, to dispute, to make a repartee.	Conflictor, to struggle.	Interprētor, to explain.
Aprīcor, to bask in the sun.	Cōnor, to endeavour.	Jāculor, to dart.
Arbitrōr, to think.	Confīcor, to spy, to see.	Jōcor, to jest.
Aspernōr, to despise.	Contemplor, to view.	Lāmentor, to bewail.
Āverfor, to dislike.	Convīcor, to feast.	Lucrōr, to gain.
Auctiōnor, to sell by auction.	Cōrnīcor, to chatter like a crow.	Luētor, to wrestle.
Aucūpor, & -ō, to hunt after.	Cōmīnor, to blame.	Māchiōnor, to contrive.
Augūrōr, & -ō, to forebode, or presage by augury.	Cūnctor, to delay.	Mēdīcor, to cure.
Auipīcor, to take an omen, to begin.	Dētestor, to abhor.	Mēdītor, to muse or ponder.
Auxilīor, to assist.	Dōmīnor, to rule.	Mercīcor, to purchase.
Bacchor, to rage, to revel, to riot.	Ēpūlor, to feast.	Mētōr, to measure.
Calunīnor, to accuse falsely.	Exscētor, to curse.	Minōr, to threaten.
Cāvillor, to scoff.	Fānūlor, to serve.	Mīrōr, to wonder.
Caupōnor, to buckster, to retail.	Fēriōr, to keep holy-days.	Mōdērōr, to rule.
Causōr, to plead in excuse, to blame.	Frustrōr, to disappoint.	Mōdūlor, to play a tune.
Cōfōr, to meet in companies, to consort, to talk.	Fūrōr, to steal.	Mōrīcōr, to humour.
Cōmētōr, to revel.	Glōrīor, to boast.	Mōrōr, to delay.
Cōmītōr, to accompany.	Grātūlor, to rejoice, to wish one joy.	Mūnērōr, to present.
Cāvīr, to grudge.	Grāvōr, to grudge.	Mūthōr, to borrow.
Hāriōr, to conjecture.	Hārōr, to encourage.	Nūgor, to trifle.
Helluo, to guttle or gormandize, to waste.	Hallūcīnor to speak at random, to err.	Olētestor, to beseech.
Hortōr, to encourage.	Imāgīnor, to conceive.	Ōdōrōr, to smell.
Hallūcīnor to speak at random, to err.	Imītōr, to imitate.	Ōpērōr, to work.
Indignōr, to disdain.	Indīgnōr, to despise.	Ōpīnōr, to think.
		Ōpītūlor, to help.
		Ōscūlor, to lisi.
		Ōtōr, to be at leisure.
		Pālōr, to stroll or徘徊.

Palpor, or -o, to <i>stroke</i> or <i>soften</i> .	Prēcor, to <i>pray</i> .	Stōmāchor, to be <i>angry</i> .
Patrōcinor, to <i>patronise</i> .	Deprēcor, to <i>enreal</i> , to <i>pray against</i> .	Suāvior, to <i>soften</i> .
Percontor, to <i>inquire</i> .	Prōcor, to <i>ask</i> , to <i>woo</i> .	Sūstāgor, to <i>vote for</i> one, to <i>favour</i> .
Pēregrinor, to <i>go abroad</i> .	Rēcordor, to <i>remember</i> .	Suspīcor, to <i>suspect</i> .
Pēriclitor, to be in <i>danger</i> .	Refrīgor, to <i>be against</i> .	Tergīverfor, to <i>bother</i> , to <i>put off</i> .
Pignēcor, to <i>pledge</i> .	Rīmor, to <i>search</i> .	Testor to <i>witness</i> .
Pīcor, to <i>fish</i> .	Rīxor, to <i>scold</i> or <i>brawl</i> .	Tūtor to <i>defend</i> .
Pōpūlor, & -o, to <i>lay waste</i> .	Rūstīcor, to <i>dwell in the country</i> .	Vādor, to <i>give bail</i> , to <i>force to give bail</i> .
Prāedor, to <i>plunder</i> .	Scrūtor, to <i>search</i> .	Vāgor, to <i>wander</i> .
Prālior, to <i>fight</i> .	Sōlor, to <i>comfort</i> .	Vātīcinor, to <i>prophecy</i> .
Prāstōlor, to <i>wait for</i> .	Spātior, to <i>walk abroad</i> .	Vēlītor, to <i>shirmish</i> .
Prāvārīcor, to <i>go crooked</i> , to <i>shuffle</i> or <i>prevaricate</i> .	Spēcūlor, to <i>view</i> , to <i>spy</i> .	Vēnērīcor, to <i>worship</i> .
	Stīpūlor, to <i>stipulate</i> or <i>agree</i> .	Vēnor, to <i>bunt</i> .
		Vērīfor, to <i>be employed</i> .
		Vōcīfērīcor, to <i>bawl</i> .

In the Second Conjugation,

Mēteor mērītus, to <i>deserve</i> .	Pollicēor, pollicītus, to <i>promise</i> .
Tūtor, tūtus, or tutus, to <i>defend</i> .	Līceor, līcītus, to <i>bid at an auction</i> .

In the Third Conjugation,

Amplexor, amplexus; and complector, complexus, to <i>embrace</i> .
Revertor, revertus, to <i>return</i> .

In the Fourth Conjugation,

Blandior, to <i>soften</i> , &c. <i>flatter</i> .	Partior, to <i>divide</i> .
Mēntior, to <i>lie</i> .	Sōrtior, to <i>draw</i> or <i>cast lots</i> .
Mōlior, to <i>attempt something difficult</i> .	Lārgior, to <i>give liberally</i> .
Part. perf. Blandītus, mēntītus, mōlītus, partītus, sōrtītus, lārgītus.	

There are no exceptions in the *First Conjugation*.

EXCEPTIONS in the Second Conjugation.

Reor, rātus, to *think*.

Mīsēreor, misēritus, or not contracted misērītus, to *pity*.

Fāteor, fassus, to *confess*. The compounds of fāteor have *cessus*; as, prōfīteor, prōfessus, to *profess*. So confīteor, to *confess*, to *own* or *acknowledge*.

EXCEPTIONS in the Third Conjugation.

Lābor, lapsus, to *slide*. So al-, col-, de-, dī-, e-, il-, inter-, per-, prāter-, pro-, re-, sub-, subter-, super-, trans-lābor.

Ulcīscor, ultus, to *revenge*.

Uītor, ūsus, to *use*. So ab-, de-ūtor.

Lōguor,

Löquor, löquūtus, or locūtus, to speak. So *al-, col-, circum-, e-, inter-, ob-, præ-, pro-*-löquor.

Sēquor, sēquutus, or sēcutus, to follow. So *af-, con-, ex-, in-, ob-, per-, pro-, re-, sub-*-sēquor.

Quēror, questus, to complain. So *con-, inter-, præ-*-quēror.

Nītor, nīsus, or nīxus, to endeavour, to lean upon. So *ad- vel an-, con-, e-, in-, ob-, re-, sub-*-nītor: but the compounds have oftener *nīsus*.

Pāciscor, pacīus, to bargain. So *de-*-pāciscor.

Grādior, graffus, to go. So *ag-, ante-, circum-, con-, de-, di-, e-, in-, intro-, præ-, priēter-, pro-, re-, retro-, fug-, super-, trans-*-gredior.

Prōfīciscor, profēctus, to go a journey.

Nanciscor, nāctus, to get.

Pātior, passus, to suffer. So *per-*-pētior.

Āpiscor, aptus, to get. So *adipiscor, adeptus, and in-*-dipiscor, *indeptus,*

Comminiscor, commentus, to devise or invent.

Fruor, frūitus, or frūctus, to enjoy. So *per-*-fruor.

Oblīvīscor, oblitus, to forget.

Expergiscor, experīctus, to awake.

Mōrīor, mortuus, to die. So *com-, de-, e-, im-, inter-, præ-*-mōrīor.

Nascor, nātus, to be born. So *ad-, circum-, de-, e-, in-, inter-, re-, sub-*-nascor.

ōrīor, ortus, ōrīri, to rise. So *ab-, ad-, eo-, ex-, ob-, sub-*-ōrīor.

The three last form the future participle in *ītūrus*; thus
mītūrus, nascītūrus, ōrītūrus.

EXCEPTIONS in the Fourth Conjugation.

Mētior, mensus, to measure. So *ad-, com-, di-, e-, præ-, re-*-mētior.

Ordior, ortus, to begin. So *ex-, red-*-ordior.

Expētior, expertus, to try.

Oppētior, oppertus, to wait or tarry for one.

The following verbs want the participle perfect:

Vescor, vesci, to feed.

Liquor, liqui, to melt or be dis--solved.

Mēdeor, mederi, to heal.

Rēmīniscor, reminisci, to remember.

Irascor, irasci, to be angry.

Ringor,

Ringor, ringi, to grin like a dog. *Divertor, diverti, to turn aside, to take lodging.*
Prævettor, præverti, to get before, to outrun. *Dēfētischor, defētisci, to be weary, or faint.*
Diffiteor, diffiteri, to deny.

The verbs which do not fall under any of the foregoing rules are called *Irregular*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

The irregular verbs are commonly reckoned eight; *sum, eo, queo, vōlo, nōlo, mālo, fēro, and fīo*, with their compounds.

But properly there are only six; *nōlo* and *mālo* being compounds of *vōlo*.

SUM has already been conjugated. After the same manner are formed its compounds, *ad-, ab-, de-, inter-, præ-, ob-, sub-, super-* *sum*, and *insum*, which wanes the *præterite*; thus, *adsum, adfui, aſſe, &c.*

PROSUM, to do good, has a *d* where *sum* begins with *e*; as, Ind. *Pr. Prō-sum, prod-es, prod-est; pro-sūmus, &c.*

Im. Prōd-ēram, prod-eras, prod-erat; prod-eramus, &c.

Sub. *Im. Prod-ēſſem, prod-ēſſes, prod-ēſſet; prod-ēſſemus, &c.*

Imperat. *Prod-ēſto, prod-ēſte.* Infinit. *Pres. Prod-ēſſe.*

In the other parts it is like *sum*: *Proſim, fīs, &c. Proſui, -fueram, &c.*

POSSUM is compounded of *pōtis*, able, and *sum*; and is thus conjugated:

Poſſum, pōtui, poſſe, To be able.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Poſſum, pōtēs, pōtēſt; poſſūmus, pōtēſtis, poſſunt.

Im. Pot-ēram, -eras, -erat; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Per. Pot-ūi, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uiftis, -uerunt.

Plu. Pot-ēram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Pot-ēro, -eris, -erit; -erimus, -eritis, -erunt.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Poſſim, -ſis, -ſit; -ſīmus, -ſītis, -ſint.

Im. Poſſem, -ſes, -ſet; -ſēmus, -ſetis, -ſent.

Per. Pot-ūem, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Pot-ūſſem, -uiffes, -uiffet; -uiffemus, -uiffetis, -uiffent.

Fut. Pot-ūero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Poſſe. Per. Poſſiffe. The rest wanting.

EO, *īvi, ītum, īre, To go.**Indicative Mode.**Pr.* *Eo, is, it; īmus, ītis, eunt,**Imp.* *Ibam, ības, ibat; ibamus, ibatis, ibant.**Per.* *Ivi, ivisti, ivit; ivimus, ivistis, iverunt, iverē;**Plu.* *Iveram, iveras, iverat; iveramus, iveratis, iverant.**Fut.* *Ibo, ibis, ibit; ibimus, ibitis, ibunt.**Subjunctive Mode.**Pr.* *Eam, eas, eat; eamus, eatis, eant.**Im.* *Irem, īres, iret; iremus, iretis, irent.**Per.* *Iverim, iveris, iverit; īverimus, iveritis, iverint.**Plu.* *Ivissem, ivisses, ivisset; ivissemus, ivissetis, ivissent.**Fut.* *Ivero, iveris, iverit; iverimus, iveritis, iverint.**Imperative.**Pres.* *I, īto; īte, īto, eunto.**Infinitive.**Pres.* *Ire.**Perf.* *Ivisse.**Fut.* *Esse: iurus, a, um.**Fuisse: iturus.**Participles.**Gerunds.**Supines.**Pr.* *Iens, Gen. euntis.**Eundum.**1. Itum.**Fut.* *Iturus, -a, -um.**Eundi.**2. Itu.**Eundo, &c.*

The compounds of *eo* are conjugated after the same manner; *ād-*, *āb-*, *ex-*, *ōb-*, *rēd-*, *sūb-*, *pēr-*, *cō-*, *īn-*, *pre-*, *ante-*, *prōd-eo*: only in the perfect and the tenses formed from it, they are usually contracted; thus, *Adeo, adii*, seldom *adivi, adītum, adīre, to go to*; perf. *Adii, adīsti or adīli, &c.* *adīram, adīrim, &c.* So likewise *VNEO, venii, — to be sold, (compounded of *venum* and *eo*.)* But *AMBIO, -īvi, -ītum, -īre, to surround*, is a regular verb of the fourth conjugation.

Eo, like other neuter verbs, is often rendered in English under a passive form: thus, *it*, he is going; *īeit*, he is gone; *īerat*, he was gone; *iverit*, he may be gone, or shall be gone. So *vēnit*, he is coming; *vēnit*, he is come, *vēnerat*, he was come, &c. In the passive voice these verbs for the most part are only used impersonally: as, *ītū ab illo*, he is going; *vēnūtū ab illis*, they are come. We find some of the compounds of *eo*, however, used personally: as, *pe-rīculū adēntūr*, are undergone. Cic. *Libri fīlliī adīstītū*, were looked into. Liv. *Flumen pedībus transīrī potest*. Cæt. *Inimicītū jubeantūr*. Cic.

*QUEO, I can, and NEQUEO, I cannot, are conjugated the same way as *eo*; only they want the imperative and the gerunds; and the participles are seldom used.*

VOLO, völui, velle, *To will, or to be willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Völ-o, vis, vult; volümus, vultis, volunt.

Im. Vol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Per. Vol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt, -uere.

Pl. Vol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fu. Vol-am, -es -et; -emus, -etis, -ent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Velim, velis, velit; velimus, velitis, velint.

Im. Velle, velles, vellet; vellemus, velleatis, vellent.

Per. Vol-uerim, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Vol-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset; -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.

Fut. Vol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive.

Pres. Velle. *Perf.* Voluisse. *Pres.* Volens.

The rest not used.

NOLO, nolui, nolle, *To be unwilling.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Nōlo, non-vis, non-vult; nolümus, non-vultis, nolunt.

Im. Nol-ebam, -ebas, -ebat; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Per. Nol-ui, -uisti, -uit; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.

Plu. Nol-ueram, -ueras, -uerat; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Nol-am, noles, nollet; nolemus, noletis, nolent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Nolim, nolis, nolit; nolimus, nolitis, nolint.

Im. Nollem, nolles, nollet; nollemus, nolletis, nollent.

Per. Nol-uerim, ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Nol-uisssem, -uisses, -uisset; -uisssemus, -uissetis, -uissent.

Fut. Nol-uero, -ueris, -uerit; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Participle.

2. Sing. 2. Plur.

Pr. { Noli, vel { nolite, vel *Pr.* Nolle. *Pr.* Nolens.
Nolito; { nolitote. *Per.* Noluisse. *The rest wanting.*

MALO,

MALO, malui, malle, *To be more willing.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Mäl-o, mavis, mavult ; malümus, mavultis, malunt.

Im. Mal-ebam, -ebas, -ebat ; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Per. Mal-ui, -uisti, -uit ; -uimus, -uistis, -uerunt.

Plu. Mal-ueram, -ueras, -uerat ; -ueramus, -ueratis, -uerant.

Fut. Mal-am, -es, -et : &c. *This is scarcely in use.*

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Malim, malis, malit ; malimus, malitis, malint.

Im. Mallem, malles, mallet ; mallemus, malletis, mallent.

Per. Mal-uerim, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Plu. Mal-uissim, -uisses, -uisset ; -uissimus, -uissetis, -uissent.

Fut. Mal-uero, -ueris, -uerit ; -uerimus, -ueritis, -uerint.

Infinitive Mode.

Pr. Malle. *Perf.* Maluissie. *The rest not used.*

FERO, tūli, lātum, ferre, *To carry, to bring or suffer.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fero, fers, fert ; ferimus, fertis, ferunt.

Im. Fer-ebam, -ebas, -ebat ; -ebamus, -ebatis, -ebant.

Per. Tuli, tulisti, tulit ; tulimus, tuliftis, tulerunt, -ere.

Plu. Tul eram, -eras, -erat ; -eramus, -eratis, -erant.

Fut. Feram, feres, feret ; feremus, feretis, ferent.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Feram, feras, ferat ; feramus, feratis, ferant.

Im. Ferrem, ferres, ferret ; ferremus, ferretis, ferrent.

Per. Tul-erim, -eris, -erit ; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Plu. Tul-issem, -issem, -issem ; -issemus, -issemis, -issem.

Fut. Tul-ero, -eria, -erit ; -erimus, -eritis, -erint.

Imperative.

Pr. {Fer, fertō : {ferte, ferunto.

Ferto, {fertōte,

Infinitive.

Pr. Ferre.

Per. Tulisse.

Fut. Elle latus, a, um.

Fuisse laturas, a, um.

Participles.

Pres. Fērens,

Fut. Latus, -a, -um.

Gerunds.

Ferendum.

Ferendi.

Ferendo, &c.

Supines.

1. Lātum.

2. Latu.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fēror, lātus, ferri, *To be brought.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fēror, *fētris, vel ferre,* fertur; scrīmur, ferimīni, feruntur.

Im. Ferēbar, *-ēbaris, vel -ēbare,* -batur; -ebamur, -ebamini, -ebantur.

Perf. Latus sum, &c. latus fui, &c.

Plu. Latus eram, &c. latus fueram, &c.

Fut. Ferar, *fērēris, vel ferēre,* feretur; feremur, feremini, ferentur.

Subjunctive Mode.

Pr. Ferar, *fēraris, vel ferare,* feratur; feramur, feramini, ferantur.

Im. Ferrer, *fērēris, vel ferrere,* ferretur; ferremur, ferremini, ferrentur.

Per. Latus sim, &c. latus fuerim, &c.

Plu. Latus essem, &c. latus fuissēm, &c.

Fut. Latus fuero, &c.

Imperative Mode.

Pref. Ferre *vel* fertor, fertor; ferimini, feruntor.

Infinitive.

Participles.

Pref. Ferri.

Perf. Latus, -a, -um.

Perf. Esse *vel* fuisse latus, -a, -um. Fut. Ferendus, -a, -um.

Fut. Latum iri.

In like manner are conjugated the compounds of *fēro*; as, *affēro, attēli, allatum; aufēro, abflēli, ablatum; diffēro, distulī, dilatum; confēro, contulī, collatum; infēro, intulī, illatum; offēro, subtulī, oblatum; effēro, extulī, elatum.* So *circum-, per-, trans-, de-, pro-, ante-, prae-* *fēro.* In some writers we find *adfero, adtulī, adlatum; collatum, inlatum; obfero, &c.* for *affero, &c.*

Obs. 1. Most part of the above verbs are made irregular by contraction. Thus, *nolo* is contracted for *non volo*; *malo*, for *magis volo*; *fero, fers, fert, &c.* for *feris, ferit, &c.* *Fēror, ferris, &c. ferre, fertur, for ferēris, &c.*

Obs. 2. The imperatives of *dīco, dūco, and fācio* are contracted in the same manner with *fer*: thus we say, *dīc, dūc, fāc*, instead of *dīce, dūce, fāce*. But these often occur likewise in the regular form.

FIO, factus, fieri, *To be made or done, to become.*

Indicative Mode.

Pr. Fio, fis, fit; fitus, fitis, fūnt.

Im. Fiebam, fiebas, fiebat; fiebamus, fiebatis, fiebant.

Per. Factus sum, &c. factus fui, &c.

Plu. Factus eram, &c. factus fueram, &c.

Fut. Fiam, fies, fiet; fitemus, fietis, fient.

Subjunctive

Subjunctive-Mode.

Pr. Fiam, fias, fiat ; siamus, siatis, fiant,
 Im. Fiērem, fieres, fieret ; fieremus, fieretis, fierent
 Per. Factus sim, &c. factus fuerim, &c.
 Plu. Factus essem, &c. factus fuisssem, &c.
 Fut. Factus fuero, &c.

Imperative.

Infinitive.

Pr. { Fi, fito : { site, siunto. Pr. Fieri.
 Fito, fito : { fitote, siunto. Per. Esse vel suisse factus, a, um.
 Fut. Factum iri.

Participles.

Supine.

Per. Factus, -a, -um.
 Fut. Faciendus, -a, -um.

Factu.

The compounds of *ficio* which retain *a*, have also *io* in the passive, and *ia* in the imperative active ; as, *caleficio*, to warm, *calefio*, *calefia* : but those which change *a* into *i*, form the passive regularly, and have *fice* in the imperative ; as, *conficio*, *confice* ; *conficior*, *confec-tus*, *confici*. We find, however, *confit*, it is done, and *confieri* ; *diffi*, it is wanting ; *infit*, he begins.

To irregular verbs may properly be subjoined what are commonly called NEUTER PASSIVE Verbs, which, like *io*, form the preterite tenses according to the passive voice, and the rest in the active. These are, *sōleo*, *sōlitus*, *solēre*, to use ; *audeo*, *ausus*, *audēre*, to dare ; *gaudeo*, *gaudīsus*, *gaudēre*, to rejoice ; *fido*, *fīsus*, *fidēre*, to trust : So *confido*, to trust ; and *diffido*, to distrust ; which also have *confidi*, and *diffidi*. Some add *mōrto*, *mōrtus*, *mōrere*, to be sad ; but *mōrtus* is generally reckoned an adjective. We likewise say *jūrōsus sum* and *cōnatus sum*, for *juravi* and *cōnavi*, but these may also be taken in a passive sense.

To these may be referred verbs, wholly active in their termination, and passive in their signification ; as, *vāpōlo*, *-avi*, *-atum*, to be beaten or whipped ; *vēno*, to be sold ; *exālo*, to be banished, &c.

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

Verbs are called *Defective*, which are not used in certain tenses, numbers, and persons.

These three, *ōdi*, *cāpi*, and *mēmīni*, are only used in the preterite tenses ; and therefore are called *Preteritive Verbs* ; though they have sometimes likewise a present signification : thus,

Odi, I hate, or have hated, *oderam*, *oderim*, *odissēm*, *oderō*, *odisse*. Participles, *ōsus*, *ōsurus* : *exōsus*, *perōsus*.

Cāpi, I begin or have begun, *cāperam*, *-erim*, *-issēm*, *cāro*, *-isse*. Supine, *cāplu*. Participles, *cāptus*, *cāpturus*.

Mēmīni, I remember, or have remembered, *memineram*, *-erim*, *-issem*, *-ero*, *-isse*: Imperative, *memento*, *mementote*.

Instead of *adi*, we sometimes say, *opus sum*; and always *exosus*, *perosus sum*, and not *exodi*, *perodi*. We say, *opus capit fieri*, or *ceptum est*.

To these some add *nōvi*, because it frequently has the signification of the present. *I know*, as well as, *I have known*, though it comes from *nōsco*, which is complete.

Füro, to be mad, *dor*, to be given, and *for*, to speak, as also, *der* and *fer*, are not used in the first person singular; thus, we say, *daris*, *datur*; but never *dor*.

Of verbs which want many of their chief parts, the following most frequently occur: *Aio*, I say, *inquam*, I say, *förem*, I should be; *ausim*, contracted for *ausus sim*, I dare; *faxim*, I'll see to it, or I will do it; *äve* and *salve*, save you, *hail*, good-morrow; *cedo*, tell thou, or give me; *queso*, I pray.

<i>Ind.</i>	<i>Pr.</i>	Aio,	ais,	ait:	—	—	aiant.
<i>Im.</i>	<i>Aiebam,</i>	-ebas,	-ebat:	-ebamus,	-ebatis,	-ebant.	
<i>Per.</i>		aisti,	—	—	—	—	
<i>S. L.</i>	<i>Per.</i>	aias,	aiat:	—	aiatis.	aiant.	

<i>Imperat.</i> <i>Ai.</i>		<i>Particip.</i> <i>Pref.</i> <i>Aiens.</i>
<i>Ind. Pr.</i> <i>Inquam,</i>	<i>-quis,</i>	<i>-quit:</i>
		<i>-quimus,</i> <i>-quitis,</i> <i>-quiunt.</i>
<i>Im.</i> <i>—</i>	<i>—</i>	<i>inquebat:</i> <i>—</i> <i>—</i> <i>inquebant.</i>
<i>Per.</i> <i>—</i>	<i>inquisi</i> <i>—</i>	<i>—</i> <i>—</i> <i>—</i>
<i>Fut.</i> <i>—</i>	<i>inquies</i>	<i>inquiet:</i> <i>—</i> <i>—</i> <i>—</i>

Imperat. Inque, inquito. *Particip. Pr.* Inquiens.

Sub. Im. } Förem, fores, foret: foremus, foretis, forent.
Plu. }

Inf. Fore, to be hereafter, or to be about to be, the same with *esse futurum*.

Sub. Pr. Aufm. aufis, aufit: — — — faint

Per. Faxim,	faxis,	faxit:	—	—	faxint.
Ext. Faxo.	faxis.	faxit:	—	—	faxitis, faxint.

Note. *Exarim* and *faxi* are used instead of *frasrim* and *secero*.

Imper. Ave vel avēto; plur. avēte vel avetote. **Inf.** ave.

— Salve v. salveto; — salvete v. salvete. — salvare.

Indic. Fut. — Salvebis.

Imperat. second pers. sing. *Ce-lo, plur. cedite.*
Quo-fo. Alio quoniamus.

112. *Adverbs*.—*Adverbs* are words, not but single words, and rarely

Most of the other Defective verbs are but single words, and rarely to be found, but among the poets; as, *inficit*, he begins; *deficit*, it is wanting. Some are compounded of a verb and the conjunction *si*; as, *fas*, for *si vis*, if thou wilt; *fultis*, for *si vultis*; *fodes*, for *si uides*, equivalent to *queso*, I pray; *caphis*, for *capere si vis*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

A verb is called *Impersonal*, which has only the terminations of the third person singular, but does not admit any person or nominative before it.

Impersonal verbs in English, have before them the neuter pronoun *it*, which is not considered as a person; thus, *dēlectat*, it delights; *dēcet*, it becomes; *contingit*, it happens; *ēvēnit*, it happens:

	1st Conj.	2d Conj.	3d Conj.	4th Conj.
Ind.	<i>Pr.</i> <i>Delectat</i> ,	<i>Dēcet</i> ,	<i>Contingit</i> ,	<i>Evēnit</i> ,
	<i>Im.</i> <i>Delectabat</i> ,	<i>Decebat</i> ,	<i>Contingebat</i> ,	<i>Eveniebat</i> ,
	<i>Per</i> <i>Delectavit</i> ,	<i>Decuit</i> ,	<i>Contigīt</i> ,	<i>Evēnit</i> , .
	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Delectaverat</i> ,	<i>Decuerat</i> ,	<i>Contigerat</i> ,	<i>Evenerat</i> ,
	<i>Fut.</i> <i>Delectabit</i> .	<i>Decebit</i> .	<i>Continget</i> .	<i>Eveniet</i> .
Sub.	<i>Pr.</i> <i>Delectet</i> ,	<i>Dēcat</i> ,	<i>Contingat</i> ,	<i>Eveniat</i> ,
	<i>Im.</i> <i>Delectaret</i> ,	<i>Decēret</i> ,	<i>Contingēret</i> ,	<i>Eveniret</i> ,
	<i>Per.</i> <i>Delectaverit</i> ,	<i>Decuerit</i> ,	<i>Contigerit</i> ,	<i>Evenerit</i> ,
	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Delectavisset</i> ,	<i>Decuisset</i> ,	<i>Contigisset</i> ,	<i>Evenisset</i> ,
	<i>Fut.</i> <i>Delectaverit</i> .	<i>Decuerit</i> .	<i>Contigerit</i> .	<i>Evenerit</i> .
Inf.	<i>Pr.</i> <i>Delectāre</i> ,	<i>Decēre</i> ,	<i>Contingēre</i> ,	<i>Evenire</i> ,
	<i>Pr.</i> <i>Delectavisse</i> .	<i>Decuisse</i> .	<i>Contigisse</i> .	<i>Evenisse</i> .

Most Latin verbs may be used impersonally in the passive voice, especially Neuter and Intransitive verbs which otherwise have no passive; as, *pugnātur*, *fāvētur*, *currītur*, *vēnītur*; from *pugno*, to fight; *faveo*, to favour; *curro*, to run; *venio*, to come:

Ind.	<i>Pr.</i> <i>Pugnātur</i> ,	<i>Fāvētur</i> ,	<i>Curritur</i> ,	<i>Vēnītur</i> ,
	<i>Im.</i> <i>Pugnabatur</i> ,	<i>Favebatur</i> ,	<i>Currebatur</i> ,	<i>Venebatur</i> ,
	<i>Per.</i> <i>Pugnatum est</i> ,	<i>Fautum est</i> ,	<i>Cursūm est</i> ,	<i>Ventūm est</i> ,
	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Pugnatum erat</i> ,	<i>Fautum erat</i> ,	<i>Cursūm erat</i> ,	<i>Ventūm erat</i> ,
	<i>Fut.</i> <i>Pugnabitur</i> .	<i>Favebitur</i> .	<i>Curretur</i> .	<i>Venietur</i> .
Sub.	<i>Pr.</i> <i>Pugnetur</i> ,	<i>Faveatur</i> ,	<i>Curritur</i> ,	<i>Venjatur</i> ,
	<i>Im.</i> <i>Pugnaretur</i> ,	<i>Faveretur</i> ,	<i>Curreretur</i> ,	<i>Veniretur</i> ,
	<i>Per.</i> <i>Pugnatum sit</i> ,	<i>Fautum sit</i> ,	<i>Cursūm sit</i> ,	<i>Ventūm sit</i> ,
	<i>Plu.</i> <i>Pugnatum esset</i> ,	<i>Fautum esset</i> ,	<i>Cursūm esset</i> ,	<i>Ventūm esset</i> ,
	<i>Fut.</i> <i>Pugnatum fuerit</i> .	<i>Fautum fue- rit.</i>	<i>Cursūm fue- rit.</i>	<i>Ventūm fue- rit.</i>
Inf.	<i>Pr.</i> <i>Pugnari</i> ,	<i>Faveri</i> ,	<i>Curri</i> ,	<i>Venīri</i> ,
	<i>Per.</i> <i>Pugnatum esse</i> ,	<i>Fautum esse</i> ,	<i>Cursūm esse</i> ,	<i>Ventūm esse</i> ,
	<i>Fut.</i> <i>Pugnatum iri</i> .	<i>Fautum iri</i> .	<i>Cursūm iri</i> .	<i>Ventūm iri</i> .

Obs. 1. Impersonal verbs are scarcely used in the imperative, but instead of it we take the subjunctive; as, *delectet*, let it delight, &c.; nor in the supines, participles, or gerunds, except a few; as, *pāni-*

tens, -dum, -dus, &c. *Induci ad pudendum et pigendum, Cic.* In the preterite tenses of the passive voice, the participle perfect is always put in the neuter gender.

Obs. 2. Grammarians reckon only ten real impersonal verbs, and all in the second conjugation; *dēcet*, it becomes; *pēnitet*, it repents; *sporet*, it hehoves; *miseret*, it pities; *pīget*, it irketh; *pūdet*, it shameth; *līcet*, it is lawful: *libet* or *lūbet*, it pleaseth; *tādet*, it wearieth; *līquet*, it appears. Of which the following have a double preterite; *miseret*, *miseruit*, or *miseratum est*; *pīget*, *pīgnit*, or *pīgitum est*; *pūdet*, *pūduit*, or *pūditum est*; *līcet*, *līcuit*, or *līcītum est*; *libet*, *libuit*, or *libītum est*; *tādet*, *tādūt*, *tāsum est*, *ostener pertasum est*. But many other verbs are used impersonally in all the conjugations:

In the first, *Jūvat*, *spēlat*, *vācat*, *flat*, *constat*, *prāflat*, *reflat*, &c.

In the second, *Appāret*, *attīnet*, *perfīnet*, *vēbet*, *dōlet*, *nōcet*, *lātet*, *līquet*, *pātet*, *plāct*, *displāct*, *vēdet*, *vōlet*, &c.

In the third, *Accīdit*, *incīpit*, *desīnit*, *suffīcit*, &c.

In the fourth, *Curvēnit*, *expēdit*, &c.

Also Irregular verbs; *Es*, *obēst*, *prādēst*, *pōtest*, *intērest*, *supērest*; *fit*, *prāterīt*, *nequit*, and *nequītūr*, *sūbit*, *confert*, *īcīt*, &c.

Obs. 3. Under impersonal verbs may be comprehended those which express the operations or appearances of nature; as, *Fulgūrat*, *fulmīnat*, *līnat*, *grandīnat*, *gēlat*, *plūit*, *ningit*, *lūcescīt*, *advesperascat*, &c.

Obs. 4. Impersonal verbs are applied to any person or number, by putting that which stands before other verbs, after the impersonals, in the cases which they govern; as, *placēt mībi*, *tībi*, *illī*, it pleases me, thee, him; or I please, thou pleāest, &c. *pugnātūr a mē*, *a tē*, *ab illo*, I fight, thou fightest, he fighteth, &c. So *Curritūr*, *venītūr a mē*, *a tē*, &c. I run, thou runnest, &c. *Favētūr tībi a mē*, Thou art favoured by me, or I favour thee, &c.

Obs. 5. Verbs are used personally or impersonally, according to the particular meaning which they express, or the different import of the words with which they are joined: thus we can say, *ego placēt tībi*, I please you; but we cannot say, *si placēs audīre*, if you please to hear, but *si placēt tībi audīre*. So, we can say, *multa homīni contīgunt*, many things happen to a man: but instead of *ego contīgīt ēst domī*, we must either say, *me contīgīt ēst domī*, or *mībi contīgīt ēst domī*, I happened to be at home. The proper and elegant use of Impersonal verbs can only be acquired by practice.

REDUNDANT VERBS.

Those are called *Redundant Verbs*, which have different forms to express the same sense: thus, *affītīs* and *affētīs*, to agree; *fabrīco* and *fabrīcor*, to frame; *merēs* and *merēor*, to deserve, &c. These verbs, however, under the passive form have likewise a passive signification.

Several verbs are used in different conjugations.

1. Some are usually of the first conjugation, and rarely of the third; as, *lāvo*, *lāvas*, *lāvācīt* and *lāvo*, *lāvis*, *lāvēre*, to wash.
2. Some are usually of the second, and rarely of the third; as, *Fervēs*, *serves*, and *servo*, *servis*, to boil.
3. Fulgeo, fulges, and fulgo, fulgit, to shine.

Strideo, strides, and strido, stridi, to make a hissing noise, to creak.
Tueror, tueris, and tuor, tueris, to defend.

To these add tergeo, terges; and tergo, tergis, to wipe, which are equally common.

3. Some are commonly of the third conjugation, and rarely of the fourth; as,

Fodio, fodis, fodere, and fodio, fodis, fodire, to dig.

Sallo, fallis, fallere, and fallio, fallis, fallire, to salt.

Arcessio, -is, arcessere, and arcessio, arcensire, to send for.

Morior, moreris, mori, and morior, moriris, moriri, to die.

So Orior, oreris, and orior, oriris, oriri, to rise.

Potior, poteris, and potior, potiris, potiri, to enjoy.

There is likewise a verb, which is usually of the second conjugation, and more rarely of the fourth, namely, cieo, cies, ciere; and sis, sis, cire, to rouse; whence accire and accitus.

To these we may add the verb EDO, to eat, which though regularly formed, also agrees in several of its parts with sum; thus,

Ind. Pres. Edo, edis or es, edit or est; — editis or estis —

Sub. Imperf. Ederem or effem, ederes or effes, &c.

Imp. Ede or es, edito or esto; edite or este; editore or estore.

Inf. Pres. Edere or esse.

Passive Ind. Pres. Editur or estur.

It may not be improper here to subjoin a list of those verbs which resemble one another in some of their parts, though they differ in signification. Of these some agree in the present, some in the preterite, and others in the supine.

1. The following agree in the present, but are differently conjugated:

Aggero, -as, to heap up.

Appello, -as, to call.

Compello, -as, to address.

Colligo, -as, to bind.

Consterno, -as, to astonish.

Effero, -as, to enrage.

Fundo, -as, to found.

Mando, -as, to command.

Obscro, -as, to lock.

Volo, -as, to fly.

Aggero, -is, to bring together.

Appello, -is, to drive to, to arrives.

Compello, -is, to drive together.

Colligo, -is, to gather together.

Consterno, -is, to shrew.

Effero, -ers, to bring out.

Fundo, -is, to pour out.

Mando, -is, to oblige.

Obscro, -is, to be fit.

Volo, -is, to will.

Of this class some have a different quantity; as,

Colo, -as, to strain.

Dico, -as, to dedicate.

Educo, -as, to train up.

Lego, -as, to send on an embassy.

Vado, -as, to wade.

Colo, -is, to till.

Dico, -is, to say.

Educo, -is, to lead forth.

Lego, -is, to read.

Vado, -is, to go.

2. The following verbs agree in the preterite :

Äceo, acui, <i>to be sour.</i>
Cresco, crèvi, <i>to grow.</i>
Frigeo, frixi, <i>to be cold.</i>
Fulgeo, fulsi, <i>to shine.</i>
Luceo, luxi, <i>to shine.</i>
Päveo, pâvi, <i>to be afraid.</i>
Pendo, pëpendi, <i>to hang.</i>

Acuo, acui, <i>to sharpen.</i>
Cerno, crèvi, <i>to see.</i>
Frigo, frixi, <i>to fry.</i>
Fulcio, fulsi, <i>to prop.</i>
Lügeo, luxi, <i>to mourn.</i>
Pafco, pâvi, <i>to feed.</i>
Pendo, pëpendi, <i>to weigh.</i>

3. The following agree in the supine :

Cresco, crètum, <i>to grow.</i>
Mäneo, mansum, <i>to stay.</i>
Sto, statum, <i>to stand.</i>
Succenso, -censum, <i>to be angry.</i>
Tèneo, tentum, <i>to hold.</i>
Verro, versum, <i>to sweep.</i>
Vinco, victum, <i>to overcome.</i>

Cerno, cretum, <i>to be bold.</i>
Mando, mansum, <i>to obey.</i>
Sisto, statum, <i>to stop.</i>
Succendo, -censum, <i>to kindle.</i>
Tendo, tentum, <i>to stretch out.</i>
Verto, versum, <i>to turn.</i>
Vivo, victum, <i>to live.</i>

The O B S O L E T E C O N J U G A T I O N .

This chiefly occurs in old writers, and only in particular conjugations and tenses.

1. The ancient Latins made the imperfect of the indicative active of the fourth conjugation in *IBAM*, without the *e*; as, *audibam, scibam*; for *audiēbam, sciebam*.

2. In the future of the indicative of the fourth conjugation, they used *IBO* in the active, and *ībor* in the passive voice: as, *dormibo, dormībor*, for *dormiam, dormiar*.

3. The present of the subjunctive actively ended in *IM*: as, *edim*, for *edam*; *duim* for *deam*.

4. The perfect of the subjunctive active sometimes occurs in *SSIM*, and the future in *SSO*; as, *levassim, levasso*, for *levaverim, levavero*; *capsim, capso*, for *ceperim, cepero*: Hence the future of the infinitive was formed in *ASSERE*; as, *levosse* for *levaturus esse*.

5. In the second person of the present of the imperative passive, we find *MINO* in the singular, and *minor* in the plural; as *famino*, for *fare*; and *progrēdiminō* for *progrēdimini*.

6. The syllable *ER* was frequently added to the present of the infinitive passive; as, *farier* for *fari*; *dicier* for *dicī*.

7. The participles of the future time active, and perfect passive, when joined with the verb *esse*, were sometimes used as indeclinable: thus, *credo inimicos diffurum esse*, for *diffuror*, Cic. *Cobortes ad me missum facias*, for *missas*, Cic. ad Attic. viii. 12.

D E R I V A T I O N A N D C O M P O S I T I O N O F V E R B S .

I. Verbs are derived either from nouns or from other verbs.

Verbs derived from nouns are called *Denominative*; as, *Ceno*, to sup; *laudo*, to praise; *fraudo*, to defraud; *lapido*, to throw stones; *op̄eror*, to work; *frumentor*, to forage; *lignor*, to gather fuel, &c. from *cena*, *laus*, *fraus*, &c. But when they express imitation or resemblance,

semblance, they are called *Imitative*; as, *Patrīsso*, *Grācer*, *būbūlo*, *cornīcōr*, &c. I imitate or resemble my father, a Græcian, a crow, &c., from *pater*, *Gracus*, *cornix*.

Of those derived from other verbs, the following chiefly deserve attention; namely, *Frequentatives*, *Inceptives*, and *Desideratives*.

1. *FREQUENTATIVES* express frequency of action, and are all of the first conjugation. They are formed from the last supine, by changing *ātu* into *īto*, in verbs of the first conjugation; and by changing *u* into *o*, in verbs of the other three conjugations; as, *clamo*, to cry, *clamīto*, to cry frequently: *terreo*, *terrīto*; *vertō*, *verīto*; *dormio*, *dormīto*.

In like manner, Deponent verbs form Frequentatives in *or*; as, *minor*, to threaten; *minītor*, to threaten frequently.

Some are formed in an irregular manner; as, *nato* from *no*; *ngōcīte* from *ngōcō*; *scītor*, or rather *scīfītor*, from *scīo*; *pavīto*, from *pavēo*; *scētor*, from *scētor*, *logūtor*, from *loguor*. So *quarīto*, *fundīto*, *agīto*, *flīto*, &c.

From Frequentative verbs are also formed other Frequentatives; as *curro*, *curso*, *curſīto*; *pello*, *pulſo*, *pulſīto*, or by contraction *pulīto*; *capio*, *capto*, *captīto*; *cano*, *canto*, *cantīto*; *defendo*, *defenso*, *defensīto*; *dico*, *dicto*, *dictīto*; *gero*, *geslo*, *geslīto*; *jacio*, *jactō*, *jactīto*; *venio*, *ventīto*; *mutio*, *mutō*, (for *mutīto*) *mutīto*, &c.

Verbs of this kind do not always express frequency of action. Many of them have much the same sense with their primitives, or express the meaning more strongly.

2. *INCEPTIVE* Verbs mark the beginning or continued increase of any thing. They are formed from the second person sing. of the present of the indicative, by adding *co*: as, *caleo*, to be hot, *cales*, *caleſeo*, to grow hot. So in the other conjugations, *labafco*, from *labo*; *tremifco*, from *tremo*; *obdormifco*, from *obdormio*. *Hifco*, from *hio*, is contracted for *biaſco*. Inceptives are likewise formed from substantives and adjectives; as, *pueraſco*, from *puer*; *dulceſeo*, from *dulcis*; *juvenefeo*, from *juvenis*.

All Inceptives are Neuter verbs, and of the third conjugation. They want both the preterite and supine; unless very rarely, when they borrow them from their primitives.

3. *DESIDERATIVE* Verbs signify a desire or intention of doing a thing. They are formed from the latter supine, by adding *riō*, and shortening the *u*; as, *cenātūrio*, I desire to sup, from *cenātu*. They are all of the fourth conjugation; and want both preterite and supine, except these three, *ēſūrio*, *-iūrī*, *-iūm*, to desire to eat; *partūrio*, *-iūrī*, *-*, to be in travail; *nuptūrio*, *-iūrī*, *-*, to desire to be married.

There are a few verbs in LLO, which are called *Diminutive*; as, *cantillo*, *forbillo*, *-are*, I sing, I sup a little: To these some add *albīco* and *candīco*, *-are*, to be or to grow whitish; also *nigrīco*, *fedīco*, and *vellico*. Some verbs in SSO are called *Intensive*; as *Capeſſo*, *faceſſo*, *peteſſo* or *petiſſo*, I take, I do, I seek earnestly.

Verbs are compounded with nouns, with other verbs, with adverbs, and chiefly with prepositions. Many of the simple verbs are not in use; as, *Fūto*, *fendo*, *ſpēſio*, *grue*, &c. The component parts usually remain

remain entire. Sometimes a letter is added; as *proeo*, for *pro-ess* or taken away; as, *asporto*, *omitto*, *trado*, *pejero*, *pergo*, *debeo*, *præbeo*, &c. for *abporto*, *obmitto*, *translo*, *perjuro*, *perrego*, *debibeo*, *præbibeo*, &c. So *demo*, *promo*, *sumo*, of *de*, *pro*, *sub*, and *emo*, which anciently signified *to take* or *to take away*. Often the vowel or diphthong of the simple verb, and the last consonant of the preposition, is changed: as, *damno*, *condemno*; *calco*, *concilio*; *lædo*, *collido*; *audio*, *obedio*, &c. *Affero*, *aufero*, *collaudo*, *implico*, &c. for *adfero*, *abfero*, *contraudo*, *implico*, &c.

PARTICLE.

A Participle is a kind of adjective formed from a verb, which in its signification implies time.

It is so called, because it partakes both of an adjective and of a verb, having *in Latin* gender and declension from the one, time and signification from the other, and number from both. Participles *in English*, like adjectives, admit of no variation.

Participles in Latin are declined like adjectives; and their signification is various, according to the nature of the verbs from which they come; only participles in *dus* are always passive, and import not so much future time, as obligation or necessity.

Latin verbs have four Participles, the present and future active; as, *Amans*, loving; *amātūrus*, about to love; and the perfect and future passive; as, *amātus*, loved, *amandus*, to be loved.

The Latins have not a participle perfect in the active, nor a participle present in the passive voice; which defect must be supplied by a circumlocution. Thus, to express the perfect participle active in English, we use a conjunction, and the plu-perfect of the subjunctive in Latin, or some other tense, according to its connection with the other words of a sentence; as, he having loved, *quum amavisset*, &c.

Neuter verbs have commonly but two Participles; as, *Sedens*, *sessurus*; *stans*, *stātūrus*.

From some Neuter Verbs are formed Participles of the perfect tense; as, *Erratus*, *feñinatus*, *juratus*, *laboratus*, *vigilatus*, *cessatus*, *sudatus*, *triumphatus*, *regnatus*, *decursus*, *desitus*, *emeritus*, *emersus*, *obitus*, *placlitus*, *successus*, *occāsus*, &c. and also of the future in *dus*; as, *Jurandus*, *vigilandus*, *regnandus*, *carendus*, *dormiendus*, *erubescendus*, &c. Neuter passive verbs are equally various. *Veno* has no participle: *Fido*, only *fidens* and *fisus*; *soleo*, *solens* and *solitus*; *vapulo*, *vapulans* and *vapulaturus*; *Gaudes*, *guadens*, *gavifus*, and *gavifurus*; *Audeo*, *audens*, *aufus*, *aufurus*, *audendus*. *Aufus* is used both in an active and passive sense; as, *Ausi omnes immane nefas*, *ausoque potiti*. Virg. *Æn.* vi. 624.

Deponent and Common verbs have commonly four Participles; as,

Locutus, speaking; *locutus*, about to speak: *locutus*, having spoken; *loquendus*, to be spoken: *Dignans*, vouchsafing; *dignatus*, about to vouchsafe; *dignatus*, having vouchsafed, or having been vouchsafed; *dignandus*, to be vouchsafed. Many Participles of the perfect tense from Deponent verbs have both an active and passive sense; as, *Abominatus*, *conatus*, *confusus*, *adortus*, *amplexus*, *blanditus*, *largitus*, *mentitus*, *oblitus*, *tegatus*, *veneratus*, &c.

There are several Participles compounded with *in* signifying *not*, the verbs of which do not admit of such composition; as, *Insciens*, *insperans*, *indicens*, for, *non dicens*, *inopinans*, and *neopinans*, *innatens*; *Illatus*, *impransus*, *inconsultus*, *incustiditus*, *immetatus*, *impunitus*, *imparsatus*, *incomitatus*, *incomptus*, *indemnatus*, *indotatur*, *inopportus*, *interstitus*; and *imperterritus*, *intestatus*, *inausus*, *inopinatus*, *inultus*, *incensus*, for *non enclusus*, not registered; *infetus*, for *non factus*, *invitus*, for *non visus*, *indictus*, for *non dictus*, &c. There is a different *incensus* from *incendo*; *infetus* from *inficio*; *invitus* from *invito*; *indictus* from *indico*, &c.

If from the signification of a Participle we take away time, it becomes an adjective, and admits the degrees of comparison; as,

Amanus, loving, *amantior*, *amantissimus*; *doctus*, learned, *doctior*, *doctissimus*: or a substantive; as, *Praefectus*, a commander or governor; *consonans*, f. sc. *litera*, a consonant; *continens*, f. sc. *terra*, a continent; *confluent*, m. a place where two rivers run together; *orans*, m. sc. *sol*, the east; *occidens*, m. the west; *dictum*, a saying; *scriptum*, &c.

There are many words in *ATUS*, *ITUS*, and *UTUS*, which although resembling participles are reckoned adjectives, because they come from nouns, and not from verbs; as, *alatus*, *barbatus*, *cordatus*, *cavatus*, *crustatus*, *auritus*, *pellitus*, *turritus*; *asitus*, *cornutus*, *nasutus*, &c. winged, bearded, discreet, &c. But *auratus*, *æratus*, *argentatus*, *ferratus*, *plumbatus*; *gypsatus*, *calceatus*, *elyptaeus*, *galeatus*, *tunicatus*, *larvatus*, *gallatus*, *lymbatus*, *purpuratus*, *pretestatus*, &c. covered with gold, brass, silver, &c. are accounted participles, because they are supposed to come from obsolete verbs. So perhaps *crimistratus*, frizzled, crisped or curled, *crinitus*, having long hair, *peritus*, skilled, &c.

There are a kind of Verbal adjectives in *BUNDUS*, formed from the imperfect of the indicative, which very much resemble Participles in their signification, but generally express the meaning of the verb more fully, or denote an abundance or great deal of the action; as, *vitabundus*, the same with *valde vitans*, avoiding much; *Sall. Jug.* 60. and 101.; *Lio.* xxv. 13. So *errabundus*, *ludibundus*, *populabundus*, *moribundus*, &c.

GERUNDS AND SUPINES.

GERUNDS are participial words, which bear the signification of the verb from which they are formed; and are declined like a neuter noun of the second declension, through all the cases of the singular number, except the vocative.

These are, both in Latin and English, substantives derived from the

the verb, which so much resemble the Gerund in their signification, that frequently they may be substituted in its place. They are generally used, however, in a more undetermined sense than the Gerund, and in English have the article always prefixed to them. Thus, with the gerund, *Delector legendo Ciceronem*, I am delighted with reading Cicero. But with the substantive, *Delector lectio Ciceronis*, I am delighted with the reading of Cicero.

The Gerund and Future Participle of verbs in *is*, and some others, often take *s* instead of *e*; as, *faciendum*, *di*, *do*, *dus*; *experiendum*, *pe-
tiendum*, *gerundum*, *petendum*, *dicendum*, &c. for *faciendum*, &c.

SUPINES have much the same signification with Gerunds; and may be indifferently applied to any person or number. They agree in termination with nouns of the fourth declension, having only the accusative and ablative cases.

The former Supine is commonly used in an active, and the latter in a passive sense, but sometimes the contrary; as, *coctum non vapulatum du-
dum conductus fui*, i. e. *ut vapularem, v. verberarer*, to be beaten, Plaut.

A D V E R B.

An adverb is an indeclinable part of speech, added to a verb, adjective, or other adverb, to express some circumstance, quality, or manner of their signification.

All adverbs may be divided into two classes, namely, those which denote *Circumstance*; and those which denote *Quality, manner, &c.*

I. Adverbs denoting CIRCUMSTANCE are chiefly those of *Place, Time, and Order.*

1. Adverbs of *Place*, are fivefold, namely, such as signify,

1. Motion or rest in a place.			
Ubi?	Where?	Huc,	Hi ^t ber.
Hic,	Here.	Illuc,	Hi ^t ber.
Illic,		Illic,	
Illici,	There.	Intro,	In.
Ibi,		Fōras,	Out.
Intus,	Within.	Eō,	To that place.
Fōris,	Without.	Aliō,	To another place.
Ubique,	Every where.	Aliquō,	To some place.
Nusquam,	No where.	Eōdem,	To the same place.
Ali ^l cubi,	Some where.		3. Motion towards a place.
Ali ^l bi,	Else where.	Quorūm?	Whitherward?
Obivis,	Any where.	Versus,	Towards.
Ib ^l dem,	In the same place.	Horsum,	Hi ^t berward.
		Illorsum,	Hi ^t berward.
2. Motion to a place.		Sursum,	Upward.
Quo?	Whither?	Dorsum,	Downward.
		Antrorsum,	Forward.
			Retrosum,

Retrosum,	Backward.	Sicunde,	If from any place.
Dextrorsum,	Towards the right.	Utrinque,	On both sides.
Sinistrorsum,	Towards the left.	Superne,	From above.
4. Motion from a place.		Inferne,	From below.
Unde?	Whence?	Cælitus,	From heaven.
Hinc,	Hence.	Funditus,	From the ground.
Illinc,			5. Motion through or by a place.
Isthinc,	{ Thence.	Quæ?	Which way?
Inde,		Hac,	This way.
Indidem,	From the same place.	Illac,	{ That way.
Aliunde,	From else where.	Isthac,	
Alicunde,	From some place.	Alià,	Another way.

2. Adverbs of Time are threefold, namely, such as signify,

1. Some particular time, either present, past, future, or indefinite.

Nunc, Now
Hodie, To day.

Tunc, Then.

Tum, Yesterday.

Dūdum, Heretofore.

Pridem, The day before.

Pridie, Three days ago.

Nuper, Lately.

Jamjam, Presently.

Mox, Immediately.

Stātim, By and by.

Prōtinus, Instantly.

Illoco, Straightway.

Cras, To-morrow.

Postridie, The day after.

Pērendie, Two days hence.

Nondum, Not yet.

Quando? When?

Aliquando, Sometimes.

Nonnunquam, Sometimes.

Interdum, Ever, always.

Semper, Ever, always.

Nunquam, Never.

Intērim, In the mean time.

Quōtidie, Daily.

2. Continuance of time.

Dīu, Long.

Quamdiu? How long?

Tamdiu, So long.

Jamdiu, { Long ago.

Jamdūdum, { Long ago.

Jampridem, { Long ago.

3. Vicissitude or repetition of time.

Quōdies? How often?

Sæpe, Often.

Rārō, Seldom.

Tōies, So often.

Aliquoties, For several times.

Vicissim, { By turns.

Aternātim, { By turns.

Rursus, { Again.

Itērum, { Again.

Sūbindē, { Ever and anon, now and then.

Identidem, { Ever and anon, now and then.

Sēmel, Once.

Bis, Twice.

Ter, Thrice.

Quāter, Four times, &c.

3. Adverbs of Order.

Inde, Then.

Deinde, After that.

Dehinc, Henceforth.

Porro, Moreover.

Deinceps, So forth.

Dēnuo, Of new.

Dēnique, Finally.

Postēmō, Lastly.

Prīmō, -ūm, First.

Sēcundō, -ūm, Secondly.

Tertīō, -ūm, Thirdly.

Quartō, -ūm, Fourthly.

II. Adverbs denoting QUALITY, MANNER, &c. are either *Absolute* or *Comparative*.

Those called *Absolute* denote,

1. QUALITY, simply; as, *bene*, well; *male*, ill; *fortiter*, bravely; and innumerable others that come from adjective nouns or participles.

2. CERTAINTY; as, *prōfectō*, certè, *sācē*, plainly, *na*, *ūlique*, *īta*, *ēiam*, truly, verily, yes; *quidni*, why not? *cūnino*, certainly.

3. CONTINGENCE; as, *fortē*, *forfan*, *fortassis*, *fort*, haply, perhaps, by chance, peradventure.

4. NEGATION; as, *non*, *baud*, not; *nequāquam*, not at all; *neu*
figuam, by no means; *mīnime*, nothing less.

5. PROHIBITION; as, *nō*, not.

6. SWEARING; as, *hercle*, *pol*, *edēpol*, *mēcaflor*, by Hercules, by Pollux, &c.

7. EXPLAINING; as, *uipōle*, *ūlēlicet*, *scilicet*, *nīmīrum*, *nempe*, to wit, namely.

8. SEPARATION; as, *scōfūm*, apart; *sepārātīm*, separately; *sigillatīm*, one by one; *virītīm*, man by man; *oppīdātīm*, town by town, &c.

9. JOINING TOGETHER; as, *simul*, *unā*, *pōriter*, together; *gēnēraliter*, generally; *ūnēraliter*, universally; *pīcūmque*, for the most part.

10. INDICATION or POINTING out; as, *en*, *ecce*, lo, behold.

11. INTERROGATION; as, *cur*, *quāre*, *quādōrem*, why, wherefore? *num*, *an*, whether? *quōmōdo*, *qui*, how? To which add, *Uli*, *quō*, *quīfūm*, *unde*, *quā*, *quāndo*, *quādiu*, *quādīes*.

Those Adverbs which are called *Comparative* denote,

1. EXCESS; as, *Valde*, *maximē*, *magnopēre*, *maximopēre*, *summopēre*, *admōdum*, *oppīdō*, *per quam*, *longē*, greatly, very much, exceedingly; *nīmī*, *nīmīum*, too much; *prōfūs*, *penitus*, *omnīs*, altogether, wholly; *magis*, more; *melius*, better; *pejūs*, worse; *fortēs*, more bravely: and *optīmē*, best; *peffīmē*, worst; *fortissīmē*, most bravely; and innumerable others of the comparative and superlative degrees.

2. DEFECT; as, *Ferme*, *fērē*, *prōpēmōdūm*, *pēnē*, almost; *pārum*, little; *paulo*, *paululūm*, very little.

3. PREFERENCE; as, *pōtīs*, *sātīs*, rather; *pōtīfīmūm*, *prācipū*, *prāsērtīm* chiefly, especially; *imo*, yes, nay, nay rather.

4. LIKENESS or EQUALITY; as, *īta*, *sic*, *ādē*, so; *ut*, *ūtī*, *sicut*, *sicuti*, *vēlūt*, *velūti*, *eu*, *sanguam*, *quāsi*, as, as *īs*; *quēmadmōdūm*, even as; *sātīs*, enough; *ītēdem*, in like manner; *juxta*, alike, equality.

5. UNLIKENESS or UNEQUALITY; as, *āltīr*, *secūs*, otherwise; *āliōgi* or *āliōquin*, else; *nēdūm*, much more or much less.

6. ABATEMENT; as, *senīm*, *paulōtīm*, *pōdētentīm*, by degrees, piecemeal; *vix*, scarcely; *agre*, hardly, with difficulty.

7. EXCLUSION; as, *tānūm*, *sōlūm*, *mōlō*, *tānūmōdo*, *dāntātīt*, *ētūm*, only.

DERIVATION, COMPARISON, and COMPOSITION of ADVERBS.

Adverbs are derived, 1. from Substantives, and end commonly in *IM* or *TUS*; as, *Partim*, partly, by parts; *nominātīm*, by name; *generatīm*, by kinds, generally; *speciatīm*, *vicatīm*, *gregatīm*; *radīctūs*, from the root, &c. 2. From Adjectives: and these are by far the most numerous. Such as come from Adjectives of the first and second declension usually end in *E*; as, *liberē*, freely; *plenē*, fully: Some in *O*, *UM*, and *TER*; as, *falsō*, *tantūm*, *graviter*: A few in *A*, *ITUS*, and *IM*; as, *rectā*, *antiquitūs*, *privatim*. Some are used two or three ways, as, *primum*, *v. -ō*; *pure*, *-iter*; *cerīc*, *ō*; *cautē*, *-im*; *humānē*, *-iter*, *-itus*; *publicē*, *publiciūs*, &c. Adverbs from Adjectives of the third declension commonly end in *TER*, seldom in *E*; as, *turpiter*, *feliciter*, *acriter*, *pariter*; *facilē*, *repente*: one in *O*, *omnīno*. The neuter of Adjectives is sometimes taken Adverbially; as, *recens natus*, for *recenter*; *perfidūm ridens*, for *perfidē*, Hor. *multa reluctans*, for *multūm* or *valde*, Virg. So in English we say, *to speak loud*, *bigb*, &c. for *loudly*, *bigbly*, &c. In many cases a Substantive is understood; as, *prīmō*, sc. *loco*, *optatō advenīe*, sc. *tempore*; *hāc*, sc. *viā*, &c.

3. From each of the pronominal adjectives, *ille*, *is*, *hic*, *is*, *idem*, &c. are formed adverbs, which express all the circumstances of place; as from *ille*, *illīc*, *illue*, *illorūm*, *illīcī*, and *illae*. So from *quis*, *ubi*, *quo*, *querūm*, *unde*, and *quā*. Also of time: thus, *quando*, *quamdiu*, &c.

4. From verbs and participles; as, *cēsim*, with the edge; *punctīm*, with the point; *strictīm*, closely; from *cēdo*, *pungō*, *stringō*: *amanter*, *properanter*, *dubitanter*; *distinctē*, *emendatē*; *meritō*, *inopinatō*, &c. But these last are thought to be in the ablative, having *ex* understood, which is also sometimes expressed.

5. From prepositions; as, *intus*, *intro*, from *in*; *clanculum*, from *clam*; *subtus*, from *sub*, &c.

Adverbs derived from adjectives are commonly compared like their primitives. The *positive* generally ends in *e*, or *ter*; as, *durē*, *facilē*, *acriter*: The *comparative*, in *ius*; as, *duriūs*, *faciliūs*, *acriūs*: The *superlative*, in *ime*; as, *durissimē*, *facillimē*, *acerrimē*.

If the comparison of the adjective be irregular or defective, the comparison of the adverb is so too: as, *bene*, *melius*, *optimē*; *mālē*, *pejūs*, *pejissimē*; *parūm*, *miūs*, *minimē*, &c. *-ūm*; *multūm*, *plus*, *plurimūm*; *prope*, *propiūs*, *proximē*; *ocūs*, *ocissimē*; *priūs*, *priuō*, *-ūm*; *nuper*, *nūperrimē*; *novē*, & *noviter*, *novissimē*; *meritō*, *meritissimō*; &c. Those adverbs also are compared whose primitives are obsolete; as, *sēpē*, *sēpūs*, *sēpissimē*; *penitus*, *penitiūs*, *penitissimē*; *satis*, *satiūs*; *secus*, *seciūs*; &c. *Magis*, *maxime*; and *potius*, *potissimūm*, want the positive.

Adverbs in English are not varied by comparison, except some few of them, particularly irregulars; as, *often*, *oftener*, *oftenest*; *well*, *better*, *best*; *much*, *more*, *most*, &c.

Adverbs are variously compounded with all the different parts of speech; thus, *poētridic*, *magnopēre*, *maximopere*, *summopere*, *tantopere*,

multimōdis, omnīmōdis, quonmōdo, quare; of postero die; magno opere, &c. Illicet, scilicet, videlicet, of ire, scire, videre, licet; illīco, of in loco: quorsum, of quo verbum; commīnus, hand to hand, of cum or con and manus; emīnus, at a distance, of e and manus; quorsum, of quo verbum; denuo, anew, of de novo; quin, why not, but, of qui ne; cur, of cui rei; peditentim, step by step, as it were pedem tendendo; perendie, for perempto die; nimirum, of ne, i. e. non and mirum; antea, postea, præterea, &c. of ante and ea, &c. Ubis, quovis, undelibet, quousque, sicut, sicuti, velut, veluti, desuper, insuper, quonobrem, &c. of ubi, and vis, &c. nudiustrius, of nunc dies tertius: identidem, of idem et idem; impreſentiarum, i. e. in tempore rerum preſentium, &c.

Obs. 1. The Adverb is not an essential part of speech. It only serves to express shortly, in one word, what must otherwise have required two or more; as, sapienter, wisely, for cum sapientia; hic, for in hoc loco; semper, for in omni tempore; semel, for una vice; bis, for duabus vicibus; Meberecle, for Hercules me juvet, &c.

Obs. 2. Some adverbs of time, place, and order, are frequently used the one for the other: as, ubi, where or when; inde, from that place, from that time, after that, next; hactenus, hitherto, thus far, with respect to place, time, or order, &c.

Obs. 3. Some adverbs of time are either past, present, or future; as, jam, already, now, by and by; olim, long ago, some time, hereafter. Some adverbs of place are equally various; thus, cōfē peregrē, to be abroad; ire peregrē, to go abroad; redire peregrē, to return from abroad.

Obs. 4. Interrogative adverbs of time and place doubled, or compounded with cunque, answer to the English adjection so ever; as, ubi-ubi, or ubi cunque, wheresoever; quoquā, quēcunque, whithersoever, &c. The same holds also in other interrogative words; as, quotquot, or quotcunque, how many soever; quantusquantus, or quantuscunque, how great soever; utut or utcunque, however or howsoever, &c. In English, the adverbs here, there, and where, when joined to certain participles or prepositions, as, to, of, by, with, in, &c. have the signification of pronouns; as, hereof, the same with of this; thereof, the same with of that; wherof, of which, &c.

P R E P O S I T I O N.

A Preposition is an indeclinable word which shews the relation of one thing to another.

There are twenty-eight Prepositions in Latin, which govern the accusative; that is, have an accusative after them.

Ad,	To.	Cis,	} On this side.
Apud,	At.	Citra,	
Ante,	Before.	Circa,	} About.
Adversus,	} Against, towards.	Circum,	
Adversum,		Erga,	Towards.
Contra,	Against.	Extra,	Without.
			Inter,

Inter,	<i>Between, among.</i>	Pēues,	<i>In the power of.</i>
Intra,	<i>Within.</i>	Post,	<i>After.</i>
Infra,	<i>Beneath.</i>	Pōne,	<i>Bebind.</i>
Juxta,	<i>Neigb to.</i>	Sēcūs,	<i>By, along.</i>
Ob,	<i>For.</i>	Sēcundūm,	<i>According to.</i>
Propter,	<i>For, bīrd by.</i>	Supra,	<i>Above.</i>
Per,	<i>By, th rough.</i>	Trans,	<i>On the farther side.</i>
Præter,	<i>Befōrē s, except.</i>	Ultra,	<i>Beyond.</i>

The Prepositions which govern the ablative are fifteen ; namely,

A,	} <i>From, or by,</i>	De,	<i>Of, concerning.</i>
Ab,		E,	} <i>Of, out of.</i>
Abs,		Ex,	
Absque,	<i>Without.</i>	Pro,	<i>For.</i>
Cum,	<i>With.</i>	Præ,	<i>Before.</i>
Clam,	} <i>Without the know- ledge of.</i>	Pilam,	<i>With the knowledge of.</i>
Cōram,	} <i>Before, in the pre- sense of.</i>	Sine,	<i>Without.</i>
		Tēnus,	<i>Up to, as far as.</i>

These four govern sometimes the accusative, and sometimes the ablative :

In, In, into. Sub, Under. Sūper, Ab-ve. Subter, Beneath.

Obs. 1. Prepositions are so called, because they are generally placed before the word with which they are joined. Some, however, are put after ; as, *cum*, when joined with *me*, *te*, *se*, and sometimes with *quo*, *qui*, and *quibus* : thus, *mecum*, *tecum*, &c. *Tenus* is always placed after ; as, *mento tenus*, up to the chin. So likewise are *versus* and *usque* ; and *ward*, in English ; as, *toward, eastward, &c.*

Obs. 2. Prepositions, both in English and Latin, are often compounded with other parts of speech, particularly with verbs ; as, *subire*, to undergo. In English they are frequently put after verbs ; as, *to go in, to go out, to look to, &c.*

Prepositions are also sometimes compounded together ; as, *Ex ad-
versus eum locum*, Cic. *Ex adversum Albenas*, C. Nep. *In ante diem
quartum Kalendarum Decembris distulit*, i. e. usque in eum diem, Cic. *Supplicatio indicta est ex ante diem quintum idus Octob.* i. e. ab eo die, Liv. *Ex ante pridie Idus Septembris*, Plin. But prepositions compounded together commonly become adverbs or conjunctions ; as, *propalūm, proslīnus, insuper, &c.*

Obs. 3. Prepositions in composition usually retain their primitive signification : as, *ad eo*, to go to : *præpono*, to place before. But from this there are several exceptions. 1. IN joined with adjectives generally denotes privation ; as, *infidus*, unfaithful : but when joined with verbs, increases their signification ; as, *indūro*, to harden greatly. In some words *in* has two contrary senses ; as, *invictus*, called upon, or not called upon. So *infrānatus*, *immutatus*, *infuetus*, *impensus*, *inbumatus*, *intentatus*, &c. 2. PER commonly increases the

signification; as, *Percārus*, *percēler*, *percōmis*, *percuriōsus*, *perdifficilis*, *perelegans*, *pergrātus*, *pergrāvis*, *perhospitālis*, *perilluſtris*, *perlaetus*, &c. very dear, very swift, &c. 3. *Præ* sometimes increases; as, *Præclārus*, *prædīves*, *prædulcīs*, *prædūrus*, *præpinguis*, *prævalidus*; *prævāleo*, *præpolleō*; and also *Ex*; as, *Exclāmo*, *exaggēō*, *exaugeo*, *excalefacio*, *extenuo*, *exbilīo*; but *Ex* sometimes denotes privation, as, *Exfanguis*, *bloodleſs*, pale; *excors*, *exanīenis*, -mo, &c. 4. *Sub* often diminishes; as, *Subalbidus*, *subabsurdus*, *subamārus*, *subdulcis*, *subgrandis*, *subgrāvis*, *subniger*; &c. a little white or whitish, &c. *De* often signifies downward; as, *Deſido*, *decurro*, *degrāvo*, *despicio*, *delābor*: sometimes increases; as, *Diāmo*, *demīrō*; and sometimes expresses privation; as, *Demens*, *decōlor*, *deformis*, &c.

Obs. 4. There are five or fix syllables, namely, *am*, *di* or *dī*, *re*, *se*, *con*, which are commonly called, *Inseparable Prepositions*, because they are only to be found in compound words: however they generally add something to the signification of the words with which they are compounded; thus,

Am,	<i>round about.</i>	as,	<i>Ambio</i> ,	<i>to surround.</i>	
Di,	<i>afunder.</i>		<i>Dīvello</i> ,	<i>to pull afunder,</i>	
Dis,			<i>Disfrāho</i> ,	<i>to draw afunder.</i>	
Re,	<i>again.</i>		<i>Rēlēgo</i> ,	<i>to read again.</i>	
Se,	<i>aside or apart.</i>		<i>Sēpōno</i> ,	<i>to lay aside.</i>	
Con,	<i>together.</i>		<i>Concreſco</i> ,	<i>to grow together.</i>	

INTERJECTION.

An Interjection is an indeclinable word *thrown in between* the parts of a sentence, to exprefs some passion or emotion of the mind.

Some Interjections are natural sounds, and common to all languages; as, *Ob!* *Ah!*

Interjections exprefs in one word a whole sentence, and thus fitly represent the quicknes of the passions.

The different passions have commonly different words to exprefs them; thus,

1. JOY; as, *swax*, *hey*, *brave*, *io!*
2. GRIEF; as, *ab*, *bet*, *beu*, *ebeu!* *ah*, *alas*, *woes me!*
3. WONDER; as, *papē!* *O strange!* *vab!* *hah!*
4. PRAISE; as, *euge!* *well done!*
5. AVERSION; as, *apāge!* *away*, *begone*, *avaunt*, *off*, *fy*, *tush!*
6. EXCLAIMING; as, *Ob*, *prob!* *O!*
7. SURPRISE or FEAR; as, *atat!* *ha*, *aha!*
8. IMPRECATION; as, *væ!* *wo*, *pox on't!*
9. LAUGHTER; as, *ba*, *ba*, *be!*
10. SILENCING; as, *au*, *'f*, *pax!* *silence*, *hush*, *'ft!*
11. CALLING; as, *eho*, *chōdum*, *io*, *bo!* *so*, *ho*, *ho*, *O!*

12. DERISION; as, *buiſ* away with!

13. ATTENTION; as, *bem!* ha!

Some interjections denote several different passions: thus, *Vah* is used to express joy, and sorrow, and wonder, &c.

Adjectives of the neuter gender are sometimes used for interjections; as, *Malum!* with a mischief! *Infandum!* O shame! *fy, fy!* *Miserum,* O wretched! *Nefas!* O the villany!

CONJUNCTION.

A conjunction is an indeclinable word, which serves to join sentences together.

Thus *You* and *I*, and *the boy*, *read Virgil*, is one sentence, made up of these three, by the conjunction *and* twice employed; *I read Virgil*; *You read Virgil*; *The boy reads Virgil*. In like manner, " *You and I read Virgil, but the boy reads Ovid*," is one sentence, made up of three, by the conjunctions *and* and *but*.

Conjunctions, according to their different meaning, are divided into the following classes:

1. COPULATIVE; as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *que*, and; *etiam*, *quōque*, *item*, also; *cum*, *tum*, both, and. Also their contraries, *nec*, *nōque*, *neu*, *neve*, neither, nor.

2. DISJUNCTIVE; as, *aut*, *ve*, *vel*, *seu*, *sive*, either, or.

3. CONCESSIVE; as, *etī*, *etiamē*, *tamenē*, *licet*, *quāquam*, *quamvis*, though, although, albeit.

4. ADVERSATIVE; as, *sed*, *verum*, *autem*, *at*, *aff*, *atqui*, but; *tamen*, *attāmen*, *veruntamen*, *verumēimē*, yet, notwithstanding, nevertheless.

5. CAUSAL; as, *nam*, *namque*, *enīm*, for; *quia*, *quippe*, *quoniam*, because; *quād*, that, because.

6. ILLATIVE or RATIONAL; as, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idecirco*, *itāque*, therefore; *qua prop̄ter*, *quocirca*, wherefore; *proinde*, therefore; *cum*, *quum*, seeing, since; *quandoquidem*, forasmuchas.

7. FINAL or PERFECTIVE; as, *ut*, *uti*, that, to the end that.

8. CONDITIONAL; as, *si*, *sin*, if; *dum*, *modo*, *dummōdo*, provided, upon condition that; *si quidem*, if indeed.

9. EXCEPTIVE or RESTRICTIVE; as, *ni*, *nisi*, unless, except.

10. DIMINUTIVE; as, *saltem*, *certe*, at least.

11. SUSPENSIVE or DUBITATIVE; as, *an*, *anne*, *num*, whether; *ne*, *annon*, whether, not; *necne*, or, not.

12. EXPLETIVE; as, *autem*, *vero*, now, truly; *quidem*, *equidem*, indeed.

13. ORDINATIVE; as, *deinde*, thereafter; *denique*, finally; *ināp̄er*, moreover; *cāterūm*, moreover, but, however.

14. DECLARATIVE; as, *videlicet*, *scilicet*, *nempe*, *nimirūm*, &c. to wit, namely.

Obs. 1. The same words, as they are taken in different views, are both *adverbs* and *conjunctions*. Thus, *an*, *anne*, &c. are either *interrogatives*

gative adverbs: as, *An scribit?* Does he write? or, suspensive conjunctions: as, *Nescio an scribat*, I know not if he writes.

Obs. 2. Some conjunctions, according to their natural order, stand first in a sentence; as, *Ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, *sive*, *at*, *sed*, *verum*, *nam*, *quandoquidem*, *quocirca*, *quare*, *sin*, *siquidem*, *præterquam*, &c.: some stand in the second place: as, *Autem*, *vero*, *quoque*, *quidem*, *enim*: and some may indifferently be put either first or second; as *Etiam*, *equidem*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *quamquam*, *tamen*, *attamen*, *namque*, *quod*, *quia*, *quoniam*, *quippe*, *utpote*, *ut*, *uti*, *ergo*, *ideo*, *igitur*, *idcirco*, *itaque*, *proinde*, *proterea*, *si*, *ni*, *nisi*, &c. Hence arose the division of them into *Prepositive*, *Subjunctives*, and *Common*. To the subjunctive may be added these three, *que*, *ve*, *ne*, which are always joined to some other word, and are called *Enclitics*, because, when put after long syllables, they make the accent incline to the foregoing syllable; as in the following verse,

Inde hisque pilæ, discive, trahive, quiescit. Horat.

But when these enclitic conjunctions come after a short vowel, they do not affect its pronunciation; thus,

Arbuteos fatus montanæque fraga legabant. Ovid.

SENTENCES.

A Sentence is any thought of the mind expressed by two or more words put together ; as, *I read. The boy reads Virgil.*

That part of grammar which teaches to put words rightly together in sentences, is called *Syntax* or *Construction*.

Words in sentences have a twofold relation to one another ; *namely*, that of *Concord* or *Agreement* ; and that of *Government* or *Influence*.

Concord, is when one word agrees with another in some accidents ; as, in gender, number, person, or case.

Government, is when one word requires another to be put in a certain case, or mode.

General Principles of SYNTAX.

1. In every sentence there must be a verb and a nominative expressed or understood.

2. Every adjective must have a substantive expressed or understood.

3. All the cases of Latin nouns, except the nominative and vocative, must be governed by some other word.

4. The genitive is governed by a substantive noun expressed or understood.

5. The dative is governed by adjectives and verbs.

6. The accusative is governed by an active verb, or by a preposition ; or is placed before the infinitive.

7. The vocative stands by itself, or has an interjection joined with it.

8. The ablative is governed by a preposition expressed or understood.

9. The infinitive is governed by some verb or adjective.

10. The genitive or possessive case in English always depends on some noun ; and the objective or accusative case is put after a verb active or a preposition.

All Sentences are either SIMPLE or COMPOUND.

Syntax therefore may be divided into two parts, according to the general division of sentences.

SIMPLE SENTENCES.

A Simple Sentence is that which has but one nominative; and one finite verb, *that is*, a verb in the indicative, subjunctive, or imperative mode.

In a simple sentence, there is only one *Subject* and one *Attribute*.

The SUBJECT is the word which marks the person or thing spoken of.

The ATTRIBUTE expresses what we affirm concerning the subject, as,

The boy reads his lesson: Here, "the boy," is the *Subject* of discourse, or the person spoken of; "reads his lesson," is the *Attribute*, or what we affirm concerning the subject. *The diligent boy reads his lesson carefully at home*. Here we have still the same subject, "the boy," marked by the character of "diligent," added to it; and the same attribute, "reads his lesson," with the circumstances of manner and place subjoined, "carefully," "at home."

C O N C O R D.

The following words agree together in sentences, 1. A substantive with a substantive. 2. An adjective with a substantive. 3. A verb with a nominative.

1. Agreement of one Substantive with another.

RULE I. Substantives signifying the same thing, agree in case; as,

Cicero orātor, Cicero the Orator; *Ciceronis oratōris*, Of Cicero the Orator.
Urbs Athēnæ, The city Athens; *Urbis Athēnārum*, Of the city Athens.

2. Agreement of an Adjective with a Substantive.

II. An Adjective agrees with a Substantive, in gender, number, and case; as,

Bonus vir, a good man; *Boni viri*, good men.
Fāmina cōfīa, a chaste woman; *Famīna cōfīar*, chaste women.
Dulce pōnum, a sweet apple; *Dulcia pōna*, sweet apples.
And so through all the cases and degrees of comparison.

This rule applies also to Adjective pronouns and participles; as *Meus liber*, my book; *ager calendus*, a field to be tilled: Plur. *Mei libri, agri calendii*, &c.

Obs. 1. The substantive is frequently understood, or its place supplied by an infinitive; and then the adjective is put in the neuter gender; as, *triste*, sc. *negotium*, a sad thing, *Virg.*; *Tuum scire*, the same with *tua scientia*, thy knowledge, *Perf.* We sometimes however find the substantive understood in the feminine; as, *Non posteriores feram*, sup. *partes*, *Ter.*

Obs. 2. An adjective often supplies the place of a substantive; as, *Certus amicus*, A sure friend: *Bona ferina*, Good venison; *Summum bonum*, The chief good: *Homo* being understood to *amicus*, *caro* to *ferina*, and *negotium* to *bonum*. A substantive is sometimes used as an adjective; as, *incola turba vocant*, the inhabitants, *Ovid Faſt. 3. 582.*

Obs. 3. These adjectives, *primus*, *medius*, *ultimus*, *extremus*, *infimus*, *imus*, *summus*, *supremus*, *reliquus*, *catera*, usually signify the first part, the middle part, &c. of any thing; as, *Media nox*, the middle part of the night; *Summa arbor*, the highest part of a tree.

Obs. 4. In English, the adjective generally goes before the noun; as, *a wise man*, *a good borse*; unless something depend upon the adjective; as, *food convenient for me*; or the adjective be emphatical; as, *Alexander the Great*. And the article goes before the Adjective: except the adjectives *all*, *such*; and *many*, and others subjoined to the adverbs *so*, *as*, and *how*; as, *all the men*; *many a man*, *so good a man*; *as good a man*; *how beautiful a prospect!* or when there are two or more adjectives joined to the noun; as, *a man learned and religious*.

Obs. 5. Whether the adjective or substantive ought to be placed first in Latin, no certain rule can be given. Only if the substantive be a monosyllable, and the adjective a polysyllable, the substantive is elegantly put first; as, *vir clarissimus*, *res praefantissima*, &c.

Obs. 6. A substantive in English, sometimes supplies the place of an adjective; as, *sea-water*, *land-fowl*, *forest-trees*, *stone-arch*, &c.; and even when no hyphen is marked; as, *the London Chronicle*, *the Edinburgh Magazine*.

Obs. 7. Nouns of measure, number, and weight, are sometimes joined in the singular with Numeral Adjectives plural; as, *fifty foot*; *six score*; *ten thousand fathoms*; *a hundred bead*; *an hundred weight*. We say, *by this means*, *by that means*; *for*, *by these means*, *by those means*; *or*, *by this mean*, *by that mean*, as it was used anciently; *So*, *This for-*

ty years, for these; these and those kind of things, for this and that. Each, every, either, are always joined with the singular number, unless the plural noun convey a collective idea; as, *every twelve years*.

3. Agreement of a Verb with a Nominative.

III. A Verb agrees with its Nominative in number and person; as,

Ego lego, I read; *Nos legimus*, We read.
Tu scribis, Thou writest or you write; *Vos scribitis*, Ye or you write;
Præceptor docet, the master teaches; *Præceptores docent*, Masters teach.

And so through all the modes, tenses, and numbers.

Obs. 1. *Ego* and *nos* are of the first person; *tu* and *vos* of the second person; *ille* and all other words, of the third. The nominative of the first and second person in Latin is seldom expressed, unless for the sake of emphasis or distinction; as, *Tu es patronus, tu pater*, Ter. *Tu legis, ego scribo*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive, or some part of a sentence, often supplies the place of a nominative; as, *Mentiri est turpe*, to lie is base; *Diu non perlitatum tenuit di^{ct}atorem*; The sacrifice not being attended with favourable omens detained the dictator for a long time, Liv. 7. 8. Sometimes the neuter pronoun *id* or *illud* is added, to express the meaning more strongly; as, *Facere quæ libet, id est esse regem*, Sallust.

Obs. 3. The infinitive mode often supplies the place of the third person of the imperfect of the indicative; as, *Milites fugere*, the soldiers fled, for *fugiebant* or *fugere* *ceperunt*. *Invidere omnes mihi*, for *invidebant*.

Obs. 4. A collective noun may be joined with a verb either of the singular or of the plural number; as, *Multitudo stat*, or *stant*; The multitude stands, or stand.

A collective noun, when joined with a verb singular, expresses many considered as one whole; but when joined with a verb plural, signifies many separately, or as individuals. Hence, if an adjective or participle be subjoined to the verb, when of the singular number, they will agree both in gender and number with the collective noun; but if the verb be plural, the adjective or participle will be plural also, and of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed; as, *Pars erant eæsi*; *Pars obnixa trudunt*, sc. *farmicæ*, Virg. Æn. iv. 406. *Magna pars raptæ*, sc. *virgines*, Liv. i. 9. Sometimes,

Sometimes, however, though more rarely, the adjective is thus used in the singular; as, *Pars arduus*, Virg. *AEn.* vii. 624.

Obs. 5. The neuter pronoun *it* in English, is often the nominative to the verb when we speak either of persons or things; as, *It is I*; *it is he*; *it was they*; *it appears*; in Latin, *Ego sum, ille est, &c.* It is sometimes understood; as, *may be*, *for*, *it may be*; *as follows*, *for*, *as it follows*; *as is thought*, *for*, *as it is thought*.

Obs. 6. We often say in English, *You was*, instead of *You were*; which is a great inaccuracy in grammar; but so frequently used, particularly in common conversation, that it seems to be in a manner established by custom. So *there's two or three of us*, *for there are*; *There was more Sophists*, *for were*; *great pains has been taken*, *for have*, &c.

Accusative before the Infinitive.

¶ IV. The infinitive mode has an accusative before it; as,

Gaudeo te valere, I am glad that you are well.

Obs. 1. The participle *that* in English, is the sign of the accusative before the infinitive in Latin, when it comes between two verbs, without expressing intention or design. Sometimes the participle is omitted; as, *Aiunt regem adventare*, They say the king is coming, *that* being understood.

Obs. 2. The accusative before the infinitive always depends upon some other verb, commonly on a neuter or substantive verb; but seldom on a verb taken in an active sense.

Obs. 3. The infinitive, with the accusative before it, seems sometimes to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Turpe est militem fugere*, That a soldier should fly is a shameful thing.

Obs. 4. The infinitive *esse* or *fuisse*, must frequently be supplied, especially after participles; as, *Hoc illum exercitum casum fasumque cognovi*, Cic. Sometimes both the accusative and infinitive are understood; as, *Pollicitus suscepturnum, scil. me esse*, Ter.

Obs. 5. The infinitive may frequently be otherwise rendered by the conjunctions, *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, or *quin*; as, *Gaudeo te valere*, i.e. *quod valeas*, or *propter tuam bonam valetudinem*: *Jubeo vos bene sperare*, or *ut bene speretis*; *Prohibeo eum exire*, or *ne exeat*: *non dubito eum fecisse*, or much better, *quin fecerit*. *Scio quod filius amet*, Plaut. *for filium amare*; *Miror, si potuit*, *for eum potuisse*, Cic. *Nemo dubitat, ut populus Romanus omnes virtute superaret*, *for populum Romanum superasse*, Nep. *Ex animi sententia juro, ut ego rem publicam non deseram*, *for me non deserturum esse*, Liv. xxii. 53.

The same Case after a Verb as before it.

¶ V. Any Verb may have the same case after it as before it; when both words refer to the same thing; as,

<i>Ego sum discipulus,</i>	I am a scholar.
<i>Tu vocaris Joannes,</i>	You are named John.
<i>Illa incedit regina,</i>	She walks as a queen.
<i>Scio illum haberi sapientem,</i>	I know that he is esteemed wise.
<i>Scio vos esse discipulos,</i>	I know that you are scholars.

So *Redeo iratus, jaceo supplex*; *Evident digni*, they will become worthy; *Rerum publicarum defendi adolescentis*; *nolo esse longus*, I am unwilling to be tedious; *Malum videri timidus, quam parum prudens*, Cic. *Non licet mibi esse negligenti*, Cic. *Natura dedit omnibus esse beatis*, Claud. *Cupio me esse clementem*; *cupio non putari mendacem*; *Vult esse medium*, sc. se, He wishes to be neuter, Cic. *Dicere esse pater*; *Hoc est esse patrem?* sc. eum, Ter. *Id est dominum, non imperatorem esse*; Sallust.

Obs. 1. This rule implies nothing else but the agreement of an adjective with a substantive, or of one substantive with another; for those words in a sentence which refer to the same object, must always agree together, how much soever disjoined.

Obs. 2. The verbs which most frequently have the same case after them as before them, are,

1. Substantive and neuter verbs; as, *Sum, fio, forem, and existo*; *eo, venio, flo, sedeo, evado, jaceo, fugio*, &c.

2. The passive of verbs of naming, judging, &c. as, *Dicor, appellor, vocor, nominor, nuncupor*, to which add, *videor, existimor, creor, constitutor, salutor, designor*, &c.

These and other like verbs, admit after them only the nominative, accusative, or dative. When they have before them the genitive, they have after them an accusative; as, *Interest omnium esse bonos*, scil. se; It is the interest of all to be good. In some cases we can use either the nom. or acc. promiscuously; as, *Cupio diei doctus or doctum, sc. me dici*; *Cupio esse clementis, non putari mendax*; *vult esse mediis*.

Obs. 3. When any of the above verbs are placed between two nominatives of different numbers they commonly agree in number with the former; as, *Des est decem talenta*, Her dowry is ten talents, Ter. *Omnia pontus erant*, Ovid. But sometimes with the latter; as, *Amanitum iste amoris integratio est*, The quarrels of lovers is a renewal of love, Ovid. So when an adjective is applied to two substantives of different genders, it commonly agrees in gender with that substantive

stantive which is most the subject of discourse ; as, *Oppidum est appellatum Pessidonia*, Plin. Sometimes, however, the adjective agrees with the nearer substantive ; as, *Non omnis error stultitia est dicenda*, Cic.

Obs. 4. When the infinitive of any verb, particularly the substantive verb *esse*, has the dative before it, governed by an impersonal verb, or any other word, it may have after it either the dative or the accusative ; as, *Licet mibi esse beato*, I may be happy ; or, *Licet mibi esse beatum*, me being understood ; thus, *licet mibi (me) esse beatum*, The dative before *esse* is often to be supplied ; as, *Licet esse beatum*, One may be happy, *scil. alicui* or *homini*.

Obs. 5. The poets use certain forms of expression, which are not to be imitated in prose ; as, *Rettulit Ajax Jovis esse pronepos*, for *Se esse pronepotem*, Ovid. Met. xii. 141. *Cum pateris sapiens emendatusque vocari*, for *te vocari sapientem*, &c. Horat. Ep. I. 16. 30. *Acceptum refero versibus esse nocens* ; Ovid. *Tutumque putavit jam bonus esse sacer* ; Lucan.

Obs. 6. The verb *to be* in English, has always a nominative case after it ; as, *It was I* : unless it be of the infinitive mode ; as, *I took it to be him*. We often use however this impropriety in common conversation, *It is me*, *It can't be me*, *It was him* ; for, *It is I*, *It cannot be I*, *It was he*.

GOVERNMENT.

I. The GOVERNMENT of SUBSTANTIVES.

VI. One Substantive governs another in the genitive, (*when the latter Substantive signifies a different thing from the former*) ; as,

Amor Dei, the love of God. *Lex natura*, The law of nature.

Domus Cæsaris, The house of Cæsar, or Cæsar's house.

Obs. 1. When one substantive is governed by another in the genitive, it expresses in general the relation of property or possession, and therefore is often elegantly turned into a possessive adjective ; as, *Domus patris*, or *paterna*, a father's house ; *Filius heri* or *herilis*, a master's son : and among the poets, *Labor Herculeus*, for *Herculis* ; *Ensi Ewandrius*, for *Ewandri*.

Obs. 2. When the substantive noun in the genitive signifies a person, it may be taken either in an active or a passive sense ; thus, *Amor Dei*, The love of God, either means the love of God towards us, or our love towards him : So *caritas patris*, signifies either, the affection of a father to his children, or theirs to him. But often the substantive can only be taken either in an active or in a passive sense ; thus, *Timor Dei*, always implies *Deus timetur* ; and *Providentia Dei*, *Deus providet*. So *Caritas ipsius soli*, affection to the very soil, Liv. ii. 1.

Obs. 3. Both the former and latter substantive are sometimes to be understood ; as, *Heßöris Andromähte*, scil. *uxor* ; *Ventum est ad Vestę*, scil. *ædem* or *templum* ; *Ventum est tria millia*, scil. *passuum*, three miles.

Obs. 4. We find the dative often used after a verb for the genitive,

particularly among the poets; as, *Ei corpus porrigitur*, His body is extended. Virg. *Aen.* vi. 596.

Obs. 5. Some substantives are joined with certain prepositions; as, *Amicitia, inimicitia, pax, cum aliquo*; *Amor in, vel erga, aliquem*; *Gaudium de re, Cura de aliquo*; *Mentio illius, vel de illo*; *Quies ab armis*; *Fumus ex incendis*; *Predator ex sociis*, for *sociorum*. Sallust, &c.

Obs. 6. The genitive in Latin is often rendered in English by several other particles besides *of*; as, *Descensus Averni*, the descent to Avernus; *Prudentia iuris*, skill in the law.

SUBSTANTIVE PRONOUNS are governed in the genitive like substantive nouns; as, *pars mei*, a part of me.

So also adjective pronouns when used as substantives, or having a noun understood: as, *Liber ejus, illius, hujus, &c.* The book of him, or his book, sc. *hominis*: The book of her, or her book, sc. *faminae*. *Libri eorum, v. earum*, their books; *Cujus liber*, the book of whom, or whose book; *Quorum libri*, whose books, &c. But we always say, *meus liber*, not *mei*; *pater noster*, not *nostri*, *suum jus*, not *sui*.

When a passive sense is expressed, we use *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri, nostrum, vestrum*; but we use their possessives, when an active sense is expressed; as, *Amor mei*, The love of me, that is, The love wherewith I am loved: *Amor meus*, My love, that is, the love wherewith I love. We find however the possessives sometimes used passively, and their primitives taken actively; as, *Odium tuum*, Hatred of thee, Ter. *Phorm.* v. 8. 27. *Labor mei*, My Labour, *Plaut.*

The possessives *meus, tuus, suus, noster, vester*, have sometimes nouns, pronouns, and participles after them in the genitive; as, *Pectus tuum hominis simplicis*, *Cic. Phil.* ii. 43. *Noster doorum eventus*, *Liv.* *Tuum ipsis studium*, *Cic.* *Mea scripta timentis*, *&c. Hor.* *Solius meum peccatum corrigi non potest*, *Cic.* *Id maxime quicunque decet, quod est cuiusque suum maxime*. *Id.*

The reciprocals *SUI* and *SUUS* are used, when the action of the verb is reflected, as it were, upon its nominative: as, *Cato interfecit se*, *Miles defendit suam vitam*; *Dicit se scripturum esse*. We find however *is* or *ille* sometimes used in examples of this kind; as, *Deum agnoscimus ex operibus ejus*, *Cic.* *Per suadent Rauracis, ut una cum iis proficiantur, for una secum*, *Cæs.*

VII. If the latter Substantive have an Adjective of praise or dispraise joined with it, they may be put in the genitive or ablative; as,

Vir summa prudentia, or *summa prudentia*, A man of great wisdom.
Puer proba indolis, or *probâ indole*, A boy of a good disposition.

Obs. 1. The ablative here is not properly governed by the foregoing substantive, but by some preposition understood; as, *cum, de, ex, in*, &c. Thus, *Vir summa prudentia*, is the same with *vir cum summa prudentia*.

Obs.

Obs. 2. In some phrases the genitive is only used; as, *Magni formica laboris*, The labori. us ant; *Vir imi subtili*, homo minimi pretii, a person of the lowest rank. *Homo nullius stipendi*, a man of no experience in war; Sallust. *Non multi cibi bispetem acespites, sed multe jaci*, Cic. *Ager trium jugerum*. In others only the ablative; as, *Ex bono animo*, Be of good courage. *Mira sum asceritate ad litigandum*, Cic. *C. pite aperto est*, His head is bare; *obvoluto*, covered. *Capite et super cibis semper est rufis*, 1.1. *Mauier magno natu*, 1.1. Sometimes both are used in the same sentence; as, *Adolescens eximia spe, summa virtutis*, Cic. The ablative more frequently occurs in prose than the genitive.

Obs. 3. Sometimes the adjective agrees in case with the former substantive, and then the latter substantive is put in the ablative; thus, we say, either, *Vir præstantis ingenii*, or *præstanti ingenio*; or *Vir præstans ingenio*, and sometimes *præstans ingenii*. Among the poets the latter substantive is frequently put in the accusative by a Greek construction, *secundum*, or *quod ad* being understood by the figure commonly called *Synechöche*; as *Miles fractus membra*, i. e. *fractus secundum* or *quod ad membra*, or *babens membra fracta*, Horat. *Os humerosque deo similis*, Virg.

Adjectives taken as Substantives.

VIII. An Adjective in the neuter gender without a substantive governs the genitive; as,

Multum pecuniae, Much money. *Quid ei est?* What is the matter?

Obs. 1. This manner of expression is more elegant than *Multa pecunia*, and therefore is much used by the best writers; as, *Plus eloquentiae, minus sapientiae, tantum fidei, id negotii*; *quicquid erat patrum, reos diceret*, Liv. *Id loci*; *Ad hoc ætatis*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. The adjectives which thus govern the genitive like substantives, generally signify quantity; as, *multum, plus, plurimum, tantum, quantum, minus, minimum*, &c. To which add, *hoc, illud, istud, id, quid, aliquid, quidvis, quiddam*, &c. *Plus* and *quid* almost always govern the genitive, and therefore by some are thought to be substantives.

Obs. 3. *Nihil*, and these neuter pronouns *quid, aliquid, &c.* elegantly govern neuter adjectives of the first and second declension in the genitive; as, *nihil sinceri*, no sincerity; but seldom govern in this manner adjectives of the third declension, particularly those which end in *is* and *e*; as, *Nequid hostile timerent*, not *hostilis*: we find however *quicquid civilis*, Liv. v. 3.

Obs. 4. Plural adjectives of the neuter gender also govern the genitive, commonly the genitive plural; as, *Angusta viarum, Opaca locorum, Telluris operis, loca* being understood. So *Amara curarum, acuta belti, sc. negotia*, Horat. An adjective indeed of any gender may have a genitive after it, with a substantive understood; as, *Amissus Co, aris, Paria Ulyssis, &c.*

Opus and Usus.

IX. *Opus* and *Usus*, signifying *need*, require the ablative; as,

Est opus pecunia, There is need of money; *Usus viribus*, Need of strength.

Obs. 1. *Opus* and *usus* are substantive nouns, and do not govern the ablative of themselves, but by some preposition, as *pro* or the like, understood. They sometimes also, although more rarely, govern the genitive; as, *Lectionis opus est*, Quinct. *Opera usus est*, Liv.

Obs. 2. *Opus* is often construed like an indeclinable adjective; as, *Dux nobis opus est*, We need a general, Cic. *Dices nummos mibi opus esse*, Id. *Nobis exempla opus sunt*, Id.

Obs. 3. *Opus* is elegantly joined with the perfect participle; as, *Opus maturato*, Need of haste; *Opus consulto*, Need of deliberation; *Quid factio usus est?* Ter. The participle has sometimes a substantive joined with it; as, *Mibi opus fuit Hirtio convento*, It behoved me to meet with Hirtius, Cic.

Obs. 4. *Opus* is sometimes joined with the infinitive, or the subjunctive with *ut*, as, *Siquid forte sit, quod opus sit sciri*, Cic. *Nunc tibi opus est, agram ut te adjimales*, Plaut. *Sive opus est imperitare equis*, Horat. It is often placed *absolutely*, i. e. without depending on any other word; as, *sic opus est*; *si opus fit*, &c.

II. GOVERNMENT OF ADJECTIVES.

1. *Adjectives governing the Genitive.*

X. Verbal adjectives, or such as signify an affection of the mind, govern the genitive; as,

Avidus gloriae, Desirous of glory. *Ignarus fraudis*, Ignorant of fraud. *Memos beneficiorum*, Mindful of favours.

To this rule belong, I. Verbal adjectives in AX; as, *capax*, *edax*, *ferax*, *tenax*, *perfimax*, &c. and certain participial adjectives in NS and TUS; as, *amans*, *appetens*, *cupiens*, *insolens*, *sciens*; *consultus*, *diligens*, *expertus*, *insuetus*, *insolitus*, &c. II. Adjectives expressing various affections of the mind; 1. Desire; as, *avarus*, *cupidus*, *studiosus*, &c. 2. Knowledge, ignorance and doubting; as, *callidus*, *certus*, *certior*, *conscius*, *gnarus*, *peritus*, *prudens*, &c. *Ignarus*, *incertus*, *inscius*, *imprudens*, *imperitus*, *imtimor*, *rudis*; *ambiguus*, *dubius*, *suspensus*, &c. 3. Care and diligence, and the contrary: as, *anxius*, *curiosus*, *solicitus*, *providus*, *diligens*; *incuriosus*, *securus*, *negligens*, &c. 4. Fear and confidence; as, *formidolosus*, *pavidus*, *timidus*, *trepidus*; *impavidus*, *interritus*,

tus, intrepidus. 5. Guilt and innocence; as, *noxius, reus, suspectus, compertus; innoxius, innocentis, insens.*

To these add many adjectives of various significations; as, *ager animalis; orans, audax, aversus, diversus, egregius, erector, fatus, felix, fessus, furans, ingens, integer, latus, praeflans animi; modicus volt; integer vita; seriflidorum, &c.* But we say *ager pedibus, ardens in cupiditatibus, praelaus doctrinâ, modicus cultu; Latus negotio, de re, or propera rem, &c.* and never *ager pedum, &c.*

Obs. 1. Verbals in NS are used both as adjectives and participles; thus, *patiens algoris*, able to bear cold; and *patiens algorem*, actually bearing cold. So *amans virtutis*, and *amans virtutem; doctus grammaticæ*, skilled in grammar; *doctus grammaticam*, one who has learned it.

Obs. 2. Many of these adjectives vary their construction, as, *avidus in pecunia*, Cic. *Avidior ad rem*, Ter. *Jure confidens & peritus, or juris*, Cic. *Rudis literarum, in jure civili*, Cic. *Rudis arte, ad mala*, Ovid. *Dolus Latinæ, Latinæ dotoris*, Cic. *Afactus labore, in onus*, Liv. *mensa berili*, Virg. *Infactus moribus Romantum*, in the dat. Liv. *Liboris, ad onera portanda*, Cæt. *Defactus bilo, & triumphis*, in the dat. or abl. rather the dat. Virg. *Anxius, solitus, securus, de re aliqua; diligens, in, ad, de, Cæt.* *Negligens in aliis omni, in or dare; Reus de vi, criminibus*, Cic. *Certior fatus in re, rather than rei*, Cic.

Obs. 3. The genitive after these adjectives is thought to be governed by *causa, in re, or in negotio*, or some such word understood; as, *Cupidus laudis*, i. e. *causa or in re laudis*, desirous of praise, that is, on account of, or in the matter of praise. But many of the adjectives themselves may be supposed to contain in their own signification the force of a substantive; thus, *studiosus pecuniae*, fond of money, is the same with *habens studium pecuniae*, having a fondness for money.

XI. Partitives, and words placed partitively, comparatives, superlatives, interrogatives, and some numerals, govern the genitive plural; as,

Aliquis philosophorum,

Some one of the philosophers.

Senior fratrum,

The elder of the brothers.

Dolissimus Romanorum,

The most feared of the Romans.

Quis nostrum?

Which of us?

Una musarum,

One of the muses.

Octavus sapientum.

The eighth of the wise men.

Adjectives are called *Partitives*, or are said to be placed *partitively*, when they signify a part of any number of persons or things, having after them, in English, *of* or *among*; as, *alius, nullus, solus, &c.* *quis* and *qui*, with their compounds: also *Comparatives, Superlatives, and*

some Numerals ; as, *unus*, *duo*, *tres* ; *primus*, *secundus*, &c. To these add *multi*, *pauci*, *plerique*, *medius*.

Obs. 1. Partitives, &c. agree in gender with the substantive which they have after them in the genitive ; but when there are two substantives of different genders, the partitive, &c. rather agrees with the former ; as, *Indus fluminum maximus*, Cie. Rarely with the latter ; as, *Delphinus animalium vel ciffimum*, Plin. The genitive here is governed by *ex numero*, or by the same substantive understood in the singular number ; as, *Nulla sororum*, scil. *soror*, or *ex numero sororum*.

Obs. 2. Partitives, &c. are often otherwise construed with the prepositions *de*, *e*, *ex*, or *in* ; as, *Unus de fratribus* ; or by the poets, with *ante* or *inter* ; as, *Puleberrimus ante omnes*, *sor omnium*, Virg. *Primus inter omnes*, Id.

Obs. 3. Partitives, &c. govern collective nouns in the genitive singular, and are of the same gender with the individuals of which the collective noun is composed ; as, *Vir fortissimus nostrae civitatis*, Cic. *Maximus stirpis*, Liv. *Utimos orbis Britannos*, Horat. od. i. 35. 29.

Obs. 4. Comparatives are used, when we speak of two ; Superlatives when we speak of more than two ; as, *Major Fratrum*, The elder of the brothers, meaning *two* ; *Maximus fratrum*, The eldest of the brothers, meaning *more than two*. In like manner, *uter*, *alter*, *neuter*, are applied with regard to two ; *quis*, *unus*, *alius*, *nullus*, with regard to three or more ; as, *Uter vestrum*, Whether or which of you *two* ; *Quis vestrum*, Which of you *three* : but these are sometimes taken promiscuously the one for the other.

2. Adjectives governing the Dative.

XII. Adjectives signifying profit or disprofit, likeness or unlikeness, &c. govern the dative ; as,

Utilis bello, Profitable for War.

Perniciosus reipublica, Hurtful to the commonwealth.

Similis patri, Like to his father.

Or thus, *Any adjective may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English.*

To this rule belong :

1. Adjectives of profit or disprofit ; as, *Benignus*, *bonus*, *commodus*, *felix*, *fructuosus*, *prosper*, *saluber*.—*Calamitosus*, *damnosus*, *durus*, *extiosus*, *funebris*, *incommodus*, *malus*, *noxius*, *perniciosus*, *pestifer*.

2. Of pleasure or pain ; as, *Acceptus*, *ducis*, *gratus*, *gratiosus*, *jucundus*, *latus*, *suavis*.—*Acerbus*, *amarus*, *insuavis*, *injucundus*, *ingratus*, *molebus*, *trifis*.

3. Of friendship or hatred ; as, *Addictus*, *aequus*, *amicus*, *benevolus*, *blandus*, *carus*, *deditus*, *fidus*, *fidelis*, *lenis*, *mitis*, *propitius*.—*Adversus*, *enimodus*, *asper*, *crudelis*, *contrarius*, *infensus*, *infestus*, *infidus*, *immitis*, *inimicus*, *iniquus*, *invicis*, *invidus*, *iratus*, *odiosus*, *suspectus*, *trux*.

4. Of clearness or obscurity ; as, *Apertus*, *certus*, *compertus*, *conspicuus*, *manifestus*,

manifestus, notus, perspicuus. — *Ambiguus, dubius, ignotus, incertus, obscurus.*

5. Of nearness; as, *Finitimus, propior, proximus, propinquus, socius, vicinus.*

6. Of fitness or unfitness; as, *Aptus, appositus, accommodatus, babilis, idoneus, opportunitus.* — *Ineptus, inabilitus, importunus, inconveniens.*

7. Of ease or difficulty; as, *Facilis; levis, obvius, persius.* — *Difficilis, arduus, gravis, labiosus, periculosus, invius.* To these add such as signify propensity or readiness; as, *Pronus, proclivis, propensus, promptus, paratus.*

8. Of equality or inequality; as, *Equalis, aequalis, par, compar, suppar.* — *Inequalis, impar, dispar, discors.* Also of likeness or unlikeness, as, *Similis, aemulus, geminus.* — *Diffimilis, absensus, alienus, diversus, discolor.*

9. Several adjectives compounded with CON; as, *Cognatus, concolor, concors, confinis, congruus, consanguineus, constantinus, consonans, conveniens, contiguus, continuus, continens, contiguous;* as, *Mari-aer continentis,* Cic.

To these add many other Adjectives of various significations; as, *Obnoxius, subiectus, supplex, credulus, absurdus, decorus, deformis, praefatio, indecl. at hand, secundus, &c.* — particularly,

Verbals in BILIS and DUS govern the dative; as,

Amandus vel amabilis omnibus. To be loved by all men.

So *Mors est terribilis malis; Optabilis omnibus pax; Adhibenda est nobis diligentia,* Cic. *Semel omnibus calcanda est via leti;* Hor. Also some participles of the perfect tense; as, *Bella matribus deflata, hated by,* Hor.

Verbals in DUS are often construed with the prep. a; as, *Deus est venerandus & colendus a nobis,* Cic. Perfect participles are usually so; as, *Mors Graffi est a multis deflata,* rather than, *multis deflata,* Cic. *A te invitatus, rogatus, proditus, &c.* hardly ever *tibi.*

Obs. 1. The dative is properly not governed by adjectives, nor by any other part of speech; but put after them, to express the object to which their signification refers.

The particle to in English is often to be supplied; as, *Similis patri,* Like his father, to being understood.

Obs. 2. Substantives have likewise sometimes a dative after them; as, *Ille est pater, dux, vel filius mihi,* He is father, leader, or son to me: so, *Præsidium reis, decus amicis,* &c. Hor. *Exitium pecori,* Virg. *Virtutibus hostis,* Cic.

Obs. 3. The following adjectives have sometimes the dative after them, and sometimes the genitive; *Affinis, similis, communis, par, proprius, finitimus, fidus, conterminus, superstes, conscius, aequalis, contrarius,* and *adversus;*

versus; as, *Similis tibi*, or *tui*; *Superfles patri* or *patris*; *Conscius facinori* or *facinoris*. *Conscius* and some others frequently govern both the genitive and dative; as, *Mens tibi conscientia redi*. We say, *Similes*, *dissimiles*, *pares*, *disparés*, *æquales*, *communes*, *inter se*: *Par & communis cum aliquo*. *Civitas secum ipsa discors*; *discordes ad alia*. Liv.

Obs. 4. Adjectives signifying usefulness, or fitness, and the contrary, have after them the dative or the accusative with a preposition; as,

Utilis, *inutilis*, *aptus*, *ineptus*, *accommodatus*, *idoneus*, *babilis*, *inbabilis*, *opportūus*, *conveniens*, &c. *alicui rei*, or *ad aliquid*. Many other adjectives governing the dative are likewise construed with prepositions; as, *Attentus queſitūs*, Hor. *Attentus ad rem*, Ter.

Obs. 5. Of adjectives which denote friendship or hatred, or any other affection of the mind towards any one. I. Some are usually construed with the dative only; as, *Affabilis*, *arrogans*, *asper*, *cerus*, *difficilis*, *fidelis*, *inimicus*, *iratus*, *offensus*, *suspectus*, **ALICUI**. II. Some with the preposition *IN* and the accusative; as, *Acerbus*, *animatus*, *beneficis*, *gratiosus*, *injurious*, *liberalis*, *treacherous*, *misericors*, *officiosus*, *pīus*, *impīus*, *prolixus*, *severus*, *scordidus*, *torvus*, *vehementis*, **IN ALIQUEM**. III. Some either with the dative, or with the accus. and the preposition **IN**, **ERGA**, or **ADVERSUS** going before; as, *Contumax*, *criminosus*, *durus*, *exhibilis*, *gravis*, *hospitialis*, *implacabilis*, (and perhaps also *in* *horabilis* & *intolerabilis*.) *iniquus*, *faetus*, **ALICUI** or **IN ALIQUEM**. *Benevolus*, *benignus*, *mis̄ificus*, **ALICUI** or **ERGA ALIQUEM**. *Mitis* *comis*; **IN**, or **ERGA ALIQUEM**, and **ALICUI**. *Pervicax* **ADVERSUS ALIQUEM**. *Crudelis* **IN ALIQUEM**; *seldom ALICUI*. *Amicus*, *amulus*, *infensus*, *infestus*, **ALICUI**, *seldom IN ALIQUEM*. *Gratus* **ALICUI**, or **IN**, **ERGA**, **ADVERSUS ALIQUEM**. We say *alienus alicui* or *alicuius*; but oftener *ab aliquo*, and sometimes *aliquo* without the preposition.

AUDIENS is construed with two datives; as, *Regi dicto audiens erat*, he was obedient to the king; not *regis*; *Dicto audiens fuit iussis magistratum*, Nep. *Nobis dicto audientes sunt*, not *dictis*, Cic.

Obs. 6. Adjectives signifying motion or tendency to a thing, have usually after them the accusative with the preposition *ad* or *in*, seldom the dative; as,
Pronus, *preferens*, *proclivis*, *celer*, *tardus*, *piger*, &c. *ad iram*, or *in iram*.

Obs. 7. *Propior* and *proximus*, in imitation of their primitive *prope*, often govern the accusative; as, *Propior manu*, scil. *ad*, Sall. *Proximus finem*, Liv.

Obs. 8. *ID ET M* sometimes has the dative, chiefly in the poets; as, *Zavitum qui servat*, *idem fecit accidenti*, Hor. *Jupiter omnibus idem*, Virg. *Eadem*

Eadem illis censemus, Cic. But in prose we commonly find, *idem qui*, *et*, *ne*, *atque*, and also *ut*, *cum*; as, *Peripatetici quondam idem erant qui Academici*, Cic. *Est animus erga te*, *idem ac fuit*, Ter. *Dianam & Lunam tandem esse putant*, Cic. *Idem faciunt*, *ut*, &c. *In eodem loco mecum*, Cic. But it would be improper to say of the same person or thing under different names, *idem cum*; as, *Luna eadem est cum Diana*.

* We likewise say, *alias ac*, *atque* or *et*; and so sometimes *similis* & *par-*

3. Adjectives governing the Ablative.

XIII. These adjectives, *dignus*, *indignus*, *contentus*, *præditus*, *captus*, and *fretus*; also *natus*, *satus*, *ortus*, *editus*, and the like, govern the ablative; as,

Dignus bono, Worthy of honour. *Captus oculis*, Blind. [Strength.] *Contentus parvo*, Content with little. *Fretus viribus*, Trusting to his *Præditus virtute*, Endued with virtue. *Ortus regibus*, Descended of kings.

So *generatus*, *creatus*, *cretus*, *prognatus*, *oriundus*, *procreatus regibus*.

Obs. 1. The ablative after these adjectives is governed by some preposition understood: as, *Contentus parvo*, scil. *cum*; *Fretus viribus*, scil. *in*, &c. Sometimes the preposition is expressed; as, *Ortus ex concubina*, Sallust. *Editus de nymphis*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. *Dignus*, *indignus*, and *contentus*, have sometimes the genitive after them; as, *dignus avorum*, Virg. So *Macte eſſo*, or *macte eſſo vir-
tutis* or *virtute*, Increase in virtue, or Go on and prosper; *Jubera-
macte virtute* eſſe, sc. te, Liv. ii. 12. In the last example *macte* seems to be used adverbially.

4. Adjectives governing the Genitive or Ablative.

XIV. Adjectives of plenty or want govern the genitive or ablative; as,

Penus iræ or *irā*, Full of anger. *Inoprationis* or *rations*, Void of reason.

So *Non inopfer temporis*, *sed prodigi sumus*, Sen. *Lentulus non verbis
intps*, Cic. *Loca plena sunt omnia*, Cic. *Maxima quaque domus servis est
plena superbis*, Juv. *Res est solliciti pleas timoris amor*, Ovid. *Amor &
melle & filie & facundissimus*, Plaut. *Fæundo virorum paupertas fugitur*,
Lucan. *Oarum confitorum ejus particeps*, Curt. *Homo ratione parti-
cepſ*, Cic. *Nobil infidili vacuum*. Id. *Vocas eadis babete manus*, Ovid.

Some of these adjectives are construed, 1. with the genitive only; as, *Benignus*, *exsors*, *impor*, *impotens*, *irritus*, *liberalis*, *munificus*, *prælargus*.

2. With the ablative only: *B-utus*, *differius*, *frugifer*, *mutilus*, *ten-
tus*, *dissentus*, *tumidus*, *turgidus*.

3. With the genitive more frequently: *Compos*, *confors*, *egenus*, *ex-
bates*, *expers*, *fecilis*, *indigus*, *parcus*, *prodigus*, *sterilis*.

4. With

4. With the ablative more frequently: *Abundans, effusus, extorris, fatus, frequens, gravis, gravilus, jejunus, liber, locuples, nudus, oneratus, onus, orbis, pollens, solutus, tuncus, vacuus*, and *capitus*.

5. With both promiscuously: *Copiosus, diversus, secundus, frax, immunis, inanis, inops, largus, modicus, immodus, nimbus, opatus, plenus, potens, refertus, satur, vacuus, uber*.

6. With a preposition; as, *Copiosus, firmus, paratus, imparatus, inops, infraclusus, à re aliqua*: for *quod ad rem aliquam attinet, in, or with respect to* any thing. *Extorris ab solo patrio, banished; Orba ab optimatibus concilio, Liv. So pauper, tenuis, facinus, modicus, parvus in re aliqua. Immunis, inanis, liber, nudus, solutus, vacuus à re aliqua. Potens ad re, & in re*.

GOVERNMENT OF VERBS.

§ I. VERBS governing only one Case.

1. Verbs which govern the Genitive.

XV. *Sum*, when it signifies possession, property, or duty, governs the genitive; as,

Est regis, It belongs to the king; It is the part or property of a king.

So insipientis est dicere, non putarum, It is the part or property of a fool, &c. Militum est suoduci parere, It is the part or duty of soldiers, &c. Laudare se vani; vituperare blatti est, Sen. Hominis est errare; Arrogantis est negligere quid de se quisque sentiat, Cic. Pecus est Melibei, Virg. Haec sunt hominis; Ter. Pauperis est numerare pecus, Ovid. Temeritas est florentis etatis, prudentia senectutis, Cic.

¶ Meum, tuum, suum, nostrum, vestrum, are excepted; as, Tuum est, It is your duty. Seip tuum esse, I know that it is your duty.

Obs. 1. These possessive pronouns are used in the neuter gender instead of their substantives, *mei, tui, sui, nostri, vestri*. Other possessives are also construed in this manner; as, *Est regium, est humanum*, the same with *est regis, est hominis*. *Et facere et parti fortia, Romanum est.* Liv. ii. 12.

Obs. 2. Here some substantive must be understood; as, *officium, munus, res, negotium, opus, &c.* which are sometimes expressed; as, *Munus est principum; Tuum est hoc munus, Cic. Nequit agi officium liberi esse hominis puto, Ter.* In some cases the preceding substantive may be repeated; as, *Hic liber est (liber) fratri. In like manner, some substantive must be supplied in such expressions as these; Ex sunt modo gloria, neque patrundi belli, scil. causa or facta, Sall. Nihil tam aquandus libertatis est, for ad aquandam libertatem pertinet, Liv.*

Obs.

Obs. 3. We say, *Hoc est tuum munus*, or *tui muneris* ;
 So *mos est vel fuit*, or *moris*, or *in more*, Cic.

XVI. *Misericor*, *miseresco*, and *satago*, govern the genitive ; as,

Miserere civium tuorum, Pity your countrymen.

Satagit rerum suarum, { He has his hands full at home, or has enough to do about his own affairs.

Obs. 1. Several other verbs among the poets govern the genitive by a Greek construction, particularly such as signify some affection of the mind ; as, *Ango*, *decipior*, *desipio*, *disrucior*, *excrucio*, *fallo* & *fallor*, *fastidio*, *invideo*, *lator*, *miror*, *pendeo*, *pludo*, *vereor* ; as, *Ne angas te animi*, Plaut. *Loborum decipitur*, Hor. *Disrucior animi*, Ter. *Pendet mibi animus*, *pendeo animi vel animo* ; but we always say, *Pendemus animis*, not *animorum*, are in suspense, Cic. *Jusitiae prius miser*, Virg. In like manner, *Abſinio*, *defino*, *desiſo*, *quieto*, *regno* : likewise, *adipiscor*, *condico*, *credo*, *frustror*, *furo*, *laudo*, *libero*, *levo*, *participo*, *prohibeo* : as, *Abſineto irarum* ; *Define querelarum* ; *Regnavit populorum*, Hor. *Defilere pugnae*, Virg. *Quarum rerum condixit*, Liv.

But all these verbs are for the most part differently construed ; thus, *Ango*, *desipio*, *disrucior*, *fallor*, *animo*. *Hoc animum meum excruciat*. *Fastidio*, *miror*, *vereor*, *aliquem vel aliquid*. *Lator aliquā re*. Some of them are joined with the infinitive ; or with *quod*, *ut*, *ne*, and the subjunctive.

In like manner we usually say, *Defino aliquid*, &c. *ab aliquo*, to give over ; *Defiso incepto*, *de negotio*, *ab illa mente* ; *Quietio a labore* ; *Regnare in equitibus*, *oppidis*, sc. in, Cic. *Per urbes*, Virg. *Adipisci id* ; *Fruſtrari in re* ; *Fusere de aliquo*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The genitive after verbs, in the same manner as after adjectives, is governed by some substantive understood. This substantive is different according to the different meaning of the verbs : thus, *Misericor fratris*, scil. *causā*, *Ango animi*, scil. *dolore*, or *anxietate*.

2. VERBS governing the Dative.

XVII. Any verb may govern the dative in Latin, which has the signs TO or FOR after it in English ; as,

Finis uenit imperio, An end is come to the empire, Liv.

Animus redit hostibus, Courage returns to the enemy, Id.

Tibi seris, *tibi metis*, You sow for yourself, you reap for yourself, Plaut.

So, *Non nobis solum nati sumus*, Cic. *Multa male evnijunt bonis*, Id. *Sol lucet etiam sceleratis*, Sen. *Haret lateri lethalis arundo*, Virg.

But as the dative after verbs in Latin is not always rendered in English

English by *to* or *for*; nor are these particles always the sign of the dative in Latin, it will be necessary to be more particular.

I. *Sum*, and its compounds govern the dative; (except *possum*) ; as,

Præfuit exercitui, He commanded the army.
Adfuit precibus, He was present at prayers.

¶ *EST* taken for *Habeo*, *to have*, governs the dative of a person ; as,

Eſi mibi liber, A book is to me, that is, I have a book.
Sunt mibi libri, Books are to me, i. e. I have books.
Diſo libros eſſe mibi, I say that I have books.

This is more frequently used than *habeo librum*; *habeo libros*. In like manner *DEEST* instead of *careo*; as, *Liber deſſt mibi*, I want a book; *Libri deſtunt mibi*; *Scio libros deſſe mibi*, &c.

II. Verbs compounded with *SATIS*, *BENE*, and *MALE*, govern the dative ; as,

Satisfacio, *satisdo*, *benſacio*, *benedico*, *benevolo*, *maleſacio*, *maledico* *tibi*, &c.

III. Many verbs compounded with these nine prepositions, *AD*, *ANTE*, *CON*, *IN*, *INTER*, *OB*, *PRÆ*, *SUB*, and *SUPER*, govern the dative ; as,

1. *Accedo*, *accresco*, *accumbo*, *acquieſco*, *adno*, *adnato*, *adequito*, *adhaereo*, *adſto*, *adſſipulor*, *advolvor*, *affulgeo*, *allabor*, *allaboro*, *annuo*, *appareo*, *applando*, *appropinquuo*, *arrideo*, *aspido*, *affentior*, *affideo*, *affiſo*, *affurſo*, *affurgo*.

2. *Antecello*, *anteco*, *anteflo*, *antevertio*.

3. *Colludo*, *conciino*, *confono*, *convivo*.

4. *Incumbo*, *indormio*, *indubito*, *inhio*, *ingemisco*, *inbarco*, *infideio*, *infidior*, *inflo*, *infido*, *infudo*, *invigilo*, *illaſerymo*, *illudo*, *imminco*, *imminor*, *immoror*, *impendeo*.

5. *Intervenio*, *intermico*, *intercedo*, *intercedo*, *interjaceo*.

6. *Obrepo*, *obſuctor*, *obſrecto*, *obſtrepo*, *obmurmuro*, *occurro*, *occurſo*, *obſto*, *obſſito*, *obvenio*.

7. *Præcedo*, *præcurro*, *præto*, *præſideo*, *prælucco*, *prænites*, *præſio*, *prævalco*, *præverto*.

8. *Succedo*, *succumbo*, *sufficio*, *suffragor*, *subcreſco*, *suboleo*, *subjaceo*, *subrepo*.

9. *Supervenio*, *supercurro*, *superſlo*. But most verbs compounded with *SUPER* govern the accusative.

IV. Verbs govern the dative, which signify,

1. To profit or hurt ; as,

Proficio,

Proſicio, proſum, placeo, commendo, proſpicio, caueo, metu, timeo, conſuſo, for proſpicio. Likewise, *Noceo, officio, incommendo, diſpliceo, irſidior.*

2. To favour or affiſt, and the contrary ; as,

Faveo, gratuler, gratificor, grator, ignoſco, indulges, parco, adulor, plundo, blandior, lenocinor, palpor, affentor, ſubparafitor. Likewise, *Auxilior, adminiculor, ſubvenio, ſuccurro, patrocinor, medeor, medicor, opitulor.* Likewise, *Derogo, detrabo, invideo, emulor.*

3. To command and obey, to ſerve and refiſt ; as,

Impero, praecipio, mando, moderor, for modum, adbiſeo. Likewise *Paro, auſculto, obedio, obſequor, obtempero, moremgero, morigeror, elſecundo.* Likewise, *Famulor, ſervio, inſervio, miniftro, ancillor.* Likewise, *Re-pugno, elijo, reſuſtor, renitor, reſiſto, reſragor, adverſor.*

4. To threaten and to be angry ; as,

Miner, conuīnor, interminor, iraſcor, ſuccenſeo.

5. To truſt ; as, *Fido, confido, credo, diſfido.*

To these add *Nubo, exceilo, bareo, ſupplico, cedo, deſpero, operor, praefolor, prevaricor, recipio, to promise ; renuncio ; reſpondeo, to anſwer or ſatisfy ; tempero, ſtudeo, uaco, to apply ; convicior.*

Exc. *Jubeo, juvo, ledo, and offendo, govern the accu-
fatiue.*

Obſ. 1. Verbs governing the dative only are either neuter verbs, or of a neuter ſignification. Active verbs governing the dative have also an accuſatiue expreſſed or under-ſtood.

Obſ. 2. Moſt verbs governing the dative only, have been enum-
erated, because there are a great many verbs compounded with pre-
poſitions, which do not govern the dative, but are otherwile con-
ſtrued ; and ſtill more ſignifying advantage or diſadvantage, &c.
which govern the accuſatiue ; as, *Levo, erigo, alo, nutrio, amo, diſligo,
uexo, crucio, auerſor, &c. aliquem, not alicui.*

Obſ. 3. Many of theſe verbs are variouſly conſtrued ; particularly
ſuch as are compounded with a prepoſition ; as,

*Anteire, antecedere, antecellere, praecedere, praecurrere, praेire, &c.
alicui, or aliquem, to go before, to excel.*

*Acquiescere, rei, re, u. in re. Adequitare portæ ; Syracusas.
Adjacere, mari, u. mare, to lie near.*

Aduare navibus, naves, ad naves, to ſwim to.

Adverſari ei, rarely cum, to oppoſe.

Advolvi genibus, genua, ad genua, to fall at one's knees.

Advolare ei; ad eum ; roſtra, to fly up to.

Adflare rei u. homini ; rem u. hominem ; aliquid alicui, to breathe upon.

Adulari ei, u. eum, to flatter. Allabi oris ; aures ejus, Virg. ad exta, Liv.

Apparere consuli, *to attend*; ad solum Jovis; Res apparent mihi, *appears*.
 Appropinquare Britanniæ, portam, ad portam, *to approach*.
 Dominari cunctis oris, Virg. in cætera animalia, *to rule over*, Ovid.
 Congruere alieui, cum re aliqua, inter se, *to agree*.
 Fidere, confidere alicui rei, aliqua re, in re, *to trust to or in*.
 Ignoscere mihi, culpare me, mihi culpam, *to pardon me or my fault*.
 Impendere alicui, aliquem, in aliquem, *to hang over*.
 Incessit cura, cupido, timor ei, eum, v. in eum, *seized*.
 Incumberc toro; gladium, in gladium, *to fall upon*; labori, ad laudem,
 ad studia, in studium, curam, cogitationem, &c. *to apply to*.
 Indulgere alicui, id ei; nimio, vestitu, *to indulge in*. Ter.
 Inhiare auro, bona ejus, *to gape after*. Innasci agris, in agris, *to grow in*.
 Iuniri rei, re, in re; in aliquem, *to depend on*.
 Insultare rei & homini, v. hominem; fores; patientiam ejus, in mjer-
 seriam ejus; bonos, *to insult over*.
 Latet res mihi, v. me, *is unknown to me*. Mederi ei; cupiditates, *to cure*.
 Ministrare ei, *to serve*; arma ei, *to furnish*.
 Moderari animo, gentibus; navim, omnia, *to rule*.
 Nocere ei, *rarely* eum, *to hurt*, Plaut.
 Nubere alicui; in familiam; nupta ei & cum eo, *to marry*, Cic.
 Obrepere ei & eum, *to creep upon*; in animos; ad honores.
 Obstrepere auribus & aures. Obtrectare ei laudibus, ejus, *to detest from*.
 Obumbrat sibi vinea; solem nubes, shades. Palpari alicui & aliquem.
 Pascisci alicui, cum aliquo; vitam ab eo, *Sall.* vitam pro laude, Virg.
 Præstolari alicui & aliquem, *to wait upon*.
 Procumbere terræ; genibus ejus, *Ovid.* ad genua, *Liv.* ad pedes, *to fall*.

To these may be added verbs, which, chiefly among the poets, govern the dative, but in prose are usually construed with a preposition; as, 1. *Contendo*, certo, bello, pugno, concurro, coco, alicui, for cum aliquo; 2. *Distare*, disentire, disrepere, dissidere, differre rei alicui, for a re aliqua. We also say, *Contendunt*, pugnant, distant, &c. inter se; and *contendere*, pugnare contra & adversus aliquem.

Obs. 4. Many verbs vary both their signification and construction; as, *Timeo*, metus, formido, borreo tibi, de te, & pro te, I am afraid for you, or for your safety; but *timeo*, borreo te, v. a te, I fear or dread you as an enemy: So *Consulo*, prospicio, cavo tibi, I consult or provide for your safety; but *consulo te*, I ask your advice; *prospicio hoc*, I foresee this: *Studere aliquid*, to desire; alicui, to favour; alicui rei, rem, &c. in re, to apply to a thing. So, *Æmulari tibi*, I envy; te, I imitate; *Ausculto tibi*, I obey or listen to; te, I hear; *Cupio tibi*, I favour, rem, I desire; *Fanero*, *Ex- or tibi*, I lend you on interest; *abs te*, I borrow; *Metuisti*, ne non tibi iſſue faneraret, should not return with interest, or bring usury, Ter. And thus many other verbs, which will be afterwards explained.

Obs. 5. Verbs signifying *Motion or Tendency* to a thing are construed with the preposition *ad*; as,

E., *vado, curro, propero, festino, pergo, fugio, tendo, vergo, inclino, &c.* *ad locum, rem, v. Eumenem.* Sometimes however in the poets they are construed with the dative; as, *It clamor cælo, for ad cælum*, Virg.

3. Verbs governing the Accusative.

XVIII. A Verb signifying actively governs the accusative; as,

Ama Deum, Love God. Reverere parentes, Reverence your parents.

Obs. 1. Neuter verbs also govern the accusative, when the noun after them has a signification similar to their own; as,

Ire iter or viam; Pugnare pugnam or prælium: Currere cursum; Casere cantilenam; Vivere vitam; Ludere ludum; Sequi sectam: Somniare somnium, &c. or when they are taken in a metaphorical sense; as, Corydon ardebat Alexin, scil. propter, i. e. vehementer amat, Virg. Currimus equor, scil. per, Id. So, Comptos arsit adulteri crines, Hor. Saltare Cylopa; odit lircum; Sulcus et vincta crepat mera, Hor. Vox hominem sonat: Sudare mella, Virg. Si Xerxes Hisponto juncto, et Albine perfozzo, maris ambulauisset, terramque navigasset, sc. per, Cic. Or when they have a kind of active sense; as, Clamare aliquem nomine, Virg. Callere jura; Miserere mortem; Horret iratum mare, Hor.

Sometimes instead of the accusative neuter verbs have an ablative; as, *Ire itinere; dolere dolore, vicem ejus; gaudere gaudio; mori v. obire morte; vivere vitâ; ardet virgine, Horat. Ludere aleam, v. a; manare, pluvere, rorare, stillare, sudare, aliquid vel aliquo. Erubescere jura, Virg. origine, Tacit. equo vibi, Curt.*

Obs. 2. Several verbs are used both in an active and neuter sense; as,

Abhorrere famam, to dread infamy, Liv. a litibus; ab uxore duocenda, to be averse from; Id. a meis moribus abhorret, is inconsistent with, Cic.

Abolere monumenta viri, to abolish, Virg. Iis Cladis Caudinæ nondum memoria aboliverat, was not effaced from, they had not forgotten, Liv.

Adolere penates, to burn, to sacrifice to, Virg.

Ætas adolevit; adolevit ad ætatem, Plaut.

Declinare iustum, to avoid; loco; agmen aliquo, to remove.

Degenerare animos, to weaken; patri, to degenerate from; a virtute majorum.

Durare adolescentes labore, to barden; Resdurat ad breve tempus, endures; In ædibus durare nequo, stay or remain, Plaut.

Inclinare culpam in aliquem, to lay; Hos ut sequar inclinat animus, inclines; acies inclinat, vel inclinatur, gives way.

Laborare arma, to forge; morbo, a dolore, e tenibus, to be ill; de re aliqua, to be concerned.

Morari iter, to flop; in urbe, to stay;

say; *Hoc nihil moror, I do not mind.*
Properare pecuniam hæredi, Hor.
in orbem; ad unam sedem, Ovid.
Quadrare acervum, to square, Hor.
aliquid ad norman; alicui, in aliquem, ad multa, to fit.

Suppeditare copiam dicendi, to furnish; Sumptus illi, vel illi sumptibus, Terent. suppeditare ei ratio, is afforded, Manubia in fundamenta vix suppeditare runt, were sufficient, Liv.

Obs. 3. These accusatives, *boc, id, quid, aliquid, quicquid, nihil, idem, illud, tantum, quantum, multa, pauca, &c.* are often joined with neuter verbs, having the prepositions *circa* or *propter* understood; as, *Id la-erum, Id succenget, Ter.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is often understood. *Tum prora avertit, sc. se, Virg.* *Flumina præcipitant, sc. se, Id.* *Quicunque intenderat, sc. se, turned or directed himself, Sallust.* *Obiit, sc. mortem, Ter.* *Cum faciam vitulam, sc. sacra, Virg.* Or its place supplied by an infinitive or part of a sentence; as, *Reddes dulce logui, reddes ridere decorum; for dulcem sermonem, decorum risum, Hor.*

XIX. *Recordor, memini, reminiscor, and obli-
viscor, govern the accusative or genitive; as,*

<i>Recordor lectionis or lectionem,</i>	I remember the lesson.
<i>Obliviscor injuria or injuriam,</i>	I forget an injury.

Obs. 1. These verbs are often construed with the infinitive or some part of a sentence; as, *Memini videre virginem, Ter.* *Oblitus est, quid paulo ante posuisset, Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Memini*, when it signifies to *make mention*, is joined with the genitive, or the ablative with the preposition *de*; as, *Memini alie-
cujus, vel de aliquo.* So *recordor*, when it signifies to *recollect*; as, *Velim scire eaque de te recordere, Cic.*

4. VERBS governing the Ablative.

XX. Verbs of plenty and scarceness for the most part govern the ablative; as,

<i>Abundat divitiis,</i>	He abounds in riches.
<i>Caret omni culpa,</i>	He has no fault.

Verbs of plenty are, *Abundo, affluo, exubero, redundo, suppedito, scato, &c.*; of want, *Careo, egeo, indigeo, vaco, deficio, defituor, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Egeo* and *indigeo* frequently govern the genitive; as, *Eget arti, He needs money, Hor.* *Non tam artis indigent, quam laboris, Cic.*

Obs. 2. The ablative after these verbs is governed by some preposition understood; and sometimes we find it expressed; as, *Vacat a culpa, he is free from fault, Liv.*

XXI. *Utor, abutor, fruor, fungor, potior, vescor*, govern the ablative ; as,

Utitur fraude, He uses deceit. *Abutitur libris*, He abuses books.

To these add, *gaudeo, creor, nascor, fido, vivo, vidito, consto, laboro*, for *male me habeo*, to be ill ; *pascer, epulor, niter, &c.*

Obs. 1. *Potior* often governs the genitive ; as, *Potiri urbis*, Sall. And we always say *Potiri rerum*, to possess the chief command ; never *rebus, imperio* being understood.

Obs. 2. *Potior, fungor, vescor, epulor*, and *pascer*, sometimes have an accusative ; as, *Potiri urbem*, Cic. *Officia fungi*, Ter. *Munera fungi*, Tacit. *Pascuntur silvas*, Virg. And in ancient writers *utor, abutor, and fruor* ; as, *Uti consilium*, Plaut. *Operam abutitur*, Ter. *Depascere* and *depascor* always take an accusative ; as, *Depascitur artus*, Virg.

§ 2. VERBS governing two Cases.

1. Verbs governing two Datives.

XXII. *Sum* taken for *affero* (to bring) governs two datives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing ; as,

Est mihi voluptati, It is, or brings a pleasure to me.

Two datives are also put after *habeo, do, verto, relinquō, tribuo, fore, duco*, and some others ; as,

Ducitur honori tibi, It is reckoned an honour to you. *Id vertitur mibi vitiō*, I am blamed for that. So, *Misit mibi muneri*; *Dedit mibi dono*; *Habet sibi laudi*; *Venire, occurrere auxilio alicui*, Liv.

Obs. 1. Instead of the dative, we often use the nominative, or the accusative ; as, *Est exitium peccati*, for *exitio*; *Dare aliquid alicui donum, or dono*; *Dare filiam ei nuptum, or nuptui*. When *dare* and other active verbs have two datives after them, they likewise govern an accusative either expressed or understood : as, *Dare crimini ei*, &c. *id*.

Obs. 2. The dative of the person is often to be supplied ; as, *Est exemplo, indicio, praesidio, usui, &c. scil. mibi, alicui, hominibus*, or some such word. So, *ponere, opponere pignori, sc. alicui*, to pledge. *Canere receptum, sc. suis militibus*, to sound a retreat ; *Habere cura, quaestui, adia, voluptati, religioni, studio, ludibrio, despiciatui, &c. sc. sibi*.

Obs. 3. To this rule belong forms of naming ; as, *Est mihi nomen Alexandro*, my name is Alexander ; or with the nominative, *Est mihi nomen Alexander*; or more rarely with the genitive, *Est mihi nomen Alexandri*.

2. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Genitive.

XXIII. Verbs of accusing, condemning, acquitting, and admonishing, govern the accusative of a person with the genitive of a thing ; as,

Arguit me furti.

He accuses me of theft.

Meipsum inertiae condemnno,

I condemn myself of laziness.

Illum homicidii absolvunt,

They acquit him of manslaughter.

Monet me officii,

He admonishes me of my duty.

Verbs of accusing are, *Accuso, ago, appello, arcesso, anguo, arguo, defero, infimulo, postulo, alligo, astringo* ; of condemning, *Damno, condemnno, infamo, noto* ; of acquitting, *Absolvo, libero, purgo* ; of admonishing, *Moneo, admoneo, commonefacio.*

Obs. 1. Verbs of accusing and admonishing, instead of the genitive, frequently have after them an ablative, with the preposition *de* ; as, *Monere aliquem officii, or de officio* ; *Accusare aliquem furti, or de furto.* *De vi condemnati sunt, Cic.*

Obs. 2. *Crimen* and *caput* are put either in the genitive or ablative ; but in the ablative usually without a preposition ; as, *Damnare, postulare, absolvare eum criminis, v. capitis* ; & *crimine, v. capite* ; also *Absolvo me peccato, Liv.* And we always say, *Plestere, punire aliquem capite*, and not *capitis*, to punish one capitally, or with death.

Obs. 3. Many verbs of accusing, &c. are not construed with the acc. of a person and the gen. of a thing, but the contrary ; thus we say, *Culpo, reprobendo, taxo, traduco, vitupero, columnior, criminor, exenvio, &c. avaritiam alicujus, and not aliquem avaritiae.* We sometimes also find *accuso, incuso, &c.* construed in this manner ; as, *Accusare inertiam adolescentium, for adolescentes inertiae, Cic.* *Culpam arguo, Liv.* We say, *Agere cum aliquo furti, rather than aliquem, to accuse one of theft, Cic.*

Obs. 4. Verbs of accusing and admonishing sometimes govern two accusatives, when joined with *hoc, illud, istud, id, unum, multa, &c.* as *Moneo, accuso te illud.* We seldom however find, *Errorem te moneo, but erroris, or de errore* ; except in old writers ; as, *Plautus.*

XXIV. Verbs of valuing, with the accusative, govern such genitives as these, *magni, parvi, nihil* ; as,

Affimo te magni,

I value you much.

Verbs of valuing are, *Affimo, existimo, duco, facio, habeo, pendo, puto, taxo.* They govern several other genitives ; as,

as, *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris majoris*, *minoris*, *minimi*, *plurimi*, *maximi*, *nauci*, *pili*, *assis*, *nibili*, *teruncii*, *bujus*.

Obs. 1. *Aestimo* sometimes governs the ablative; as, *Aestimo te magno*, *parmago*, *parvo*, scil. *recio*: and also *nibito*. We likewise say, *Pro nibilo babeo*, *puto*, *duco*.

Obs. 2. *Aequi* and *boni* are put in the genitive after *facio* and *confuso*, as, *Hoc confuso boni*, *aequi bonique facio*. I take this in good part.

Obs. 3. The genitive after all these verbs is governed by some substantive understood, as, *Arguere aliquem furti*, scil. *de crimine furti*; *Aestimo rem magni*, scil. *recio*, or *pro re magni pretii*; *Confuso boni*, i. e. *statuo* or *censo esse factum*, or *murus boni viri*, or *animi*; *Monere aliquem officii*, i. e. *officii causam*, or *de re* or *negotio officii*.

3. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Dative.

XXV. Verbs of comparing, giving, declaring, and taking away, govern the accusative and dative; as,

Comparo Virgilium Homero,
Sum cuique tribuio,
Narras fabulam surdo,
Eripuit me morti,

I compare Virgil to Homer.
 Give every one his own.
 You tell a story to a deaf man.
 He rescued me from death.

Or rather,—ANY ACTIVE VERB MAY GOVERN THE ACCUSATIVE AND THE DATIVE, (when together with the object of the action, we express the person or thing with relation to which it is exerted); as,

Legam lectionem tibi, I will read the lesson to you. *Emit librum mibi*, He bought a book for me. *Sic vos non vobis fertis aratra boves*, Virg. *Paupertas sape suadet mala hominibus*, advises men to do bad things, Plaut. *Imperare pecuniam, frumentum, naves, arma aliquibus*, to order them to furnish, Cæf.

Obs. 1. Verbs of comparing and taking away, together with some others, are often construed with a preposition; as, *Comparare unam rem cum alia*, or *ad aliam*. or *comparare res inter se*: *Eripuit me morti*, *morte*, *a* or *ex morte*: *Mittere epistolam alicui*, or *ad aliquem*: *Intendere telum alicui*, or *in aliquem*: *Incidere ari*, *in æs*, or *in ære*: and so in many others.

Obs. 2. Several verbs governing the dative and accusative, are construed differently; as,

Circumdare mania oppido, or *oppidum manibus*, to surround a city with walls.

Intercludere commatum alicui, or *aliquem commatu*, to intercept one's provisions.

Donare, probibere rem alicui, or *aliquem re*; to give one a present, to hinder one from a thing.

Macellare bofiam Deo, or *Deum bofiam*, to sacrifice,

Impertire salutem alicui, or aliquem salute, to salute one.

Interdixit Galliam Romanis, or Romanos Galliā, he debarred the Romans from Gaul.

Induere, exuere vestem sibi, or se ueste, to put on, to put off one's cloaths.

Levare dolorem alicui; dolorem alicujus; aliquem dolore, to ease one's distress.

Minari aliquid alicui, or sometimes alicui aliquo, Cic. to threaten one with any thing; Caesar gladio, Sall.

Gratulor tibi hanc rem, hac re, in, pro, & de hac re, I congratulate you on this. Mettus Tullus devictos bofies gratulatur, Liv.

Restituere alicui sanitatem, or aliquem sanitati, to restore to health.

Aspergere labem alicui or aliquem labe, to put an affront on one; aram fanguine. Littare Deum sacris, & sacra Deo. to sacrifice.

Excusare se alicui & apud aliquem, de re; valetudinem si.

Exprobare vitium ei v. in eo, to upbraid.

Occupare pecuniam alicui, & apud aliquem, i. e. pecuniam fantri locare, to place at interest, Cic.

Opponere se morti, & ad mortem. Renunciare id ei, & ad eum, to tell.

Obs. 3. Verbs signifying motion or tendency to a thing, instead of the dative, have an accusative after them, with the preposition *ad*; as,

Porto, fero, lego, as, praecipito, tollo, trabo, duco, verto, incito, suscito; also bortor; and invito, voto, provoco, animo, stimulo, conformo, bacefso; thus, Ad laudem milites bortatur; Ad pratrem hominem traxit, Cic. But after several of these verbs, we also find the dative; as, *Inferre Deos Latio, for in Latium, Virg. Invitare aliquem hospitio, or in hospitium, Cic.*

Obs. 4. The accusative is sometimes understood; as, *Nubere alicui, scil. se; Cedere alicui, scil. locum; Detrahere alicui, scil. laudem; Ignoscere alicui, scil. culpam.* And in English the particle *to* is often omitted; as, *Dedit mihi librum, He gave me a book, for to me.*

4. VERBS governing two Accusatives.

XXVI. Verbs of asking and teaching govern two accusatives, the one of a person, and the other of a thing; as,

Poscimus te pacem, We beg peace of thee.

Docuit me Grammaticam, He taught me grammar.

1. Verbs of asking which govern two accusatives are, *Rogo, oro, exoro, obsecro, precor, posco, reposco, flagito, &c.* Of teaching, *Doceo, edoceo, dedoceo, erudio.*

Obs. 1. *Celo* likewise governs two accusatives; as, *Celavimus te pacem,*

vit me hanc rem, He concealed this matter from me; or otherwise, *celavit hanc rem mibi*, or *celavit me de hac re*.

Obs. 2. Verbs of asking and teaching are often construed with a preposition; as, *Rogare rem ab aliquo*; *Docere aliquem de re*, to inform; but we do not say, *docere aliquem de grammatica*, but *grammaticam*, to teach. And we always say, with a preposition, *Peto, exigo a v. ab te*; *Percontor, scitor, sciscitor, ex or a te, or te* without the preposition; *Interrogo, consulto te de re*; *Ut facias te obsecro*; *Exorat pacem dñvum, for divisor, Virg.* *Instruo, instituo, formo, informo aliquem artibus*, in the abl. without a prep. *Imbuo eum artibus*, in v. ab artibus. Also *instruo ad rem*, v. in re, *ignorantiam alicujus*. *Erudire aliquem artes*, de v. in re, *ad rem*. *Formare ad studium, mentem studiis, studia ejus*.

Obs. 3. The accusative of the thing is not properly governed by the verb, but by *quod ad* or *secundum* understood.

5. VERBS governing the Accusative and the Ablative.

XXVII. Verbs of loading, binding, cloathing, depriving, and some others, govern the accusative and the ablative; as,

Onerat naves auro, He loads the ships with gold.

Verbs of loading are, *Onero, cumulo, premo, opprimo, obruo*: Of unloading, *levo, exonero, &c.* Of binding, *astringo, ligo, alligo, devincio, impedio, irretio, illaqueo, &c.* Of loosing, *solvo, exsolvo, libero, laxo, expedio, &c.* Of depriving, *privio, nudo, orbo, spolio, fraudo, ensongo*: Of cloathing, *vestio, amocio, induo, cingo, tego, velo, corono, &c. calceo*: Of uncloathing, *exuo, disingo, &c.*

Obs. 1. The preposition, by which the ablative is governed after these verbs, is sometimes expressed; as, *Solvere aliquem ex catenis*, Cic. Sometimes the ablative is to be supplied; as, *Complevit naves, sc. viris*, mans the ships, Virg.

Obs. 2. Several of these verbs likewise govern the genitive; as, *Adolescentem suæ temeritatis implet*, Liv. And also vary their construction; as, *Induit, exuit se vestibus*, or *vestes sibi*.

The CONSTRUCTION of PASSIVE VERBS.

XXVIII. When a verb in the active voice governs two cases, in the passive it retains the latter case; as,

Accusor furti, I am accused of theft.

Virgilius comparatur Homero, Virgil is compared to Homer.

Doceor grammaticam, I am taught grammar.

Navis oneratur auro, The ship is loaded with gold.

So *Scio homines accusatum iri furti*; — *Eos erexit iri morti, morte, & vel*

vel ex morte; — pueros doctumiri grammaticam; — rem celatumiri
mibi vel me; me celatumiri de re, &c.

Sometimes the active has three cases, and then the passive has the two last cases; as, *Habetur ludibrio iis.*

Obs. 1. Passive verbs are commonly construed with the ablative and the preposition *a*; as,

Tu laudaris a me, which is equivalent to, *Ego laudo te*. *Virtus diligitur a nobis*; *Nos diligimus virtutem*. *Gaudes meum factum probari a te*, or *te probare meum factum*: And so almost all active verbs. Neuter and deponent verbs also admit this preposition; as, *Mare a sole collutum est*, Cic. *Pbalaris non a paucis interiit*, Id. *So Cadere ab hoste*; *Cessare a præliis*; *Mori ab ene*; *Pati, furari, aliquid ab aliquo*, &c. Also *Venire ab hostibus*, to be sold; *Vapulare ab aliquo*, *Exulare ab urbe*. Thus likewise many active verbs; as, *Sumere, petere, tollere, pellere, expetare, emere, &c. ab aliquo*.

The prep. is sometimes understood after passive verbs; as, *Deseror conjugi*, Ovid. *Desertus fuis*, sc. *a*, Tacit. *Tabula distinguitur unda*, *qui navigat*, sc. *ab unda*, is kept from the water by a plank, Juvenal.

The preposition *PER* is also used in the same sense with *A*; as, *Per me defensa est res publica*, or *a me*; *Per me restitutus*; *Per me v. a me factum est*, Cic. But *PER* commonly marks the instrument, and *A* the principal efficient cause; as, *Res agitur per credidores a rege*, sc. *a rege vel a legato ejus*, Cic. Fam. i. 1.

Obs. 2. Passive verbs sometimes govern the dative, especially among the poets; as,

Negue cernitur ulli, *for ab ulla*, Virg. *Vix audior ulli*, Ovid. *Scribetis Vario*, *for a Vario*, Hor. *Honestia bonis viris queruntur*, *for a viris*, Cic. *Videor*, to seem, always governs the dative; as, *Videris mihi*, You seem to me: But we commonly say, *Videris a me*, You are seen by me; although not always; as, *Nulla tuarum audita mibi*, *negue visa sororum*, *for a me*, Virg.

Obs. 3. *Induor, amicior, cingor, accingor, also exuor and discingor*, are often construed with the accusative, particularly among the poets, though we do not find them governing two accusatives in the active voice; as, *Induitur vestem*, or *veste*.

Obs. 4. Neuter verbs are for the most part only used impersonally in the passive voice; unless when they are joined with a noun of a similar signification to their own; as, *Pugna pugnata est*, Cic. *Bellum militabitur*, Horat. Passive impersonal verbs are most commonly applied either to a multitude, or to an individual taken indefinitely; as *Statur, fletur, curritur, vivitur, venitur, &c. a nobis, ab illis, &c.* We are standing, weeping, &c. *Bene potest vivi a me*, *vel ab aliquo*; for any person may live well. *Provisum est nobis optimè a Deo*; *Reclamatum est ab omnibus*, all cried out against it, Cic.

They also govern the same cases, as when used personally; as, *Ut majoribus natu assurgatur, ut supplicum misereatur*, Cic. Except the accusative: For in these phrases, *Itur Albenas, pugnatum est biduum, dormitur totam noctem*, the accusative is not governed by the verb, but by the

the prepositions *ad* and *per* understood. We find, however, *Tota mibi dormitur lyems*; *Noctes vigilantur amaræ*; *Oceanus raris ab orbe nostro navibus aditum*, Tacit.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF IMPERSONAL VERBS.

XXIX. An impersonal verb governs the dative; as,

Expedit reipublicæ, It is profitable for the state.

Verbs which in the active voice govern only the dative, are used impersonally in the passive, and likewise govern the dative; as,

Favetur mibi, I am favoured, and not *Ego favor*. So *Nocetur mibi*, *imperatur mibi*, &c. We find however, *Hec ego procurare imperor*; *Ego cur invidetur*, for *imperatur*, *invidetur mibi*, Hor.

Obs. 1. These verbs, *Potest*, *capit*, *incipit*, *definit*, *debet*, and *solet*, are used impersonally, when joined with impersonal verbs; as,

Non potest credi tibi, You cannot be believed; *Mibi non potest noceri*, I cannot be hurt; *Negat jucundè posse rivo sine virtute*, Cic. *Per virtutem potest iri ad astra*. *Aliorum laudi & gloriae invideri solet*, The praise and glory of others use to be envied, Id. *Neque a fortissimis infirmissimo generi posse*, Sallust.

Obs. 2. Various verbs are used both personally and impersonally; as, *Venit in mentem mibi bac res*, *vel de bac re*, *vel bujus rei*, scil. *memoria*; This thing came into my mind. *Est cura mibi bac res*, *vel de bac re*. *Dolco vel dolet mibi*, *id factum esse*.

Obs. 3. The neuter pronoun *it* is always joined with impersonal verbs in English; as, *It rains*, *it shines*, &c. And in Latin an infinitive is commonly subjoined to impersonal verbs, or the subjunctive with *ut*, forming a part of a sentence which may be supposed to supply the place of a nominative; as, *Nobis non licet peccare*, the same with *peccatum*; *Omnibus bonis expedit rem publicam esse salvam*, i.e. *Salus reipublicæ expedit omnibus bonis*, Cic. *Accidit, evicit, contigit, ut ibi essent*. These nominatives, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *idem*, *quod*, &c. are sometimes joined to impersonal verbs; as, *idem mibi licet*, Cic. *Eadem licent*, Catull.

Obs. 4. The dative is often understood; as, *Faciat quod libet*, sc. *sibi*, Ter. *Stat casus renovare omnes*, sc. *mibi*, I am resolved, Virg.

EXC. I. *REFERT* and *INTEREST* require the genitive; as,

Refert patris, It concerns my father. *Interest omnium*, It is the interest of all.

¶ But *mea*, *tua*, *sua*, *nostra*, *vestra*, are put in the accusative plural neuter; as,

Non mea refert, It does not concern me.

Obs.

Obs. 1. Some think *mea, tua, sua, &c.* to be in the ablat. sing. fem. We say either *cujus intereft*, and *quorum intereft*; or *cuja intereft*, from *cujus, -a, -um*.

Obs. 2. *Refert* and *intereft* are often joined with these nominatives, *Id, hoc, illud, quid, quod, nihil, &c.* also with common nouns; and with these genitives, *Tanti, quanti, magni, permagni, parvi, pluris*; as, *Hoc parvi refert; Illud mea magni intereft*, Cic. *Usque adeo magni refert studium*, Lucr. *Incessus in gravida refert*, Plin.

They are frequently construed with these adverbs, *Tantum, quantum, multum, plus, plurimum, infinitum, parum, maximè, vehementer, minimè, &c.* as, *Faciam, quod maximè reipublicæ interesse judicabo*, Cic. Sometimes instead of the genit. they take the accusative with the prep. *ad*; as, *Quid id ad me, aut ad meam rem refert, Persæ quid rerum gerant?* Of what importance is it, &c. Plaut. *Magni ad bonorem nostrum intereft*, Cic. rarely the dative; as, *Dic quid referat intra naturæ fines viventi, &c.* Hor. Sometimes they are placed absolutely; as, *Magnopere intereft opprimi Dolobellam*, it is of great importance, Cic. *Per multum intereft, qualis primus aditus sit*, Id. *Adeone est fundata leviter fides, ut ubi sim, quam qui sim, magis referat*, Liv. *Plurimum enim intererit, quibus artibus, aut quibus bunc tu moribus insituas*, Juv.

Obs. 3. The genitive after *refert* and *intereft* is governed by some substantive understood, with which the possessives *mea, tua, sua, &c.* likewise agree; as, *Interest Ciceronis*, i. e. *est inter negotia Ciceronis: Refert patris*, i. e. *refert se hac res ad negotia patris: So intereft mea, est inter negotia mea*.

EXC. II. These five, *MISERET, POENITET, PUDET, TÆDET, and PIGET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the genitive of a thing; as,

Miseret me tui, I pity you. *Tædet me vita*, I am weary of life.
Penitet me peccati, I repent of my *Pudet me culpa*, I am ashamed of
 fin. my fault.

Obs. 1. The genitive here is properly governed either by *negotium* understood, or by some other substantive of a signification similar to that of the verb with which it is joined; as, *Miseret me tui*, that is, *negotium* or *miseratio tui miseret me*.

Obs. 2. An infinitive or some part of a sentence may supply the place of the genitive; as, *Penitet me peccasse*, or *quod peccaverim*. The accusative is frequently understood; as, *Scelerum si bene penitet, scil. nos*, Horat.

Obs. 3. *Miseret, penitet, &c.* are sometimes used personally, especially when joined with their nominatives, *hoc, id, quod, &c.* as, *Ipse sibi miseret*, Lucr.; *Nonne bac te pudent*, Ter. *Nibit, quod penitere posset, facias*, for *cujus te penitere posset*, Cic.

We sometimes find *miseret* joined with two accusatives; as, *Menedemi vicem miseret me, scil. secundum or quod ad*, Ter.

Obs. 4. The pieterites of *miseret, pudet, tædet, and piget*, when used

in the passive form, govern the same cases with the active; as, *Miseritum est me tuarum fortunaram*, Ter. We likewise find *miserescit* and *miseretur* used impersonally; as, *Miserescit me tui*, Ter.; *Miseretur fratrum*; *Negue mo tui, negue tuorum liberorum misereri potest*, Cic.

EXC. III. *DECET*, *DELECTAT*, *JUVAT*, and *OPORET*, govern the accusative of a person, with the infinitive; as,

<i>Delectat me studere,</i>	It delights me to study.
<i>Non decet te rixari,</i>	It does not become you to scold.

Obs. 1. These verbs are sometimes used personally; as, *Parvum parvum decent*, Hor. *Est aliquid, quod non oporteat, etiam si licet*, Cic. *Hæc facta ab illo oportabant*, Ter.

Obs. 2. *Decet* is sometimes construed with the dative; as, *Ita nobis decet*, Ter.

Obs. 3. *Oportet* is elegantly joined with the subjunctive mode, *ut* being understood; as,

Sibi quisque consulat oportet, Cic. Or with the perfect participle, *esse* or *fuisse* being understood; as, *Communicatum oportuit*; *mansum oportuit*; *Adolescenti morem gestum oportuit*, The young man should have been humoured, Ter.

Obs. 4. *Fallit*, *fugit*, *præterit*, *latet*, when used impersonally, also govern the accusative with the infinitive; as, *In lege nullâ esse ejusmodi caput, non te fallit*; *De Dionysio fugit me ad te antea scribere*, Cic.

NOTE. *Astinet*, *pertinet*, & *speciat*, are construed with *ad*; *Ad rem publicam pertinet*, *me conservari*, Cic. And so personally, *Ille ad me attinet*, belongs, Ter. *Res ad arma speciat*, looks, points, Cic.

The CONSTRUCTION of the INFINITIVE.

XXX. One verb governs another in the infinitive; as,

<i>Cupio discere,</i>	I desire to learn.
-----------------------	--------------------

Obs. 1. The infinitive is often governed by adjectives; as, *Horatius est dignus legi*, Quintil. And sometimes depends on a substantive; as, *Tempus equum sumantia solvere colla*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The word governing the infinitive is sometimes understood; as, *Mens incepto desistere vultam*, scil. *decet*, or *par est*, Virg. *Videre est*, one may see. *Dicere non est*, scil. *copia*, or *facultas*, Horat. And sometimes the infinitive itself is to be supplied; as, *Socratem fidibus docuit*, scil. *canere*, Cic. So *Dicere*, *faire fidibus*.

Obs. 3. The infinitive was not improperly called by the ancients *Nomen verbi*, The name or noun of the verb; because it is both joined with an adjective like a substantive; as, *Velle suum cuique est*, Every one has a will of his own; and likewise supplies the place of a noun,

not only in the nominative, but also in all the oblique cases; as, 1. In the nominative, *Latrocinari, fraudare, turpe est, Cic. Didicisse fideliter artes emollit mores, Ovid.* 2. In the genitive, *Peritus cantare, for cantandi, or cantus, Virg.* In the dative, *Paratus servire, for servituti, Sall.* 4. In the accusative, *Da mili fallere, for artem fallendi, Horat. Quod faciam supereft, prater amare, nibil, Ovid.* 5. In the vocative, *O vivere nostra, ut non sentientibus effluis! for vita nostra.* 6. In the ablative, *Dignus amari, for amore, or qui ametur, Virg.*

Obs. 4. Instead of the infinitive, a different construction is often used after verbs of *doubting, willing, ordering, fearing, hoping;* in short, after any verb which has a relation to futurity; as, *Dubitat ita facere, or more frequently, an, num, or utrum ita facturus sit; Dubitavit an faceret neque; Non dubito quin fecerit. Vis me facere, or ut faciam. Metuit tangi, or ne tangatur. Spero te venturum esse, or fore ut venias. Nunquam putavi fore ut ad te supplex venirem, Cic. Existimabant futurum fuisse ut oppidum amitteretur, Cæs.*

Obs. 5. *To,* which in English is the sign of the infinitive, is omitted after *bid, dare, need, make, see, bear, feel,* and some others; as, *I bid him do it: and in Latin may often be rendered otherwise than by the infinitive; as, I am sent to complain, Mittor questum, or ut querar, &c. Ready to hear, Promptus ad audiendum; Time to read, Tempus legendi; Fit to swim, Aptus natando; Easy to say, Facile dictu; I am to write, Scripturus sum; A house to let, or more properly, to be let, Domus locanda; He was left to guard the city, Relitus est ut tueretur urbem.*

To in English is often taken absolutely; as, *To confess the truth; To proceed; To conclude; that is, That I may confess the truth, &c.*

The CONSTRUCTION of PARTICIPLES, GERUNDI, and SUPINES.

XXXI. Participles, Gerunds, and Supines, govern the case of their own verbs; as,

Amens virtutem, Loving virtue. Carente fraude. Wanting guile.

Obs. 1. Passive participles often govern the dative, particularly when they are used as adjectives; as,

Suspectus mibi, Suspected by me; Suspectiores regibus, Sall. Invisus mibi; hated by me, or hateful to me: Indies invisi, Suet. Occulta, et maribus non invisa solum, sed etiam inaudita sacra, unseen, Cic.

EXOSUS, PEROSUS, and often also PERTÆSUS, govern the accusative; as, Tædas exosa jugales, Ovid. Plebs consulum nomen baud fecus quam regum perosa erat, Liv. Pertæsus ignoriam suam; semet ipse, displeased with, Suet. vitam, weary of, Justin. levitatis, Cic.

Verbals in BUNDUS govern the case of their own verbs; as, *Gratulabundus patriæ, Just. Vitabundus cofira boſtum, Liv.* So sometimes also nouns; as, *Justitia est obtemperatio scriptis legibus, Cic. Infidiae confusio,*

confuli, Sall. *Domum redditioſe ſubiatū*, Cæſ. *Spelatio ludoſ*, Plaut.

Obſ. 2. These verbs, *do*, *reddo*, *volo*, *curo*, *faſio*, *babeo*, *comperiſ*, with the perfect participle, from a periphræſis ſimilar to what we use in English; as *Compertum babeo*, for *comperi*, I have found, Sall. *Effectum dabo*, for *efficiam*; *Inveniū tibi curabo*, et *adductum tuum Pamphilum*, i. e. *inveniū et adducam*, Ter. Sometimes the gerund is used with *ad*; as, *Tradere ei gentes diripiendas*, or *ad diripiendum*, Cic. *Rego, accipio, do aliquid utendum*; or *ad utendum*; *Miſit mihi librum legendum*, or *ad legendum*, &c.

Obſ. 3. These verbs, *curo*, *babeo*, *mando*, *loco*, *conduco*, *do*, *tribuo*, *mitto*, &c. are elegantly conſtrued with the participle in *dus* instead of the infinitive; as, *Funus fuciendum curavi*, for *fieri*, or *ut fieret*; *Columnas adſicandas locavit*, Cic.

The CONSTRUCTION of GERUNDS.

XXXII. Gerunds are conſtrued like ſubſtantive nouns; as,

Studendum eſt mihi, I must ſtudy. *Aptar ſtudendo*, Fit for ſtudying.
Tempus ſtudendi, Time of ſtudy. *Scio ſtudendum eſſe mihi*, I know that
 I must ſtudy.

But more particularly;

I. The Gerund in DUM with the verb *eſt* governs the dative; as,

Legendum eſt mihi, I must read. *Moriendum eſt omnibus*, All must die.
 So *Scio legendum eſſe mihi*; *moriendum eſſe omnibus*, &c.

Obſ. 1. This gerund always imports obligation or necessity; and may be resolved into *oportet*, *neceſſe eſt*, or the like, and the infinitive or the ſubjunctive, with the conjunction *ut*; as, *Omnibus eſt moriendum*, or *Omnibus neceſſe eſt mori*, or *ut moriantur*; or, *Neceſſe eſt ut omnes moriantur*. *Confuendum eſt tibi a me*, I must consult for your good; for *Oportet ut confuam tibi*, Cic.

Obſ. 2. The dative is often understood; as, *Orandum eſt*, *ut ſit mens ſana in corpore ſano*, sc. *tibi*, Juv. *Hic vincendum*, *aut moriendum*, *lites*, *eſt*, sc. *vobis*, Liv. *Deliberandum eſt diu*, *quod ſtatuendum eſt ſemel* sc. *tibi vel alicui*, P. Syr.

II. The gerund in DI is governed by ſubſtantives or adjectives; as,

Tempus legendi, Time of reading. *Cupitus diſcendi*, Desirous of learning.

Obſ. This gerund is ſometimes conſtrued with the genitive plural; as, *Facultas agorū condonandi*, for *agros*, Cic. *Copia ſpectandi comediarum*, for *comedias*, Ter. But chiefly with pronouns; as, *In caſtra uenerunt ſui purgandi cauſa*, Cæſ. *Veffri abſortandi cauſa*, Liv. *Eius videndi cupidur*, sc. *femina*, Ter. The gerund here is ſuppoſed to govern the genitive like a ſubſtantive noun.

III. The gerund in *DO* of the dative case is governed by adjectives signifying usefulness or fitness; as,

Charta utilis scribendo,

Paper useful for writing.

Obs. 1. Sometimes the adjective is understood; as, *Non est solvendo, scil. par, or babilis,* He is not able to pay. *Ita finis censendo factus est.* Liv.

Obs. 2. This gerund is sometimes governed also by verbs; as, *Adesse scribendo,* Cic. *Aptat babendo ensem,* for wearing; Virg.

IV. The gerund in *DUM* of the accusative case is governed by the prepositions *ad* or *inter*; as,

Promptus ad audiendum,

Ready to hear.

Attentus inter docendum,

Attentive in time of teaching.

Obs. This gerund is also governed by some other prepositions; as, *Ante domandum,* Virg. *Ob absolvendum,* Cic. *Circa movendum,* Quintil. Or it depends on some verb going before, and then with the verb *esse* governs the dative case; as, *Scio moriendum esse omnibus,* I know that all must die. *Esse* is often understood.

V. The gerund in *DO* of the ablative case is governed by the prepositions, *a*, *ab*, *de*, *c*, *ex*, or *in*; as,

Penit a peccando aboleretur, Punishment frightens from sinning.

* Or without a preposition, as the ablative of manner or cause; as,

Memoria excolendo augetur, The memory is improved by exercising it.
Desfessus sum ambulando, I am wearied with walking.

Obs. The gerund in its nature very much resembles the infinitive. Hence the one is frequently put for the other; as, *Esi tempus legendis* or *legere;* only the gerund is never joined with an adjective, and is sometimes taken in a passive sense; as, *Cum Tifidum vocaretur ad imperandum,* i. e. ut ipsi imperaretur, to receive orders, Sall. *Nunc ades ad imperandum, vel ad parendum potius,* Sic enim antiqui loquebantur, Cic. i. e. ut tibi imperetur. *Urit videndo,* i. e. dum videtur. Virg.

The gerund in English becomes a substantive, by prefixing the article to it, and then it is always to be construed with the preposition *of*; as, *He is employed in writing letters,* or, *in the writing of letters;* but it is improper to say, *in the writing letters,* or *in writing of letters.*

Gerunds

Gerunds turned into participles in *dus*.

XXXVI. Gerunds governing the accusative are elegantly turned into participles in *dus*, which, like adjectives, agree with their substantives in gender, number, and case; as,

By the Gerund.	By the Participle or Gerundive.
<i>Petendum est mihi pacem,</i>	<i>Pax est petenda mihi.</i>
<i>Tempus petendi pacem,</i>	<i>Tempus petenda pacis.</i>
<i>Ad potendum pacem,</i>	<i>Ad petendam pacem.</i>
<i>A petendo pacem,</i>	<i>A petenda pace.</i>

Obs. 1. In changing gerunds into participles in *dus*, the participle and the substantive are always to be put in the same case in which the gerund was; as,

Genitive; *Inita sunt consilia urbis delenda, civium trucidandorum, nominis Romani extingendi*, Cic.

Dat. *Perpetiando labore idoneus*, Colm. *Capeffenda reipublicae babilis*, Tac. *Area firma templis ac porticibus sustinendis*, Liv. *Oneri ferendo est, sc. aptus v. babilis*, Ovid. *Natus miseriis ferendis*, Ter. *Literis dandis vigilans*, Cic. *Locum oppido condendo capere*, Liv.

Acc. and abl. *Ad defendendam Romam ab oppugnanda Capua duces Romanos abstrabere*, Liv. *Orationem Latinam legendis nostris efficies pleniorum*, Cic.

Obs. 2. The gerunds of verbs which do not govern the accusative, are never changed into the participle, except those of *medior*, *uter*, *abutor*, *fruor*, *fugor*, and *potior*; as, *Spes potiundi urbe, or potiunda urbis*: but we always say, *Cupidus subveniendi tibi*, and never *tui*.

The CONSTRUCTION OF SUPINES.

1. The Supine in *um*.

XXXVII. The supine in *um* is put after a verb of motion; as,

Abiit deambulatum,

He hath gone to walk.

So, Ducere cohortes præditum, Liv. *Nunc venis irrigum dominum?*
Quod in rem tuam optimum factu arbitrer, te id admonitum venio, Plaut.

Obs. 1. The supine in *um* is elegantly joined with the verb *eo*, to express the signification of any verb more strongly; as, *It se perditum*, the same with *id agit*, or *operam dat*, *ut se perdat*, He is bent on his

own destruction, Ter. This supine with *iri* taken impersonally, supplies the place of the infinitive passive; as, *An credebas illam sine tua operâ iri deductum domum?* Which may be thus resolved, *An credebas iri (a te, vel ab aliquo) deductum (i. e. ad deducendum) illam domum*, Ter.

Obs. 2. The supine in *um* is put after other verbs besides verbs of motion; as, *Dedit filiam nuptum*; *Cantatum provocemus*, Ter. *Revocatus defensum patriam*; *Divisit copias biematur*, Nep.

Obs. 3. The meaning of this supine may be expressed by several other parts of the verb; as, *Venit oratum opem*: or, 1. *Venit opem orandi causâ*, or *opis orande*. 2. *Venit ad orandum opem*, or *ad orandam opem*. 3. *Venit opi oranda*. 4. *Venit opem oratus*. 5. *Venit qui*, or *ut opem oret*. 6. *Venit opem orare*. But the third and the last of these are seldom used.

2. The supine in *u*.

XXXVIII. The supine in *u* is put after an adjective noun; as,

Facile dictu, Easy to tell, or to be told.

So *Nibil diu fadum, usque hæc limina tangat*; *intra que puer* ~~q~~, *Juv.* *Difficilis res est inventu verus amicus*; *Fas v. nefas est dictu*; *Opus q* *scitu*, *Cic.*

Obs. 1. The supine in *v*, being used in a pejorative sense, hardly ever governs any case. It is sometimes, especially in old writers, put after verbs of motion; as, *Nunc absonatu redeo*, from getting provisions, *Plaut.* *Primus cubitu surgat* (villicus), from bed, *postremus cubitum eat*, *Cato*.

Obs. 2. This supine may be rendered by the infinitive or gerund with the preposition *ad*; as, *Difficile cognitu*, *cognosci*, or *ad cognoscendum*; *Res facilis ad credendum*, *Cic.*

Obs. 3. The supines being nothing else but verbal nouns of the fourth declension, used only in the accusative and ablative singular, are governed in these cases by prepositions understood; the supine in *um* by the preposition *ad*, and the supine in *u* by the preposition *in*.

The CONSTRUCTION OF INDECLINABLE WORDS.

1. The CONSTRUCTION OF ADVERBS.

XXXIX. Adverbs are joined to Verbs and Participles, to adjectives, and to other adverbs; as,

Bene scribit, He writes well. *Fortiter pugnans*, Fighting bravely.

Servus egregiè fidelis, A slave re-

Satis bene, Well enough.

markably faithful.

Obs. 1. Adverbs are sometimes likewise joined to substantives; as,

Homerus planè orator; planè uosfer, verè Metellus, Cic. So, Hodie mane; eras mane, heri mane; hodie vesperi, &c. tam mane, tam vespere.

Obs. 2. The adverb for the most part in Latin, and always in English, is placed near to the word which it modifies or affects.

Obs. 3. Two negatives, both in Latin and English, are equivalent to an affirmative; as,

Nec non senserunt, Nor did they not perceive, i. e. Et senserunt, And they did perceive; Non poteram non examinari metu, Cic. Examples however of the contrary of this sometimes occur in good authora, both English and Latin. Thus two or three negative participles are placed before the subjunctive mode to express a stronger negation. Neque tu laud dias tibi non predictum, And do not say that you were not forewarned, Ter.

But what chiefly deserves attention in Adverbs, is the degree of comparison and the mode with which they are joined. 1. *Apprimè admodum, uerbementer, maximè, perquam, valde, oppidò, &c.* and *per* in composition, are usually joined to the positive; as, *Utrigue nostrum gratum admodum feceris, You will do what is very agreeable to both of us, Cic. perquam puerile, very childish; oppidò pauci, very few; perfacile est, &c.* In like manner, *Parum, multum, nimium, tantum, quantum, aliquantum; ac, In rebus apertissimis nimium longi sumus; purum firmus, multum bonus, Cic.* Adverbs in *um* are sometimes also joined to comparatives; as, *Forma viri aliquantum amplior humana, Liv.*

QUAM is joined to the positive or superlative in different senses; as, *Quam difficile est! How difficult it is! Quam crudelis, or Ut crudelis est! How cruel he is! Flens quam familiariter, very familiarly, Ter. So quam severè, very severely, Cic. quam latè, very widely, Cæs. Tam multa, quam, &c. as many things as, &c. Quam maximas potest copias armat, as great as possible, Sall. Quam maximas gratias agit, quam primum, quam saepissime, Cic. Quam quisque pessimè fecit, tam maximè tutus est, Sall.*

FACILE, for *haut dubile*, undoubtedly, clearly, is joined to superlatives or words of a similar meaning; as, *Facile doctissimus, facile princeps, v. præcipuus. LONGE*, to comparatives or superlatives, rarely to the positive; as, *Longè eloquentissimus Plato, Cic. Pedibus longè melior Lycus, Virg.*

2. *CUM*, when, is construed with the indicative or subjunctive, oftener with the latter; *DUM*, whilst, or how long, with the indicative; as, *Dum bac aguntur; Egredo, dum anima est, spes esse dicitur, Cic. Dones eris felix, multos numerabis amicos, Ovid. DUM* and *DONEC*, for *usquedum*, until, sometimes with the indicative and sometimes with the subjunctive; as, *Operior, dum ista cognoscit, Cic. Hanc destinam, denes*

donec perfecero, Ter. So **QUOD**, for *quasmodiu*, *quantum*, *quatenus*, as long, as much, as far as; thus, *Quoia Cotilina fuit in urbe*; *Quod tibi aquum videbitur*; *quod possem* *T* *siceret*. *quod progredi potuerit amensia*, Cie. But **QUOD**, until, oftener with the Subjunctive; as, *Tbesalonicae esse statueram*, *quod aliquid ad me scriberes*, Cie. but not always; *Non faciam finem regandi*, *quod nunciatum erit te fecisse*, Cie. The pronoun *ejus*, with *facere* or *fieri* is elegantly added to *quod*; as, *Quod ejus facere poteris*; *Quod ejus fieri possit*, Cie. *Ejus* is thought to be here governed by *aliquid* or some such word understood. *Quod corpus*, *quod animam*, for *secundum*, or *quod attinet ad corpus vel animam*, as to the body or soul, is esteemed by the best grammarians not to be good Latin.

3. **POSTQUAM** or **POSTEAQUAM**, after, is usually joined with the Indic. **ANTEQUAM**, **PRIUSQUAM**, before; **SIMUL**, **SIMULAC**, **SIMULATQUE**, **SIMUL UT**, as soon as; **UBI**, when, sometimes with the Ind. and sometimes with the Subj. as, *Antequam dico*, or *dicam*, Cie. *Simulac persenxit*, Virg. *Simul ut videro Curionem*, Cie. *Hac ubi dicta dedit*, Liv. *Ubi semel quis pejeraverit*, *ei credi poslea non oportet*, Cie. So **NE**, truly; as, *Ne ego homo sum infelix*, Ter. *Ne tu*, *si id fecisses*, *melius famae consuluisses*, Cie. But **NE**, not, with the Imperative, or more elegantly with the Subjunctive; as, *Ne jura*, Plaut. *Ne post conserfas culpam in me*, Ter. *Ne tot annorum felicitatem in unius horae dederis discrimen*, Liv.

4. **QUASI**, **CEU**, **TANQUAM**, **PERINDE**, when they denote resemblance, are joined with the Indicative; *Fuit alim, quasi ego sum*, *senex*, Plaut. *Adversi rupto ceu quondam turbine venti confligunt*, Virg. *Hec omnia perinde sunt*, *ut aguntur*. But when used ironically, they have the Subjunctive; as, *Quasi de verbo, non de re laboretur*, Cie.

5. **UTINAM**, **O SI**, **UT** for *utinam*, I wish, take the Subjunctive; as, *Utinam ea res ei voluptati sit*, Cie. *O mibi præteritos referat si Jupiter annos*, Virg. *Ut illum dii deæque perdant*, Ter.

6. **UT**, when or after, takes the indicative; as, *Ut discerit*, *venit*, &c. ¶ **Alio** for *quam* or *quomodo*, how! as, *Ut valet!* *Ut falsus animi est!* *Ut sapientia summa ingenia in occulto latent!* Plaut. ¶ Or when it simply denotes resemblance; as, *Ut tute es*, *ita omnes censer esse*, Plaut. ¶ In this sense it sometimes has the Subjunctive; as, *Ut sementem feceris*, *ita metes*, Cie.

7. **QUIN** for **CUS** **NON**, takes the Indic. as, *Quin continetis vocem indicem multitiae vestrae?* Cie. ¶ For **IMO**, nay or but, the Indic. or Imperat. as, *Quin est paratum argentum*; *quin tu hoc audi*, Ter. ¶ For **UT NON**, **QUI**, **QUE**, **QUOD NON**, or **QUO MINUS**, the Subjunctive; as, *Nulla tamquam res*, *quin difficilis sit quum invitatus facias*, Ter. *Nemo est*, *quiu malit*; *Facere non possum*, *quin ad te mittam*, I cannot help sending; *Nihil absit*, *quin sum miserrimus*, Cie.

The GOVERNMENT OF ADVERBS.

XL. Some Adverbs of time, place, and quantity, govern the genitive; as,

<i>Pridie ejus dicti,</i>	The day before that day.
<i>Ubique gentium,</i>	Every where.
<i>Satis est verborum,</i>	There is enough of words.

1. Adverbs of time governing the genit. are, *Interea*, *postea*, *inde* *tunc*; as, *Interea loci*, in the mean time; *Postea loci*, afterwards; *inde loci*, then; *tunc temporis*, at that time. 2. Of place, *Ubi* and *quo*, with their compounds, *ubique*, *ubileunque*, *ubivis*, *ubimbi*, &c. Also *Eo*, *buc*, *hucine*, *unde*, *usquam*, *nusquam*, *longe*, *ibidem*: as, *Ubi*, *quo*, *quovis*, &c. also *usquam*, *nusquam*, *unde*, *terrarum*, *vel gentium*; *longe gentium*; *ibidem loci*, *eo audaciæ*, *recordiæ*, *miseriarum*, &c. to that pitch of boldness, madness, misery, &c. 3. Of quantity, *Abunde*, *affætim*, *largiter*, *nimis*, *satis*, *parum*, *minime*; as, *Abundæ gloriae*, *affætim diviniarum*, *Largiter auri*, *satis loquentia*, *sapientia parum est illi vel habet*, He has enough of glory, riches, &c. *Minime gentium*, by no means.

Some add *ergo* and *influr*; as, *Ergo virtutis*, for the sake of virtue, Cic. *Inflar montis*, like a mountain, Virg.: But these are properly nouns.

Obs. 1. These adverbs are thought to govern the genitive, because they imply in themselves the force of a substantive; as, *Potentia gloriaeque abundè adeptus*, the same with *abundantiam gloriae*: or *res*, *locus*, or *negotium* and a preposition, may be understood; as, *Interea loci*, i. e. *inter ea negotia loci*; *Ubi terrarum*, for *in quo loco terrarum*.

Obs. 2. We usually say, *pridie*, *postridie ejus dicti*, seldom *diem*; but *pridie*, *postridie* *Kalendas*, *Nonas*, *Iasus*, *Iudos* *Apollinares*, *natalem ejus*, *absolutionem ejus*, &c. rarely *Kalendarum*, &c.

Obs. 3. *En* and *ecce* are construed either with the nominative or accusative; as,

En hostis, or *hostem*; *Ecce miserum hominem*, Cic. Sometimes a dative is added; as, *Ecce tibi Strato*, Ter. *Ecce duas* (icil. aras.) *tibi*, *Daphni*, Virg. In like manner is construed *bene* put for *ecce*; as, *Hem tibi Davum*, Ter. But in all these examples some verb must be understood.

XLI. Some derivative adverbs govern the case of their primitives; as,

<i>Omnium optimè loquitur,</i>	He speaks the best of all.
<i>Convenienter naturæ,</i>	Agreeably to nature.
<i>Venit ob viam ei,</i>	He came to meet him.
<i>Proximè castris or castra,</i>	Next the camp.

The CONSTRUCTION of PREPOSITIONS.

I. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accusative.

Ad astra, *to the stars*; religari ad asseriem, *to be bound to a plank*; ad diem veniam, *solvam, &c.* *at* or *on*; ad portam, ostium, fores, *at, before*; ad urbem, Tiberim, *near, at*; ad templum supplicatio, *in*; ad summum, *at* *myself, or to the top*; ad summam, *on the whole*; Cic.; ad ultimum, extremum, *at last, finally*; ad *v. in speciem, to appearance*; mentis ad omnia capacitas; annus fatalis ad interitum; lenius ad severitatem, *for, with respect to*, Cic.; ad vivum, *sc. corpus, to the quick*; ad judicem agere, *before*; nihil ad Cæfarem, *in comparison of*; numero ad duodecim, *to the number of*; omnes ad unum, *to a man*; ad hoc, *besides*; ad vulgi opinionem, *according to*; homo ad unguem factus, *an accomplished man*; herbae ad lunam messiae, *by the light of*, Virg. ad tempus venit, *at*; Ira brevis est & ad tempus, *for*; ad tempus consilium capiam, *according to*; Cic.; ad decem annos, *after*; annos ad quinquaginta natus, *about*; Cic. nebula erat ad multum diei, *for a great part of the day*; Liv.; ad pedes jacere, provolvi, procumbere, & ad genua; ad manus esse, *at*; ad manus venire, *to come to a close engagement*; ad libellam deberi, *to a farthing, no more and no less*; ad amissum, *exactly*; ad hæc visa auditaque, *upon seeing and bearing these things*, Liv.

Ad seems sometimes to be taken adverbially; as, *Ad duo milia cœsa sunt*; *ad mille hominum amissum est*; *ad ducenti perierunt, about*, Liv.

Apud forum, *at*; apud me cœnabis, *at my house*; apud senatum, *judices v. aliquem dicere, before*; apud maiores nostros, *among*; apud Xenophontem, *in the book of*; *Est mihi fides, vel valeo, apud illum, I have credit with him*; facio te apud illum deum, Ter.

ANTE diem, *focum, &c. before*.

ADVERSUS, *v. -um*; **CONTRA** hostes, *against*; adversus infimos justitia est servanda, *towards*; adversum hunc loqui, *to*, Ter. Lerina adversum Antipolim, *over against*, Plin.

CIS vel **CITRA** flumen, *on this side*; citra necessitatem, *without*; Ede citra cruditatem, bibe citra ebrietatem, Senec.

CIRCUM & **CIRCA** regem, *about*; Varia circa hæc opinio, Plin.

ERGA amicos, *towards*. **EXTRA** muros; Extra jocum, periculum, noxiam, sorteum, *without*; nemo extra te, *besides*; extra coniurationem, *not concerned in*, Sall.

INFRA tegum, *below the roof*. **INTER** fratres, *among*; inter & super cœnam, *during, in the time of*; inter hæc parata, *during these preparations*; Sall. Inter tot annos, *in*; Cic. Inter diem, *whence, interdiu, in the day time*; inter se amant, *they love one another*; Quasi non nōrimus nos inter nos, Ter.

INTRA privatos parietes, *intra paucos annos, within*; intra summam est, *lesser than report*. Quint.

JUSTA macellum, *near the brawls*.

OB lucrum, *for gain*; ob oculos, *before*; ob industriant *for de industria, on purpose*, Plaut.

PENES quem, *or quem penes*, *in*

in the power of; Penes te es? Are you in your senses? Hor.

PER agros, through; per vim, per scelus, by; per anni tempus, per etatem licet, for, by reason of.

PONE caput, behind.

POST hoc tempus, after; post tergum, behind; post homines natos, post hominum memoriam, since the world began.

PRÆTER te nemo, no body besides, or except; præter casam fugere, beyond; præter legem, morem, æquum & bonum, spem, opinionem, &c. contrary to, against, beyond; præter cæteros excellere, lamentari, above; præter ripam ire, along, near; præter oculos, before, Cic.

PROPTER virtutem, for, on account of; propter aquæ rivum, near, hard by, Virg.

SECUNDUM facta & virtutes tuas, according to; Ter. secundum littus, secundum aurem vulnera-

tus est, near to; in actione secundum vocem vultus plurimum valet; secundum patrem tu es proximus, after, next to; Prætor secundum me decrevit, sententiam dedit, for, in my favour, Cic.

SECUS vrām, by, along.

SUPRA terram, above.

TRANS mare, over, beyond.

ULTRA oceanum, beyond.

To prepositions governing the accusative are commonly added CIRCITER, PROPE, USQUE & VERSUS; as, Circiter meridiem, about mid-day; prope muros, near the walls; usque Puteolos, Tharsum usque, as far as; Orientem versus, towards the east. But in these *ad* is understood; which we find sometimes expressed; as, Prope ad annum, Nep. Ab ovo usque ad mala, Hor. Ad oceanum versus, Cæs. In Italiam versus, Cic.

PREPOSITIONS governing the Ablative.

A patre, ab omnibus, abs te, by or from; a puer, vel pueris, a pueritia, incunabulis, teneris unguibus, &c. from a child, ever since childhood; ab ovo usque ad mala, from the beginning to the end of supper; a manu, sc. servus, an amanuensis or clerk; ad manum, a waiting man; a pedibus, a footman; a latere principis, an attendant. So a secretis, rationibus, consiliis, caythis, &c. a secretary, accountant, &c.; fores a nobis, for nostræ. Injuria ab illo, for illius, Ter. a cena, after; Secundus, tertius a Romulo; ictus ab latere, on in; a senatu stare, for, in defence of; ab oculis doleo, Plaut. ab ingenio improbus, a pecunia & militibus imparatus, as to,

with respect to, Cic. Est calor a sole; omisiores ab re, too careless about money; a villa mercenarium vidi, Ter.

ABSQVE causa, without; absque te esset, recte ego mihi vidissem, i. e. si tu non essem, nisi tu essem, but for you, had it not been for you, Ter. Absque is chiefly used by comic writers; sine, by orators.

CLAM patre & patrem, without the knowledge of.

CORAM omnibus, before, in presence of.

CUM exercitu, with; testis mecum est annulus, in my possession, Ter. cum prima luce, at break of day; cum imperio esse, in; cum primis, in primis, in the first place; cum metu dicere, cum lætitia vivere, cum cura, &c. Cic.

Cic. *We say*, *necum*, *tecum*, *secum*, *nobiscum*, *vobiscum*; *rarely* *cum me*, *cum te*, &c. *and quocum* or *cum quo*, *quibuscum* or *cum quibus*.

De *lana caprina* *rixantur*, *about*, *concerning*; *De tanto patrimonio nihil relictum est*, *of*; *de loco superiore*, *from*; *de die*, *by day*; *de nocte*, *by night*; *de integro*, *anew*, *afresh*; *de v. ex improviso*, *unexpectedly*; *de v. ex industria*, *on purpose*; *de meo*, *at my expence*; *Id de lucro putato esse*, *clear gain*, *Ter. de v. ex compacto agere*, *by agreement*; *de transverso*, *cross-wise*, *at-bwart*; *de v. ex ejus sententia*, *confilio*, *according to*; *qua v. hac de causa*, *for*; *homo de plebe*; *templum de marmore*, *of*; *de scripto dicere*, *to read a speech*; *de Filio emit*, *from*, *Cic. De servis fidelissimus*; *de ipsis exercitu* *non amplius hominum mille cecidit*, *Nep. Robur de exercitu*, *Liv. Adolescens de summo loco*, *Plaut. De procul aspicere*, *Id.*

E *foro*, *Ex sedibus*, *from*, *out of*; *e contrario*, *v. contraria parte*, *on the contrary*; *e regione*, *over against*; *e republica*, *e re aliquibus*, *for the good of*; *statim e somno*, *ex fuga*, *ex tanta prosperantia*, *aliud ex alio malum*, *from*, *after*; *e vestigio*, *out of hand*, *immediately*; *poculum ex auro*; *ex equo pugnare*, *on horseback*; *facere pugnam ex compmodo*, *on advantageous ground*, *Sall. diem ex die expectare*, *from day to day*, *day after day*; *ex ordine*, *in order*; *magna ex parte*, *for the most part*; *ex supervacuo*, *superfluously*; *ex tua dignitate*, *virtute*, *ex decreto senatus*, *e natura*, *according to*; *so vulgus ex veritate pauca*, *ex opinione multa estimat*; *ex v. de mo-*

re, *ad v. in morem aliquis*; *Ex animo*, *from the heart*; *Insolentia ex prosperis rebus*, *e via languere*, *ex doctrina nobilis*, *on account of*; *ex usu est tibi*, *of advantage*; *ex eo die*, *since*; *ex amicis certis certissimus*, *of or among*; *ex pedibus laborare*, *to be ill of the gout*, *Cic. E re nata*, *as the matter stands*, *Ter. Conimenta mater est*, *esse ex alio viro*, *nescio quo puerum natum*, *by*. *Id.*

Pro gloria certare, *for*; *Rati noctem pro se*, *favourable to them*, *Sall. Hoc est pro me*, *Cic. pro templo*, *tribunali*, *concione*, *rostris*, *castris*, *foribus*, *before*; *pro sua dignitate*, *sapientia*, &c. *pro potestate cogere*, *pro tempore*, *re*, *loco*, *fuo jure*, *according to*; *est pro praetore*, *pro te molam*, *comes facundus pro vehiculo est*, *for*, *instead of*; *pro viribus*, *pro parte virili*, *pro sua quisque parte v.* *facultate*, *to one's ability or power*; *Parum tibi pro eo*, *quod a te habeo*, *reddidi*, *in comparison of*, *considering*, *Cic. pro ut*, *pro eo ac*, *pro eo ut mereor*, *as I deserve*; *pro se quisque*, *uterque*, &c. *for his own part*; *pro rata parte*, *pro portione*, *in proportion*; *pro cive se gerit*; *agere pro victoribus*; *pro suo uti*; *pro rupto fædus habet*, *for*, *as*; *so pro certo*, *infecto*, *comperito*, *nihilo concessio*, &c. *habeo*, *duco*. *Pro occiso*, *relictus est*, *Cic.*

Prae *se pugionem tulit*, *before*; *speciem præ se boni viri fert*, *pretends to be*, *Ter. præ lacrymis non possum scribere*, *for*, *because of*; *illum præ me contempsi*, *in comparison of*; *So the adv. prætut*; *as*, *prætut hujus rabies que dabit*, *Ter.*

PALAM populo, *omnibus*, *before*, *with the knowledge of*.

SINE

SINE labore, *without*; sine ulla causa, pompa, molestia, querala, impensa, &c.; homo sine re, fide, spe, fortunis, sede, &c. Cic.

Capulo TENUS, *up to the bilt*. *Tenus* is construed with the genitive plural, when the word wants the sing.; as, *Cum arum tenus*, as far as *Cuma*: or when we speak of things, of which we have by-nature only two; as, *Oculorum, aurum, narium, la-*

brorum, lumborum, crurum tenus, *up to*. *We also* find *Coryræ tenus*, & *ostiis tenuis*, *Liv.* *Colchis tenuis*, *Flor.* *Pectoribus tenuis*, *Ovid*.

To prepositions governing the abl. is commonly added *PROCUL*; as, *Procul domo*, *far from home*; but here *a* is understood, which is also often expressed; as, *Procul a patria*, *Virg.* *Procul ab ostentatione*. *Quinct.* *Culpa est procul a me*, *Ter.*

3. PREPOSITIONS governing the Accus. and Abl.

XLIV. The prepositions *in*, *sub*, *super*, and *subter*, govern the accusative, when motion to a place is signified; but when motion or rest in a place is signified, *in* and *sub* govern the ablative; *super* and *subter* either the accusative or ablative.

IN when it signifies *into*, governs the accusative; when it signifies *in* or *among*, it governs the ablative; as,

In urbem ire, *into*; *amor in partiam*, *in te benignus*, *towards*; *in lucem*, *until day*; *in eam sententiam*, *to that purpose*, *on that head*; *in rem tuam est*, *for your advantage*; *in utramque partem disputare*, *on both sides*, *for and against*; *litura in nomen*, *on*, *Cic.* *potestas in filium*, *over*; *in aliquem dicere*, *against*; *mirum in modum*, *after*; *in pedes stare*, *in aurem dormire*, *on*; *in os laudare*, *to*, *before*; *in v. inter patres lectus*, *into the number of*; *in vulgus probari*, *spargere*, &c. *among*; *crescit in dies*, *in singulos dies*; *omnes in dies*, *every day*; *in diem postterum*, *proximum*, *decimum*, *against*; *in diem vivere*, *to live from hand to mouth*, *not to think of to-morrow*; *Est in diem*, *will*

bappen some time after, *Ter.* *Induciae in duos menses datae*, *in hunc diem*, *annum*, &c. *for*; *Ternis assibus in pedem*, *v. in singulos pedes*, *transgredit*, *Hebargained for three shillings a-foot*, *or for every foot*; *So in jugerum*, *militem*, *capita*, *naves*, &c. *In medimna singula*, *H. S. quinos denos dediti*, *Cic.*

In portu navigo, *in tempore*, *in*; *esse in potestate*, *v. in potestatem*, *honore vel honorem*, *mente v. mentem*: *in manu v. manibus esse*; *habere*, *tenere*, *in one's power*, *on hand*; *in amicis*, *among*; *in oculis*, *before*: *Occlusus est in provinciam*, *for in provincia*, *Sall.* *In pueritia*, *adolescentia*, *senectute*, *absentia*, *for puer or pueri*, *when a*

boy or boys, &c. *Hoc in tempore*, Nep. *In loco fratris diligere*, *for ut fratrem*, Ter.

Sub terras ibit *imago*, *sub aspectum* cadit, *under*; *sub ipsum funus*, *near*, *just before*. Hor. *sub lucem*, *ortum lucis*, *noctem*, *vesperam*, *brumam*, &c. *incipiente luce*, &c. *at the dawn of day*, &c.; *sub idem tempus*, *about*; *sub eas literas recitatæ* sunt *tuae*, *sub festos dies*, *after*, Cic.

Sub muro, *rege*, *pedibus*, &c. un-

der; *sub arbe*, *near*, Ter. *sub ea conditione*, *v. -em*, *on or with*. **SUPER** *Numidiam*, *above*, *beyond*; *super ripas*, *upon*; *super hæc*; *super morbū etiam famas affixit*, *besides*, Liv. *super arbore*, *fronde super viridi*, *upon*; *super hac re scribere*, *his accensa super*, *concerning*; *alii super alios trucidantur*, Liv. *Super cœnam*, *super vinum & epulas*, *for inter*, *during*, Curt. *Nec super ipse suā molitur laude laborem*, *for*, Virg. **SUBTER** *terram vel terra*, *under*.

Obs. 1. Prepositions in English have always after them the accusative or objective case. And when prepositions in English or Latin do not govern a case, they are reckoned adverbs.

Such are *Ante*, *circa*, *clam*, *coram*, *contra*, *infra*, *intra*, *juxta*, *pa-
lam*, *pone*, *post*, *propter*, *secus*, *subter*, *super*, *supra*, *ultra*. But in most of these the case seems to be implied in the sense; as, *Longo post tempore venit*, sc. *post id tempus*. *Adversus*, *juxta*, *propter*, *secus*, *secundum*, *et clam*, are by some thought to be always adverbs, having a preposition understood when they govern a case. So other adverbs also are construed with the acc. or abl. as, *Intus cellam*, *for intra*, Liv. *Intus templo diuum*, sc. *in*, Virg. *Simul his*, sc. *cum*, Hor.

Obs. 2. *A* and *e* are only put before consonants; *AB* and *EX*, usually before vowels, and sometimes also before consonants; as,

A patre, e regione: *ab initio*, *ab rege*; *ex urbe*, *ex parte*: *abs* before *g* and *t*; as, *abs te*, *abs quivis homine*, Ter. Some phrases are used only with *e*; as, *e longinquo*, *e regione*, *e vestigio*, *e re mea est*, &c. Some only with *ex*; as, *Ex compaetio*, *ex tempore*, *magna ex parte*, &c.

Obs. 3. Prepositions are often understood; as, *Devenere locos*, scil. *ad*; *It portis*, sc. *ex*, Virg. *Nunc id prodeo*, scil. *ob* vel *propter*, Ter. *Maria aspera juro*, scil. *per*, Virg. *Ut se loco movere non possent*, scil. *e* vel *de*, Cæs. *Vina promens dolio*, scil. *ex*, Hor. *Quid illo facias?* *Quid me fiet*, sc. *de*, Ter. And so in English, *Show me the book*; *Get me some paper*, that is, *to me*, *for me*. We sometimes find the word to which the preposition refers, suppressed; as, *Circum Concordia*, sc. *ad eum*, Sall. *Round St Paul's*, namely, *church*; *Campum Stellatem divisi* *extra fortem ad viginti millibus civium*, i. e. *civium millibus ad viginti millia*, Suet. But this is most frequently the case after prepositions in composition; thus, *Emissere seruum*, scil. *manu*, Plaut. *Eromere viris*, scil. *ore*, Cic. *Educere copias*, scil. *castris*, Cæs.

XLV. A preposition in composition often governs the same case, as when it stands by itself; as,

Adeamus scolam,

Let us go to the school.

Exeamus scolam,

Let us go out of the school.

Obs. 1. The preposition with which the verb is compounded, is often repeated; as, *Adire ad scolam*; *Exire e scola*; *Adgredi aliquid*, or *ad aliquid*; *ingredi orationem* vel in *orationem*; *inducere animum*, ut in *animum*; *evadere undis* & *ex undis*; *decedere de suo jure*, *desedere vii* vel de *via*; *expellere*, *ejicere*, *exterminare*, *extrudere*, *exturbare urbe*, ut *ex urbe*. Some do not repeat the preposition; as, *Affari*, *allogui*, *al-latrare aliquem*, not *qd aliquem*. So *Attuere urbem*; *accollere flumen*; *cumvenire aliquem*; *praterire injuriam*; *abdicare se magistratu*, (also *abdicare magistratum*); *transducere exercitum fluvium*, &c. Others are only construed with the preposition; as, *Accurrere ad aliquem*, *adhortari ad aliquid*, *incidere in morbum*, *avocare a studiis*, *avertere ab incepto*, &c.

Some admit other prepositions; as, *Abire*, *demigrare loco*; & *a*, *de*, *ex loco*; *abgrabere aliquem* *a*, *de*, *vel e conspectu*; *Desistere sententia*, *a* vel *de sententia*, *Excidere manibus*, *de vel e manibus*, &c.

Obs. 2. Some verbs compounded with *e* or *ex* govern either the ablative or accusative; as,

Egredi urbe or *urbem*, sc. *extra*; *egredi extra vallum*, Nep. *Evadere infidis* or *infidias*. *Patrios excedere muros*, Lucan. *Scelerata excedere terrā*, Virg. *Elabi ex manibus*; *pugnam*, *wincula*, Tac.

Obs. 3. This rule does not take place, unless when the preposition may be disjoined from the verb, and put before the noun by itself; as, *Alloquor potrem*, or *loquor ad patrem*.

3. The CONSTRUCTION OF INTERJECTIONS.

XLVI. The interjections *O*, *heu*, and *prob*, are construed with the nominative, accusative, or vocative; as,

O vir bonus or *bone*! *O good man!* *Heu me miserum*! *Ah wretched me!*

So, *O vir fortis atque amicus*! Ter. *Heu vanitas humana*! Plin. *Heu miserande puer*! Virg. *O praeclarum custodem ovium* (ut aiunt) *Iupum*! Cic.

XLVII. *Hei* and *væ* govern the dative; as,

Hei mibi! *Ah me!*

Væ vobis! *Wo to you!*

Obs. 1. *Heus* and *obe* are joined only with the vocative; as, *Heus Syre*, Ter. *Obe libelle!* Martial. *Prob* or *pro*, *ab*, *vab*, *bem*, have generally either the accusative or vocative; as, *Prob bovinum fidem*? Ter. *Prob Sancte Jupiter*! Cic. *Hem astutias*! Ter.

Obs. 2. Interjections cannot properly have either concord or government. They are only mere sounds excited by passion, and have no just connection with any other part of a sentence. Whatever case

therefore is joined with them, must depend on some other word understood, except the vocative, which is always placed absolutely; thus, *Heu me miserum!* stands for *Heu!* *quam me miserum sentio!* *Hei mihi!* for *Hei!* *malum est mihi!* *Prob dolor!* for *Prob!* *quantus est dolor!* and so in other examples.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CIRCUMSTANCES.

The circumstances, which in Latin are expressed in different cases, are, 1. The *Price* of a thing. 2. The *Cause*, *Manner*, and *Instrument*. 3. *Place*. 4. *Measure* and *Distance*. 5. *Time*.

I. PRICE.

XLVIII. The price of a thing is put in the ablative; as,

Emi librum duobus asibus, I bought a book for two shillings.
Conflitit talents, It cost a talent.

So *Affe corum est;* *vile viginti minis;* *auro venale.* &c. *Nocet empta de ore voluptas,* Hor. *Spem pretio non emat,* Tert. *Purum auro veneunt honores,* Ovid.

¶ These genitives *tanti*, *quanti*, *pluris*, *minoris*, are excepted; as,

Quanti conflitit, How much cost it? *Affe et pluris,* A shilling and more.

Obs. 1. When the substantive is added, they are put in the ablative; as, *parvo pretio, impenso pretio vendere,* Cic.

Obs. 2. *Magnus, permagnus, parvus, paululus, minimus, plurimus*, are often used without the substantive; as, *Permagnus conflitit, scil. pretio,* Cic. *Heu quanto regnis rex fletit una tuis?* Ovid. Fast. ii. 812. We also say, *Emi carū, carius, carissimū;* *bene, melius, optimū;* *male, pejus, vilius, vilissimū;* *Volde carē aestimas:* *Emi domum prope dimidio carius, quam estimabat,* Cic.

Obs. 3. The ablative of price is properly governed by the preposition *pro* understood, which is likewise sometimes expressed; as, *Dum pro argenteis decem aureus unus valeret,* Liv.

2. MANNER and CAUSE.

XLIX. The cause, manner, and instrument are put in the ablative; as,

Pallo metu, I am pale for fear.
Fecit suo more, He did it after his own way.
Scribo calamo, I write with a pen.

So Ardet dolore; pallecere culpā; astuare dubitatione; gessire voluptate vel secundis rebus: Confessus morbo; affectus beneficii, gravissimo suppicio; insignis pietate; deterior licentiā: Pietate filius, confiliis pater, amore fratre; hence Rex Dei gratiā. Paritur pax bello, Nep. Procedere lento gradu; Acceptus regio apparatu: Nullo-fono convertitur annus, Juv. Jam veniet tacito curva senecta pede, Ovid. Percutere securi, defendere faxis, configere sagittis, &c.

Obs. 1. The ablative is here governed by some preposition understood. Before the manner and cause, the preposition is sometimes expressed; as, *De more matrum locuta est*, Virg. *Magno cum metu*; *Hoc de causa*; *Præ morore, formidine, &c.* But hardly ever before the instrument; as, *Vulnerare aliquem gladio*, not *cum gladio*; unless among the poets, who sometimes add *a* or *ab*; as, *Trajetus ab ense*, Ovid.

Obs. 2. When any thing is said to be in company with another, it is called the ablative of CONCOMITANCY, and has the preposition *cum* usually added; as, *Obsedit curiam cum gladiis*; *Ingressus est cum gladio*, Cie.

Obs. 3. Under this rule are comprehended several other circumstances, as the matter of which any thing is made, and what is called by grammarians the ADJUNCT, that is, a noun in the ablative joined to a verb or adjective, to express the character or quality of the person or thing spoken of; as, *Capitolium saxo quadrato constructum*, Liv. *Floruit acumine ingenit*, Cic. *Pollet opibus, valet armis, viget memoriam famam nobilis, &c.* *Eger pedious.* When we express the matter of which any thing is made, the preposition is usually added; as, *Templum de marmore, seldoni marmorit*; *Poculum ex auro factum*, Cic.

3. PLACE.

The circumstances of place may be reduced to four particulars. 1. The place *where*, or *in which*. 2. The place *whither*, or *to which*. 3. The place *whence*, or *from which*. 4. The place *by* or *through* *which*.

AT or IN a place is put in the genitive; unless the noun be of the third declension, or of the plural number, and then it is expressed in the ablative.

TO a place is put in the accusative; FROM or BY a place, in the ablative.

But these cases will be more exactly ascertained by reducing the circumstances of place to particular questions.

1. The Place WHERE.

L. When the question is made by *Ubi*? Where? the name of a town is put in the genitive; as,

*Vixit Romæ,**Mortuus est Londini,*

He lived at Rome.

He died at London.

¶ But if the name of a town be of the third declension or plural number, it is expressed in the ablative; as,

*Habitat Carthagine,**Studuit Parisis,*

He dwells at Carthage.

He studied at Paris.

Obs. 1. When a thing is said to be done, not in the place itself, but in its neighbourhood or near it, we always use the preposition *ad* or *apud*; as, *Ad* or *apud Trojam*, At or near Troy.

Obs. 2. The name of a town, when put in the ablative, is here governed by the preposition *in* understood; but if it be in the genitive, we must supply *in urbe*, or *in oppido*. Hence, when the name of a town is joined with an adjective or common noun, the preposition is generally expressed; thus, we do not say, *Natus est Romæ urbis celebri*; but either *Romæ in celebri urbe*, or *in Romæ celebri urbe*, or *in Roma celebri urbe*, or sometimes *Romæ celebri urbe*. In like manner, we usually say, *Habitat in urbe Carthagine*, with the preposition. We likewise find, *Habitat Cartagini*, which is sometimes the termination of the ablative, when the question is made by *ubi*?

2. The Place WHITHER.

LI. When the question is made by *Quo?* Whither? the name of a town is put in the accusative; as,

*Venit Romam,**Profectus est Athenas,*

He came to Rome.

He went to Athens.

Obs. 1. We find the dative also used among the poets, but more seldom; as, *Cartagini nuncios mittam*, Horat.

Obs. 2. Names of towns are sometimes put in the accusative, after verbs of telling and giving, where motion to a place is implied; as, *Romam erat nuntiatum*, The report was carried to Rome, Liv. *Hec nuntiant domum Albani*, Id. *Messanam literas dedit*, Cic.

3. The Place WHENCE.

LII. When the question is made by *Unde?* Whence? or *Qua?* By or through what place? the name of a town is put in the ablative; as,

*Dilexerit Corinthus,
Laodiceam iter faciebat,*

He departed from Corinth.
He went through Laodicea.

When motion by or through a place is signified, the preposition *per* is commonly used ; as, *Per Thebas iter fecit, Nep.*

Domus and Rus.

LIII. *Domus* and *Rus* are construed the same way as names of towns ; as,

<i>Monet domi,</i>	He stays at home.
<i>Domum reveritur,</i>	He returns home.
<i>Domo arcessitus sum,</i>	I am called from home.
<i>Vivit rure, or more frequently ruri,</i>	He lives in the country.
<i>Redit rure,</i>	He is returned from the country.
<i>Abiit rur,</i>	He is gone to the country..

Obs. 1. *Humi, militiae, and belli*, are likewise construed in the genitive, as names of towns ; thus,

Domi et militiae, or belli, At home and abroad. Jacet bumi, He lies on the ground.

Obs. 2. When *Domus* is joined with an adjective, we commonly use a preposition ; as, *In domo paterna, not domi paterna* ; So, *Ad domum paternam : Ex domo paternâ*. Unless when it is joined with these possessives, *Mens, tuus, suus, noster, vester, regius, and alienus* ; as ; *Domi mea vixit, Cic. Regiam donum comportant, Sall.*

Obs. 3. When *domus* has another substantive in the genitive after it, the preposition is sometimes used and sometimes not ; as, *Depressus est domi, domo, or in domo Cæsaria.*

LIV. To names of countries, provinces, and all other places, except towns, the preposition is commonly added ; as,

When the question is made by

Ubi? Natus in Italia, in Latio, in urbe, &c.

Quo? Abiit in Italiam, in Latiū, in, or ad urbem, &c.

Unde? Rediit ex Italia, e Latio, ex urbe, &c.

Qua? Transit per Italiam, per Latiū, per urbem, &c.

Obs. 1. A preposition is often added to names of towns ; as, *In Roma for Romæ ; ad Romam, ex Roma, &c.*

Pero always governs the accusative as an active verb, without

without a preposition; as, *Petivit Egyplum*, He went to Egypt.

Obs. 2. Names of countries, provinces, &c., are sometimes construed without the preposition like names of towns; as, *Pompeius Cyprī visus est*, Cæs. *Cretæ jussit considerē Apollo*, Virg. *Non Lybie*, for *in Lybia*; *non antè Tyro*, for *Tyri*, Id. Æn. iv. 36. *Venit Sardiniam*, Cic. *Rome*, *Numidiaeque facinora ejus memorat*, Sall.

4. MEASURE and DISTANCE.

LV. Measure or distance is put in the accusative, and sometimes in the ablative; as,

<i>Murus est decem pedes altus,</i>	The wall is ten feet high.	
<i>Urbs distat triginta millia, or tri-</i>	}	The city is thirty miles distant;
<i>ginta millibus passuum,</i>		One day's journey.
<i>Iter, or itinere unusus diei,</i>		

Obs. 1. The accusative or ablative of measure is put after adjectives and verbs of dimension; as, *Longus*, *latus*, *crassus*, *profundus*, and *altus*: *Patet*, *porrigitur*, *eminet*, &c. The names of measure are *pes*, *cubitū*, *ulna*, *passus*, *digitus*, an inch; *palmus*, a span, an hand-breadth, &c. The accusative or ablative of distance is used only after verbs which express motion or distance; as, *Eo*, *curro*, *alsum*, *disto*, &c. The accusative is governed by *ad* or *per* understood, and the ablative by *a* or *ab*.

Obs. 2. When we express the measure of more things than one, we commonly use the distributive number; as, *Muri sunt decus pedes alti*, and sometimes *denūm pedum*, for *denorum*, in the genitive, *ad mensuram* being understood. But the genitive is only used to express the measure of things in the plural number.

Obs. 3. When we express the distance of a place where any thing is done, we commonly use the ablative; or the accusative with the preposition *ad*; as, *Six millibus passuum ab urbe* *confedit*, or *ad sex millia passuum*, Cæs. *Ad quintum milliarium v. milliare* *confedit*, Cic. *Ad quintum lapidem*, Nep.

Obs. 4. The excess or difference of measure and distance is put in the ablative; as,

Hoc lignum excedit illud digito. Toto vertice supra est, Virg. *Britannia longitudo ejus latitudinem ducentis quadraginta milliaribus superat.*

5. TIME.

LVI. When the question is made by *Quando?* When? time is put in the ablative; as,

Venit horā tertiā, He came at three o'clock.

¶ When the question is made by *Quamdiu?* How long? time is put in the accusative or ablative, but oftener in the accusative; as,

Mansit paucos dies, He staid a few days.

Sex mensibus absuit, He was away six months.

* Or thus, Time when is put in the ablative, time how long is put in the accusative.

Obs. 1. When we speak of any precise time, it is put in the ablative; but when continuance of time is expressed, it is put for the most part in the accusative.

Obs. 2. All the circumstances of time are often expressed with a preposition; as, *In præsentia*, or *in præsentib.* scil. tempore; *in vel ad præsens*; *Per decim annos*; *Surgunt de nocte*; *ad horam destinatam*; *Intra annum*; *Per idem tempus*, *ad Kalendas soluturos ait*, Suet. The preposition *ad* or *circa* is sometimes suppressed, as in these expressions, *hoc*, *illud*, *id*, *istibuc*, *atatis*, *temporis*, *horæ*, &c. for *hac* *atate*, *hoc* *tempore*, &c. And *ante* or some other word: as, *Annos natus unum* *et* *viginti*, sc. *ante*. *Siculis quotannis tributa conferunt*, sc. *tot annis*, *quot vel quotquos* *sunt*, Cic. *Prope diem*, sc. *ad*, *soon*; *Oppidum paucis diebus*, *quibus* *in* *ventum est*, *expugnatum*, sc. *post eos dies*, Cæs. *Ante diem tertium Kalendas Maias accepi tuas literas*, for *die tertio ante*, Cic. *Qui dies futurus est* *in ante diem octavum Kalendas Novembris*, Id. *Exante diem quintum Kal. Octob.* Liv. *Lacedæmonii septingentos jam annos amplius unis moribus et* *nunquam mutatis legibus vivunt*, sc. *quam per*, Cic. We find, *Primum stipendium meruit annorum decem septemque*, sc. *Atticus*; for *septemdecim annos natus*, seventeen years old, Nep.

Obs. 3. The adverb *ABHINC*, which is commonly used with respect to past time, is joined with the accusative or ablative without a preposition; as, *factum est abhinc biennio* or *biennium*, It was done two years ago. So likewise are *post* and *ante*; as, *Paucos post annos*: but here, *ea* or *id* may be understood.

COMPOUND SENTENCES.

A compound sentence is that which has more than one nominative, or one finite verb.

A compound sentence is made up of two or more simple sentences or *phrases*, and is commonly called a *Period*.

The

The parts of which a compound sentence consists, are called *Members* or *Clauses*.

In every compound sentence there are either several subjects, and one attribute, or several attributes, and one subject, or both several subjects and several attributes: That is, there are either several nominatives applied to the same verb, or several verbs applied to the same nominative, or both.

Every verb marks a judgement or attribute, and every attribute must have a subject. There must therefore be in every sentence or period as many prepositions, as there are verbs of a finite mode.

Sentences are compounded by means of relatives and conjunctions; as,

Happy is the man who loveth religion and practiseth virtue.

THE CONSTRUCTION OF RELATIVES.

LVII. The relative *Qui*, *Quæ*, *Quod*, agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; and is construed through all the cases, as the antecedent would be in its place; as,

Singular.	Plural.
<i>Vir qui,</i>	<i>Viri qui.</i>
<i>Femina quæ,</i>	<i>Feminae quæ.</i>
<i>Negotium quod,</i>	<i>Negotia quæ.</i>
<i>Ego qui scribo,</i>	<i>Nos qui scribimus.</i>
<i>Tu qui scribis,</i>	<i>Vos qui scribitis.</i>
<i>Vir qui scribit,</i>	<i>Viri qui scribunt.</i>
<i>Mulier quæ scribit,</i>	<i>Mulieres quæ scribunt.</i>
<i>Animal quod currit,</i>	<i>Animalia quæ currunt.</i>
<i>Vir quem vidi,</i>	<i>Viri quos vidi.</i>
<i>Mulier quam vidi,</i>	<i>Mulieres quas vidi.</i>
<i>Animal quod vidi,</i>	<i>Animalia quam vidi.</i>
<i>Vir cui paret,</i>	<i>Viri quibus paret.</i>
<i>Vir cui est similis,</i>	<i>Viri quibus est similis.</i>
<i>Vir a quo,</i>	<i>Viri a quibus.</i>
<i>Mulier ad quam,</i>	<i>Mulieres ad quas.</i>
<i>Vir cuius opus est,</i>	<i>Viri quorum opus est.</i>
<i>Vir quem miseror,</i>	
<i>cujus misereor vel miseresco,</i>	} The man whom I pity.
<i>cujus me miseret,</i>	
<i>cujus vel cuja interest, &c.</i>	whose interest it is, &c.

If no nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be the nominative to the verb.

But

But if a nominative come between the relative and the verb, the relative will be of that case, which the verb or noun following, or the preposition going before, use to govern.

Thus the construction of the relative requires an acquaintance with most of the foregoing rules of syntax, and may serve as an exercise on all of them.

Obs. 1. The relative must always have an antecedent expressed or understood, and therefore may be considered as an adjective placed between two cases of the same substantive, of which the one is always expressed, generally the former ; as,

Vir qui (vir) legit ; vir, quem (virum) amo : Sometimes the latter ; as, *Quam quisque nōrit artem, in hac (arte) se exerceat*, Cic. *Eunucum, quem dediſſi nobis, quas turbus dedit*, Ter. sc. *Eunucus*. Sometimes both cases are expressed ; as, *Erant omnino duo itinera, quibus itineribus domo exire poffent*, Cœf. Sometimes, though more rarely, both cases are omitted ; as, *Sunt, quas hoc genus minime juvat, for sunt homines, quos homines*, Hor.

Obs. 2. When the relative is placed between two substantives of different genders, it may agree in gender with either of them, though most commonly with the former ; as,

Vultus quem dixere cbaos, Ovid. *Eft locus in carcere, quod Tullianum appellatur*, Sall. *Animal, quem vocamus hominem*, Cic. *Cogito id quod res eft*, Ter. If a part of a sentence be the antecedent, the relative is always put in the neuter gender ; as, *Pompeius se affixit, quod mibi eft summo dolori*, scil. *Pompeium se affigere*, Cic. Sometimes the relative does not agree in gender with the antecedent, but with some synonymous word supplied ; as, *Scelus qui for scelitus*, Ter. *Abundantia earum rerum, qua mortales prima putant, scil. negotia*, Sall. *Vel virtus tua me vel vicinitas, quod ego in aliqua parte amicitiae puto, facit ut te moneram*, scil. *negotium*, Ter. *In omni Africa, qui agebant ; for in omnibus Afris*, Sallust. Jug. 89. *Non diffidentia futuri, qua imperavifſet, for quod*, Ib. 100.

Obs. 3. When the relative comes after two words of different persons, it agrees with the first or second person rather than the third ; as, *Ego sum vir, qui facio*, scarcely *facit*. In English it sometimes agrees with either ; as, *I am the man, who make, or maketh*. But when once the person of the relative is fixed, it ought to be continued through the rest of the sentence ; thus it is proper to say,

“ I am the man, who takes care of your interest,” but if I add, “ at the expence of my own,” it would be improper. It ought either to be, “ his own,” or “ who take.” In like manner, we may say, “ I thank you, who gave, who did love,” &c. But it is improper to say, “ I thank thee, who gave, who did love:” it should be, “ who gavest, who didst love.” In no part of English syntax are inaccuracies committed more frequently than in this. Beginners are particularly apt to fall into them, in turning Latin into English. The reason of it seems to be our applying *thou* or *you*, *thy* or *your*, promiscuously, to express the second person singular, whereas the Latins almost always expressed it by *tu* and *tuus*.

Obs. 4. The antecedent is often implied in a possessive adjective; as,

Omnes laudare fortunas meas, qui haberem gnatum tali ingenio præditum, Ter. Sometimes the antecedent must be drawn from the sense of the foregoing words; as, *Carne pluit, quem imbrem aves rapuisse feruntur*; i. e. *pluit imbrem carne, quem imbrem*, &c. Liv. *Si tempus est ullum jure hominis necandi, quæ multa sunt, scil. tempora*, Cic.

Obs. 5. The relative is sometimes entirely omitted; as, *Urbs antiqua fuit: Tyrii tenuere coloni, scil. quam or eam*, Virg. Or if once expressed, is afterwards omitted, so that it must be supplied in a different case; as, *Bocebus cum pedestibus, quos filius ejus adduxerat, neque in priore pugna adfuerant, Romanos invadunt; for quique in priore pugna non adfuerant*, Sall. In English the relative is often omitted, where in Latin it must be expressed; as, *The letter I wrote, for the letter which I wrote; The man I love, to wit, whom*. But this omission of the relative is generally improper, particularly in serious discourse.

Obs. 6. The case of the relative sometimes seems to depend on that of the antecedent; as, *Cum aliquid agas eorum, quorum consueisti, for quæ consueisti agere, or quorum aliquid agere consueisti*, Cic. *Restitue in quem me acceperisti locum, for in locum, in quo*, Ter. And. iv. 1. 58. But such examples rarely occur.

Obs. 7. The adjective pronouns *ille, ipse, iste, hic, is, and idem*, in their construction, resemble that of the relative *qui*; as, *Liber ejus, His or her book; Vita eorum, Their life, when applied to men; Vita earum, Their life, when applied to women*. By the improper use of these pronouns in English, the meaning of sentences is often rendered obscure.

Obs. 8. The interrogative or indefinite adjectives, *qualis, quantus, quotus*, &c. are also sometimes construed like relatives; as, *Facies est, qualem decet esse sororum*, Ovid. But these have commonly other adjectives either expressed or understood, which answer to them; as, *Tanta est multitudo, quantam urbem capere potest*: and are often applied to different substantives; as, *Quales sunt cives, talis est civitas*, Cic.

Obs.

Obs. 9. The relative *who* in English is applied only to persons, and *which* to things and irrational animals; but formerly *which* was likewise applied to persons; as, *Our Father which art in heaven*: and *whose*, the genitive of *who*, is also used sometimes, though perhaps improperly, for *of which*. *That* is used indifferently for persons and things. *What*, when not joined with a substantive, is only applied to things, and includes both the antecedent and the relative, being the same with *that which*, or *the thing which*; as, *This is what he wanted*; that is, *the thing which he wanted*.

Obs. 10. The Latin relative often cannot be translated literally into English, on account of the different idioms of the two languages; as, *Quod cum ita esset*, When that was so; not, Which when it was so, because then there would be two nominatives to the verb *was*, which is improper. Sometimes the accusative of the relative in Latin must be rendered by the nominative in English; as, *Quem dicunt me esse*? Who do they say that I am? not whom. *Quem dicunt adventare*? Who do they say is coming?

Obs. 11. As the relative is always connected with a different verb from the antecedent, it is usually construed with the subjunctive mode, unless when the meaning of the verb is expressed positively; as, *Audire cupio, quae legeris*, I want to hear, what you have read; that is, what perhaps or probably you may have read: *Audire cupio, quae legisti*, I want to hear, what you (actually or in fact) have read.

To the construction of the Relative may be subjoined that of the **ANSWER TO A QUESTION**.

The answer is commonly put in the same case with the question; as,

*Qui vocare? Geta, sc. vocor. Quid queris? Librum, sc. querere. Quod borā venisti? Sextā. Sometimes the construction is varied; as, Cujus est liber? *Meus*, not *mei*. Quanti emptus est? Decem assibus. Damnatusne ex furti? *Imo* alio crimen. Often the answer is made by other parts of speech than nouns; as, *Quid agitur?* *Statim*, sc. a me, a nobis. *Quis fecit?* *Nescio*: *Aiunt Petrum fecisse*. *Quomodo vales?* *Bene*, *male*. *Scriptissime?* *Scripti*, *ita*, *etiam*, *immo*, &c. *An vidisti?* *Non vidi*, *non*, *minime*, &c. *Obares tuam vestem detraxit tibi?* *Factum*. *Et cā est induitus?* *Factum*. *Ter*. Most of the Rules of Syntax may thus be exemplified in the form of questions and answers.*

THE CONSTRUCTION OF CONJUNCTIONS.

LVIII. The conjunctions *et*, *ac*, *atque*, *nec*, *neque*, *aut*, *vel*, and some others, couple like cases and modes; as,

Honora patrem et matrem,
Nec legit nec scribit,

Honour father and mother.
He neither reads nor writes.

Obs. 1. To this rule belong particularly the copulative and disjunctive conjunctions ; as likewise, *quam*, *nisi*, *præterquam*, *an* ; and also adverbs of likeness, as, *ceu*, *tanquam*, *quasi*, *ut*, &c. as,

Nullum præmium a vobis posito, præterquam bujus diei memoriam, Cic.
Gloria virtutem tanquam umbra sequitur, Id.

Obs. 2. These conjunctions properly connect the different members of a sentence together, and are hardly ever applied to single words, unless when some other word is understood. Hence if the construction of the sentence be varied, different cases and modes may be coupled together ; as,

Interest mea et recipublicæ ; *Conflitit aſſe et pluris* ; *Sive es Rome, ſive in Epiro* ; *Decius cum ſe devoveret, et in medium aciem irruerat*, Cic. *Vir magni ingenii ſummaque induſtria* ; *Neque per vim, neque inſidiis*, Sall. *Tecum habita, & nōris, quam ſit tibi curta ſuſſellex*, Perf.

Obs. 3. When *et*, *aut*, *vel*, *ſive*, or *nec*, are joined to different members of the same sentence, without connecting it particularly to any former sentence, the first *et* is rendered in English by *both* or *likewise* ; *aut* or *vel*, by *either* ; the first *ſive*, by *whether* ; and the first *nec*, by *neither* ; as,

Et legit, et ſcribit : *Io tum legit, tum ſcribit* ; or *cum legit, tum ſcribit*, He both reads and writes ; *Sive legit, ſive ſcribit*, Whether he reads or writes : *Facere quā vera, quā falsa* ; *Increpare quā conſules ipſos, quā exercitum*, to upbraid both the conſuls and the army, Liv.

LIX. Two or more substantives singular coupled by a conjunction, (as, *et*, *ac*, *atque*, &c.) have an adjective, verb, or relative plural ; as,

Petrus et Joannes, qui ſunt docti, Peter and John, who are learned.

Obs. 1. If the substantives be of different persons, the verb plural must agree with the first person rather than the ſecond, and with the ſecond rather than the third ; as, *Si tu et Tullia valetis, ego et Cicero valemus*, If you and Tullia are well, I and Cicero are well, Cic. In English the person ſpeaking usually puts himſelf laſt : thus, *You and I read* ; *Cicero and I are well* : but in Latin the person who ſpeaks is generally put first : thus, *Ego et tu legimus*.

Obs.

Obs. 2. If the substantives are of different genders, the adjective or relative plural must agree with the masculine rather than the feminine or neuter; as, *Pater et mater, qui sunt mortui*: but this is only applicable to beings which may have life. The person is sometimes implied; as, *Athenarum et Cratippi, ad quos, &c.* *Propter summam doctoris auctoritatem et urbis, quorum alter, &c.* Cic. Where *Athene* & *urbs* are put for the learned men of Athens. So in substantives; as, *Ad Ptolemaum Cleopatramque reges legati missi*, i. e. the king and queen, Liv.

Obs. 3. If the substantives signify things without life, the adjective or relative plural must be put in the neuter gender; as, *Divitiae, decus, gloria, in oculis sita sunt*, Sall.

The same holds, if any of the substantives signify a thing without life; because when we apply a quality or join an adjective to several substantives of different genders, we must reduce the substantives to some certain class, under which they may all be comprehended, that is, to what is called their *Genus*. Now the *Genus* or class which comprehends under it both persons and things, is that of substances or beings in general, which are neither masculine nor feminine. To express this the Latin grammarians use the word *Negotia*.

Obs. 4. The adjective or verb frequently agrees with the nearest substantive or nominative, and is understood to the rest; as,

Et ego et Ciceru meus flagitabit, Cic. *Sociis et rege recepto*, Virg. *Et ego in culpa sum, et tu*, Both I am in the fault, and you; or, *Et ego et tu et in culpa*, Both I and you are in the fault. *Nibil hic nisi carmina defant*; or *nihil hic deest nisi carmina*. *Omnia, quibus turbari solita erat civitas, domi discordia, foris bellum exortum*; *Duo millia et quadrageinta cens*, Liv. This construction is most usual, when the different substantives resemble one another in sense; as, *Mens, ratio, et consilium, in senibus est*. Understanding, reason, and prudence is in old men. *Quibus ipse meique ante Larem proprium vescor, for vescimur*, Horat.

Obs. 5. The plural is sometimes used after the preposition *cum* put for *et*; as,

Remo cum fratre Quirinus jura dabunt, Virg. The conjunction is frequently understood; as, *Dum etas, mctus, magister prohibebant*, Ter. *Frons, oculi, vultus sape mentiuntur*, Cic.

The different examples comprehended under this rule are commonly referred to the figure *Syllepsis*.

LX. The conjunctions *ut*, *quo*, *licet*, *ne*, *utinam*, and *dummodo*, are for the most part joined to the subjunctive mode; as,

Lego ut discam, I read that I may learn.
Utinam saperes, I wish you were wise.

Obs. 1. All interrogatives, when placed indefinitely, have after them the subjunctive mode.

Whether they be adjectives; as, *Quantus, qualis, quots, quotuplex, utor*; Pronouns, as, *quis & cujas*; Adverbs, as, *Ubi, quo, unde, qua, quorsum, quamdiu, quamduum, quampridem, quoties, cur, quare, quamobrem, num, utrum, quomodo, qui, ut, quam, quantopere*; or Conjunctions, as, *ne, an, anne, annon*; *Thus, Quis est? Who is it? Necio quis sit; I do not know who it is. An venturus est? Necio, dubito, an venturus sit. Viden' ut alto sit nive candidum Soracte? Hor.* But these words are sometimes joined with the indicative; as, *Scio quid ago, Plaut. Haud scio an amat, Ter. Vide avaritia quid facit, Id. Vide quam turpe est, Cic.*

In like manner the Relative *QUI* in a continued discourse; as, *Nibil est quod Deus efficiere non posset. Quis est, qui utilia fugiat? Cic.* Or when joined with *QUIPPE* or *UTPOTER*; *Negque Antonius procul aberat, utpote qui sequeretur, &c. Sall.* But these are sometimes, although more rarely, joined with the Indicative. So *Est qui, sunt qui, est quando v. ubi, &c.* are joined with the indicative or subjunctive.

NOTE, *Haud scio an rebus dixerim*, is the same with *dico, affirmo*; Cic.

So in English, *if, though, unless, except, whatever, whether, or; also so, before, ere, till, &c.* have after them the subjunctive mode; as, *If thou let this man go; If thou be the Son of God; Although my house be not so; Though he slay me; Though he fall, &c. Unless he wash his feet; I will not let thee go except thou bless me; Except it were given from above; Whether it were I or they; Whosoever he be; Whatever be our fate, &c.* So likewise *that*, expressing the motive or end; *lest, and that annexed to a command preceding; and if with but following it; as, Let him that standeth take heed lest he fall; Beware that thou bring not my son thither; If he do but touch the hills, they shall smoke.*

The nominative case following the verb sometimes supplies the place of *if, or though*; as, "Had he done this, he had escaped," i. e. if he had done this: "Charm he never so wisely," or rather, ever so wisely, i. e. *how wisely soever, for, though* he charm, &c.

Obs. 2. When any thing doubtful or contingent is signified, conjunctions and indefinites are usually construed with the subjunctive; but when a more absolute or determinate

minate sense is expressed, with the indicative mode; as, *If he is to do it*; *Although he was rich*, &c.

Obs. 3. **ETSI**, **TAMEISI**, and **TAMENETSI**, **QUANQUAM**, in the beginning of a sentence, have the indicative; but elsewhere, they also take the subjunctive: **ETIAMSI** and **QUAMVIS** commonly have the subjunctive, and **ut**, although, always has it. as, *Ut queras, non reperieris*. Cic. **QUONIAM**, **QUANDO**, **QUANDO-
QUIDEM**, are usually construed with the indicative; **SI**, **SIN**, **NE**, **NISI**, **SIQUIDEM**; **QUOD**, and **QUIA**, sometimes with the indicative, and sometimes with the subjunctive. **DUM**, for *dummodo*, provided, has always the subjunctive; as, *Oderint dum metuant*, Cic. And **QUIPPE**, for *nam*, always the indic. ; as, *Quippe veter satis*.

Obs. 4. Some conjunctions have their correspondent conjunctions belonging to them; so that, in the following member of the sentence, the latter answers to the former: thus, when *etsi*, *tameisti*, or *quamvis*, although, are used in the former member of a sentence, *tamen*, yet, or nevertheless, generally answers to them in the latter. In like manner, *Tam—quam*; *Alo* or *ita,—ut*: in English, *As,—as* or *so*; as, *Etsi sit liberalis, tamen non est profusus*, Although he be liberal, yet he is not profuse. *So prius* or *ante,—quam*. In some of these, however, we find the latter conjunction sometimes omitted, particularly in English.

Obs. 5. The conjunction *ut* is elegantly omitted after these verbs, *Volo*, *nolo malo*, *rogo*, *precor*, *censo*, *suadeo*, *licet*, *oportet*, *neesse est*, and the like; and likewise after these imperatives, *Sine*, *fac*, or *facito*; as, *Ducas volo hodie uxorem*; *Nolo mentiare*; *Fac cogites*, Ter. In like manner *ne* is commonly omitted after *cave*; as, *Cave facias*, Cic. *Post* is also sometimes understood; thus, *Die octavo, quam creatus erat*, Liv. iv. 47. *Icil. post*. And so in English, *See you do it*; *I beg you would come to me*, sc. that.

Obs. 6. *Ut* and *quod* are thus distinguished: *ut* denotes the final cause, and is commonly used with regard to something future; *quod* marks the efficient or impulsive cause, and is generally used concerning the event or thing done; as, *Lego ut discam*, I read that I may learn; *Gaudeo quod legi*, I am glad that or because I have read. *Ut* is likewise used after these intensive words, as they are called, *Adhuc*, *ita*, *sic*, *tam*, *talis*, *tantus*, *tot*, &c.

Obs. 7. After the verbs *timeo*, *vereor*, and the like, *ut* is taken in a negative sense for *ne non*, and *ne* in an affirmative sense; as,

Timeo ne faciat, I fear he will do it; *Timeo ut faciat*, I fear he will not
S 3

not do it. *Id paves ne ducas tu illam, tu artem ut ducas*, Tert. *Ut fisi vitalis, metus*, Hor. *Timeo ut frater vivat*, will not; — *ne frater moriatur*, will. But in some few examples they seem to have a contrary meaning.

The CONSTRUCTION of COMPARATIVES.

LXI. The comparative degree governs the ablative; as,

Dulcior melle sweeter than honey. *Præstantior auro*, better than gold.

Obs. 1. The sign of the ablative in English is *than*. The positive with the adverb *magis*, likewise governs the ablative; as, *Magis dilecta luce*, Virg.

The ablative is here governed by the preposition *præ* understood, which is sometimes expressed; as, *Fortior fræ ceteris*. We find the comparative also construed with other prepositions; as, *Immanior ante omnes*, Virg.

Obs. 2. The comparative degree may likewise be construed with the conjunction *quam*, and then instead of the ablative, the noun is to be put in whatever case the sense requires; as,

Dulcior quam mel, scil. *q. f.* *Amo te magis quam illum*, I love you more than him, that is, *quam amo illum*, than I love him. *Amo te magis quam ille*, I love you more than he, i. e. *quam ille amat*, than he loves. *Plus datur a me quam illo*, sc. *ab*.

Obs. 3. The conjunction *quam* is often elegantly suppressed after *amplius* and *plus*; as,

Vulnerantur amplius sexenti, Cæl. scil. *quam*. *Plus quingentos colaphos infregit mibi*, He has laid on me more than five hundred blows, Tert. *Castra ab urbe baud plus quinque millia passuum locant*, sc. *quam*, Liv.

Quam is sometimes elegantly placed between two comparatives; as,

Triumphus dolorior quam gratior, Liv. Or the prep. *pro* is added; as, *Prælium atrocius, quam pro numero pugnantium editur*, Liv.

The comparative is sometimes joined with these ablatives, *opinione*, *spe*, *æquo*, *jusfo*, *dicto*; as,

Credibili, opinione major, Cic. *Credibili fortior*, Ovid. Fast. iii. 618. *Gravius æquo*, Sall. *Dicto citius*, Virg. *Majora credibili tulimus*, Liv. They are often understood; as, *Liberius vivebat*, sc. *jusfo*, too freely, Nepos.

Nihil is sometimes elegantly used for *nemo* or *nullus*; as,

Nihil vidi quidquam latius, for *neminem*, Tert. *Crasfo nihil perfectius*, Cic. *Asperius nihil est humili*, *cum surgit in altum*. So *quid nobis laboris* *estius*,

658, for *quis*, &c. Cic. We say, *inferior patre nulla re, or quam patre*. The comparative is sometimes repeated or joined with an adverb; as, *Magis magisque, plus plusque, minus minusque, carior cariorque; Quotidie plus, nunc magis, semper candidior candidiorque. &c.*

Obs. 4. In English, the relative *who* after *than* is always put in the accusative case; as, *He is a man, than whom* there is none better: but here if we substitute a pronoun in place of the relative, the pronoun must be put in the nominative; as, *there is none better than he, not, than him*. In like manner, it is improper to say, *He is better than me, than us, than her, than them, &c.* It should be, *He is better than I, than we, than she, than they, &c.* the auxiliary verb being understood to each of them.

Obs. 5. The relation of equality or sameness is likewise expressed in English by conjunctions; as, *Est tam doctus quam ego, He is as learned as I.* *Animus erga te idem est ac fuit.* *Ac* and *atque* are sometimes, though more rarely, used after comparatives; as, *Nil est magis verum atque hoc, Ter.*

Obs. 6. The excess or defect of measure is put in the ablative after comparatives; and the sign in English is *by*, expressed or understood; (*or more shortly*, the difference of measure is put in the ablative); as,

Est decem digitis altior quam frater, He is ten inches taller than his brother, or by ten inches. *Altero tanto major est fratre, i. e. duplo major, He is as big again as his brother, or twice as big.* *Sesquipedale minor, a foot and a half less; Altero tanto, aut sesquimajor, as big as gain, or a half bigger, Cic.* *Ter tanto peior est; Bis tanto amici sunt inter se, quam prius, Plaut.* *Quinqüies tanto amplius, quam quantum licetum sit civitatibus, imperavit, five times more, Cic.* To this may be added many other ablatives, which are joined with the comparative, to increase its force; as, *Tanto, quanto, quo, eo, hoc, multo, paulo, nimio, &c.*; thus, *Quo plus habent, eo plus cupiunt, The more they have, the more they desire.* *Quanta melior, tanto felicior, The better, the happier.* *Quaque minor spes est, hoc magis ille cupit, Ovid. Fast. ii. 766.* We frequently find *multo, tanto, quanto*, also joined with superlatives; *Multo pulcherrimam eam haberemus, Sall. Multoque id maximum fuit, Liv.*

THE ABLATIVE ABSOLUTE.

LXII. A Substantive and a participle are put in the ablative, when their case depends on no other word; as,

Sole oriente, fugiunt tenebrae, { The sun rising, or while the sun riseth,
darkness flies away.
Opere peracto, ludemus, { Our work being finished, or when our
work is finished, we will play.

So, *Dominante libidine, temperantia nullus est locus;* *Nihil amicitia praestabilitius est, excepta virtute;* *Oppressa libertate patriæ, nihil est quod speramus amplius;* *Nobilium vitæ visuque mutato, mores mutari civitatum puto,* Cic. *Parumper silentium et quies fuit, nec Etruscia, nisi cogerentur, pugnam initur;* *et dictatore arcem Romanam respectante, ut ab auguribus, simul aves rite admisissent, ex composito tolleretur signum,* Liv. *Bellice, depositis clypeo paulisper et hastâ, Mars ades,* Ovid. Fast. iii. 1.

Obs. 1. This ablative is called *Absolute*, because it does not depend upon any other word in the sentence.

For if the substantive with which the participle is joined, be either the nominative to some following verb, or be governed by any word going before, then this rule does not take place: the ablative absolute is never used, unless when different persons or things are spoken of: as, *Milites, hostibus vicitis, redierunt,* The soldiers, having conquered the enemy, returned. *Hostibus vicitis,* may be rendered in English several different ways, according to the meaning of the sentence with which it is joined; thus, 1. *The enemy conquered, or being conquered;* 2. *When or after the enemy is or was conquered;* 3. *By conquering the enemy;* 4. *Upon the defeat of the enemy,* &c.

Obs. 2. The perfect participles of deponent verbs are not used in the ablative absolute; as, *Cicero locutus hac confedit,* never *his locutis.* The participles of common verbs may either agree in case with the substantive before them, like the participles of deponent verbs, or may be put in the ablative absolute, like the participles of passive verbs; as, *Romani adepti libertatem floruerunt;* or *Romani, libertate adeptâ, floruerunt.* But as the participles of common verbs are seldom taken in a passive sense, we therefore find them rarely used in the ablative absolute.

Obs. 3. The participle *existente* or *existentibus* is frequently understood; as, *Cæsare duce, scil. existente. His consulibus, scil. existentibus. Invitâ Minervâ, scil. existente;* against the grain; *Craffa Minervâ, without learning,* Hor. *Magistrâ ac duce naturâ;* *vivis fratribus;* *te bortatore;* *Cæsare impulsore,* &c. Sometimes the substantive must be supplied; as, *Nondum comperto, quam regionem hostes petiissent,* i. e. *cum nondum compertum esset,* Liv. *Tum de-*
mum

mum palam factō, sc. negotio, Id. *Excepto quod non simul effes, cetera latus*, Hor. *Parto quod avebas*, Id. In such examples *negotio* must be understood, or the rest of the sentence considered as the substantive, which perhaps is more proper. Thus we find a verb supply the place of a substantive; as, *Vale dīto*, having said farewell, Ovid.

Obs. 4. We sometimes find a Substantive plural joined with a participle singular; as, *Nobis præsente*, Plaut. *Absente nobis*, Ter. We also find the ablative absolute, when it refers to the same person with the nominative to the verb; as, *Me duse ad hunc voti finem, me milite, veni*, Ovid. Amor. ii. 12. 12. *Laetus fecit se consule faslos*, Lucan. v. 384. *Populo spectante fieri credam, quiequid me conscient faciam*, Senec. de Vit. Beat. c. 20. But examples of this construction rarely occur.

Obs. 5. The ablative called absolute is governed by some preposition understood; as, *a, ab, cum, sub, or in*. We find the preposition sometimes expressed; as, *Cum diis juvantibus*, Liv. The nominative likewise seems sometimes to be used absolutely; as, *Perniciosa libidine paulisper usus, infirmitas naturæ accusatur*, Sallust. Jug. 1.

Obs. 6. The ablative absolute may be rendered several different ways; thus, *Superbo regnante*, is the same with *cum, dum, or quando Superbus regnabat*. *Opere peracto*, is the same with *Post opus peractum*, or *Cum opus est peractum*. The present participle, when used in the ablative absolute, commonly ends in *e*.

Obs. 7. When a substantive is joined with a participle in English independently on the rest of the sentence, it is expressed in the nominative; as, *Illo descendente*, He descending. But this manner of speech is seldom used except in poetry.

APPENDIX to SYNTAX.

I. Various Signification and Construction of VERBS.

[The verbs are here placed in the same order as in Etymology.]

FIRST CONJUGATION.

A SPIRARE ad gloriam & laudem, *to aim at*; in curiam, *to desire to be admitted*, Cic.; equis Achillis, *to wish for*; labori ejus, *to favour*; amoreni cistis, *sc. ei.* *to infuse*, Virg.

DESPERARE sibi, *de se*; salutem, *saluti*, *de salute*, *to despair of*.

LEGARE aliquem ad alium, *to send as an ambassador*; aliquem sibi, *to make his lieutenant*; pecuniam alicui, i. e. testamento relinquere. *N. B.* Publice legantur homines; qui inde legati dicuntur: privatum allegantur; unde allegati.

DELEGARE ~~de~~ alienum fratri, *to leave him to pay*; laborem alteri, *to lay upon*; aliquid ad aliquem, i. e. in cum transferre, Cic.

LEVARE metum ejus & ei, *sc. metu*, *to ease*.

MUTARE locum, solum, *to be banished*; aliquid aliqua re; bellum pro pace, *to exchange*; vestem, i. e. sordidam togam induere, Liv. vestem cum aliquo, Ter. fidem, *to break*.

OBNUNCIARE comitiis vel concilio, i. e. comitia auspiciis impedire, *to hinder*, by telling bad omens, and repeating these words ALIO DIE; Consuli v. magistratus; i. e. prohibere ne cum populo agat, Cic.

PRONUNCIARE pecuniam pro reo, *to promise*; aliquid edicto, *to order*; sententias, *to sum up the opinions of the senators*, Cic.

RENUNCIARE aliquid; de re, alicui, ad aliquem, *to tell*; consullem, *to declare*, *to name*; vitæ, a-micitiam ei, *to give up*; muneri, hospitio, *to refuse*; repudium ei, *to divorce*.

OCUPARE aliquem, *to seize*; se in aliquo negotio, *to be employed*; se ad negotium, *Plaut.* pecuniam alicui v. apud aliquem grandi fænore, *to give at interest*, Cic. occupat facere bellum, transire in agrum hostium, begini fieri, *anticipate*, Liv.

PREOCCUPARE saltum, portas Cilicis, *to seize before hand*, Nep.

PRÆJUDICARE aliquem, *to condemn one from the precedent of a former sentence or trial*, Cic.

ROGARE aliquem id, & de ea re; id ab eo; salutem, & pro salute, Cic. legem, *to propose*; hence, **UTI ROGAS**, dicere, *to pass it*; militem sacramento, *to administer the military oath*; Roget quis? *if any one should ask*. Comitia rogan-dis consulibus, *for electing*, Liv.

ABROGARE legem, *seldom legi*, *to disannul a law*, *to repeal*, or *to change in part*; multam, *to take off a fine*; imperium ei, *to take from*.

ADROGARE id sibi, *to claim*.

DEROGARE aliquid legi, v. de lege, *to repeal or take away some clause of a law*; lex derogatur, Cic. fidem ei, v. de fide ejus, *to burst one's credit*; ex sequitate; sibi, alicui, *to derogate or take from*.

EROGARE pecuniam in classem, in vester, *to lay out money on.*

IRROGARE multam ei, *to impose.*

ORROGARE legi, *to enact a new law contrary to an old.*

PROROGARE imperium, provinciam alicui, *to prolong;* diem ci ad solvendum, *to put off.*

SUBROGARE aliquem in locum alterius, *to substitute;* legi, *to add a new clause, or to put one in place of another.*

SPECTARE orientem, ad orientem, *to look towards;* aliquem ex censu, animum alicujus ex suo, *to judge of.*

SUPERARE hostes, *to overcome;* montes, *to pass;* superat pars cæpti, sc. operis, *remains;* Capti, superavimus urbi, *survived,* Virg.

TEMPERARE iras, ventos, *to moderate;* orbem, *to rule;* mihi, sibi, *to restrain, to forbear;* alicui, *to spare;* cædibus, a lacrymis, *to abstain from.*

VACARE curâ, culpâ, morbô, munere militiæ, &c. a labore, *to be free from;* animo, sc. in, *to be at ease;* philosophiæ, in v. ad rem, *to apply to;* vacat locus, *is empty;* si vacas, v. vacat tibi, *if you are at leisure.*

VINDICARE mortem ejus, *to revenge;* ab interitu, exercitum fame, *to free;* id sibi, & ad se, *to claim;* libertatem ejus, *to defend;* se in libertatem, *to set at liberty.*

DARE animam, *to die;* animos, *to encourage;* manus, *to yield;* manum ei, *to shake hands,* Plaut. jura, *to prescribe laws;* literas alicui ad aliquem, *to give one a letter to carry to another;* terga, fugam, v. se in fugam, in pedes, *to fly;* hostes in fugam, *to put to flight;* operam, *to endeavour;* operam philosophiæ, literis, palæstræ, *to apply to;* operam honoribus, *to seek,* Nep. veniam ei, *to grant his request,* Ter.

gemitus, lacrymas, amplexus, cantus, ruinam, fidem, iusjurandum, &c. to groan, weep, embrace, sing, fall, &c. cognitores honestos, to give good vouchers for one's character, Cic. aliquid mutuum v. utendum, to lend; pecuniam séniori, & collocare, to place at interest; se alicui ad docendum, Cic. multum suo ingenio, to think much of: se ad aliquid, to apply to; se auctoritati sénatus, to yield; fabulam, scripta foras, to publish; Cic. effectum, to perform; senatum, to give a bearing of the senate; actionem, to grant leave to prosecute; præcipitem, to tumble headlong; aliquid paternum, to act like one's father; lectos faciendos, to bespeak, Ter. litem secundum aliquem, to determine a law-suit in favour of one; aliquem exitio, morti, neci, letho, rarely lethum alicui, to kill; aliquid alicui dono v. muneri, to make a present; criminis, vitio, laudi, to accuse, blame, praise; pœnas, to suffer; nomen militiæ, v. in militiam, to lift one's self to be a soldier; se alicui, to be familiar with, Ter. Da te mihi hodie, bediredded by me, Id. aures, to listen; obliuioni, to forget; civitatem ei, to make one free of the city; dicta, to speak, verba alicui, to impose on, to cheat; se in viam, to enter on a journey; viam ci, to give place; ius gratiæ, to sacrifice justice to interest; se turpiter, to make a shabby appearance; fundum, vel domum alicui, mancipio, to convey the property of, to warrant the title to; Vitaque mancipio nulli datur, omnibus usu, Lucre. servos in quæstionem, to give up slaves to be tortured; primas, secundas, &c. (sc. partes) actioni, to ascribe every thing to delivery. Cic. Dat ei bibere, Ter. comes diffundere ventis, to let them blow loose, Virg. Da mihi v. nobis,

tell us, Cic. Ut res dant se, as matters go; solerteri dabo, I'll warrant him expert, Ter.

SATISDARE judicatum solvi, to give security that what the judge has determined shall be paid, Cic.

STARE contra aliquem; ab, cum, v. pro aliquo, to side with, to be of the same party; judicio ejus, to follow; in sententia; pacto, conditionibus, conventis, to stand to, to make good an agreement; re judicata, to keep to what has been determined; stare v. constare animo, to be in his senses: Non stat per me quo minus pecunia solvatur, It is not owing to me that, Cic. multorum sanguine ea Pænis victoria stetit, cost. Liv. Mihi stat alere mortuum definere, I am resolved, Nep.

ADSTARE mensæ, to stand by; ad mensam, in conspectu.

CONSTARE ex multis rebus, animo et corpore, to consist of; secum, to be consistent with, Cic. liber constitit v. stetit mili duobus assibus, cost me; non constat ei color, his colour comes and goes; atri ratio constat, the sum is right. Constat, imperf. It is evident, certain, or agreed on; mihi, inter omnes, de hac re.

EXTARE aquis, to be above, Ovid. ad memoriam posteritatis, to remain, Cic. sepulchra extant, Liv.

INSTARE victis, to press on the vanquished; rectam viam, to be in

the right way; currum Marti, to make speedily, Virg.; instat factum, infests that it was done, Ter.

OBSTARE ci, to hinder.

PRÆSTARE multa, to perform; alicui, v. aliquem virtute, to excel; silentium ei, to give; auxilium, to grant, Juv. impensas, to defray; iter tutum, to procure; se incolorem, to preserve; se virum, i. e. præbere, exhibere; amorem, v. benevolentiam alicui, to give; culpam v. damnationem, i. e. in se transferte, to take on one's self; præstabo de me; cum factum, I will be answerable. In iis rebus repetendis, quæ mancipi sunt, is periculum judicii præstare debet, qui se nexus obligavit, In recovering, or in an action to recover those things which are transferable, the seller ought to take upon himself the hazard of a trial, Cic. N. B. Those things were called, Res mancipi, (contracted for mancipii, i. e. quas emptor manu caperet,) the property of which might be transferred from one Roman citizen to another; as, houses, lands, slaves, &c.

Præstat, imperf. i. e. it is better: Præsto esse alicui, adv. to be present, to assist; Libri prostant veniales, the books are exposed to sale.

ACCUBARE alicui in convivio, to recline near. apud aliquem. Incubare ovis & ova, to sit upon; stratis & super strata.

SECOND CONJUGATION.

Verbs in BEO.

HABERE spem, febrim, finem, bonum exitum, tempus, confutudinem, voluntatem nocendi, opus in manibus, v. inter manus, to have; gratiam & gratum, to have a grateful sense of a favour; judicium, to hold a trial; honorem ei, to honour; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter.: fidem alicui, to trust or be-

lieve; curam de v. pro eo; rationem alicujus, to pay regard to, to allow one to stand candidate for an office; rationem v. rem cum aliquo, to have business with; satis, to be satisfied; orationem, concionem ad populum, to make a speech; aliquem odio, in odium, to hate; ludibrio, to mock; id religioni, to have

have a scruple about it: So, habere aliquid quæstui, honori, prædæ, voluptati, &c. sc. sibi; se bene v. graviter, to be well or ill; se parcè & duriter, to live, Ter. aliquid compertum, cognitum, perspectum, exploratum, certum v. pro certo, to know for certain; aliquem contemptui, despiciatui, -um, v. in despiciatum, to despise; excusatum, to excuse; fusque deque, to scorn, to slight; Ut res se habet, stands, is; rebus ita se habentibus, in this state of affairs; Hæc habeo, v. habui dicere de, &c. Non habeo necesse scribere, quid sim facturus, Cic. Habe tibi tuas res, a form of divorce.

ADHIBERE diligentiam; celeritatem, vim, severitatem in aliquem, to use; in convivium v. consilium, to admit; remedium vulneri, curationem morbo, to apply; vinum ægrotis, to give; aures verbis, to bear with taste; cultum & preces diis, to offer, Cic. Exhibere molestiam alicui, to cause trouble.

JUBERE legem, to vote for, to pass; regem, to abuse; aliquem salvere, to wish one health; esse bono animo, &c. Uxorem suas res sibi habere jussit, divorced, Cic.

DOCEO te hanc rem, & de hac re. Doctus, adj. utriusque lingue; Latinis & Græcis literis; Latino & Græco; ad militiam.

MISCERE aliquid alicui, cum aliquo, ad aliquid; vinum aqua, Plin. cuncta sanguine, Tacit. sacra profanis, Hor. humana divinis, Liv.

VIDERE rem v. de re; sibi, de isthac, to take care of, Ter. plus, to be more wise, Cic. De hoc tu videris, consider, be answerable for, Cic. Videor videre, methinks I see; visus sum audire, methought I heard; mihi visus est dicere, be seemed; Quid tibi videtur? What

think you? Si tibi videtur, if you please; videtur fecisse, guilty, &c.

INVIDERE honorem ei, v. honori ejus; ei vel eum, to envy.

PROVIDERE & prospicere id, to foresee; ei, to provide for; in posterum: rei frumentariæ, rem v. de re.

SEDERE ad dextram ejus; in equo, to ride; toga bene sedet, fits; Sedet hoc animo, is fixed, Virg.

ASSIDERE ei; Adherbalem, to sit by, Sal. Affidet insano, is near or like to, Hor.

DISSIDERE cum aliquo, to disagree.

INSIDERE equo, & in equo, to sit upon; locum, Liv. in animo; memoriâ, to be fixed.

PRÆSIDERE urbi, imperio, to command, Cic. exercitum, Italiam, Tacit.

SUPERSEDERE labore, litibus; pugnæ, loqui, to forbear, to give over.

PENDERE promissis, ab v. ex aliquo, to depend; de, ex, ab & in arbore; Opera pendent interrupta, Virg.

IMPENDET malum nobis, nos, v. in nos, threatens.

SPONDERE & despondere fidiam alicui, to betroth.

DESPONDERE domum alicujus sibi, to be sure of, Cic. animo & -is, to promise, to hope; animum & -os, to despair; Liv.

RESPONDERE ei, literis ejus, his, ad hæc, ad nomen, to answer; votis ejus, to satisfy his wishes; ad spem.

SUADERE ei pacem, v. de pace; legem, to speak in favour of.

DOLERE casum ejus; de, ab, ex, in, pro re; dolet mihi cor, v. hoc dolet cordi meo; caput dolet a sole.

VALERE gratiâ apud aliquem, to be in favour with one, lex valet, is in force; quid verbum valeat,

T non

non video, *signifies*; valet decem talenta, or *sterner* talentis, *is worth*; vale vel valeas, *farewell*; or *ironically*, *array with you*.

EMINERE aliqua re vel in aliqua re, inter omnes; super cætera, Liv. super utrumque. Hor. *to be eminent, to excel*; ex aqua, v. aquam, super undas, *to be above*; imminere alicui, *to hang over, to threaten*; in occasionem, exitio aliquus, *to seek, to wateb for*.

TENERE promissum; se domi, oppido, castris, sc. in, *to keep*; modum, ordinem, *to observe*; rem, dicta, lectionem, *to understand, to remember*; linguam, but not suam, silentium, se in silentio, *to be silent*; ora, *to keep the countenance fixed*; secundum locum imperii, *to hold*; Nep. *jura civium, to enjoy*, Cic. cau-sam, *to gain*; mare, *to be in the open sea, to hold, to be master of*; terram, portum, metam, montes, *to reach*; risum, lachrymas, *to restrain*; se ab accusando, quin accuset, Cic. Ventus tenet, *blows*; teneri legibus, *jurejurando, &c. to be bound by*; leges tenent eum, *bind*; teneri in manifesto furto, *to be seized*; tenet fama, *prevails*.

ABSTINERE maledictis, v. a, *to abstain*; publico, *to live retired*, Tacit. animum a scelere, *scrum* a cibo, *to keep from*; jus belli ab aliquo, *not to treat rigorously*, Liv. Id ad me, ad religionem, &c. pertinet, *concerns me*; crimen ad te pertinet, Cic. But it is not proper to say, Liber ad me, ad fratem pertinet, *for meus, fratrius est, belongs to*; venæ ad vel in omnes corporis partes pertinent, *reach*.

SUSTINERE personam judicis, nomen consulatus, *to bear the character*; assensionem, v. se ab assenti, *to with-hold assent*; rem in noctem, *to defer*.

MANERE apud aliquem; in castris; ad urbem; in urbe; proposito, sententiā, in sententia, statu suo, &c. adventum hostium, to expell, Liv. promissis, *to stand to, to keep*, Virg. Omnes una manet nox, *awaits*, Horat. Manent ingenia senibus, modo permaneat studium & industria, Cic. Mūnera vobis certa manent, Virg.

MERERE laudem; bene, male de aliquo; stipendia, equo, pedibus, *to servé as a soldier*; fustarium, *to be beaten to death*.

HÆRERE lateri; tergis v. in terga hostium, Liv. curru, Virg. alicui in visceribus, Cic. Hæret mihi aqua, *I am in doubt*; Vide; ne hæreas, *lest you be at a loss*, Cic.

ADHÆRERE & adhærescere iustitiae; ad turrim; in me. Inhæ-re rei, & in re.

MOVERE castra, *to decamp*; bella, to raise; aliquem tribu, *to remove a Roman citizen from a more honourable to a less honourable tribe*; e senatu, *to degrade a senator*; risum vel jocum alicui, *to cause laughter*; stomachum ei, *to trouble*, Cic.

FAVETE ore, vel linguis, sc. mihi, *attend in silence, or abstain from words of a bad omen*.

CAVERE aliquid, aliquem, vel ab aliquo, *to guard against, to avoid*; alicui, *to provide for, to advise as a lawyer does his client*; aliquid alicui, Cic. sibi ab aliquo vel per aliquem de re aliqua, *to get security on*; mihi prædibus & chirographo cautum est, *I have got security by bail and bond*; veteranis cautum esse volumus, Cic. Cave facias, sc. ne, *see you don't do it*; mihi ca-vendum, *vel mea cautio est, I must take care*.

CONNIVERE ad fulgura, Suet. to *wink*; in hominum sceleribus, to *take no notice of*, Cic.

THIRD CONJUGATION.

Verbs in *IO.*

FACERE initium, finem, pausam, finem vitæ; pacem, amicitiam; testamentum, nomen, foſſam, pontem in flumine, in Tiberim, to make; divertium cum uxore, Cic. bellum regi, Nep. ſe hilarem, to ſbew, Ter. ſe divitem, miſerum, pauperem, to pretend, Cic. æs alienum, v. contrahere, conflare, to contract debt; animos, to encourage; dampnum, detrimentum, jacturam, to lose; naufragium, to ſuffer; ſumptum, to ſpend; gratum alicui, to oblige; gratiam delicti, to pardon a fault; gratiam legis, to dispence with; iuſta vel funus alicui, to perform one's funeral rites; rem, to make an estate; pecuniam, divitias ex metallis; foedus, v. iniire, icere, ferire, percutere, jungere, ſancire, firmare, &c. to make a league; moram alicui, to delay; verba, to ſpeak; audiētiam ſibi, Cic. negotium, et faciētare, to trouble; aliquid miſſum, to poſt over; aliquem miſſum, to diſmiss or excuse; ad aliquid, rarely alicui, to be fit or useful; ratum, to ratify; planum, to explain; palam ſuis, to make known; Nep. ſtipendium pedibus, v. equo, & merere, to ſerue in the army; ſacra, ſacrificium, v. rem diuinam, to ſacrifice; reum, to impeach; fabulam, carmen, verſus, &c. to write a play, &c. copiam confiſlii ei, to offer advice; copiam vel potestate dicendi legatis, to grant leave; fidem, to procure or give credit; periculum, to make trial; potestatem ſui, to expose himſelf, Nep. aliquem loquenterim, v. loqui, to ſuppoſe or repreſent, Cic. piraticam, ſc. rem, to be a pirate; argentiām, medicinam, mercaturam, &c. to be an

uſurer, a physician, &c. verſuram, to control a new debt to diſcharge an old one, to borro w money at great intereſt, Cic. cum v. ab aliquo, to ſue with; contra v. aduersus, to oppoſe; nomen v. nomina, to borro w money, and also, to ſettle accounts, i. e. rationes acceptarum, ſc. pecuniarum & expenſarum inter ſe conſerre; nomen in litura, to write it where ſomething was before; Cic. pedem, v. pedes, to trim the ſails, Virg. Fac ita eſſe, ſuppoſe it is ſo; obviuſ fieri alicui, to meet; ne longum, v. longa faciam, ut brevo faciam, not to be tedious; equus non facit, will not move, Cic. Fac velle, ſc. me, ſuppoſe me to be willing, Virg. Æn. iv. 540.

ADFICERE aliquem laude, honore, præmio, & ignominia, penā, morte, leto, &c. to praise, honour, &c. to diſgrace, puniſh, &c. Affectus ætate, morbo, weakened.

CONFICERE bellum, to finis; orationes, to compose, Nep. cibum, to ebe w; argentum, to raise, to get; alſo to ſpend, Cic.; cum aliquo de re, to conclude a bargain; exercitus hostium, to destroy; alterum Curiatium, to kill, Liv. Qui ſtipendiis confeſſis erant, i. e. emeriti, bad ſerved out their time, Cic.

DEFICERE animo, to faint; ab aliquo, to revolt; tempus deficit mihi vel me, fails: Defici viribus, ratione, &c. to be deprived of.

INFICERE ſe vitro, to ſtain: Infectus, part. ſtained; infectus, adj. not done. Inficior, -atus, -ari, to deny.

OFFICERE alicui, to binder or burt; Diogeni apricauti, to ſtand betwixt him and the ſun; auribus, viſui, to ſtop or obſtruct; Umbra ter- ræ ſoli officiens noctem efficit, Cic.

PRÆFICERE aliquem exercitui, to set over. Proficere alicui, to profit, to do good; in philosophia, & progressus facere, to make progress.

REFICEREMUROS, tempa, aedes, rates, res, to repair; animum, vires, saucios, se, menta, to refresh, to recover.

SUFFICERE laboribus, ictibus, to be able to bear; arma v. vires alicui, to afford; Valerius in locum Collatini suffectus est, was substituted, Liv. Filius patri suffectus, Tacit. Oculos suffecti sanguine & igne, sc. secundum, having their eyes red and inflamed, Virg.

SATISFACERE alicui, in v. de aliqua re, to satisfy; fidei, promissio, to perform.

JACERE aliquem in præceps; contumelias in eum, to throw; fundamenta, & ponere, to lay; talos, to play at dice; anchoram, to cast.

ADJICERE, to add; oculos alicui rei, to covet; animum studiis, to apply; sacerdotibus creandis, Liv.

CONJICERE se in pedes, v. fugam, to fly; cætera, to conjecture.

INJICERE manus ei, to lay on: spem, ardorem, suspicionem, pavorem, alicui, to inspire; admirationem sui cuivis ipso aspectu, Nep.

OcjiCERE se hostibus, in v. ad omnes casus, to oppose or expose: crimen ei, to lay to one's charge.

REJICERE tela in huius, to throw back; judices, mala, to reject; rem ad senatum, Roinam, to refer; rem ad Idus Febr. to delay, Cic.

SUBJICERE ova gallinæ, to set on hen; se imperio alicujus, to submit; testamenta, to forge; testes, to suborn; partes v. species generibus, ex quibus emanant, to put or class under; aliquid ei, to suggest: libellum ei, i. e. in manus

dare: odio civium, to expose: bona Pomperii v. fortunas hastæ, vel voci & sub voce præconis, to expose to public sale, Cic. sub hasta venire, to be sold, Liv.

TRAJICERE copias v. exercitum, fluvium, Hellespontum, vel trans fluvium, to transport: Marius cum parva navicula in Africam trajectus est, passed or sailed over. Trajectus ferro, pierced.

CAPERE conjecturam, consilium, dolorem, fugam, specimen, spem, fedem, &c. to guess, consult, grieve, fly, essay, hope, fit, &c. augurium, v. auspicium, & agere, to take an omen: exemplum de aliquo: locum castris: terram, to alight: insulam, summa, sc. loca, to reach: spolia ex nobilitate, to gain, Sall. de republica nihil præter gloriam, Nep. magistratum, to receive or enjoy: virginem Vestalem, to abuse: amentiam, spiritus, superbiam alicujus, to bear, to contain: aliquem, consilio, perfidia, to catch: nec te Troja capit, Virg. Hædes vix nos capiunt, the house hardly contains us: Altero oculo capit, blind of one eye: capitur locis, he is delighted with, Virg.

ACCIPERE pecuniam, vulnus, cladem, injuriam ab aliquo, to receive: Orbis terrarum divitias accipere nolo pro patriæ caritate, Nep. binas literas eodem exemplo, two copies of the same letter, Cic. clamorem, de Socrate, to bear: id in bonam partem, to take in good part, to understand in a good sense: omnia ad contumeliam, a-liter, aliorum ac, atque, Ter. rudem, v. rude donari, to be discharged as a gladiator; aliquem bene v. male, to treat: cum male acceptum in Medium hiematum coagit redire, roughly handled, Nep. rogationem; to approve the bill 2

bill; *nomen*, i. e. *ad petendum admittere*, to allow to stand candidate; *omen*, to esteem good; *satisfactiōnem v. excusatiōnem*, Cæs. *Acceptus plebi*, apud plebem, *popular*.

CONCIPERE verba juramenti, to prescribe the form of an oath; conceptis verbis jurare: *inimicitias cum aliquo*, to bear enmity to one; *quam*, to gather, to form the head of an aqueduct, Frontinus.

EXCIPERE eum hospitio, to entertain; fugientes, to catch; *extremum spiritum coguatorum*; sanguinem paterâ, to keep or gather; *notis*, & scribere, to write in short hand; *motus futuros*, to perceive; *Hos homines excipio*, I except; *virtutem excipit immortalitas*; turbulentior annus exceptit, succeeded; *sic exceptit regia Juno*, replied, Virg.

INCIPERE, occipere, to begin. *Percipere fructus*, to reap.

PRECIPERE futura, to foresee; *gaudia, spem victorie*, to anticipate; *pecuniam mutuam*, to take before the time, Cæs. *lac*, to dry up, Virg. *alicui id, v. de ea re*, to order; *artem ei*, to teach.

RECIPERE aliquid, to receive; *urbem*, to recover; *eum teclis*, to entertain; *se v. pedem*, to retreat; *se domum*, to return; *se, mentem*, *animum*, to come to one's self again, to recover spirits; *in se*, to take charge; *alicui*, to promise; *se ad frugem*, to amend; *senem sessum*, to give a seat to, Cic.

RAPERE v. *trahere in pejorem partem*, to take a thing in the worst sense; *in jus*, to bring before a judge; *partes inter se*, to share, I. liv. *Sub divum*, to reveal, Horat.

U. O.

EXUERE vestes sibi, *se vestibus*; *jugum sibi*, *se jugo*, to cast off; *fidem, sacramentum*, to break; *mentem*, to change, Virg. *hostem castris*, to beat from.

RUERE ad interitum, in ferrum: *cæteros*, Ter. *spumas*, to drive or toss, Virg.

LUERE pœnas capitum, to suffer; *ex alienum*, to pay; Curt. *culpanum suum vel alterius, morte, sanguine*, to expiate, to atone or suffer for.

ELUERE amicitias remissione usus, to drop gradually, Cic.

STATUERE stipendium iis de publico, to appoint; *exemplum in hominem*, *vel -ne*, to make one a public example; *aliquem capite in terram*, to set or plague, Ter.

CONSTITUERE coloniam, to settle; *agmen paulisper*, to make to stop or halt, Sall. *in digitis*, to count on one's fingers, Cic. *urbem*, to build, Ovid. *Is hodie ventutum ad me constituit domum*, appointed, relieved, Ter. *Si utilitas amicitiam constituit, tollet eadem, makes, constitutes*, Cic. *Corpus bene constitutum, a good constitution*, Id.

DESTITUERE aliquem, to forsake; *spem*, to deceive; *propositum*, to give over, Ovid. *deos paclâ mercède*, to defraud, Hor.

INSTITUERE aliquem secundum hæredem filio, to appoint, Cic. *collegium fabrorum, sacra*, to institute, to found, Plin. *aliquem doctrinâ, Græcis literis*, to instruct; *naves*, to build, Cæs. *sermonem*, to enter upon, Id. *animum ad cogitandum*, to settle; *antequam pro Muraua dicere instituo*, I begin, Cic.

PRAESTITUERE peritori, qua actione illum uti oporteat, to prescribe to the prosecutor what form of process he should use, Cic. *tempus ei*, to determine.

RESTITUERE exules; *virginem suis*, to restore; *oppida vicosque*, to repair; *aciem inclinatam*, to rally; *prælium*, to renew, Liv.

SUBSTITUERE aliquem in locum ejus, pro altero, to substitute or put in the place of, Cic.

STRUERE epulas, *to prepare* ; infidias, mendacium, *to contrive* ; odium, crimen alicui, *vel* in aliquem, *to raise against*.

B O.

SCRIBERE sua manu, bene, velociter, epistolam alicui, *v.* ad aliquem ; bellum, *v.* de bello; milites, *to enlist* ; supplementum militibus, *to recruit them* ; hæredem, *to make one his heir* ; dicam ei, *to raise an action against one* ; nummos, *to give a bill of exchange* ; de rebus suis scribi cupivit, Cic. Decemvir legibus scribendis, Liv.

ASCRIBERE aliquem civitati, in civitatem, *v. -e*, *to make free*.

DESCRIBERE aliquem, *to describe and not to name* ; partes Italæ, pecuniam, populum ordinibus, *to distribute, to divide* ; vestigia civitatis, i. e. imperare ; jura, i. e. dare *v.* constitire ; censores binos in singulas civitates, i. e. facere, Cic.

INSCRIBERE literas alicui, *to direct a letter* ; librum, *to entitle or name* ; ædes mercede, *to put a ticket on one's house to let*, Ter.

PROSCRIBERE bona alicujus, ædes suas, auctionem, *to publish to be sold, to set to sale* ; aliquem, *to banish, to outlaw*.

RESCRIBERE alicujus literis *v.* ad literas, alicui ad aliquid, *to write an answer* ; pecuniam, *to pay money by bill* ; legionem ad equum, *to set foot soldiers on horseback*, Cæs.

SUBSCRIBERE exemplum literarum, *to write below* ; cauæ, *to join or take part in an accusation* ; Cætæris iræ, *to favour*, Ovid.

C O.

DICERE aliquid, *v.* de aliqua re, ex aliquo leco, alicui, *ad v.* spud aliquem ; in aliquem, *against* ; ad aliquo, *in answer to* ; ientitiam, *to give an opinion* ; jus, *to ad-*

minister justice, to pronounce sentence ; mulçam ei, *to avenge or fine* ; diem ei, *to appoint a day for his trial before the people* ; prodicere, *to put it off* ; causam, *to plead* ; testimonium, *to give evidence* ; non idem logui est ac dicere, *to barangue*, Cic. sacramento, *seldom sacramentum, to take the military oath*.

ADDICERE aliquid ei, *to call out at an auction, to sell* ; servituti, *v.* in servitutem, *to sentence or adjudge to bondage* ; bona, *to give up the goods of the debtor to the creditor* ; se alicui, *to devote himself to one's service* : aves non addixerunt, *v.* abdixerunt, *the birds did not give a favourable omen* ; pretio addiccam habere fidem, *to be corrupt*, Cic.

CONDICERE operam alicui, *to promise assistance* ; cœnam alicui, *v.* ad cœnam, *to propose supping with one without invitation*.

EDICERE alicui, *to order* ; delectum, *to appoint a levy* ; prædam militibus, *to promise by an edict* ; justitium, diem comitiis, *vel* comitia consulibus creandis, *to appoint*.

INDICERE bellum, justitium, *to proclaim war* ; legem sibi, *to appoint*, Cic. cœtus in domos tribunorum, *to summon*, Liv. indicare, *to show* ; Indictus, an adj. not said ; causâ indictâ, *v.* non cognitâ condemnari, *to be condemned without being heard* ; me indicente, hæc non fiunt, *not telling*, Ter.

INTERDICERE alicui aliquid, *v.* aliqua re ; foemini usum purpuræ, *to forbid or debar from* ; ei aquâ & igne, *v.* aquani et ignem, *to banish* ; malè rei gerentibus bonis paternis interdici solet, Cic. interdici non poterat focero gener, *discharged the company of*, Nep.

PRÆDICERE alicui aliquid, de aliqua re, *id in hac re, to foretell, to forewarn*.

DUCERE

DUCERE in carcerem *v.* vincula, to lead; exercitum, to command; spiritum, animam, vitam, to breathe, to live; fossam, murum, sulcum, to make or draw; bellum, to prolong, also to carry on, Virg. *statem*, diem, to spend; uxorem, to take a wife; in jus, to summon before a judge; aliquem, & vultum alicujus, ærc, ex ærc, de auro, marmore, &c. to make a statue; genus, nomen ab *v.* ex aliquo, to derive; omnia pro nihilo, infra se; id ei laudi, laudem, *v.* in laudem, ostener the first, to reckon it a praise to him; in conscientiam, to impute to a consciousness of guilt; in gloria, Plin. in crimen, Tacit. centesimas, sc. usuras, *vel* fœnus centesimis, to compute interest at one for the hundred a-month; or at 12 per cent. per annum; binis centesimis fœnerari, to take 24 per cent. per annum, Cic. ducere longas uscas in fletum, to draw out, Virg. ordines, to be a centurion, Liv. illia, to pant like a broken winded horse, Hor.

ADDUCERE aliquem in judicium, ad arbitrium meum, to bring to a trial; in suspicionem regi, Nep. arcum, to draw in; habendas, to strain the reins.

CONDUCERE aliquem ex loco, to convey; navem, domum, coquos, to hire; columnam faciendam, to engage to make at a certain price: Conducit hoc tuæ laudi, in *v.* ad rem, is of advantage.

DEDUCERE naves, to launcb; classiem in prælium, to bring, Nep. equites, to make to alight, Liv. cum domum, to accompany, to carry home; de sententia, Cic. coloniam, to transplant; lacum, to drain.

EDUCERE gladium e vagina, to draw; florem Italizæ, to lead out; copias in aciem, Cic. filium, to educate, ostener educare; in altra, to entet, Hor. caelo, Virg.

INDUCERE tenebras clarissimis rebus, to bring on, Cic. animum, *v.* in animum, to persuade himself; scuta pellibus, to cover, Cæl. folreas pedibus, *v.* in pedes, to put on; colorem picturæ, to varnish, Plin. nomina, to cancel or raze, to rub out.

OB DUCERE exercitum, to lead against; callum doleri, to blunt it; pulchrum sentibus, to cover.

REDUCERE aliquem in memoriam alicujus, *vel* alicui aliquid in memoriam, to bring back to one's remembrance; in gratiam cum aliquo, to reconcile; Vallis reducta, retired or low.

PRODUCERE testes, to bring out; funus, to attend; Terinonem in noctem, to prolong, to continue; rem in hiemem, to defer; servos vendendos, to bring to market.

SUBDUCERE se a custodibus, to steal away; naves, to draw up on shore; cibum ei & deducere, to take from; summam, rationes, to reckon, to cast up accounts.

PARCERE fibi, labore, to spare, &c. a cædibus, to forbear; aurum natis, Virg.

ASSUESCERE rei alicui, *v.* re aliqua, in *v.* ad hoc, to be accustomed; mentem pluribus & affuerat facere, Hor. Animis bella, Virg. to accustom. So infuesco rei *v.* re; infuevit hoc me pater, Hor.

SCISCERE legem, to vote, to decree: hence plebiscitum.

ASCISCERE regium nomen, to assume; socios fibi, ad societatem sceleris, to associate; ritus peregrinos, to adopt.

CONCISCERE mortem *v.* necem fibi, to kill one's self; fugam fibi, to flee, Liv.

DISCERE aliiquid ab aliquo, *v.* apud aliquem, ex aliqua re, or without ex: Dedisce, to forget what he hath learned; Ediscere, to get by heart.

DESCENDEREB

DESCENDERE de palatio, praefidio, aedibus; in forum, curiam, campum; ad accusandum, ad omnia, ad extrema, *to have recourse to*, Cic.

D.O.

LUDERE alea, v. -am, *to play at dice*; par impar, *at even and odd*; operam, *to lose one's labour*.

ALLUDERE alicui, ad aliquem: Colludere ei, cum eo; illudere ei, eum, in eum, in eo; id, *to mock*.

EVADERE infidias, -iis, vel ex, *to escape*; in muro, *to mount*: Haec quorundam evadant, nescio, *to what they will turn out*: Clarus evasit, *became*.

CEDERE multa multis de suo jure, Cic. Bona creditoribus, *to yield*, whence cessio bonorum; alicui loco, de, a, ex loco, v. locum, *to give place*; vitâ, e vita decedere, *to die*; foro, *to turn bankrupt*; Hæreditas cedit mihi, *falls to*; Cedit in proverbium, *becomes*.

ACCEDERE oppidum, -do, ad v. in oppidum, *to approach*; ad conditiones, *to agree to*; Ciceroni, sententiae, v. ad sententiam ejus, *to agree with*; ad Ciceronem, *to go to*; ad rempublicam, *to bear the quæstorship, or the first public office*; ad amicitiam Philippi, *to gain the friendship of*, Nep. Ad hæc mala hoc mihi accedit etiam, *added*, Ter. Robur accessit ætati, Cic. Animi accessere holti, Liv. Ad corporis firmitatem plura animi bona accesserant, Nep. Accedit plurimum pretio; huc, eò, accedit quod, *is added*.

ANTECEDERE alicui rei; aliquem, *rarely alicui*, *to exceed*.

CONCEDERE ei aliquid & de aliquo; paullum de suo jure; tempus ad rem, *to grant*; ab oculis, ad dextram, in exilium, in hiberna, *to retire*, *to go*; sato, naturæ, vitâ, *to die*; in sententiam ejus, *to come*

into one's measures; in conditiones, *to agree to*, Liv.

DISCEDERE transversum, & latum unguem, v. digitum a re, *to depart in the least*.

INTERCEDERE legi, *to give a negative against*, *to oppose a law*; pecuniam pro aliquo, *to become surety*: Intercedit mihi tecum amicitia vel inter nos, *there is*, *is*.

SUCCEDERE ei; in locum ejus, *to succeed*; muro, v. murum; ad urbem; sub primam aciem; in pugnam, *to come up to*.

CADERE altè, ab alto, in terram, *to fall*; causâ, formulâ, in iudicio, & litem perdere, *to lose one's cause*, *to be lost*; in v. sub sensum, oculos, potestatem, &c. in morbum, & incidere, Cic. Non cadit in virum bonum mentiri, *is incapable of*, Cic. Homini lachrymæ cadunt, quasi pueri, gaudios, Ter.

ACCIDERE genibus, v. ad genua, *to fall at*; auribus v. ad aures, *to come to*; alicui, casu, præter opinionem, *to happen*; accidit in testud verbum, *applies*, Ter.

TENDERE vela, *to stretch*; infidias, retia, plegas, &c. *to lay snares*; arcum, *to bend*; iter, cursum, *to direct*; ad altiora, in cœlum, *to aim at*; extra vallum, sc. tabernaculum, *to pitch a tent*; Manibus tendit divellere nodos, *ties*; Virg.

ATTENDO te, Cic. tibi, Plin. de hac re, ad hanc rem, *to take heed*; animum ad rem; res hostium, Sall.

CONTENDERE nervos, omnibus nervis, *to exert one's self*; aliquid ab aliquo, *to ask earnestly*; inter se: amori, poet. for. cum amore, *to strive*; causas, sc. inter se, *to compare*, Cic. Aliiquid ad aliquid, cum aliquo, & alicui.

COMPREHENDERE naturam rerum, *to understand*; rem pluribus &c.

& luculentioribus verbis, *to express*; aliquem, *humanitate, amicitia, to gain*; rem *factam, to discover*.

IN TENDERE animum rei, *ad v. in rem, to apply*: Intendi animo in rem, Liv. Vocem, *nervos, to exert*; arcum, *to bend*; actionem & litem alicui *vel in aliquem, also impingere, to raise a law-suit against one*; telum ei, *v. in eum, to shoot at*; manum *v. digitum in aliquid, to point at*: aliquo, *sc. ire, to go to*; officia, *to overdo, to do more than is required*, Sall.

OBTENDERE velum rei, *v. rem velo, to cover, to veil*.

PENDERE pecuniam, *to pay*; penas, *to suffer*; id parvi, *to value it little*.

SUSPENDERE aliquem arbori, de, in, *v. ex arbore, to hang*; expectatione, *vel suspensum detinere, to keep in suspense*; ædificium, *to arb. a house*; naso adunco, *to sneer at*, Horat.

ABDERE se literis, *in literas, to hide or shut up one's self among books*, se domum, *rus, &c. domo*, Virg. in silvas, *tenebras, &c.*

CONDERE uibei, *to build*; fructu, *to lay up*; in carcere, *to imprison*; carmen, *to compose*; lumina, *to close*, Ovid. Jura, *to establish*; terra, sepulchro, *in sepulchro, to bury*.

DEDERE se alicui, *in ditionem alicuias, ad aliquem, to surrender*; Deditus præceptor, & studiis, *fund of*; vino epulisque, *engaged in*, Nep. dedita operâ, *on purpose*.

EDERE librum, & in lucem, *to publish*; ovum, *to lay*; sonos, cantus, risus, gemitus, questus, linnitum, pugnam, fragm, *to sound, sing, &c.* munus gladiatorium, *to exhibit a show of gladiators*; nomen, *to mention*; scetus, *to bring forth*; extreum spiritum, *to die*; exempla cruciatus in aliquem, *to inflict exemplary torture*.

OBDERE pessulum foribus, *to bolt the door*.

PRODERE arcem hostibus, *to betray*; aliquid posteris, *v. memoriae, to hand down*; genus ab aliquo, *to derive*; flaminem, interregem, *to appoint*; aliquot dies nuptiis, *to put off*, Ter. exemplum, *to give to posterity*, Liv.

REDDERE animum, *se sibi, to revive*; animam *v. vitam, to die*; Latinè, verbum verbo, *to translate*; matrem, *i. e. referre, to resemble*; epistolam alicui, *to deliver*.

SUBDERE calcar equo, *to spur*; spiritus alicui, *to encourage*.

CREDERE rem; homini, *to believe*; aliquid alicui, *to trust*; pecuniam ei per syngrapham, *to lend on bond or bill*; rumoribus credi non oportet: Itaque credo si, &c. I suppose, Cic.

FUNDERE aquam, *to pour out*; hostes, *to rout*.

EFFUNDERE fruges, copiam oratorum, *to produce*; ærarium, *to spend*; odium, *i. e. dimittere, to drop*, gratiam collectam, *i. e. perdere*: omnia, quæ tacuerat, *to tell*.

G O.

JUNGERE se cum aliquo, alicui, & ad aliquem, dextram dextræ: equos currui: amnem ponte, *to make a bridge*.

ADJUNGERE accessionem ædibus, *to build an addition to one's house*: animum ad studia, *to apply*.

STRINGERE cultrum, gladium, ensim, *to draw*: frondes, *to lay off*: glandes, baccas, *to beat down*: rem, *to waste one's fortune*, Her. littus, *to touch, to brush or graze upon*, Virg.

TANGERE rem acu, *to hit the nail on the head*.

ATTINGERE Britanniam, natus, *to reach*: reges, res sumptuas, *to mention*, Nep. Aliquem cognitione,

cognitione, affinitate, to be related to : forum, to reach manhood, Cic. Res non te attingit, concernit.

FINGERE orationem, to polish : oratorem, to form : se ad arbitrium alterius, to adapt : Vultus a mente fingitur, lingua fingit vocem, Cic. Sui cuique mores fingunt fortunam, Nep.

FRANGERE nucem, to break : navem, to suffer shipwreck : fœdus, fidem, to violate : sententiam ejus, to refute, Cic. hostem, to subdue.

AGERE gratias, to give thanks : vitam, to live : prædas, to plunder : fabulam, to act a play : triumphum de aliquo, ex aliqua re, to triumph : nugas, to trifles : ambages, to beat about the bush : stationem, custodiām urbis, to be on guard : rimas, to chink, to leak, to be rent : causam, to plead : de re, to speak : radices, to take root : cuniculos, to undermine : undam, to raise a steam : animam, to be at the last gasp : alias res, to be inattentive : festum diem, natalem, ferias, &c. to keep, to observe : actum, v. rem actam, to labour in vain : censum, & habere, to make a review of the people, their estates, &c. forum, to hold a court to try causes : lege in aliquem, & cum aliquo, to go to law with one : hence actor, a plaintiff : in hereditatem, to claim : cum populo, to treat with, to lay before : decimum agit annum, he is ten years old : id. agitur, that is the question : libertas agitur, v. de libertate, is at stake : actum est de libertate, is lost : actum est, illicet, all is over : actum est de pace, was treated about : cum illo bene actum est, he has been lucky or well used : hoc age, mind what you are about. Civitas laeta agere, for erat, Sallust.

ADIGERE milites sacramento, ad v. in jusjurandum, in sua verba, per jusjurandum, to force to

enlist : arbitrum, i. e. agere v. cogere aliquem ad arbitrum, to force to submit to an arbitration, Cic.

COGERE copias, to bring together : ad militiam, to force to enlist : senatum, to assemble : in senatum, se. minis, pignoribus captis, &c. to force to attend : agmen, to rally, to bring up : lac, to curdle : jus civile diffusum & dissipatum, in certa genera cogere, to digest, to arrange.

EXIGERE foras, to drive out, to divorce : aliquid ab aliquo, to require : sarta tecta, sc. et, i. e. sarta et tecta, ut sint bene reparata, to require that the public works be kept in good reparation, Cic. supplicium, de aliquo, to inflict : sua nomina, to demand or call in one's debts : ævum, vitam, annos, to suspend : aliquid ad normam, to try or examine : columnam ad perpendiculum, to apply the plummet, to see if it be straight : monumentum, to finish, Hor. tempus & modum, to settle, Virg. comediam, to disapprove, to hew off, Ter.

REDIGERE aliquid in memoriam alicujus, to bring back : pecuniam ex bonis venditis, to raise money : hostes sub imperium, to reduce.

LEGERE oram, littus, to coast along : vela, to furl the sails : halitum, to catch one's breath : milites, to enlist : aliquem in senatum, in Patres, to choose : sacra, to steal, to commit sacrilege : Hor.

H O.

TRAHERE obsidionem, bellum, to prolong : purpuras, to spin : aliquid in religionem, to scruple : navem remulco, to tow.

DETRAHERE aliquem, to draw down : alicui, v. de aliquo, de fama, to detract from, to lessen one's fame : aliquid alicui, to take by force : laudem, v. de laudibus : novem

novem partes multæ, *to take from the fine*, Nep.

EXTRAHERE diem, *to spin out, to spend*; certamen, bellum, judicium, *to prolong*.

VEHERE, vehens, invehens, injectus curru, quadrigis, &c. *riding in a chariot*; invehiri in portum ex alto, *to enter*; in aliquem, *to inveigh against*; provehiri longius, *to proceed too far*.

LO.

CONSULERE rem v. de re, *to consult about*; cum, *to ask his advice*; ei, *to consult for his good*; de salute sua; gravius in aliquem, *to pass a severe sentence against*; in commune, publicum, medium, *to provide for the common good*; verba boni, *to take in good part*; ego consulor, *my advice is asked*; mihi consulitur, *my good is consulted*; mihi consultum ac provisum est, *for a me, I have taken care*, Cie.

APPELLERE classis in Itali-
am, vel classem, *to land on*; se ali-
quid, Ter. ad villam nostram na-
vis appelletur, Cic. animum ad
philosophiam, *to apply*.

ANTECELLERE ei, *rarely*
eum: excellere aliis, super, inter,
præter alios aliquæ re, v. in re,
to excel.

TOLLERE animos suos, *to take courage*; animos alicui, *to encourage*; aliquem laudibus, & laudes ejus in astra, *to extol*; inducias, *to break a truce*; clamores, *to cry*; filium, *to educate*; de vel e medio, *to kill*.

MO.

ADIMERE claves uxori, *to di-
vorce*; annulum v. equum equiti, *to take away from a knight the ring or borse given him by the public, to degrade*.

DIRIMERE litem, *controversiam, to determine*.

EXIMERE aliquem servitio, *noxe, & vinculis, a culpa, de nu-*

mero proscriptorum, obsidione, *to free*; de dolio, *to draw out*; di-
em dicendo, *to waste in speaking*.

INTERIMERE se, *to kill*.

RENIMERE captivos, *to ransom*; pecuaria de censoribus, *to take or farm the public pastures*.

SUMERE in manus; diem, tempus ad deliberandum; exemplum ex v. de eo, *to take*; pœnas, supplicium de aliquo, *to punish*; pecunias mutuas, *to borrow*; togam virilem, *to put on the dress of a man*; fibi iniurias, *to get ill will*; operam in re, *vel in rem insumere, to bestow pains*; sumo tantum, *vel hoc mihi, I take this upon me*.

PREMERE caseum, *to make cheese*; vocem, *to be silent*; dolorem corde, *to conceal*; vestigia ejus, *to follow*; littus, *to come near*; pollicem, *to save a gladiator*; librum in nonum annum, *to delay publishing*, Hor.

EXPRIMERE succum, *to press out*; risum alicui, pecuniam ab aliquo, *to force from*; effigiem, *to draw to the life*; verbum verbo, de verbo, e verbo, ad verbum, de Græcis, &c. *to translate word for word*.

IMPRIMERE aliquid animo, in animo, v. in animum, *to imprint*.

REPRIMERE se, & reprendere v. retinere, *to check*.

NO.

PONERE spem in homine v. re, & habere; castra, *to pitch*; vitem, *to plant*; vitam, *to die*; ova, *to lay*; insidias alicui; panem convivis, *not ante*; personam amici, *to lay aside the character of a friend*; præmia, *to propose*; pocula, *to stoke or lay*; studium, tempus, multum operæ in aliqua re, *to employ*, *to bestow*; aliquid in laude, in vitiis, in loco beneficii, *to reckon*; feruia corda, *to lay aside & aliquem*

aliquem in gratiam v. gratia, i. e. efficere gratiosum apud alterum, Cic. : ventos, to calm: hominem coloribus, faxo, to paint, engrave, Hor. pecuniam in foenore, to lay out at interest: templa, to build. Virg. Venti posuere, are bust'd, Virg. Pone esse victimum eum, Ter. Positum sit, suppose, grant, Cic.

COMPONERE carmen, literas, &c. to compose: lites, to settle: bellum, to finish by treaty: parva magnis, dicta cum factis, to compare: manus manibus, to join, Virg.

DEPONERE v. ponere togam praetextam, to lay aside the dress of a boy: imperium & demittere, to lay down a command.

EXPONERE rem, to set forth or explain: frumentum, to expose to sale, Cic. pueros, fœtus, to leave to perish, Liv. exercitum, sc. in terram, to land.

IMPONERE onus alicui v. in aliquem: aliquem in equum, to set upon: personam v. partes duriiores ei, to lay a task or duty on one: alicui, to impose on, to deceive, Nep. honorem ei, to confer: vadimonium ei, to force to give bail, Nep. manum summam v. extremam rei alicui, in aliqua re, to finish: pontem fluminis, to make a bridge, Curt. Hoc loco libet interponere, to insert, Nep.

OPPONERE se periculis & ad pericula, to expose: pignori, to pledge: manum fronti, ante oculos, to put, Ovid.

PROPONERE aliquid sibi facere, exempla ei ad imitandum, to propose, to set before: edicta, legem in publicum, i. e. publicè legenda affigere: congiarium, to promise a largess, a gift of corn or money.

SUPPONERE ova gallinæ, to set a hen: testamentum, v. subjicere, to forge.

CANERE aliquem, to praise:

signa, clasticum, bellicum, i. e. ad arma conclamare, to sound an alarm, to give the signal for battle: receptui, rarely -um, to sound a retreat: tibiæ, to play on the pipe: ad tibiam, to sing to it: palinodiam, to utter a recantation.

STERNERE lectos, to spread or cover the couches: equos, to harness: viam, to pave: æquora, to calm, Virg.

PO.

CARPERE agmen, to cut off the rear: soemos, quietem, to sleep: viam, iter, to go, Virg. opera alterius, to censure: labores, virtutes, to diminish or obscure, Hor.

RUMPERE fidem, fœdus, amicitiam, to violate: vocem v. silentium, to speak, Virg.

ERUMPERE ex tenebris, castris, &c. se portis, to break out: stoma-chum in aliquem, to vent passion: nubem, to break, Virg.

RO.

QUÆRERE bonam gratiam sibi, to seek or gain, Cic. sermonem, to beat about for conversation, Ter. rem mercaturis faciendis, to make a fortune by merchandise: ex aliquo: & in aliquem, de re aliqua per tormenta, to put to the rack: in dominum de servo quæri noluerunt Romani, Cic.

ANQUIRERE aliquid, to search after: aliquem capititis, v. -te, to accuse or try for a capital crime.

GERERE res, to perform: negotium malè, to manage: consultatum, to bear, to manage: se bene vel male, to behave: exercitum to conduct, Sallust. morem ei vel mortigerari, to bumble: civem, se pro civi, personam alicujus, to pass for, to bear the character of: inimicitiæ vel similitatem cum aliquo, to be at enmity or variance with.

INGERERE

INGERERE convicia ei, in eum, to inweigh against.

SUGGERERE aliquid ei, to suggest, to hint; sumptus his rebus, to supply or afford: Horatium Bruto, to chuse in place of, to put after, Liv.

SERERE crimina in eum, to raise, to spread accusations.

CONSERERE manus, manu, certamen, pugnam, cum hostibus, inter se, to engage.

ASSERERE aliquid, to affirm; aliquem manu, ab injuria, in libertatem, to free; in servitutem, to reduce; divinam majestatem, to claim.

T. O.

PETERE aliquid alicui, id ab eo, rarely eum; in beneficij gratiaque loco, Cic. to ask; urbem Romanam, murum, montes, to go to, to make for; aliquem sagittam, lapide, to aim at; consulatum, penas ab aliquo, & repetere, to punis.

COMPETERE animo, to be in one's senses; in eum competit actio, an action lies against him; Cic.

REPETERE res, to demand restitution; bona lege, v. prosequi lite, to recover by law; caltra, oppidum, hoc, to return to; aliquid memoria, to call to mind; ulte, to trace from the beginning. Mihi nihil suppetit, multa suppetunt, I have; si vita suppetet, if life shall remain, Cic.

MITTERE alicui, v. ad aliquem; in suffragia, to send the people to vote; aulæum, mappam, to drop the curtain; talos, to throw the dice; senatum, to dismiss; timorem, to lay aside; in acta, to register, to record; sanguinem, vel emittere, to let blood; noxam, to forgive; signa timoris, to shew; vocem, to utter, to speak; habendas, v. remittere, to slacken; manu et emittere, to free a slave; filium emancipare, to free a son from the power of his father; sub jugum, to make to pass under the yoke; inferias

manibus diis, to sacrifice to the infernal gods; rem, v. de re, to omit; mitto rem, I say nothing of fortune, Ter. in possessionem bonorum, to give the possession of the debtor's effects; misit orare, ut venirem; i. e. aliquem ad orandum, Ter.

AMITTERE item, v. causam; vitam, fidem, lumina, aspectam, to lose, Cic.

ADMITTERE in cubiculum, to admit; equum immittere, & permettere, to gallop; delictum in se, to commit a fault; aves non admisserunt, have not given a favourable omen, Liv.

COMMITTERE facinus, to commit; se alicui, v. in fidem allucius, to entrust; prælium, to engage; exercitum pugnæ, rem in calum anticipis eventus prælii, to risk a battle, Liv. iv. 27. aliquem cum aliquo, homines inter se, to set at variance, or by the ears; rem eō, to bring to that pass; gladiatores, pugiles, Græcos cum Latinis, to match or pair; committere, ut, to cause; incommoda sua legibus & judiciis, to seek redress by law.

COMPROMITTERE. Candidati compromiserunt, H. S. quingenis in singulos apud M. Catonem depositis, petere ejus arbitratu, ut qui contra fecisset, ab eo condemnaretur, made a compromise or agreement, &c.

DIMITTERE exercitum, to disband; uxorem, & repudiare, nuntium v. repudium ad eam remittere, to divorce.

PROMITTERE id ei, to promise; capillum, barbam, to let grow, Liv.

PERMITTERE alicui, to allow; divis cætera, to leave, Horat. Se in fidem v. fidei ejus; vela ventis; equum in hostem; rem suffragiis populi, to let the people decide; tribunatum vexantis consulibus, to give up, to employ, Liv.

REMITTERE *animum, to ease;* *calces, tela, to throw back;* *ex pecunia, de supplicio, tributo, &c. to abate;* *debitum, iras alicui, to give up, to forgive;* *justicium, to discontinue.* *pugnam, to slacken;* *remittit explorare, neglects,* Sallust.

SUMMITTERE *fasces populo, to lower;* *se v. animum, to submit, to humble;* *percussores alicui, to suborn off'fins.*

TRANSMITTERE *in Africam, neut. to pass over.*

VERTERE *in sugam, to put to flight;* *terga, to fly;* *ab imo, to overthrow;* *solum, to go into banishment;* *id ei, vitio, v. criminis, & in crimen. to blame;* *in superbiam, to impute;* *Platonem, Latinè Græca, Græca vel ex Græcis in Latinum, to translate;* *pollicem, to doom a gladiator to death by turning up the thumb;* *terram, to plough;* *crateram, to empty,* Virg. *Stilum, to correct,* Horat. *Salus vel causa in eo vertitur, depends;* *fortuna vertet, Liv.* *Annus vertens, a whole year,* Nep. *Res bene vertat, Di bene vertant, prosper.*

ANIMADVERTERE *id, to observe;* *in eum verberibus, morte, &c. to punish.*

ADVERTERE *agmen urbi, to bring up to,* Virg. *oras, to arrive at;* *aures, mentes, animum v. animo ad aliquid, monitis, to attend to;* *in aliquem, often animadvertere, to punish.*

ANTEVERTERE *ci, to come before;* *damnationem veneno, to prevent;* *rem rei, to prefer,* Plaut.

INTERVERTERE *pecuniam aliquis, & aliquem pecuniam, to embezzle;* *to cheat;* *candelabrum, to steal, to pilfer;* *promissum & receptum, sc. Dolobellæ consulatum, intervertit, ad seque transtulit treacherously with-bald,* Cic.

PRAEVERTERE, & -ti, dep. *ven- tos cursu, to outstrip;* *desiderium plebis, to prevent;* *metum suppli- cii morte voluntariâ,* Liv. *Ali- quid alicui rei, to put before,* Id.

SISTERE *vadimonium; se in- judicio, to appear in court at one's trial;* *nec sibi posse, nor could the state be saved,* Liv.

ASSISTERE *ei, to stand by;* *ad fores;* *contra, super eum.*

CONSISTERE *in digitos, to stand on tiptoe;* *in anchoris, ad ancho- ram, to ride at anchor;* *frigore, to be frozen;* Ovid. *Spes in velis consistebat, depended on;* *virtus in actione consistit, Cic.*

INSISTERE *iacentibus, to stand upon;* *vestigiis ejus; viam, v. viâ;* *in re aliqua, in rem, v. rei;* *in dolos, negotium,* Plaut. *to infest upon, to urge.*

OBSISTERE *ei, to stop, to oppose.*
RESISTERE *ci, to resist.*

SUBSISTERE, *to stand still;* *sum- tui, t. bear.*

VO.

SOLVERE *pecuniam ei, to pay;* *versurâ to pay debt by borrowing from another,* Ter. *Fidem, to break a promise, or according to others, to perform,* Ter. And. IV. I. 19. *litem aëstimatam, to pay the fine imposed on him,* Nep. *Votum, to discharge;* *obsidionem urbis, v. urbem obfidence, to raise a siege;* *navem, e portu, to set sail;* *epi- tolam, v. resignare, to break open;* *aliquem legibus, legum vinculis, to free from;* *solvitur in somnos,* Virg. *Oratio soluta, i. e. libera, numeris non astricta & devircta, prose;* *solve metus, dismiss,* Virg.

DISSOLVERE *societatem, to break.*

RESOLVERE *vocem, v. ora, to break silence,* Virg. *jura, to violate;* *vestigal, to take off taxes,* Tacit. *In pulverem, to reduce to.*

FOURTH CONJUGATION.

AUDIRE aliquem, aliquid ex v. ab aliquo, *to bear from one*; de aliquo, *about one*. also *from one, as, sœpe hoc audivi de patre, for ex patre*. Cic. *Audire bene v. malè apud socios, ab omnibus, to be well spoken of, to have a good character*; rexque paterque auli isti, *have been called*. Hor. *Antigonus credit de suo adventu esse auditum*, Nep.

VENIRE ad finem, aures, pac-
tationem, certamen, manus, nihil-
lum, &c. in suspicionem, odium,
gratiam, &c. in jus, *to go to law*,
Liv. in circulum, *into a company*,
Nep. *Hæreditas ei venit, be has succeeded to an estate*; ei usu venit,
happened, Nep. *Quod in buceam
venerit, scribitu, occurs*, Cic.

ADVENIRE & adventare ei, ur-
bem, ad urbem, *to come to*.

ANTEVENIRE aliquem, & ante-
vertere, Sall. rei, Plaut. tempus,
confilia & itinera.

CONVENIRE in colloquium;
fratrem, *to meet with, to speak to*;
ego et frater conveniemus, copia
convenient, *will meet together*; con-

venit mihi cum fratre de hac re,
inter me et fratrem, inter nos;
hæc fratri mecum convenient. *I and my brother are agreed*; sœvis
inter se convenient ursis, Juv. *Ipsi fe-
cam non convenient, vel ipse, be it in-
conscient*; pax convenient, *vel con-
venta est, is agreed upon*; rem con-
venturam putamus, Cic. *conditio-
nes non convererunt; mores con-
veniunt, agree*; caleci pedibus v. ad
pedes convenient, *fit, fuit*; hoc in
illum convenient: *Catilinam inter-
sectum esse convenient, ought to have
been slain*, Cic. *Convenire in ma-
num, the usual form of marriage,
named Coempto, whereby women
were called matresfamilias*.

SENTIRE sonorem, colorem,
&c. *to perceive*; cum aliquo, *to be
of one's opinion*; bene vel malè de
eo, *to think well or ill of him*.

CONSENTIRE tibi, tecum, inter
se; alicui rei, de v. in aliqua re;
ad aliquid peragendum, *to agree*;
So dissentire; et ab aliquo, *to dis-
agree*; ne vita orationi dissentiat,
Senec.

DEPONENT VERBS.

PROFITERI philosophiam, *to
profess, to teach publicly*; se can-
didatum, *to declare himself a candi-
date for an office*; pecunias, agros,
nomina, &c. apud censem, *to
give an account of, to declare how
much one has*; indicium, *to promise
to make a discovery*.

LOQUI cum aliquo, inter se;
sometimes alicui, ad v. apud ali-
quem; aliquid, de aliqua re.

SEQUI feras; sectam Cœsaris,
to be of his party, Cic. *Assequi,
consequi, to overtake*; gloriam, *to*

*attain. Consequi hereditatem, to
get*, Cic.

PROSEQUI aliquem amore, lau-
dibus, &c. *to love, praise*, &c.

NUITI hanu; in cubitum, *to lean*;
ejus consilio, in eo, *to depend on*;
ad gloriam, ad, v. in summa, *to
aim at*; in ventum, in adversum,
contra aliquem, pro aliquo, *to
strive*; gradibus, *to ascend*.

UTI eo familiariter, *to be fami-
liar with one*; ventis adversis, *to
have cross winds*; honore usus, *one
who has enjoyed a post of honour*.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

ESSE magni roboris, *v.* -no, -re; ejus opinionis, *v.* ea opinione; in maxima spe; in timore, lucet, opinione, itinere, &c. cum telo, in *vel* cum imperio; magno periculo, *v.* in periculo; in tuto; apud se, in *bis* sensu; sui juris, *v.* mancipii, sui potens, *v.* in sua potestate; *to be at his own disposal*: Res est in vado, *is safe*, Ter. Est animus, *sc.* mihi, *I have a mind*, Virg. Est ut, cur, quamobrem, quod, quin, &c. *There is cause*; bene, male est mihi, *with me*; nihil est mihi tecum, *I have nothing to do with you*: Quid est tibi, *sc.* rei, *What is the matter with you?* Ter. Cernere erat, *one might see*; religio est mihi id facere, *I scruple to do it*; si est, *ut facere velit*, *ut factorus sit*, *ut admiserit*, &c. *for si velit*, &c. Ter. Est ut viro vir latini ordinet arbusta fulcis, *it happens*, Hor. Certum est facere, *sc.* mihi, *I am resolved*, Ter. Non certum est, quid faciam, *I am uncertain*, Id. Cassius querere solebat, *Cui BONO FUEKIT*: Omnibus bono suit, *it was of advantage*, Cic.

ADESSSE pugnæ, in pugna, ad exercitum, ad tempus, in tempore, cum aliquo, *to be present*; alicui, *to favour*, *to assist*; scribendo, *v.* esse ad scribendum, *to subscribe one's name to a decree of the senate*, Cic. consilio utrius, *to be a counsellor to*, Nep.

ABESSSE domo, urbe, a domo, ab signis, *to be absent*; alicui, *v.* desesse, *to be wanting*, *not to assist*; a sole, *to stand out of the sun*; sumptus funeri defuit, *be bad not money to bury him*, Liv. abesse a persona principis, *to be inconsistent with the character*, Nep. Paulum *v.* parum abfuit quin urbem caperent, *quin occideretur*,

&c. *they were near taking*, &c. Tantum abest ne enervetur oratio, *ut, &c. is so far from being*, &c. Cic. Tantum abfuit a cupiditate pecuniae, a societate sceleris, &c. Nep.

INTERESSE convivio, *v.* in convivio, *to be at a feast*; anni decem intersuerunt, *intervened*; stulto intelligentis quid interest, Ter. Hoc dominus & pater interest, Id. Inter hominem & bellum hoc interest, Cic. differ in this, this is the difference; multum interest, utrum, *it is of great importance*. Pons inter eos interest, *is between*, Cic.

PRESESSE exercitui, *to command*; comitiis, judicio, quæstionui, *to preside in or at*.

OBESSSE ei, *to burst*, *to binder*.

SUPERESSE, *to be over and above*; alicui, *to survive*; modo vita superfit, *sc.* mihi, *if I live*; superest, *ut*, *it remains*, *that*.

IRE ad arma, ad faga, *to go to war*; in jus, *to go to law*; pedibus in sententiam alicujus, *to agree with*; viam *v.* viâ; res bene eunt, Cic. Tempus, dies, mensis it, *passes*.

ABIRE magistratu, *to lay down an office*; a conspectu, *to retire from company*; in ora hominum, *to be in every body's mouth*; ab emptione, *to retract his bargain*; decem menses abierunt, *have past*, Ter. Non hoc tibi sic abibit, *i. e. non feres hoc impune*, Ter. Abi in malam rem, *a form of imprecation*.

ADIRE periculum capit, *to run the hazard of one's life*.

EXIRE vitâ, *v.* *de vita*, *to die*; ære alieno, Cic. Verbum exit ex ore, Id. tela, *to avoid*, Virg. Tempus induciarum cum Vejenti populo exierat, *had expired*, Liv.

INIRE magistratum; suffragium,

gium, rationem, consilium, pugnam, viam, &c. to enter upon, to begin; gratiam ejus, apud eum, cum vel ab eo, to gain his favour: Ineunte æstate, vere, anno, &c. in the beginning of; but we seldom say, Ineunte die, nocte, &c. Ab ineunte æstate, from our early years.

OBIRE diem edicti, vel auctionis, judicium, vadimonium, to be present at; provinciam, domos nostras, to visit, to go through, Cic. negotia, res, munus, officium, legationem, facra, to perform; pugnas, Virg. mortem, vel morte; diem supremum, v. diem, to die.

PRÆCIRUS alicui, to go before; verba, carmen, vel sacramentum alicui, to repeat or read over before; alicui voce, quid judicet, to prescribe or direct by crying, Cic.

PRODIRE in publicum, to go abroad, non præterit te, you are not ignorant, Cic. Dies induciarum præteriit, is past, Nep.

REDIRE in gratiam cum aliquo, to become friends again; ad se, to come to himself, to recover his senses.

SUBIRIS mūrum, vel -o, ad montes, to come up to; laborem vel -i, onus, penam, periculum, crimen, to undergo; spes, timor subiit animum, come into.

VELLE aliquem, sc. alloqui vel conventum, to desire to speak with; alicui, ejus causâ, to wish one's good; tibi contulatum volo; nihil tibi negatum volo, I wish to deny, Liv. Quid sibi vult? What does he mean? Volo te hoc facere, hoc a te fieri; si quid recte curatum velis; illos monitos etiam atque etiam volo, sc. esse, I will admonish them again and again, Cic. nollem factum, I am sorry it was done; nollem huc exitum, sc. esse a me, I wish I had not come out here, Ter.

FERRE legem, to propose or

make; privilegium de aliquo; to propose or pass an act of impeachment against one, Cic. rogationem ad populum, to bring in a bill: conditiones ei, to offer terms; suffragium, to vote; sententiam, to give an opinion; centuriam, tribum, to gain the vote of; perdere, to lose it; victoriam ex eo; omne punctum, omnia suffragia, to gain all the votes; repulsa, to be rejected; fructum hoc fructi, to reap, Ter. lætitiam de re, to rejoice; præ sc, to pretend or declare openly; alienam personam, to disguise one's self; in oculis, to be fond of, Ter. manus in prælia, to engage, Virg. acceptum et expensum, to mark down as received and spent or lent, as Dr and Cr, Cic. animus, opinio fert, inclines; tempus, res, causa fert, allows, requires.

CONFERRE benevolentiam alicui, in vel erga aliquem, to bestow; beneficia, culpam in eum, to confer, to lay; operam, tempus, studium ad vel in rem, & impendere, to apply; capita inter se, confilia sua, to lay their heads together, to consult; signa, aræ, manus, to engage; omne bellum circa Corinthum, Nep. pedem, to set foot to foot; rationes, to cast up accounts; castra caltris, to encamp over against one another; se in, vel ad urbem, to go to; tributa, to pay; se alicui, vel cum aliquo, to compare; neminem cum illo conferendum pietate puto, Cic. Hæc conferant ad aliquid; oratori futuro, serve, are useful to, Quint.

DETERRE fitulam vel fitellam, to bring the ballot-box; aliquid ad aliquem, to carry word, to tell; rarely alicui; caulam ad patronos; honores ei; gubernacula reipublicæ in eum; summam rerum ad eum, to confer: in beneficiis ad æram, to recommend for a public service, Cic. aliquem ambitus, de ambitu,

ambitu, nomen alicujus ad prætorem, apud magistratum, *to accuse of bribery*; primas, sc. partes ei, *to give him the preference*, Cic.

DIFFERRE vel transferre rem in annum; post bellum, diem solutionis, *to put off*; rumores, *to spread*; ab aliquo, alicui, inter se, moribus, *to differ in character*; amore, cupiditate, doloribus, differri, *to be disengaged or torn asunder*, Cic. & Ter.

EFERRE fruges, *to produce*; verba, *to utter*; verbum de verbo expressum, *to translate*, Ter. pedem domo, *to go out*; corpus amplexu funere, & cum funere, *to bury*; ad honorem, ad celum lantibus, *to raise, to extol*; foras peccatum, *to divulge*.

INFERRERE bellum patriæ; vim, manus, necem alicui, *to bring upon*; signa, i.e. pedem, *to advance*; litem, vel periculum capitis alicui, *vel in aliquem, to bring one to a trial for his life*.

OFFERRE se morti, ad mortem, in cistercien, *to expose, to present*.

PERFERRE legem, *to carry through, to pass it*.

PREFERRE faciem ei, *to carry before*; salutem reipublicæ suis commodis; & antefacie, anteponere, *to prefer*. Praelatus equo, *riding before*.

PROFERRE imperium, pomætri-

um, terminos, *to enlarge*; in medium, in apertum, in lucem, *to publish*; nuptias, diem, *to delay*; diem illo, *to defer the destruction of*, Hor.

REFERRE alicui, *to answer*; se, gradum v. pedem, *to retreat*; gratiam alicui, *to make a requital*; par pari, Ter. victoriam ab, *vel ex aliquo, et reportare, to gain*; institutum, *to renew*; judicia ad equestrem ordinem, *to restore to the Equites the right of judging*; aliquid, de aliqua re, ad senatum, ad consilium, ad sapientes, ad populum, *to lay before*; aliquid in tabulam, codicem, album, commentarium, &c. *to mark down*; aliquid acceptum alicui, & in acceptum, *to acknowledge one's self indebted*; pecunias acceptas & expensas, nomina vel summas in codicem accepti et expensi, *to mark down accounts*; alienos mores ad suos, *to judge of by*; in v. inter aerarios, *to reduce to the lowest class*; in numerum deorum, in *vel inter deos, & respondere, to rank among*; pugnas, res gestas, *to relate*; patrem ore, *to resentable*; amissos colores, *to regain*, Horat.

TRANSFERRE rationes in tabulas, *to post one's books, to state accounts*; in Latinam linguam, *to translate*; verba, *to use metaphorically*; culpam in eum & rejicere, *to lay the blame on him*.

II. FIGURES of SYNTAX.

A *Figure* is a manner of speaking different from the ordinary and plain way, used for the sake of beauty or force.

The figures of *Syntax* or *Construction* may be reduced to these three, *Ellipsis*, *Pleonasm*, and *Hyperbāton*.

The two first respect the constituent parts of a sentence; the last respects only the arrangement of the words.

I. ELLIPSIS.

ELLISSIS is when one or more words are wanting to complete the sense, as, *Aiunt*, *ferunt*, *dicunt*, *perhibent*, scil. *homines*: *Dic mihi*, *Damāta*, *cujum pecus*; that is, *Dic (tu) mihi*, *Damāta*, (eum hominem) *cujum pecus* (est hoc pecus). *Aberant bidui*, sc. *iter vel itinere*. *Decies festeriūm*, sc. *centena millia*. *Quid multa?* sc. *dicam*. *Antiquum obtines*, sc. *morem*, v. *institutum*, Plaut. *Hodie in ludum occēpi ire literarium*, *ternas jam scio*, sc. *literas*, i. e. AMO, Id. *Triduo abs te nullas acceperam*, sc. *literas*, i. e. *epistolam*, Cic. *Brevi dicam*, sc. *sermone*: *So Completti*, *respondere*, &c. *brevi*. *Dū meliora*, sc. *faciant*: *Rhodum volo*, *inde Athenas*, sc. *ire*, Id. *Bellicum*, v. *classicum canere* sc. *signum*, Liv. *Civicā donatus*, sc. *coronā*; *So obſidionalem*, *muralem adeptus*, &c. Id. *Epifola librarii manu eſt*, sc. *scripta*, Cic. *So in English*, “*The twelve*,” i. e. *apostles*; “*the elect*,” i. e. *persons*.

When a conjunction is to be supplied, it is called *AN- SYNDĒTON*; as, *Deus optimus maximus*, sc. *et*; *Sartum tectum conſervare*, i. e. *sartum et tectum*; *So Abiit, exceſſit, evaſit, erupit*, Cie. *Ferte citi flamas, date vela, impellite remos*, Virg. *Velis nolis*, sc. *ſeu*.

To this figure may be reduced most of those irregularities in Syntax, as they are called, which are variously classed by grammarians, under the names of *ENALLAGE*, i. e. the changing of words and their accidents, or the putting of one word for another; *ANTIPTÓSIS* i. e. the putting of one case for another; *HELLENISM* or *GRÆCISM*, i. e. imitating the construction of the Greeks; *SYNĒSIS*, i. e. referring the construction, not to the gender or number of the word, but to the sense, &c. thus, *Samnitium dua millia eſti*, is, *Duo millia (hominum) Samnitium fuerunt homines*.

homines) *casi*, Liv. So *Servitia immemores*, Liv. *Monstrum quæ*, scil. mulier, Hor. *Scelus qui*, sc. homo, Ter. *Omnia Mercurio similis*, scil. secundum, Virg. *Missi magnis de rebus uterque, legati*; i. e. *Missi legati* (et) *uterque* (legatus missus) *de magnis rebus*, Horat. *Servitia repudiabat, cuius, scil. servitii*, Sall. Cat. 51. *Familia nostra, quorum, &c. sc. hominum*, Sall. *Concursus populi, mirantium*, Liv. *Illum ut vivat optant, for ut ille vivat*, Ter. *Populum late regem, for regnantem*, Virg. *Expediti militum, for milites*; *Classis flabat Rbegii, for ad Rbegium*, Liv. *Latium Capuaque agro multati, sc. homines*, Id. *Utraque formosæ, sc. mulieres*, Ovid. *Aperte aliquis ostium, Ter. Sensit delapsus, for delapsum, sc. se esse*, Virg.

When a writer frequently uses the Ellipsis, his style is said to be elliptical or concise.

2. PLEONASM.

PLEONASM is when a word more is added than is absolutely necessary to express the sense; as, *Video oculis*, I see with my eyes; *Sic are locuta est*; *adest præsens*; *Nusquam gentium*; *vivere vitam*; *servire servitutem*; *Quid mihi Celsus agit?* *Fac me ut sciam*. &c. *Suo sibi gladio hunc jugulo*, Ter. *Suo sibi succo vivunt*, Plaut.

When a conjunction is used apparently redundant, it is called POLYSYNDETON; as, *Una Eurusque Notusque ruunt*, Virg.

When that which is in reality one, is so expressed as if there were two, it is called HENDIADYS; as, *Pateris libanus et auro*, for *aureis pateris*, Virg.

When several words are used to express one thing, it is called PERIPHRAESIS; as, *Urbs Troja*, for *Troja*, Virg. *Res voluptatum*, for *voluptates*, Plaut. *Usus purpurarum*, for *purpura*; *Genus piscium*, for *pisces*; *Flores rosarum*, for *roseæ*, Hor.

3. HYPERBATON.

HYPERBATON is the transgression of that order or arrangement of words which is commonly used in any language. It is chiefly to be met with among the poets. The various sorts into which it is divided, are, *Anastrophe*,

Strōphe, Hyſtēron protēron, Hypallāge, Synchēſis, Tmēſis, and Parenthēſis.

1. ANASTRÖPHE is the inversion of words, or the placing of that word last which should be first ; as, *Italiām contra ; His accensa ſuper ; Spēmque metumque inter dubil ; for contra Italiām, ſuper his, inter ſpēm, &c.* Virg. *Terrām ſol facit are, for areſacit,* Lucret.

2. HYSTĒRON PROTĒRON is when that is put in the former part of the ſentence, which, according to the ſenſe, ſhould be in the latter ; as, *Valet atque vivit, for vivit atque valet,* Ter.

3. HYPALLĀGE is the exchanging of caſes ; as, *Dare claſſib⁹ auſtr⁹, for dare claſſes auſtris,* Virg.

4. SYNCHĒSIS is a confused and intricate arrangement of words ; as, *Saxa vocant Itali mediis qua in flūdib⁹ aras ; for Quæ ſaxa in mediis flūctib⁹ Itali vocant aras,* Virg. This occurs particularly in violent paſſion ; as, *Per tibi ego hunc juro fortem caſtumque crūorem,* Ovid. Faſt. ii. 841. *Per vos liberos atque parentes, sc. oro vos per liberos, &c.* Salluſt. Jug. 14.

5. TMĒSIS is the diſiſion of a compound word and the interpoſing of other words betwixt its parts ; as, *Septem ſubjēcta trioni gens, for Septentrioni,* Virg. *Quæ meo cunq⁹ animo libitum eſt facere, for quæcunq⁹,* Ter. *Quem fōrſ die-rum cunq⁹ dabit, lucro Appone,* Horat.

6. PARENTHĒSIS is the inſerting of a member into the body of a ſentence, which is neither neceſſary to the ſenſe, nor at all affects the conſtruction ; as, *Tityre, dum redeo,* (brevis eſt via), *paſſe capellas,* Virg.

III. ANALYSIS and TRANSLATION.

The diſſiculty of tranſlating either from English into Latin, or from Latin into English, arises in a great meaſure from the diſtinct arrangement of words which takes place in the two languages.

In Latin the various terminations of nouns, and the inſection of adjectives and verbs, point out the relation of one word to another, in whatever order they are placed. But in English the agreement and government of words

can only be determined from the particular part of the sentence in which they stand. Thus, in Latin, we can either say, *Alexander vicit Darium*, or *Darium vicit Alexander*, or *Alexander Darium vicit*, or *Darium Alexander vicit*; and in each of these the sense is equally obvious; but in English we can only say, *Alexander conquered Darius*. This variety of arrangement in Latin gives it a great advantage over the English, not only in point of energy and vivacity of expression, but also in point of harmony. We sometimes indeed, for the sake of variety and force, imitate in English the inversion of words which takes place in Latin; as, *Him the Eternal hurl'd*, Milton. *Whom ye ignorantly worship, him declare I unto you.* But this is chiefly to be used in poetry.

With regard to the proper order of words to be observed in translating from English into Latin, the only certain rule which can be given, is to imitate the CLASSICS.

The order of words in sentences is said to be either *simple* or *artificial*; or, as it is otherwise expressed, either *natural* or *oratorial*.

The *Simple* or *Natural* order is, when the words of a sentence are placed one after another according to the natural order of syntax.

Artificial or *Oratorial* order is, when words are so arranged, as to render them most striking, or most agreeable to the ear.

All Latin writers use an arrangement of words, which appears to us more or less artificial, because different from our own, although to them it was as natural as ours is to us. In order therefore to render any Latin author into English, we must first reduce the words in Latin to the order of English, which is called the *Analysis* or *Resolution* of sentences. It is only practice that can teach one to do this with readiness. However, to a beginner, the observation of the following rule may be of advantage.

Take *first* the words which serve to introduce the sentence, or show its dependence on what went before; *next*, the nominative, together with the words which it agrees with or governs; *then*, the verb and adverbs joined with it;

it ; and *lastly*, the cases which the verb governs, together with the circumstances subjoined, to the end of the sentence : supplying through the whole the words which are understood.

If the sentence is compound, it must be resolved into the several sentences of which it is made up ; as,

Vale igitur, mi Cicero, tibique persuade esse te quidem mibi carissimum ; sed multo fore cariorem, si talibus monumentis praeceptisque latabere, Cic. Off. lib. 3. fin.

Farewell then, my Cicero, and assure yourself that you are indeed very dear to me ; but shall be much dearer, if you shall take delight in such writings and instructions.

This compound sentence may be resolved into these five simple sentences ; 1. *Igitur, mi (fili) Cicero, (tu) vale*, 2. *et (tu) persuade tibi (ipso) te esse quidem (filium) carissimum mibi* : 3. *sed (tu persuade tibi ipso te) fore (filium) cariorem (michi in) multo (negotio)*, 4. *si (tu) latabere talibus monumentis*, 5. *et (si tu latabere talibus) praeceptis*.

1. Fare (*you*) well then, my (*son*) Cicero, 2. and assure (*you*) yourself that you are indeed (*a son*) very dear to me ; 3. but (*assure you yourself that you*) shall be (*a son*) much dearer (*to me*), 4. if you shall take delight in such writings, 5. and (*if you shall take delight in such*) instructions.

It may not be improper here to exemplify *Analogical Analysis* as it is called, or the analysis of words, from the foregoing sentence, *Vale igitur*, &c. thus,

Vale, scil. *tu* ; Fare (*thou*) well : Second person singular of the imperative mode, active voice, from the neuter verb, *Valeo, valui, valatum, valere*, to be in health, of the second conjugation, not used in the passive. *Vale* agrees in the second person singular with the nominative *tu*, by the third rule of syntax.

Igitur, then, therefore, a conjunction, importing some inference drawn from what went before.

Mi, Voc. sing. masc. of the adjective pronoun, *meus, -a, -um*, my ; derived from the substantive pronoun *Ego*, agreeing with *Cicero*, by Rule 2. *Cicero*, voc. sing. from the nominative *Cicero, -onis*, a proper noun of the third declension.

Et, and, a copulative conjunction, which connects the verb *persuade* with the verb *vale*, by Rule 60. We turn *que* into *et*, because *que* never stands by itself.

Persuade, scil. *tu*, *persuade thou*, second person singular of the imperative active, from the verb *persua-deo, -fi, sum, -dere*, to perfoade ; compounded of the preposition *per*, and *sua deo, -fi, -sum*, to advise : used impersonally in the passive ; thus, *Persuadetur mibi*, I am persuaded ; seldom or never *Ego persuadetur*. We say however in the third person, *Hoc persuadetur mibi*, I am persuaded of this.

Tibi, dat. sing. of the personal pronoun *tu*, thou ; governed by *per-juade*, according to Rule 17. *Te*, accusative sing. of *tu*, put before *esse*, according to Rule 4.

Esse, present of the infinitive, from the substantive verb *sum*, *fui*, *esse*, to be.

Quidem, indeed, an adverb, joined with *carissimum* or *esse*.

Carissimum, accusative sing. masc. from *carissimus*, *-a*, *-um*, very dear, dearest, superlative degree of the adjective *carus*, *-a*, *-um*, dear : Comparative degree *carior*, *carior*, *carius*, dearer, more dear : agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood, by Rule 1. and put in the accusative by Rule 5.

Mibi, to me, dat. sing. of the substantive pronoun *Ego*, I : governed by *carissimum*, by Rule 12.

Sed, but, an adversative conjunction, joining *esse* and *fore*.

Fore, the same with *esse futurum*, to be, or, to be about to be, infinitive of the defective verb *förem*, *-res*, *-ret*, &c. governed in the same manner with the foregoing *esse*, thus, before, Rule 4. or thus, *esse sed fore*. See Rule 60.

Multo scil. negotio, ablat. sing. neut. of the adjective *multus*, *-a*, *-um*, much, put in the ablative, according to observation 6. Rule 61. But *multo* here may be taken adverbially in the same manner with *much* in English.

Cariorēm, accus. sing. masc. from *carior*, *-or*, *-us*, the comparative of *carus*, as before : agreeing with *te* or *filium* understood. Rule 2. or Rule 5.

Si, If, a conditional conjunction, joined either with the indicative mode, or with the subjunctive, according to the sense, but oftener with the latter. See Rule 60. obs. 2.

Lætabēre, Thou shalt rejoice, second person singular of the future of the indicative, from the deponent verb *lætor*, *lætatus*, *lætāri*, to rejoice : Future, *læt-abor*, *-abēris* or *-abēre*, *abitur*, &c.

Talibus, ablat. plur. neut. of the adjective *talis*, *talis*, *talē*, such ; agreeing with *monumentis*, the ablat. plur. of the substantive noun *monumentum*, *-ti*, neut. a monument or writing ; of the second declension ; derived from *moneo*, *-ui*, *-itum*, *-ēre*, to admonish ; here put in the ablative, according to Rule 49. *Et*, a copulative conjunction, as before.

Præceptis, a substantive noun in the ablative plural, from the nominative *præceptum*, *-ti*, neut. a precept, an instruction ; derived from *præcipio*, *-cipi*, *-ceptum*, *-cipēre*, to instruct, to order, compounded of the preposition *præ*, before, and the verb *capiro*, *cēpi*, *captum*, *cāpēre*, to take. The *ā* of the simple is changed into *i* short ; thus, *præcipio*, *præcipis*, &c.

The learner may in like manner be taught to analyze the words in English, and in doing so, to mark the different idioms of the two languages.

To this may be subjoined a *Praxis*, or Exercise on all the different parts of grammar, particularly with regard to the inflexion of nouns and verbs, in the form of questions, such as these, *Of Cicero?* *Cicerō-niē*. *With Cicero?* *Cicerōnē*. *A dear son?* *Carus filius*. *Of a dear son?*

son? *Cari filii.* O my dear son? *Mi* or *meus* *care filii.* Of dearer sons? *Cariorum filiorum, &c.*

Of thee? or of you? *Tui.* With thee or you, *te.* Of you? *Vestrum* or *vestri.* With you? *Vobis.*

They shall persuade? *Persuadebunt.* I can persuade? *Persuadeam,* or much more frequently *possum* *persuadere.* They are persuaded? *Persuadetur*, or *persuasum est illis*, according to the time expressed. He is to persuade? *Est persuasurus.* He will be persuaded? *Persuadebitur*, or *persuasum erit illi.* He cannot be persuaded? *Non potest persuaderi illi.* I know that he cannot be persuaded? *Scio non posse persuaderi illi;* — that he will be persuaded? *Ei persuasum iri, &c.*

When a learner first begins to translate from the Latin, he should keep as strictly to the literal meaning of the words as the different idioms of the two languages will permit. But after he has made farther progress, something more will be requisite. He should then be accustomed, as much as possible, to transfuse the beauties of an author from the one language into the other. For this purpose it will be necessary that he be acquainted, not only with the idioms of the two languages, but also with the different kinds of style adapted to different sorts of composition, and to different subjects; together with the various turns of thought and expression which writers employ, or what are called the figures of words and of thought; or the *Figures of Rhetoric.*

IV. Different Kinds of STYLE.

The kinds of Style (*genera dicendi*) are commonly reckoned three; the low, (*humile, submissum, tenue*); the middle, (*medium, temperatum, ornatum, floridum*); and the sublime, (*sublime, grande*).

But besides these, there are various other characters of style; as, the *diffuse* and *concise*; the *feeble* and *nervous*; the *simple* and *affected*, &c.

There are different kinds of style adapted to different subjects and to different kinds of composition; the style of the Pulpit, of the Bar, and of Popular assemblies; the style of History, and of its various branches, Annals, Memoirs or Commentaries, and Lives; the style of Philosophy, of Dialogue or Colloquial discourse, of Epistles, and Romance, &c.

There is also a style peculiar to certain writers, called their *Manner*; as, the *style* of Cicero, of Livy, of Sallust, &c.

But what deserves particular attention is the difference between the style of poetry and of prose. As the poets in a manner paint what they describe, they employ various epithets, repetitions, and turns of expression, which are not admitted in prose.

The first virtue of style (*virtus orationis*) is perspicuity, or that it be easily understood. This requires, in the choice of the words, 1. *Purity*, in opposition to barbarous, obsolete, or new coined words, and to errors in Syntax: 2. *Propriety*, or the selection of the best expressions, in opposition to vulgarisms or low expressions: 3. *Precision*, in opposition to superfluity of words or a *loose style*.

The things chiefly to be attended to in the structure of a sentence, or in the disposition of its parts, are, 1. *Clearness*, in opposition to *ambiguity* and *obscurity*: 2. *Unity and Strength*, in opposition to an *unconnected*, *intricate*, and *feeble sentence*: 3. *Harmony*, or a musical arrangement, in opposition to *harshness* of sound.

The most common defects of style (*vitia orationis*) are distinguished by various names;

1. A **BARBARISM** is when a foreign or strange word is made use of; as, *crostus*, for *agellus*; *rigorosus*, for *rigidus* or *severus*; *alterare*, for *mutare*, &c. Or when the rules of Orthography, Etymology, or Prosody are transgressed; as, *charus*, for *carus*; *slavi*, for *steti*; *tibicen*, for *tibicen*.

2. A **SOLECISM** is when the rules of Syntax are transgressed; as, *Dicit libros lectos iri*, for *lectum iri*: *We was walking*, for *we were*. A barbarism may consist in one word, but a solecism requires several words.

3. An **IDIOTISM** is when the manner of expression peculiar to one language is used in another; as an *Anglicism* in Latin, thus, I am to write, *Ego sum scribēre*, for *ego sum scripturus*; It is I, *Est ego*, for *Ego sum*: Or a *Latinism*, in English, thus, *Est sapientior me*, He is wiser than me, *for than I*; *Quem dicunt me esse*? Whom do they say that I am? *for who*, &c.

4. TAUTOLOGY is when we either uselessly repeat the same words, or repeat the same sense in different words.

5. BOMBAST is when high sounding words are used without meaning, or upon a trifling occasion.

6. AMPHIBOLOGY is when by the ambiguity of the construction, the meaning may be taken in two different senses; as in the answer of the oracle to Pyrrhus, *Aio te, Æacide, Romanos vincere posse.* But the English is not so liable to this as the Latin.

V. FIGURES of RHETORIC.

Certain modes of speech are termed *Figurative*, because they convey our meaning under a borrowed form, or in a particular dress.

Figures (*figuræ* or *schemæta*) are of two kinds; figures of words, (*figuræ verborum*), and figures of thought, (*figuræ sententiarum*). The former are properly called *Tropes*; and if the word be changed the figure is lost.

I. TROPES or FIGURES of WORDS.

A *Trope* (*conversio*), is an elegant turning of a word from its proper signification.

Tropes take their rise partly from the barrenness of language, but more from the influence of the imagination and passions. They are founded on the relation which one object bears to another, chiefly that of resemblance or similitude.

The principal tropes are the *Metaphor*, *Metonymy*, *Synecdoche*, and *Irony*.

1. METAPHOR (*translatio*) is when a word is transferred from that to which it properly belongs, to express something to which it is only applied from similitude or resemblance; as, a *hard* heart; a *soft* temper; he *bridles* his anger; a *joyful* crop; *ridet* ager, the field *smiles*, &c. A metaphor is nothing else but a short comparison.

We likewise call that a metaphor, when we substitute one object in the place of another, on account of the close resemblance between them; as when, instead of *youth*, we

say, *the morning or spring-time of life*; or when, in speaking of a family connected with a common parent, we use the expressions which properly belong to a tree, whose trunk and branches are connected with a common root. When this allusion is carried on through several sentences, or through a whole discourse, and the principal subject kept out of view, so that it can only be discovered by its resemblance to the subject described, it is called an **ALLEGORY**. An example of this we have in Horace, book I. ode 14. where the republic is described under the allusion of a ship.

An **ALLEGORY** is only a continued metaphor. This figure is much the same with the *Parable*, which so often occurs in the sacred scriptures; and with the *Fable*, such as those of *Aesop*. The *Enigma* or *Riddle* is also considered as a species of the Allegory; as likewise are many *Proverbs* (*Proverbia v. Adagia*); thus, *In sylvam ligna serre*, Horat.

Metaphors are improper, when they are taken from low objects; when they are forced or far fetched; when they are mixed or too far pursued; and when they have not a natural and sensible resemblance; or are not adapted to the subject of discourse, or to the kind of composition, whether poetry or prose.

When a word is very much turned from its proper signification, it is called *Catachresis* (*abusio*); as, *a leaf of paper, of gold*, &c. *the empire flourished*; *parricida*, for any murderer; *Vir. gregis ijsse eoper*, Virg. *Altum adiuvant eapit*, Juv. *Hunc volis deriderdam propino*, for *trado*, Ter. *Eurus per Siculas equitavit undas*, Hor.

When a word is taken in two senses in the same phrase, the one proper and the other metaphorical, it is called *Syliensis* (*Comprehensio*); as, *Galathaea thymo mibi dulcior Hybla*, Virg. *Ego Surdois videar tibi amarior herbit*, Id.

2. **METONYMY** (*mutatio nominis*) is the putting of one name for another. In which sense it includes all other tropes; but it is commonly restricted to the following particulars;—1. When the cause is put for the effect; or the inventor, for the thing invented; or the author, for

for his works; as, *Boum labores*, for corn; *Mars*, for war; thus, *Æquo marte pugnatum est*, with equal advantage, Liv. *Ceres*, for grain or bread; *Bacchus*, for wine; *Venus*, for love; *Vulcanus*, for fire; thus, *Sine Cerere & Baccho friget Venus*, Ter. *Furit Vulcanus*, Virg. So a general is put for his army; *Cicero*, *Virgil*, and *Horace*, for their works: *Moses* and the *Prophets*, for their books; a beautiful *Raphael*, *Titian*, *Guido Rheni*, *Rembrant*, *Rubens*, *Vandyke*, &c. for their pictures.—2. When the effect is put for the cause; as, *Pallida mors*, *Pale death*, because it makes pale; *atra cura*, &c.—3. The container, for what is contained, and sometimes the contrary; as, *Hausti paterani*, for *vinum*, Virg. *He loves his bottle*, for drink: *Secundam mensam servis dispertiti*, i. e. *secula in mensa*, Nep. So *Roma*, for *Romani*; *Eu-rope*, for the *Europeans*; *Heaven*, for the Supreme Being; *Secernit Europen ab Afro*, for *Africa*; *In arduos tollor Sabinos*, for *in agrum Salinorum*; *Lucolum Jove*, for *Capitolio*; *Janus*, for the temple of *Janus*, Hor. *Proximus ardet Ucalegon*, for *domus Ucalegonis*, Virg. So *Sergestus*, for his ship, Id. *Æn.* v. 272.—4. The sign, for the thing signified; as, *The crown*, for royal authority; *palma* or *laurus*, for victory; *cedant arma togæ*, that is, as Cicero himself explains it, *bellum concedat paci*. *Ferri togæque consilia*, consultations about war and peace, *Stat. Sylv.* v. 1. 82.—5. An abstract, for the concrete; as, *Scelus* for *scelus*, Ter. *Audacia*, for *audax*, Cic. *Custodia*, for *custodes*, Virg. *Servitus*, for *servi*; *nobilitas*, for *nobiles*; *juventus*, for *juvenes*; *vicinia*, for *vicini*; *wires* for *strong men*, Hor. *Furta*, for *stolen oxen*, Ovid. *Fast.* i. 550.—6. The parts of the body, for certain passions or sentiments, which were supposed to reside in them; thus, *cor*, for *wisdom* or *address*; as, *habet cor*, *vir cordatus*, a man of sense, *Plaut.* But with us the *heart* is put for courage or affection, and the *head* for wisdom; thus, *a stout heart*; *a warm heart*; *a sound head*, &c. So, *to have a well hung tongue*, for *to speak with ease*, &c.

When we put what follows, to express what goes before, or the contrary, it is called *M. talepsis*, (*transmutatio*); thus, *desiderari*, to be desired or regretted, for *ia be dead*.

lost, or absent: *Sed fuisse Troes, & ingens gloria Dardanis*, i. e. are no more. *Virg. Aen.* ii. 325.

3. SYNECDOCHE (*Comprebenſio* or *conceptio*) is a trope by which a word is made to signify more or less than in its proper ſenſe; as,—1. When a *genus* is put for a *species*, or a whole for a part, and the contrary; thus, *Mortales*, for *homines*; *summa arbor*, for *summa pars arboris*; *prius quam fabula gustassent Troja*, *Xanthumque bibiffent*, for *partem fabuli*, & *fluminis Xanthi*, *Virg.* *Nat unda carina*, for *navis*; *centum puppes*, a hundred sail, or a hundred ships; *natum*, the roof, for the whole house; *capita* or *animæ*, for *homines*; *ungula*, for *equus* or *equi*, *Horat. Sat.* i. 1. 114.; the door or even the threshold, for the houſe or temple; *tum foribus divæ*, for *in templo divæ*, *Virg.* *Tempe*, for any beautiful vale, &c.—2. When a ſingular is put for a plural, and the contrary; thus, *Hostis*, *miles*, *pedes*, *eques*, for *hostes*, &c. *It is written in the prophets*, for in a book of ſome one of the prophets; *milles*, a thousand times, for many times.—3. When the materials are put for the things made of them; as, *Æs* or *argentum*, for money; *era*, for vafes of brass, trumpets, arms, &c. *ferrum*, for a ſword; *taurus*, for a bull's hide, *Virg.* *Duſt thou art*, i. e. made of duſt, &c.

When a common name is put for a proper name, or the contrary, it is called *Antonomasia* (*pronominatio*); as, the *Philofopher*, for *Aristotle*; the *Orator*, for *Demofthenes* or *Cicero*; the *Poet*, for *Homer* or *Virgil*; the *Wife man*, for *Solomon*; *Aſtu*, for *Athens*; *Urbs*, the city or town, for the capital of any country; *Pænus*, for *Hannibal*; a *Nero*, for a cruel prince; *Mæcenas*, for a patron of learning; as, *Sint Mæcenates, non deerunt, Flacce, Marones*, i. e. *sint munifici patrozi, non deerunt boni poete*, *Martial. viii. 56. 5.*

An *Antonomasia* is often made by a *Periphræſis*; as, *Pelopis porens*, for *Tantulus*; *An̄yli reus*, for *Socrates*; *Trojani belli scriptor*, for *Homer*; *Chironis alumnus*, for *Achilles*; *Potor Rhodæni*, for *Gallus*; *Jube tellus*, for *Mauritanus*, *Horat. Sc.* or by a patronymic noun; as *Anchisiædes*, for *Æneas*; *Tyndæris, -idis*, for *Helena*, &c. or by an epithet; as, *Impius reliquit*, for *Æneas*, *Virg.* ſometimes

times with the noun added ; as, *Fatālis et inceſlus judex, famosus hospes*, for *Paris*, Hor.

4. IRONY is when one means the contrary of what is said ; as, when we say of a bad poet, *he is a Virgil* ; or of a profligate person, *Tertiū e cælo cecidit Cato*.

When any thing is said by way of bitter railing, or in an insulting manner, it is called a SARCASM ; as, *Satia te sanguine, Cyre*, Justin. *Italiā metire jacens*, Virg.

When an affirmation is expressed in a negative form, it is called LITOTES ; as, *He is no fool*, for *he is a man of sense* ; *Non humili mulier*, for *nobilis*, or *superba* ; *non indecoro pulvere*, for *decoro*, Horat. When a word has a meaning contrary to its original sense, it is called ANTIPLORFIS ; as, *auri sacra fames*, for *execrabilis*, Virg. *Pensus Euxini falso nonine dictus*, i. e. *hospitialis*, Ovid.

When any thing sad or offensive is expressed in more gentle terms, it is called EUPHEMISMUS ; as, *Vitā functus*, for *mortuus* ; *conclamare suos*, to give up for lost, Liv. *Valeant*, for *abeant* ; *maclare* or *ferire*, for *occidere* ; *Fecerunt id servi Milonis, quod suos quisque servos in tali re facere voluisset*, i. e. *Clodium interfecerunt*, Cic. This figure is often the same with the *Periphrasis*.

The PERIPHRASIS, or Circumlocution, is when several words are employed to express what might be expressed in fewer. This is done either from necessity, as in translating from one language into another ; or to explain what is obscure, as in definitions ; or for the sake of ornament, particularly in poetry, as in the descriptions of evening and morning, &c.

When after explaining an obscure word or sentence by a periphrasis, one enlarges on the thought of the author, it is called a Paraphrase.

When a word imitates the sound of the thing signified, it is called Onomatopœia, (*nominis fictio*) ; as, the *whistling* of winds, *purling* of streams, *buzz* and *bum* of insects, *biss* of serpents, &c. But this figure is not properly a trope.

It is sometimes difficult to ascertain to which of the above-mentioned tropes certain expressions ought to be referred. But in such cases minute exactness is needless. It is sufficient to know in general that the expression is figurative.

There are a great many tropes peculiar to every language, which cannot be literally expressed in any other. These therefore, if possible, must be rendered by other figurative expressions equivalent: and if this cannot be done, their meaning should be conveyed in simple language; thus, *Interiora notâ Falerni*, with a glass of old Falernian wine: *Ad umbilacrum ducere*, to bring to a conclusion, Horat. These and other such figurative expressions, cannot be properly explained without understanding the particular customs to which they refer.

2. REPETITION OF WORDS.

Various repetitions of words are employed for the sake of elegance or force, and are therefore also called *Figures of Words*. Rhetoricians have distinguished them by different names according to the part of the sentence in which they take place.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of any member of a sentence, it is called ANAPHORA; as, *Nihilne te nocturnum praesidium palatii, nihil urbis vigiliae, &c.*, Cic. *Te dulcis conjux, te solo in littore secum, Te venerante die, te descendente conbat*, Virg.

When the repetition is made in the end of the member, it is called EPISTRÖME or converso; as, *Panos Papuus Romanus iugitiâ vicit, armis vicit, liberalitate vicit*, Cic. Sometimes both the former occur in the same sentence, and then it is called SYMPLÖCS or Complexio; as, *Quis legem tulit? Rullus. Quis, &c. Rullus*, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in the beginning of the first clause of a sentence, and in the end of the latter, it is called EPANALEPSIS; as, *Vidimus victoriam tuam praeliarum exitu terminatam; gladium vaginâ vacuum in urbe non vidimus*, Cic. pro Marcello.

The reverse of the former is called ANADIPLOYSIS or Reduplicatio; as, *Hic tamen vicit: vicit! in senatum venit*, Cic.

When that which is placed first in the foregoing member, is repeated last in the following, and the contrary, it is called EPANÓDOS or Regressio; as, *Crudelis tu quoque mater; Crudelis mater magis an puer impróbus ille? Impróbus ille puer, crudelis tu quoque mater*, Virg.

The passionate repetition of the same word in any part of a sentence is called EPIZUXIS; as, *Excitate, excitate eum ab inferis*, Cic. *Fuit, fuit ista virtus, &c. Id. Me, me: adsum qui fici, in me convertite ferrum*, Virg. *Bella, horrida bella*, Id. *Ibimus, ibimus*, Hor.

When we proceed from one thing to another, so as to connect by the same word the subsequent part of a sentence with the preceding, it is called CLIMAX or Gradatio; as, *Africano virtutem industria, virtus gloriam, gloria emulor comparavit*, Cic.

When the same word is repeated in various cases, moods, genders, numbers, &c. it is called POLYPTOTON; as, *Pleni sunt omnes libri, plene sapientium voces, plena exemplorum virtus, Cic. Littera litteribus contraria, fluctibus undas imprecor, arma armis, Virg.* To this is usually referred what is called SYNONYMIA, or the using of words of the same import, to express a thing more strongly; as, *Non seram, non patiar, non simam, Cic. Promitto, recipio, spondeo, Id.* And also EXPOLITIO, which repeats the same thought in different lights.

When a word is repeated the same in sound, but not in sense, it is called ANTANACLASIS; as, *Amarit jacundum est, si curatur ne quid injicit amari, Cic.* But this is reckoned a defect in style, rather than a beauty. Nearly allied to this figure is the PARONOMASIA or Agnomination, when the words only resemble one another in sound; as, *Cives bonarum artium, benarum partium; Consul pravo animo & parvo; De oratore orator fatus, Cic. Amanus sunt amentes, Ter.* This is also called a PON.

When two or more words are joined in any part of a sentence in the same cases or tenses, it is called HOMOIOPTOTON, i. e. similiter cadens; as, *Pollet auctoritate, circumfluit opibus, abundat amicit, Cic.* If the words have only a similar termination, it is called HOMOIOPTERATION, i. e. similiter definit; as, *Non ejusdem est facere fortiter, & vivere turpiter, Cic.*

3. FIGURES OF THOUGHT.

It is not easy to reduce figures of thought to distinct classes, because the same figure is employed for several different purposes. The principal are the *Hyperbole, Prosopopeia, Apostrophe, Simile, Antithesis, &c.*

1. HYPERBOLE is when a thing is magnified above the truth; as, when Virgil speaking of *Polypbēmus* says, *Ipse arduis, altaque pulsat sidera.* So, *Contraria pistes aequora sentiunt, Hor.* When an object is diminished below the truth, it is called *Tapeinosis.* The use of extravagant Hyperboles forms what is called *Bombast.*

2. PROSOPOPEIA, or *Personification*, is when we ascribe life, sentiments, or actions, to inanimate beings, or to abstract qualities; as, *Quæ (patria) tecum, Catilina, sic agit, &c. Cic. Virtus sumit aut ponit secures, Hor. Arbore nunc aquas culpante, Id.*

3. APOSTROPHE, or *Address*, is when the speaker breaks off from the series of his discourse, and addresses himself to some person present or absent, living or dead, or to inanimate nature, as if endowed with sense and reason. This figure is nearly allied to the former, and therefore

therefore often joined with it ; as, *Trojaque nunc flares,
Priamique arx alta maneres*, Virg.

4. SIMILE, or *Comparison*, is when one thing is illustrated or heightened by comparing it to another ; as, *Alexander was as bold as a lion*.

5. ANTITHESIS, or *Opposition*, is when things contrary or different are contrasted, to make them appear in the more striking light ; as, *Hannibal was cunning, but Fabius was cautious*. *Cæsar beneficis ac munificentia magnus habebatur, integritate vita Cato*, &c. Sall. Cat. 54. *Ex hac parte pudor pugnat, illinc petulantia*, &c. Cic. Similar to this figure is the *Oxumōron*, i. e. acute dictum ; as, *Amici absentes adsunt*, &c. Cic. *Impietate pia est*, Ovid. *Num capti potuere capi*, Virg.

6. INTERROGATION, (Græc. *Erotēsis*), is a figure whereby we do not simply ask a question, but express some strong feeling or affection of the mind in that form ; as, *Quousque tandem*, &c. Cic. *Creditis avecllos hostes*? Virg. *Heu ! quæ me æquora possunt accipere*, Id. Sometimes an answer is returned, in which case it is called *Subiectio* ; as, *Quid ergo ? audacissimus ego ex omnibus ? minime*, Cic. Nearly allied to this is *Expostulation*, when a person pleads with offenders to return to their duty.

7. EXCLAMATION ; (Ecp̄bonēsis) as, *O nomen dulce libertatis !* &c. Cic. *O tempora, O mores !* Id. *O patria ! O Divum domus Ilium !* &c. Virg.

8. DESCRIPTION, or *Imagery*, (Hypotyposis), when any thing is painted in a lively manner, as if done before our eyes. Hence it is also called *Vision* ; as, *Videor mihi banc urbem videre*, &c. Cic. in Cat. iv. 6. *Videre magnos jam videor duces, Non indecoro pulvere sordidos*, Hor. Here a change of tense is often used, as the present for the past, and conjunctions omitted, &c. Virg. xi. 637. &c.

9. EMPHASIS is when a particular stress is laid on some word in a sentence ; as, *Hannibal peto pacem*, Liv. *Prob ! Jupiter, ibit hic !* Virg.

10. EPANARTHESIS, or *Correction*, is when the speaker either recalls or corrects what he had last said ; as, *Filium habui, ab ! quid dixi habere me ? imò habui*, Ter.

11. PARALEPSIS, or *Omission*, is when one pretends to omit or pass by, what he at the same time declares.

12. APARITHMÉSIS, or *Enumeration*, is when what might be expressed in a few words, is branched out into several parts.

13. SYNATHROISMUS, or *Coacervatio*, is the crowding of many particulars together; as,

Faces in castra tulisse,
Implessumque foros flammis, natumque, patremque
Cum genere extinxem, memet super ipsa dedisse. Virg.

14. INCREMENTUM, or CLIMAX in sense, is when one number rises above another to the highest; as, *Facinus est vincere civem Romanum, scelus verberare, parricidium necare*, Cic. When all the circumstances of an object or action are artfully exaggerated, it is called AUXÉSIS, or *Amplification*. But this is properly not one figure, but the skilful employment of several, chiefly of the Simile and the Climax.

15. TRANSITION (*metabasis*) is when a speech is abruptly introduced; or when a writer suddenly passes from one subject to another; as, Horat. Od. ii. 13. 13. In strong passion, a change of person is sometimes used; as, Virg. Æn. iv. 365. &c. xi. 406. &c.

16. SUSPENSIO, or *Sustentatio*, is when the mind of the hearer is long kept in suspense; to which the Latin inversion of words is often made subservient.

17. CONCESSIO is the yielding of one thing to obtain another; as, *Sit fur, sit sacrilegus*, &c. *at est bonus imperator*, Cic. in Verrem, v. 1. PROLEPSIS, *Prevention* or *Anticipation*, is when an objection is started and answered. ANACOINÓSIS or *Communication*, is when the speaker deliberates with the judges or hearers; which is also called *Diaporesis* or *Addubitatio*. LICENTIA, or the pretending to assume more freedom than is proper, is used for the sake of admonishing, rebuking, and also flattering; as, *Vide quam non reformidem*, &c. Cic. pro Ligario. APOSIOPÉSIS, or *Concealment*, leaves the sense incomplete; as, *Quos ego sed præstat motor componere fluttus*, Virg.

18. SENTENTIA, (*gnome*), a sentiment, is a general maxim concerning life or manners, which is expressed in various forms; as, *Otium sine literis mors est*, Seneca. *Adeo in teneris affuefcere multum est*, Virg. PROBITAS laudatur

& alget; Misera est magni custodia census; Nobilitas sola est atque unica virtus. Juv.

As most of these figures are used by orators, and some of them only in certain parts of their speeches, it will be proper that the learner know the parts into which a regular formal oration is commonly divided. These are, 1. The *Introduction*, the *Exordium* or *Proæmium*, to gain the good will and attention of the hearers: 2. The *Narration* or *Explication*: 3. The argumentative part, which includes *Confirmation* or proof, and *Confutation* or refuting the objections and arguments of an adversary. The sources from which arguments are drawn, are called *Loci*, topics; and are either intrinsic or extrinsic; common or peculiar. 4. The *Peroration*, *Epilogue*, or *Conclusion*.

THE QUANTITY OF SYLLABLES.

The quantity of a syllable is the space of time taken up in pronouncing it.

That part of grammar which treats of the quantity and accent of Syllables, and of the measures of Verse, is called **PROSODY**.

Syllables, with respect to their quality, are either *long* or *short*.

A long syllable in pronouncing requires double the time of a short; as, *tēndērē*.

Some syllables are *common*; that is, sometimes long, and sometimes short; as the second syllable in *volucris*.

A vowel is said to be long or short by nature, which is always so by custom, or by the use of the poets.

In polysyllables or long words, the last syllable except one is called the *Penultima*, or, by contraction, the *Penult*, and the last syllable except two, the *Antepenultima*.

When the quantity of a syllable is not fixed by some particular rule, it is said to be long or short by *authority*, that is, according to the usage of the poets. Thus *le* in *lego* is said to be short by authority, because it is always made short by the Latin poets.

In most Latin words of one or two syllables, according to our manner of pronouncing, we can hardly distinguish by

by the ear a long syllable from a short. Thus *Is* in *lēgo* and *lēgi* seem to be sounded equally long; but when we pronounce them in composition, the difference is obvious; thus, *perlēgo*, *perlēgi*; *relēgo*, -ēre; *relēgo*, āre, &c.

The rules of quantity are either *General* or *Special*. The former apply to all syllables, the latter only to some certain syllables.

GENERAL RULES.

I. A vowel before another vowel is short; as, *Mēus*, *alius*: so *nibil*; *b* in verse being considered only as a breathing. In like manner in English, *creāte*, *bēhave*.

Exc. 1. *I* is long in *fīo*, *fīebam*, &c. unless when followed by *r*; as, *fīeri*, *fīerem*; thus,

Omnia jam fīent, fīeri quāe posse negabam, *Ovid*.

Exc. 2. *E* having an *i* before and after it, in the fifth declension, is long; as, *speciēi*. So is the first syllable in *āer*, *dius*, ēbeu, and the penultima in *aulāi*, *terrāi*, &c. in *Pompēi*, *Cāi*, and such like words; but we sometimes find *Pompeī* in two syllables, *Horat. Od. II. 7*.

Exc. 3. The first syllable in *obe* and *Diana* is common; so likewise is the penult of genitives in *ius*; as, *illiūs*, *uniūs*, &c. to be read long in prose. *Aliūs*, in the genit. is always long, as being contracted for *aliūs*; *alteriūs*, short.

In Greek words, when a vowel comes before another, no certain rule concerning its quantity can be given.

Sometimes it is short; as, *Danāe*, *Idēa*, *Sophiā*, *Symphonīa*, *Simōis*, *Hȳades*, *Phaōn*, *Deucalion*, *Pygmalion*, *Thebāis*, &c.

Often it is long; as, *Lycāon*, *Machāon*, *Didymāon*; *Amphīon*, *Arīon*, *Ixīon*, *Pandīon*; *Nāix*, *Lāis*, *Achāla*; *Briēcis*, *Cadmēis*; *Latōus*, & *Latōis*, *Myrrōus*, *Nerēius*, *Priamētus*; *Achelōius*, *Mi-nōlius*; *Archelāus*, *Menclāus*, *Amphiarāus*; *Āēnēas*, *Peneus*, *Epēus*, *Acrīsioneus*, *Adamantēus*, *Phoebeus*, *Gigāntēus*; *Dariūs*, *Baſilius*, *Eugenius*, *Bacchīus*; *Cassiopēa*, *Cæsatēa*, *Chāronēa*, *Cytherēa*, *Galatēa*, *Laodicēa*, *Medēa*, *Panthēa*, *Penelopēa*; *Clio*, *Euȳo*, *Elegiā*, *Iphigeniā*, *Alexandriā*, *Thalia*, *Antiochīa*, *idololatria*, *litanīa*, *politiā*, &c. *Lāertes*, *Dēiphōbus*, *Dējanīra*, *Trōes*, *herōes*, &c.

Sometimes it is common; as, *Choreā*, *platea*, *Malea*, *Nereīdes*, *canopeum*, *Orion*, *Geryon*, *Eos*, &c. So in foreign words, *Michael*, *Israel*, *Raphael*, *Abraham*, &c.

The accusative of nouns in *eūs* is usually short; as, *Orphēa*, *Salma-nēa*, *Gupbarēa*, &c. but sometimes long; as, *Idūmentēa*, *Illiōnēa*, *Virg.*

Instead of *Elegia*, *Cyberēa*, we find *Elegēia*, *Cyberēia*, Ovid. But the quantity of Greek words cannot be properly understood without the knowledge of Greek.

In English a vowel before another is also sometimes lengthened ; as, *science*, *icēa*.

II. A vowel before two consonants, or before a double consonant, is long (*by position, as it is called*) ; as,

ārma, *fāllo*, *āxis*, *gāza*, *mājor* ; the compounds of *jugum* excepted ; as, *bijūgus*, *quadrijūgus*, &c.

When the foregoing word ends in a short vowel, and the following begins with two consonants or a double one, that vowel is sometimes lengthened by position ; as,

Ferte citi flammas, date velā, scandite muros, Virg.

But this rarely occurs.

¶ A vowel before a mute and a liquid is common ;

as the middle syllable in *volucris*, *tenebræ*, thus,

Et primō similis volūcri, *mox vera volūcris*, Ovid.

Nox tenēbras profert, *Phæbus fugat inde tenēbras*, Id.

But in prose these words are pronounced short. So *peragro*, *pharetra*, *podagra*, *abiragra*, *celebris*, *latebræ*, &c.

To make this rule hold, three things are requisite. The vowel must be naturally short, the mute must go before the liquid, and be in the same syllable with it. Thus, *a* in *patris* is made common in verse, because *a* in *pater* is naturally short, or always so by custom : but *a* in *matris*, *acris*, is always long, because long by nature or *custom* in *mater* and *acer*. In like manner the penult in *salūbris*, *ambūlācrum*, is always long ; because they are derived from *salus*, *salūtis*, and *ambūlātum*. So *a* in *arte*, *ablvo*, &c. is long by position, because the mute and the liquid are in different syllables.

L and *r* only are considered as liquids in Latin words ; *m* and *n* do not take place except in Greek words.

III. A contracted syllable is long ; as,

Nil, for *nibil* ; *mī*, for *mibi* ; *cōgo*, for *coāgo* ; *alius*, for *aliīus* ; *tibīcen*, for *tibīcēn* ; *īt*, for *iīt* ; *sōdes*, for *si audes* ; *nōlo*, for *non volo* ; *bīgē*, for *bijūgē*, *scīlicet*, for *scire licet*, &c.

IV. A diphthong is always long ; as,

Aurum, *Cæsar*, *Eubæa*, &c. Only *præ* in composition before a vowel is commonly short ; as, *præire*, *præflus* ; thus,

Nec

Nec totā tamen ille prior praeunte carinā. *H*ī. *g*.

Stipitibus duris agitur sudibusque praeustis. *H*ī.

But it is sometimes lengthened ; as,

—cum vacuus domino praeiret Arion. *Statiss.*

In English we pronounce several of the diphthongs short, by sinking the sound of one vowel ; but then there is properly no diphthong.

SPECIAL RULES.

I. Concerning the FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

Preterites and Supines of two Syllables.

V. Preterites of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vēni*, *vīdi*, *vīci*.

Except *bībi*, *scēdi* from *scindo*, *fīdi* from *findo*, *tūli*, *dēdū*, and *flēti*, which are shortened.

VI. Supines of two syllables lengthen the former syllable ; as, *Vīsum*, *cāsum*, *mōtum*.

Except *sātum*, from *sēro* ; *cītum*, from *cieo* ; *lītum*, from *līno* ; *sītum*, from *sīno* ; *flātum*, from *ſīſlo* ; *ītum*, from *eo* ; *dātum*, from *do* ; *rūtum*, from the compounds of *ruo* ; *quītum*, from *queo* ; *rātus*, from *reor*.

Preterites which double the first syllable.

VII. Preterites which double the first syllable, have both the first syllables short ; as, *Cēcīdi*, *tētīgi*, *pēpūli*, *pēpēri*, *dīdīci*, *tūtūdi* : except *cēcīdi*, from *cēdo* ; *pēpēdi*, from *pēdo* ; and when two consonants intervene ; as *fēſelli*, *tētēndi*, &c.

INCREASE of NOUNS.

A noun is said to increase, when it has more syllables in any of the oblique cases than in the nominative ; as, *rex*, *rēgis*. Here *re* is called the *increase* or *crement*, and so through all the other cases. The last syllable is never esteemed a crement.

Some nouns have a double increase, that is, increase by more syllables than one ; as, *iter*, *itīnēris*.

A noun in the plural is said to increase, when in any case it has more syllables than the genitive singular ; as, *gener*, *generī*, *generōrum*.

Nouns of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions, do not increase in the singular number, unless where one vowel comes before another; as, *fructus*, *fructūi*; *res*, *rēi*; which fall under Rule I.

Third Declension.

VIII. Nouns of the third declension which increase, make *a* and *o* long; *e*, *i*, and *u* short; as,

Pietatis, *honoris*; *muliēris*, *lāpidis*, *murmūris*.

The chief exceptions from this rule are marked under the formation of the genitive in the third declension. But here perhaps it may be proper to be more particular.

A.

A noun in A shortens *atis* in the genitive; as, *dogma*, *-ātis*; *poema*, *-ātis*.

O.

O shortens *īnis*, but lengthens *ēnis* and *ōnis*; as, *Carde*, *-īnis*; *Virgo*, *-ēnis*; *Anto*, *-ēnis*; *Cisero*, *-ōnis*. Gentile or patrial nouns vary their quantity. Most of them shorten the genitive; as, *Macēdo*, *-ōnis*; *Sāno*, *-ōnis*; Some are long; as, *Sueſſōnes*, *Vettōnes*. *Brittones* is common.

I. C. D.

I shortens *-ītis*; as, *Hydromēt*, *-ītis*. E lengthens *-ētis*; as, *Halec*, *-ētis*. A noun in D shortens the crement; as, *David*, *-ādīs*.

L.

Masculines in AL shorten *āllī*; as, *Sal*, *-āllīs*; *Hannibal*, *-āllīs*; *Hastrubal*, *-āllīs*; but neuters lengthen it; as *animal*, *-āllīs*.

Sōlis from *sol* is long; also Hebrew words in *el*; as, *Mihāel*, *-ēlīs*. Other nouns in L shorten the crement; as, *Vigūl*, *-īlīs*; *confūl*, *-ūlīs*.

N.

Nouns in ON vary the crement. Some lengthen it; as, *Helicon*, *-ōnis*; *Chirou*, *ōnis*. Some shorten it; as, *Momnon*, *-ōnis*; *Aēlon*, *-ōnis*.

EN shortens *īnis*; as, *flamen*, *īnis*; *tibīcen*, *-īnis*. Other Nouns in N lengthen the penult. AN *ānis*; as, *Titūn*, *-ānis*; EN *enīs*; as, *Sīren*, *-ēnis*; IN *īnis*; as, *delphīn*, *-īnis*; VN *īnis*; as, *Phorēyn*, *īnis*.

R.

1. Neuters in AR lengthen *āris*; as, *calcar*, *-ōris*. Except the following, *bacchar*, *-āris*; *jabar*, *-āris*; *nebar*, *-āris*: Also the adjective *par*, *-āris*, and its compounds, *impar*, *āris*, *dispar*, *-āris*, &c.

2. The following nouns in R lengthen the genitive, *Nar*, *nāris*, the name of a river; *fūr*, *fūris*; *ver*, *vēris*: Also *Reimer*, *-ēris*; *Byzēr*, *-ēris*; *Ser*, *Sēris*; *Iber*, *-ēris*, proper names.

3. Greek nouns in TER lengthen *teris*; as, *crater*, *-ēris*; *charakter*, *-ēris*. Except *arter*, *-ēris*.

4. OR lengthens *ōris*; as, *amor*, *-ōris*. Except neuter nouns; as, *marmor*, *ōris*; *aqvor*, *-ōris*: Greek nouns in *tor*; as, *Hector*, *-ōris*; *Aktor*, *-ōris*; *rbutor*, *-ōris*. Also *arter*, *-ōris*, and *memor*, *-ōris*.

5. Other

5. Other nouns in R shorten the genitive; AR *aris*, masc.; as, *Cesur*, -ärir; *Hamilcar*, -ärir; *tar*, *taris*. ER *eris* of any gender; as, *aer*, *aëris*; *mulier*, -ëris; *cadäver*, -ëris; *iter*, anciently *itiner*, *itinéris*; *verbéris*, from the obsolete *verbér*. UR *uris*; as, *vultar*, -üris; *murmur*, -üris. YR *yris*; as, *Martyr*, -ýris.

AS.

1. Nouns in AS, which have *atis*, lengthen the crement; as, *pictas*, -äatis; *Macenas*, -äatis. Except *anas*, -äatis.

2. Other nouns in AS shorten the crement; as, Greek nouns having the genitive in *ädis*, *äts*, and *äsis*; thus, *Pallas*, -ädis; *artocreus*, *äts*; *Melas*, -änis, the name of a river. So *vas*, *vädis*; *mas*, *märis*; But *vas*, *väfis*, is long.

E S.

ES shortens the crement; as, *miles*, -ëts; *Ceres*, -ëris, *pes*, *pëdis*.

Except *locuples*, -ëts; *quies*, -ëts; *mansues*, -ëts; *bares*, -ëds; *merces*, -ëdis.

I S.

Nouns in IS shorten the crement; as, *lapis*, -ëdis; *Sanguis*, -ëdis; *Phyllis*, -ëdis.

Except *Glis*, *gléris*; and Latin nouns which have *itis*; as, *lis*, *litis*; *dis*, *ditis*; *Quiris*, -itis; *Sannis*, -itis: But *Cbaris*, a Greek noun, has *Cbaritis*.

The following also lengthen the crement: *Crenis*, -ëdis; *Psophis*, -ëdis; *Nefis*, -ëdis, proper names. And Greek nouns in *is*, which have also *in*; as, *Salamnis*, or -in, *Salaminis*.

O S.

Nouns in OS lengthen the crement; as, *nepos*, -öts; *flös*, *flöris*. Except *Bos*, *bövis*; *compos*, -öts; and *impos*, -öts.

U S.

US shortens the crement; as, *tempus*, -öris; *tripus*, -ödis.

Except nouns which have *üdis*, *üris*, and -üts; as, *incus*, *üdis*; *jur*, *juris*; *fulus*, -üts. But *Ligus* has *Ligäris*; the obsolete *pecus*, *pecädis*; and *intercus*, -üts.

The neuter of the comparative has öris; as, *melius*, -öris.

Y S.

YS shortens ydis or ydos; as, *eblamys*, -ëdis, or -ëdos: and lengthens ynis; as, *Trachys*, -ënis.

B S. P S. M S.

Nouns in S, with a consonant going before, shorten the penult of the genitive; as, *cælebs*, -ibis; *inops*, öpis, *biens*, *biconis*.

Except *Cyclops*, -öpis; *seps*, -ëpis; *gryps*, *grëpbis*; *Cercops*, öpis; *plebs*, *plëbis*; *hydrops*, -öpis.

T.

T shortens the crement; as, *caput*, -ëts..

X.

2. Nouns in X, which have the genitive in *gis*, shorten the crement;

ment; as, *conjux*, -*ūgis*; *remex*, -*īgīs*; *Allobrox*, -*ōgīs*; *Pbryx*, *Pbrīgīs*. But *lx*, *lēgis*; and *rex*, *rēgis*, are long; and likewise *frūgis*.

2. EX shortens *icis*; as, *vertex*, -*īcis*: except *vibex*, -*īcis*.

3. Other nouns in X lengthen the clement; as, *pax*, *fācis*; *radix*, -*īcis*; *vox*, *vōcis*; *lux*, *lūcis*; *Pollux*, *ūcis*, &c.

Except *fācis*, *īcīs*, *vīcis*, *prēcis*, *calcīs*, *cilicīs*, *pīcis*, *fornīcis*, *nīvis*, *Cappadōcis*, *ducīs*, *nūcis*, *crūcis*, *trūcis*, *onychīs*, *Erycīs*, *maslyx*, -*īcīs*, the resin of the *leutifēns*, or *mastic-tree*, and many others, whose quantity can only be ascertained by authority.

4. Some nouns vary the clement; as, *Syphax*, -*ācis*, or -*ācīs*; *Sandyx*, -*īcis*, or -*īcīs*, *Bebryx*, -*īcīs*, or -*īcīs*.

Increase of the Plural Number.

IX. Nouns of the plural number which increase, make *A*, *E*, and *O*, long; but shorten *I*, and *U*; as,

musārum, *rērum*, *dominōrum*; *rēgībus*, *portūbus*: except *bābus* or *būbus*, contracted for *bōvībus*.

INCREASE of VERBS.

A verb is said to increase, when any part has more syllables than the second person singular of the present of the indicative active; as, *amas*, *amāmus*, where the second syllable *ma* is the *increase* or *rement*; for the last syllable is never called by that name.

A verb often increases by several syllables; as, *amas*, *amābāmī*; in which case it is said to have a *first*, *second*, or *third increase*.

10. In the increase of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o*, are long, *i* and *u*, short; as,

Amāre, *docēre*, *amātōte*; *legīmus*, *sūmus*, *volumus*.

The poets sometimes shorten *dēdērunt* and *flēcrunt*; and lengthen *rīmī*, and *rīsī*, in the future of the subjunctive; as—*transfērītīs* *agītī*. Ovid. All the other exceptions from this rule are marked in the *Formation of the verb*.

The first or middle syllables of words which do not come under any of the foregoing rules, are said to be long or short by *authority*; and their quantity can only be discovered from the usage of the poets, which is the most certain of all rules.

REMARKS on the Quantity of the PENULT of Words.

1. Patronymics in *IDES* or *ADÈS* usually shorten the penult; as, *Priamïdes*, *Atlantiädes*, &c. Unless they come from nouns in *eūs*; as, *Pelïdes*, *Tyđides*, &c.

2. Patronymics, and similar words, in *AIS*, *EIS*, *ITIS*, *OIS*, *OTIS*, *INE*, and *ONE*, commonly lengthen the penult; as, *Achäis*, *Ptolemäis*, *Chryseis*, *Aeneis*, *Membritis*, *Latōis*, *Icariōis*, *Nerīne*, *Arisiōne*. Except *Thebäis*, and *Phocäis*; and *Nereis*, which is common.

3. Adjectives in *ACUS*, *ICUS*, *IDUS*, and *IMUS*, for the most part shorten the penult; as, *Ægyptiäcus*, *academicus*, *lepidus*, *legitimus*; also superlatives; as, *fortissimus*, &c. Except *opacus*, *amicus*, *apricus*, *pudicus*, *mendicus*, *posticus*, *fidus*, *infidus*, (but *perfidus*, of *per* and *fides*, is short), *bimus*, *quadrimus*, *patrimus*, *matrimus*, *opimus*; and two superlatives, *imus*, *primus*.

4. Adjectives in *ALIS*, *ANUS*, *ARUS*, *IVUS*, *ORUS*, *OSUS*, lengthen the penult; as, *dotālis*, *urbānus*, *avārus*, *estīvus*, *decorus*, *arenōsus*. Except *barbārus*, *opipārus*.

5. Verbal adjectives in *ILIS* shorten the penult; as, *agilis*, *facilis*, &c. But derivatives from nouns usually lengthen it; as *anilis*, *civilis*, *berilis*, &c. To these add, *exilis*, *subtilis*; and names of months, *Aprilis*, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*: Except *humilis*, *parilis*; and also *similis*. But all adjectives in *atilis* are short; as, *versatilis*, *volatilis*, *umbatilis*, &c.

6. Adjectives in *INUS* derived from inanimate things, as plants, stones, &c.; also from adverbs of time, commonly shorten the penult; as, *amaracinus*, *crocinus*, *cedrinus*, *faginus*, *oleaginus*; *adamantinus*, *crystallinus*, *crastinus*, *priſtinus*, *perendinus*, &c.

Other adjectives in *INUS* are long; as, *agninus*, *auſtrinus*, *binus*, *clandestinus*, *Latinus*, *marinus*, *supinus*, *veſpertinus*, &c.

7. Diminutives in *OLUS*, *OLA*, *OLUM*; and *ULUS*, *ULA*, *ULUM*, always shorten the penult; as, *urceolus*, *filiola*, *musæolum*; *leſtulus*, *ratiuncula*, *corcūlum*, &c.

8. Adverbs in *TIM* lengthen the penult; as, *oppidatim*, *virītim*, *tribūtim*. Except *affatim*, *perpetim*, and *ſtatim*.

9. Desideratives in *URIO* shorten the antepenultima, which

which in the second and third person is the penult; as, *esūrio*, *esūris*, *esūrit*. But other verbs in *urio* lengthen that syllable; as, *ligūrio*, *ligūris*; *scatūrio*, *scatūris*, &c.

PENULT OF PROPER NAMES.

The following proper names lengthen the penult. Abdēra, Abydus, Adōnis, Aēsopus, Aētōlu-, Ahāla, Alaricus, Alcides, Aētēze, Andromēdu-, Anūbis, Archimēles, Ariarāthes, Ariobarzānes, Arūtides, Aristobūlus, Aristogiton, Arpīnum, Artabānus; Brachinānes, Busīris, Bathrōtus; Cethēgus, Chalcēdon, Cleobūlus, Cyrēne, Cythēra, Curētes: Darīci, Demonicus, Diomēdes, Diōres, Dioscūri; Ebūdes, Eriphylē, Eubūlus, Euclides, Euphrātes, Eumēdes, Euripus, Euxīnus; Gaigānus, Gætūlus, Granicus; Heliogabālus, Henricus, Heraclides, Heracītus, Hippōnax, Hispānus; Inēne: Lacȳdas, Latōna, Leucāta, Lugdūnum, Lycōra; Mandāne, Mausolus, Maximus, Melcāger, Meisāla, Meisāna, Milētus; Nasīca, Nicānor, Nicētas; Pachyñus, Pandōra, Pelōris, & us, Pharsālus, Phēnīce, Polites, Polycletus, Polynices, Priāpus; Sarpedon, Serāpis, Sinōpe, Stratōnīc, Suffetes; Tigrānes. Theffalonīca, Verōna, Veronica.

The following are short. Amāthus, Amphipōlis, Anabāsīs, Anticyra, Antigōnus, & -ne, Antilōchu-, Antilōchus, Antīopa, Antīpas, Antipāter, Antiphānes, Antiphātes, Antiphila, Antīphon, Antītus, Aypūlus, Aēopāgus, Arimānum, Arniēnus, Athēsis, Attālus, Attica; Bitūrix, Brūtēri; Calāber, Calicrātes, Calistrātus, Candāce, Cantāber, Carneādes, Cherīlus, Chrysolōmus, Cleombrōtus, Cleomēnes, Corīco-, Constantīpolis, Cratērus, Cratylus, Cremēra, Crustumēri, Cybēle. Cycādes, Cyzicus; Dalmātē, Damōdes, Dardānus, Dejōces, Dejotārus, Democritus, Demipho, Didymus, Diogēnes, Dēpālum, Dumōdix; Empedōcles, Ephēsu-, Evergētes, Eumēnes, Eurymēdon, Euripylēs; Fucīnus; Geryōnes, Gyārus; Hecȳra, Heliopōlis, Hermiōne, Herodōtu-, Heliō-^{us}, Hesitōne, Hippocrātes, Hippotānos, Hypāta. Hyānis; Icārus, Icētas, Iliyris, Ipnītu-, Izmārus, Ithāca; Laodīce, Laoniēdon, Lampsācus, Lamyris, Lapīthē, Leucrētīs, Libānus, Lipāre, v. a, Lysimāchus, Longimānus; Mārāthon, Mānālus, Marmarīca, Māssagētē, Mātrōna, Megāra, Melītus, & -ta, Metropōlis, Mutīna, Mycōnus; Neōcius, Nerītos, Nořīcum; Ořphāie; Patāra, Prgāsus, Pharnācēs, Pibitrātus, Polydāmas, Polyxēna, Porsēna, or Porsenna, Praxitēles, Puteōli, Pylādes, Pythagōras; Sarmātē, Sarsīna, Semēle, Semirāmis, Sequāni, & -a, Serī hos, Sicōris, Socrātes, Sodōma, Sotādes, Spartācū-, Spōrādes, Strongylē, Stīmphālus, Sybāris; Taygētus, Telegōnus, Teleāchus, Teiōdōs, Tarrāco, Theophānes, Theophilus, Tomyris; Urbīcus; Venēti, Vologētūs, Volūsus; Xenocrātes: Zoīlus, Zopyrus.

The penult of several words is doubtful; thus, *Batāvi*, *Lucan*. *Batāvi*, *Juv.* & *Mart.* *Fortuitus*, *Horat.* *Fortuitus*, *Mart.* Some make *fortuitus* of three syllables; but it may be shortened like *gratuitus*, *Stat.* *Patrimus*, *matrimus*, *prāfōlōr*, &c. are by some lengthened, and by some shortened; but for their quantity, there is no certain authority.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A.

XI. *A* in the end of a word declined by cases is short ; as, *Musā*, *templā*, *Tydeā*, *lampādā*.

Exc. The ablative of the first declension is long ; as, *Musā*, *Ænēā* ; and the vocative of Greek nouns in *as*, as, *O Æneā*, *O Pallā*.

A in the end of a word not declined by cases is long ; as, *Amā*, *frustrā*, *prætercā*, *ergā*, *intrā*.

Exc. *Itā*, *quiā*, *ejā*, *posteā*, *putā*, (adv.) are short ; and sometimes, though more rarely, the prepositions *contrā*, *ultrā*, and the compounds of *ginta* ; as, *trigintā*, &c. *Contra* and *ultra*, when adverbs, are always long.

E.

XII. *E* in the end of a word is short ; as,

Natē, *sedilē*, *patrē*, *currē*, *nempē*, *antē*.

Exc. 1. Monosyllables are long ; as, *mē*, *tē*, *sē* ; except these enclitic conjunctions, *que*, *vē*, *nē* ; and these syllabical adjectives, *piē*, *cē*, *tē* ; as, *suaptē*, *hujuscē*, *tutē* ; but these may be comprehended under the general rule, as they never stand by themselves.

Exc. 2. Nouns of the first and fifth declension are long ; as, *Calliōpē*, *Anchisē*, *fulē*. So *rē-*, and *diē*, with their compounds, *quarē*, *bodiē*, *pridiē*, *postridiē*, *quotidiē* : Also Greek nouns which want the singular, *Cetē*, *mele*, *Tempē* ; and the second person singular of the imperative of the second conjugation ; as, *Docē*, *manē* ; but *cave*, *vale*, and *vide*, are sometimes short.

Exc. 3. Adverbs derived from adjectives of the first and second declension are long ; as, *placidē*, *pulchrē*, *valdē*, contracted for *validē* : To these add *sermē*, *serē*, and *ohē* ; also all adverbs of the superlative degree ; as *dotissimē*, *fortissimē* : But *benē* and *male* are short.

I.

XIII. *I* final is long ; as, *Domini*, *patri*, *doceri*.

Exc. 1. Greek vocatives are short ; as, *Alexi*, *Amarylli*.

Exc. 2. The dative of Greek nouns of the third declension which increase, is common ; as, *Pallādi*, *Minoīdi*.

Mibi,

Mibi, tibi, sibi, are also common: So likewise are *ibi, nisi, ubi, quasi*; and *cui*, when a dissyllable, which in poetry is seldom the case. *Sicubi* and *necubi* are always short.

O.

XIV. *O* final is common; as, *Virgo, Amo, quando.*

Exc. 1. Monosyllables in *o* are long; as, *ō, dō, flō, prō*: The dative and ablative sing. of the second declension is long: as, *lībrō, dominō*: Also Greek nouns, as, *Didō*, and *Atbō* the genit. of *Atbos*, and adverbs derived from nouns; as, *certō, falsō, paulō*. To these add *quō, eō*, and their compounds, *quōvis, quōcunque, adeō, ideō*; likewise *illō, ideircō, cūrō, intrō, retrō, ultrō*.

Exc. 2 The following words are short; *Egō, sciō, cedō*, a defective verb, *homō, citō, illīcō, immō, duō, ambō, modō*, with its compounds, *quomodō, dummodō, postmodō*: but some of these are also found long.

Exc. 3. The gerund in *DO* in Virgil is long; in other poets it is short. *Ergō*, on account of, is long; *ergo*, therefore, is doubtful.

U and Y.

XV. *U* final is long; *Y* final is short; as, *Vultū: Molj.*

B, D, L, M, R, T.

XVI. *B, D, L, R*, and *T*, in the end of a word, are short; as,

Ab, apūd, semēl, precōr, capūt.

The following words are long, *sāl, sōl, nīl; pār* and its compounds, *impar, dispar, &c.; fār, lār, Nār, cūr, fūr*; also nouns in *er* which have *ēris* in the genitive; as, *Cratēr, vēr, Ibēr*; likewise *aēr, aēhēr*: to which add Hebrew names; as, *Jōb, Daniēl, Davīd.*

M final anciently made the foregoing vowel short: as, *Militūm oēs, Ennius*. But by later poets, *m* in the end of a word is always cut off, when the next word begins with a vowel; thus, *mi'it' oēs*; except in compound words; as, *circūmāgo, circūmēa.*

C, N.

XVII. *C* and *N*, in the end of a word, are long; as,

Ac, sic, nōn. So Greek nouns in *n* ; as, *Titān, Sirēn, Salamīn* ; *Æneān, Anchisēn, Circēn* ; *Lacedæmon*, &c.

The following words are short, *nēc* and *donec* ; *forsūn, īn, forsān, tamēn, än, vidēn* ; likewise nouns in *en* which have *īnis* in the genitive ; as *carmēn, crimēn* ; together with several Greek nouns ; as, *Iliōn, Pylōn, Alexīn*.

The pronoun *hic* and the verb *fac* are common.

AS, ES, OS.

XVIII. *AS, ES, and OS*, in the end of a word, are long ; as, *Mās, quiēs, bonōs*.

The following words are short, *anās, īs, from sum*, and *penēs* ; *ōs*, having *ōsis* in the genitive, *compōs*, and *impōs* ; also a great many Greek nouns of all these three terminations ; as, *Arcās* and *Arcādās, herōās, Phrygēs, Arcadōs, Tenēdōs, Mēlōs, &c.* and Latin nouns in *es*, having the penult of the genitive increasing short ; as, *Alōs, hebēs, obsēs*. But *Cerēs, pariēs, ariēs, abiēs*, and *pēs* with its compounds, are long.

IS, US, YS.

XIX. *IS, US, and YS*, in the end of a word, are short ; as,

Turriš, legiš, legimūs, annūs, Capiš.

Exc. 1. Plural cases in *is* and *us* are long ; as, *Pennīs, librīs, nobīs, omnīs, for omnes, fruclūs, manūs* : also the genitive singular of the fourth declension ; as, *portūs*. But *bus* in the dat. and abl. plur. is short ; as, *floribūs, fruclibūs, rebūs*.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *is* are long, which have the genitive in *ītis, īnis, or entis* ; as, *ītis, Samnīs, Salamīn, Simoīs* : To these add the adverbs *gratiš* and *foriš* ; the noun *gliš*, and *vīs*, whether it be a noun or a verb ; also *is* in the second person singular, when the plural has *ītis* ; as, *audīs, abīs, possīs*. *Ris* in the future of the subjunctive is common.

Exc. 3. Monosyllables in *us* are long ; as, *grus, sūs* : also nouns which in the genitive have *ūris, ūdis, ūtis, un-
tis, or ūdīs* ; as, *tellūs, incūs, virtūs, amāthūs, triplūs*. To these add the genitive of Greek nouns of the third declension ;

declension ; as, *Clūs*, *Sapphūs*, *Mantūs* ; also nouns which have *u* in the vocative ; as, *Panthūs*.

Exc. 4. *Tetbys* is sometimes long, and nouns in *ys*, which have likewise *yn* in the nominative ; as, *Phorcȳs*, *Trachȳs*.

¶ The last syllable of every verse is common ;

Or, as some think, necessarily long on account of the pause or suspension of the voice, which usually follows it in pronunciation.

The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVE and COMPOUND Words.

I. DERIVATIVES.

XX. Derivatives follow the quantity of their primitives ; as,

Āmīcus, <i>from</i> āmo.	Decōrō, <i>from</i> decus, -ōris.
Auctiōnor, auctiō, -ōnis.	Exūlo, exul, -ūlis.
Auctōro, auctōr, -ōris.	Pāvidus, pāveo.
Auditor, audītūm.	Quirīto, Quiris, -ītis.
Auspīcor, auspex, īcis.	Radīcītūs, radix, -īcis.
Caupōnor, caupo, -ōnis.	Sospīto, sospes, -ītis.
Compētītor, compētūm,	Nātūra, nātūs.
Cornīcor, cornīx, -īcis.	Māternus, māter.
Custōdīo, custos, -ōdis.	Lēgebam, &c.
Decōrus, decor, -ōris.	Lēgeram, &c.

E X C E P T I O N S.

1. Long from short.

Dēni, <i>from</i> dēcem.	Suspīcio, <i>from</i> suspīcor.	Mōbilis, <i>from</i> mōveo.
Fōmes, fōveo.	Sēdes, sēdeo.	Hūmor, hūmus.
Hūmanus, hōmo.	Sēcius, sēcus.	Jūmentum, jūvo.
Rēgula, rēgo.	Pēnuria, pēnus.	Vox, vōcis, vōco, &c.

2. Short from long.

Arena and ārista, <i>from</i> āreo.	Lūcerna, <i>from</i> lūceo.
Nōta, and nōto,	nōtus.
Vādum,	vādo.
Fides,	fido.
Sōpor,	sōpio.

2. COMPOUNDS.

XXI. Compounds follow the quantity of the simple words which compose them ; as,

Dēdūco,

Dēdūco, of *dē* and *dūco*. So, *prōfēro*, *antīfēro*, *consōlor*, *dēnāto*, *dēpecūlor*, *deprāvo*, *despēro*, *despūmo*, *desquāmo*, *enōdo*, *ērūdio*, *exūdo*, *exāro*, *expāveo*, *incēro*, *inhūmo*, *invēstīgo*, *prēgrāvo*, *prēnāto*, *rēgēlo*, *appāro*, *appāreo*, *concāvus*, *prēgrāvis*, *dēsōlo*, *suffōco* & *suffōco*, *diffidit* from *diffindo*, and *diffidit* from *diffido*, *indīco* and *indīco*, *permānet* from *permāneo*, and *permānet* from *permāno*, *effōdit* in the present, and *effōdit* in the perfect; so *exēdit* and *exēdit*; *devēnit* and *devēnit*; *devēnimus* and *devēnlmus*; *reperīmus* and *reperīmus*; *effūgit* and *effūgit*, &c.

The change of a vowel or diphthong in the compound does not alter the quantity; as, *incīdo* from *in* and *cādo*; *īncīdo*, from *in* and *cādo*, *suffōco*, from *sub* and *faux*, *faucis*. Unless the letter following make it fall under some general rule; as, *ādmitto*, *pērcello*, *dēfēculor*, *prōbībeo*.

Ex. 1. *Agnītum*, *cognītum*, *dējēro*, *pējēro*, *innībā*, *pronībā*, *maledīcus*, *veridīcus*, *nībīlum*, *semisōpītūs*; from *nōtus*, *jūro*, *nūbo*, *dīco*, *hīlum*, and *sōpīo*: *ambītūs*, a participle from *ambīo*, is long; but the substantives *ambītūs* and *ambītīo* are short. *Connubīum* has the second syllable common.

Exc. 2. The preposition *PRO* is short in the following words: *prōfundus*, *prōfugio*, *prōfūgus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōnēptīs*, *prōfētīs*, *prōfari*, *prōfīteor*, *prōfānus*, *prōfēctō*, *prōcella*, *prōtervus*, and *prōpāgo*, a lineage; *pro* in *prōpāgo*, a vine-stock or shoot, is long. *Pro* in the following words is doubtful: *propago*, to propagate; *propīno*, *profundo*, *propello*, *propulso*, *procūro*, and *Proserpīna*.

Exc. 3. The inseparable prepositions *SE* and *DI* are long; as, *sēpāro*, *dīvello*: except *dīrimo*, *dīsertus*. *Re* is short; as, *rēmitto*, *rēfēro*: except in the impersonal verb *rēfērt*, compounded of *res* and *fēro*.

Exc. 4. *E*, *I*, *O*, in the end of the former compounding word are usually shortened; as, *trēcentī*, *nēfas*, *nēque*, *patēfacīo*, &c. *Caprīcornus*, *omnipotēns*, *agricōla*, *signīfīco*, *bīformis*, *alīger*, *Trīvia*, *tubīcen*, &c. *duōdēcīm*, *hōdie*, *sacrōsanctūs*, &c. But from each of these there are many exceptions. Thus *i* is long when it is varied by cases; as, *quīdam*, *quīvis*, *tantīdem*, *eīdem*, &c. And when the compounding words may be taken separately;

rately ; as, *ludīmagister*, *lucrīfacio*, *sīquis*, &c. *Idem* in the masc. is long, in the neuter short ; also *ubīque*, *ibīdem*. But in *ubīvis* and *ubicunque*, the *i* is doubtful.

A C C E N T.

Accent is the tone of the voice with which a syllable is pronounced.

In every word of two or more syllables, one syllable is sounded higher than the rest, to prevent monotony, or an uniformity of sound, which is disagreeable to the ear.

When accent is considered with respect to the sense, or when a particular stress is laid upon any word, on account of the meaning, it is called *Emphāsis*.

There are three accents, distinguished by their different sounds ; *acute*, *grave*, and *circumflex*.

1. The *acute* or *sharp* accent raises the voice in pronunciation, and is thus marked ['] ; as, *prófero*, *prófer*.

2. The *grave* or *base* accent depresses the voice, or keeps it in its natural tone ; and is thus marked ['] ; as, *dodē*, *This* accent properly belongs to all syllables which have no other.

3. The *circumflex* accent first raises, and then sinks the voice in some degree on the same syllable ; and is therefore placed only upon long syllables. When written, it has this mark, made up of the two former [^] ; as, *amāre*.

The accents are hardly ever marked in English books, except in dictionaries, grammars, spelling-books, or the like, where the acute accent only is used.

The accents are likewise seldom marked in Latin books, unless for the sake of distinction ; as in these adverbs, *aliquò*, *continuò*, *doctè*, *unà*, &c. to distinguish them from certain cases of adjectives, which are spelt in the same way. So *poëtā*, *gloriā*, in the ablative : *fructūs*, *tu-multūs*, in the genitive : *nostrūm*, *vestrūm*, the genitive of *nos* and *vos* : *ergā*, on account of ; *occidit*, he flew ; *Pompili*, for *Pompili* ; *amāris*, for *amaveris*, &c.

V E R S E.

A VERSE is a certain number of long and short syllables disposed according to rule.

It is so called, because when the number of syllables requisite is completed, we always *turn* back to the beginning of a new line.

The parts into which we divide a verse, to see if it have its just number of syllables, are called *Feet*.

A verse is divided into different feet, rather to ascertain its measure or number of syllables, than to regulate its pronunciation.

F E E T.

Poetic feet are either of two, three, or four syllables. When a single syllable is taken by itself, it is called a *Cœsura*, which is commonly a long syllable.

1. *Feet of two syllables.*

Spondeus, consists of two long ; as, *ōmnēs*.

Pyrrhichius, two short ; as, *dēūs*.

Iambus, a short and a long ; as, *āmāns*.

Trochæus, a long and a short ; as, *sērvūs*.

2. *Feet of three syllables.*

Dactylus, a long and two short ; as, *scribērē*.

Anapestus, two short and a long ; as, *piētās*.

Amphimäcer, a long, a short, and a long ; as, *chārūtās*.

Tribrahys, three short ; as, *dōmīnūs*.

The following are not so much used.

<i>Molossus</i> ,	<i>dēlēclānt.</i>	<i>Antispastus</i> ,	<i>Ālexāndrē.</i>
-------------------	-------------------	----------------------	-------------------

<i>Amphibrachys</i> ,	<i>bōnōrē.</i>	<i>Ionicus minor</i> ,	<i>prōpérābānē.</i>
-----------------------	----------------	------------------------	---------------------

<i>Bacchius</i> ,	<i>dōlōrēs.</i>	<i>Ionicus major</i> ,	<i>cālcāribūs.</i>
-------------------	-----------------	------------------------	--------------------

<i>Antibacchius</i> ,	<i>pēllūntūr.</i>	<i>Pæon primus</i> ,	<i>tēmpōribūs.</i>
-----------------------	-------------------	----------------------	--------------------

3. *Feet of four syllables.*

<i>Proceleusmaticus</i> ,	<i>bōmīnībūs.</i>	<i>Pæon tertius</i> ,	<i>ānlmātūs.</i>
---------------------------	-------------------	-----------------------	------------------

<i>Dispondeus</i> ,	<i>ōrātōrēt.</i>	<i>Pæon quartus</i> ,	<i>cēlērītās.</i>
---------------------	------------------	-----------------------	-------------------

<i>Dijambus</i> ,	<i>āmānītās.</i>	<i>Epitritus primus</i> ,	<i>vōlūptātēs.</i>
-------------------	------------------	---------------------------	--------------------

<i>Choriambus</i> ,	<i>pōntificēs.</i>	<i>Epitritus secundus</i> ,	<i>pēnitētēs.</i>
---------------------	--------------------	-----------------------------	-------------------

<i>Ditrochæus</i> ,	<i>Gāntilēnā.</i>	<i>Epitritus tertius</i> ,	<i>dīscōrdītās.</i>
---------------------	-------------------	----------------------------	---------------------

SCANNING.

The measuring of verse, or the resolving of it into the several feet of which it is composed, is called *Scanning*.

When a verse has just the number of feet requisite, it is called *Verus Acataleptus* or *Acontalepticus*, an Acatalectic verse : If a syllable be wanting, it is called *Catalecticus* ; if there be a syllable too much, *Hypercatalepticus*, or *Hypermetre*.

The ascertaining whether the verse be complete, defective, or redundant, is called *Depositio* or *Clausula*.

DIFFERENT KINDS OF VERSE.

I. HEXAMETER.

The Hexameter or heroic verse consists of six feet. Of these the fifth is a dactyle, and the sixth a spondee ; all the rest may be either dactyles or spondees ; as,

Lūdcrē | quæ vēl- | lēm cālī- | mō pēr- | mīsīt ȳ- | grēstī. *Virg.*
Iusfān- | dūm Rē- | gīnā, jū- | bēs rēnō- | vārē dō- | lōrēm. *Id.*

A regular Hexameter line cannot have more than seventeen syllables, or fewer than thirteen.

Sometimes a spondee is found in the fifth place, whence the verse is called *Spondaic* ; as,

Cārā Dē- | ūm sōbō- | lēs mā- | gnūm Jōvīs | incrē- | mēntūm. *Virg.*

This verse is used, when any thing grave, slow, large, sad, or the like, is expressed. It commonly has a dactyle in the fourth place, and a word of four syllables in the end.

Sometimes there remains a superfluous syllable at the end. But this syllable must either terminate in a vowel, or in the consonant *m*, with a vowel before it ; so as to be joined with the following verse, which in the present case must always begin with a vowel ; as,

Omniā | Mērcūrī- | ō sīmī- | lī, vō- | cēmquē cō- | lōrēmque
Et flavos crines ————— *Virg.*

Those Hexameter verses found best, which have dactyles and spondees alternately ; as,

Ludere quæ vellem calamo permisit agresti. *Virg.*

Pinguis et ingraīæ premeretur cæsus urbi. *Id.*

Or which have more dactyles than spondees ; as,

Tityre tu patulæ recubans sub tegmine fagi.

It

It is esteemed a great beauty in an Hexameter verse, when by the use of dactyles and spondees, the sound is adapted to the sense ; as,

Quadrupedante putrem sonitu quatit ungula campum. *Virg.*

Illi inter se se magna vi brachia tollunt. *Id.*

Monstrum horridum, informe, ingens, cui lumen ademptum.
Accipiunt inimicum imbrem, simisque fatiscunt. *Id.*

But what deserves particular attention in scanning Hexameter verse is the CÆSURA.

Cæsura is, when after a foot is completed, there remains a syllable at the end of a word to begin a new foot ; as,

At rē-ginā grā-vi jām-dudum, &c.

The *Cæsura* is variously named according to the different parts of the hexameter verse in which it is found. When it comes after the first foot, or falls on the third half-foot, it is called by a Greek name, *Triemimēris* : When on the fifth half foot, or the syllable after the second foot, it is called *Penthemimēris* : When it happens on the first syllable of the fourth foot, or the seventh half-foot, it is called *Hephthēmimēris* : and when on the ninth half-foot, or the first syllable of the fifth foot, it is called *Ennēamimēris*.

All these different species of the *Cæsura* sometimes occur in the same verse ; as,

Illē lā-tūs nīvē-ūm mol-lī fūl-tūs hÿā-cinthō. *Virg.*

But the most common and beautiful *Cæsura* is the penthemim ; on which some lay a particular accent or stress of the voice in reading an hexameter verse thus composed, whence they call it the *Cæsural pause* ; as,

Tityre dum rede-O, brevis est via, pasce capellas. *Virg.*

When the *Cæsura* falls on a syllable naturally short, it renders it long ; as, the last syllable of *fultus* in the foregoing example.

The chief melody of an hexameter verse in a great measure depends on the proper disposition of the *Cæsura*. Without this a line consisting of the number of feet requisite will be little else than mere prose ; as,

Rōmā mōniā tērrūt īmpīgēr Hannibāl ārmīa. *Ennius.*

The ancient Romans in pronouncing verse paid a particular attention to its melody. They not only observed the quantity and accent of the several syllables, but also the different stops and pauses which the particular turn of the verse required. In modern times we do not fully perceive the melody of Latin verse, because we have now lost the just pronunciation of that language, the people of every country pronouncing it in a manner similar to their own. In reading Latin verse, therefore, we are directed by the same rules which take place with respect to English verse.

The tone of the voice ought to be chiefly regulated by the sense. All the words should be pronounced fully; and the cadence of the verse ought only to be observed, so far as it corresponds with the natural expression of the words. At the end of each line there should be no fall of the voice, unless the sense requires it; but a small pause, half of that which we usually make at a comma.

2. PENTAMETER.

The Pentameter verse consists of five feet. Of these the two first are either dactyles or spondees; the third always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth, an anapaestus; as,

Nātū- | ræ sēquī- | tūr | mīoā quīs- | quē sūz. *Propert.*
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs tēnī- | pūs īn ôm- | nē mēis. *Ovid.*

But this verse is more properly divided into two hemi-sticks or halves; the former of which consists of two feet, either dactyles or spondees, and a Cæsura; the latter, always of two dactyles and another Cæsura: thus,

Nātū- | :æ sēquī- | tūr | rēmīnā | quīsquē sū- | æ.
Cārmīnī- | būs vī- | vēs | tēmpūs īn | omnē mē- | is.

The Pentameter usually ends with a dissyllable, but sometimes also with a polysyllable.

3. ASCLEPIADEAN.

The Asclepiadēan verse consists of four feet; namely, a spondee, twice a choriambus, and a pyrrhichius; as,

Mæ.é- | nās ätāvīs | édītē rē- | gībūs. *Hor.*

But this verse may be more properly measured thus: In the first place, a spondee; in the second, a dactyle; then a cæsura; and after that two dactyles; thus,

Mæc- | nās apa- | vis | edītē | regibus.

4. GLYCONIAN.

The Glyconian verse has three feet, a spondee, choriambus, and pyrrhichius ; as,

Nāvis | quæ tibī crē- | dītūm. *Horat.*

Or it may be divided into a spondee and two dactyles ; thus,

Navis | quæ tibi | creditum.

5. SAPPHIC and ADONIAN.

The Sapphic verse has five feet, viz. a trochée, spondee, dactyle, and two trochees ; thus,

Intē- | gēr vi- | tæ, scēlē- | rīsquē | pūrūs. *Horat.*

An Adonian verse consists only of a dactyle and spondee ; as,

Jūpītēr | ūrgēt. *Horat.*

6. PHERECRATIAN.

The Pherecratian verse consists of three feet, a spondee, dactyle, and spondee ; thus,

Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs. *Horat.*

7. PHALEUCIAN.

The Phaleucian verse consists of five feet, namely, a spondee, a dactyle, and three trochees ; as,

Sūmmām | nēc mētū- | ās dī- | ēm, nēc | ūptēs. *Martial.*

8. The GREATER ALCAIC.

The greater Alcaic, called likewise *Dactylic*, consists of four feet, a spondee or iambus, iambus and cæsura, then two dactyles ; as,

Vīrtūs | rēpūl- | sē | nēscīā | sōrdīdā. *Horat.*

9. ARCHILOCHIAN.

The Archilochian iambic verse consists of four feet. In the first and third place, it has either a spondee or iambus ; in the second and fourth, always an iambus ; and in the end, a Cæsura ; as,

Nēc sū- | mīt, aūt | pōnīt | sēcū- | rēs. *Horat.*

10. The LESSER ALCAIC.

The lesser Dactylic Alcaic consists of four feet, namely, two dactyles and two trochees; as,

Arbītrī- | ô pōpū- | lārīs | aūræ, *Horat.*

Of the above kinds of verse, the first two take their names from the number of feet of which they consist. All the rest derive their names from those by whom they were either first invented, or frequently used.

There are several other kinds of verse, which are named from the feet by which they are most commonly measured; such as the dactylic, trochaic, anapestic, and iambic. The last of these is most frequently used.

11. IAMBIC.

Of Iambic verse there are two kinds. The one consists of four feet, and is called by a Greek name *Dimēter*; the other consists of six feet, and is called *Trimēter*. The reason of these names is, that among the Greeks two feet were considered only as one measure in iambic verse; whereas the Latins measured it by single feet, and therefore called the dimeter *quaternarius*, and the trimeter *senarius*. Originally this kind of verse was purely iambic, *i. e.* admitted of no other feet but the iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Inār- | sūt x- | flūō- | sūis. *Horat.*

Trimeter, Sūis | ēt i- | psā Rō- | mā vi- | rībūs | rūt. *Id.*

But afterwards, both for the sake of ease and variety, different feet were admitted into the uneven or odd places; that is, in the first, third, and fifth places, instead of an iambus, they used a spondee, a dactyle, or an anapestus, and sometimes a tribrachys. We also find a tribrachys in the even places, *i. e.* in the second place, and in the fourth; for the last foot must always be an iambus; thus,

Dimeter, Cānīdī- | ā trā- | flāvīt | dāpēs. *Horat.*

Vidē- | rē prōpē- | rāntēs | dōmūm. *Id.*

Trimeter, Qōquō | flēlē- | flī rūs- | tīs aūt | cūr dēx- | tērīs. *Id.*

Pāvidūm- | quē lēpō- | r' aūt ad | vēnām | lāquēō | grūcān. *Id.*

Alītī- | būsāt- | quē tānī- | būshōmī- | cīd' Hē- | flōrēm.

In comic writers we sometimes find an iambic verse consisting of eight feet, therefore called *Tetrameter* or *Oōtonarius*.

FIGURES in SCANNING.

The several changes made upon words to adapt them to the verse, are called *Figures in Scanning*. The chief of these are the *Synalœpha*, *Ecthlipsis*, *Synæresis*, *Diæresis*; *Systole*, and *Diastole*.

1. **SYNALŒPHA** is the cutting off of a vowel or diphthong, when the next word begins with a vowel; as,

Conticuere omnes, intentique ora tenebant. *Virg.*

to be scanned thus,

Conticū- | ēr' ōm- | uēs in- | tēntī- | qu' ōrā tē- | nēhānt.

The *Synalœpha*, is sometimes neglected; and seldom takes place in the interjections, *ô*, *heu*, *ab*, *prob*, *ve*, *vab*, *bei*; as,

O pater, ô hominum, Divūmque æterna potestas. *Virg.*

Long vowels and diphthongs, when not cut off, are sometimes shortened; as,

Insulæ Ionio in magno, quas dira Celæno. *Virg.*

Credimus? an, qui amant, ipsi sibi somnia fingunt. *Id.*

Victor apud rapidum Simočnta sub Ilio alto.

Ter sunt conati imponere Pelio Ossam.

Glaucō et Panopeæ, et Inoo Melicertæ.

2. **ECTHLIPSIS** is, when *m* is cut off, with the vowel before it in the end of a word, because the following word begins with a vowel; as,

O curas hominum! O quantum est in rebus inane! *Perf.*
thus,

O cū- | rās hömī- | n', ô quān- | t' est in | rēbūs īn- | ānē.

Sometimes the *Synalœpha* and *Ecthlipsis* are found at the end of the verse; as,

Sternitur infelix alieno vulnere, cœlumque

Adspicit, et dulces moriens reminiscitur Argos. *Virg.*

Jamque iter emensi, turres ac tecta Latinorum

Ardua cernebant juvenes, murosque subibant. *Id.*

These verses are called *Hypermetri*, because a syllable remains to be carried to the beginning of the next line; thus, *qu' Adspicit*; *r' Ardua*.

3. **SYNÆRESIS** is the contraction of two syllables into one, which is likewise called *Crafis*; as *Phæthon* for *Phæthōn*.

thoñ. So *ei* in *Thesei*, *Orphei*, *deinde*, *Pompei*; *ui* in *huiç*, *cui*; *öi*, in *proinde*; *ëä*, in *aurea*; thus,

Notus amor Phædræ, nota est injuria *Thesei*. *Ovid.*

Proinde *tona eloquio*, solitum *tibi*. *Virg.*

Filius *huic contrâ*, *torquet qui fidera mundi*. *Id.*

Aurea percussum virgâ, *versumque venenis*. *Id.*

So in *antebac*, *eadem*, *alvearia*, *deest*, *deerit*, *vehemens*, *anteit*, *eodem*, *alveo*, *graveolentis*, *omnia*, *semianimis*, *semihomo*, *fluviorum*, *totius*, *promontorium*, &c. as,

Unâ cådemque viâ sanguisque animusque ferentur. *Virg.*

Seu lento fuerint alvearia vimine texta. *Id.*

Vilis amicorum est annona, bonis ubi quid deest. *Hor.*

Divitis uber agri, *Troiaeque opulentia deerit*. *Virg.*

Vehemens et liquidus puroque simillimus amni. *Hor.*

Te semper anteit dira necessitas. *Alcæus. Hor.*

Uno eodemque igni, sic nostro *Daphnis amore*. *Virg.*

Cum refluit campis, & jam se condidit alveo. *Id.*

Inde ubi venere ad fauces *graveolentis Averni*. *Id.*

Bis patriæ cecidere manus: quin protinus omnia. *Id.*

Cædit semianimis *Rutulorum calcibus arva*. *Id.*

Semihominis *Caci facies quam dira tenebat*. *Id.*

Fluviorum rex *Eridanus*, camposque per omnes. *Id.*

Magnanimosque duces, totiusque ex ordine gentis. *Id.*

Inde legit Capreas, *promontoriumque Minervæ*. *Ovid.*

To this figure may be referred the changing of *i* and *u* into *j* and *v*, or pronouncing them in the same syllable with the following vowel; as in *genva*, *tenvis*; *arjetat*, *tenvia*, *abjete*, *pitvita*; *parjetibus*, *Nafidjenus*; for *genua*, *tenuis*, &c. as,

Propterea qui corpus aquæ naturaque *tenvis*. *Iuer.*

Genva labant, gelido concrevit frigore sanguis. *Virg.*

Arjetat in portas & duros objice postea. *Id.*

Velleraque ut foliis depectant *tenvia* Seres. *Id.*

Ædificant, *sestâque intexunt* *abjete* costas. *Id.*

Præcipue *fanus*, nisi cum *pitvita* molesta est. *Hor.*

Parjetibusque premunt arctis, & *quatuor* addunt. *Virg.*

Ut *Nafidjeni* juvit te *ecena* *beati*. *Hor.*

4. DIÆRESIS divides one syllable into two; as, *aulai*, for *aulæ*; *Troiae*, for *Troja*; *Persëus*, for *Perseus*; *milius*, for *milius*; *soluit*, for *solvit*; *voluit*, for *volvit*; *aquæ*, *sue-*
tus, *sueñit*, *Suevos*, *relanguit*, *reliquas*, for *aquæ*, *suetus*, &c.

Aulai in medio libabant pocula Bacchi. *Virg.*
 Stamina non ulli dissipanda Deo. *Pentam.* *Tibullus.*
 Debuerant fusos evoluisse suos. *Id.* *Ovid.*
 Quæ calidum faciunt aquæ tactum atque vaporem. *Lucr.*
 Cum mihi non tantum furesque ferre que fuetæ. *Horat.*
 Atque alios alii inrident, Veneremque suadent. *Lucr.*
 Fundat ab extremo flavos Aquilone Sæcos. *Lucan.*
 Imposito fratri moribunda relanguit ore. *Ovid.*
 Reliquas tamen esse vias in mente patenteis. *Lucr.*

5. **SYSTÖLE** is when a long syllable is made short; as the penult in *tulerunt*; thus,

Matri longa decem tulérunt fastidia menses. *Virg.*

6. **DIASTÖLE** is when a syllable usually short is made long; as the last syllable in *amor*, in the following verse;

Confidant, si tantus amōr, et mœnia condant. *Virg.*

To these may be subjoined the *Figures of diōsion*, as they are called, which are chiefly used by the poets, though some of them likewise frequently occur in prose.

1. When a letter or syllable is added to the beginning of a word, it is called **PROSTHESIS**; as, *gnavus*, for *navus*; *tetūli*, for *tuli*. When a letter or syllable is interposed in the middle of a word, it is called **EPENTHESIS**; as, *relligio*, for *religio*: *induperator*, for *imperator*. When a letter or syllable is added to the end, it is called **PARAGÖGE**; as, *dicier* for *dici*.

2. If a letter or syllable be taken from the beginning of a word, it is called **APHÆRÈSIS**; as, *natus*, for *gnatus*; *tenderant*, for *tetenderant*. If from the middle of a word, it is called **SYNCÖPE**; as, *dixti*, for *dixisti*; *deūm*, for *deorum*: If from the end, **APOCÖPE**; as, *viden'*, for *vidēne*; *Antōni*, for *Antonii*.

3. When a letter or syllable is transposed, it is called **METATHÈSIS**; as, *pīstris*, for *pīstis*; *Lybia*, for *Libya*. When one letter is put for another, it is called **ANTITHÈSIS**; as, *faciundum*, for *faciendum*; *olli*, for *illi*; *voltis*, for *vultis*.

Different kinds of POEMS.

Any work composed in verse is called a *Poem*, (*Poema* or *Carmen*). Poems are called by various names, from their subject, their form, the manner of treating the subject, and their style.

1. A poem on the celebration of a marriage is called an **EPITHE-LAMMIUM**; on a mournful subject, an **ELEGY** or **LAMENTATION**; in praise

praise of the Supreme Being, a HYMN; in praise of any person or thing, a PANEGYRIC or ENCOMIUM; on the vices of any one, a SATIRE or INVECTIVE; a poem to be inscribed on a tomb, an EPI-TAPH, &c.

2. A short poem adapted to the lyre or harp, is called an ODE, whence such compositions are called *Lyric poems*: A poem in the form of a letter is called an EPISTLE; a short witty poem, playing on the fancies or conceits which arise from any subject, is called an EPIGRAM; as those of Catullus and Martial. A sharp, unexpected, lively turn of wit in the end of an epigram, is called its Point. A poem expressing the moral of any device or picture, is called an EMBLEM. A poem containing an obscure question to be explained, is called an AENIGMA or RIDDLE.

When a character is described so that the first letters of each verse, and sometimes the middle and final letters express the name of the person or thing described, it is called an ACROSTIC; as the following on our Saviour :

I nter cuncta micens I gniti sidera cal I,
E xpellit tenebras E tota Phœbus ut orb E;
S it cœcas removet JESVS caliginis umbra S,
V ivificansque simul V erso præcordia met V
S olem justitiae S eje probat eje beati S.

3. From the manner of treating a subject, a poem is either *Exegetic*, *Dramatic*, or *Mixt*.

The *Exegetic*, where the poet always speaks himself, is of three kinds, Historical, Didactic, or Instructive, (as the Satire or Epistle); and Descriptive.

Of the *Dramatic*, the chief kinds are COMEDY, representing the actions of ordinary life, generally with a happy issue; and TRAGEDY, representing the actions and distresses of illustrious personages, commonly with an unhappy issue. To which may be added *Pastoral poems* or BUCOLICS, representing the actions and conversations of shepherds; as most of the eclogues of Virgil.

The *Mixt* kind is where the poet sometimes speaks in his own person, and sometimes makes other characters to speak. Of this kind is chiefly the EPIC or HEROIC poem, which treats of some one great transaction of some great illustrious person, with its various circumstances; as the wrath of Achilles in the *Iliad* of Homer; the settlement of Aeneas in Italy in the *Aeneid* of Virgil; the fall of man in the *Paradise Lost* of Milton, &c.

4. The style of poetry, as of prose, is of three kinds, the simple, ornate, and sublime.

COMBINATION OF VERSES in Poems.

In long poems there is commonly but one kind of verse used. Thus Virgil, Lucretius, Horace in his Satires and Epistles, Ovid in his *Metamorphoses*, Lucan, Silius Italicus,

licus, Valerius Flaccus, Juvenal, &c. always use Hexameter verse: Plautus, Terence, and other writers of Comedy, generally use the Iambic, and sometimes the Trochaic. It is chiefly in shorter poems, particularly those which are called Lyric poems, as the odes of Horace and the Psalms of Buchanan, that various kinds of verse are combined.

A poem which has only one kind of verse, is called by a Greek name, *MONOCÖLON*, sc. *poema v. carmen*; or *MONOCÖLOS*, sc. *ode*; that which has two kinds, *DICÖLON*; and that which has three kinds of verse *TRICÖLON*.

If the same sort of verse return after the second line, it is called *DICOLON DISTRÖPHON*; as when a single Pentameter is alternately placed after an *HEXAMETER*, which is named *Elegiac verse*, (*carmen Elegiacum*), because it was first applied to mournful subjects; thus, •

Flebilis indignos, Elegia, solve capillos;
Ah! nimis ex vero nunc tibi nomen erit. *Ovid.*

This kind of verse is used by Ovid in all his other works except the *Metamorphoses*; and also for the most part by Tibullus, Propertius, &c.

When a poem consists of two kinds of verse, and after three lines returns to the first, it is called *Dicolon Triflōphon*; when after four lines, *Dicolon Tetraflōphon*; as,

*Auream quisquis mediocritatem
Diligit, tutus caret obsoleti
Sordibus tecti; caret invidendā
Sobrius aula.* *Horat.*

When a poem consists of three kinds of verse, and after three lines always returns to the first, it is called *Tricolon Triflōphon*; but if it returns after four lines, it is called *Tricolon Tetraflōphon*; as when after two greater dactylic alcætic verses are subjoined an archilochian iambic and a lesser dactylic alcætic, which is named *Carmen Horatianum*, or *Horatian verse*, because it is frequently used by Horace; thus,

*Virtus recludens immeritis mori
Cælum, negatā tentat iter viā;
Cætusque vulgares, et udam
Spernit hunum fugiente pennā.*

Any one of these parts of a poem, in which the different kinds of verse are comprehended, when taken by itself, is called a *Strophe*, *Stanza*, or *Staff*.

DIFFERENT Kinds of VERSE in HORACE and BUCHANAN.

I. ODES and PSALMS of one kind of Verse.

1. *Asclepiadēan*, See N° 3. page 270. Hor. I. 1. IV. 8. III. 30.—Buch. Ps. 28, 40, 80.

2. *Choriambic Alcaic Pentameter*, consisting of a spondee, three choriambuses, and a pyrrhichius or iambus: Hor. I. 11, 18. IV. 10.

3. *Iambic trimēter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epop. 17.—Buch. Ps. 25, 94, 106.

4. *Hexameter*, N° 1. Hor. Satires and Epistles.—Buch. Ps. 1, 18, 45, 78, 85, 89, 104, 107, 132, 135.

5. *Iambic Dimēter*, N° 12.—Buch. Ps. 13, 31, 37, 47, 52, 54, 59, 86, 96, 98, 117, 148, 149, 150.

6. The *Greater Daëtylic Alcaic*, N° 8.—Buch. Ps. 26, 29, 32, 49, 61, 71, 73, 143.

7. *Trochaic*, consisting of seven trochees and a syllable; admitting also a tribrachys in the uneven places, i. e. in the first, third, fifth, and seventh foot; and in the even places, a tribrachys, spondee, dactyl, and anapestus.—Buch. Ps. 105, 119, 124, 129.

8. *Anapēstic*, consisting of four anapestuses, admitting also a spondee or dactyl; and in the last place, sometimes a tribrachys, amphimācer, or trochee.—Ps. 113.

9. *Anacreontic Iambic*, consisting of three iambuses and a syllable; in the first foot it has sometimes a spondee or anapestus, and also a tribrachys.—Ps. 131.

II. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse following one another alternately.

1. *Glyconian* and *Asclepiadēan*, N° 4. and 3.—Hor. I. 3. 13, 19, 36. III. 9, 15, 19, 24, 25, 28. IV. 1, 3.—Buch. Ps. 14, 35, 43.

2. Every first line, (*Daëtylico-Trochaic*), consisting of the first four feet of an hexameter verse, then three trochees or a spondee for the last; every second verse (*Iambic Archilo-chian*) consisting of an iambus or spondæus, an iambus, a cæsura, and then three trochees.—Hor. I. 4.

3. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second, *Alemanian Dactylic*, consisting of the four last feet of an hexameter. Hor. I. 7, 28. Epod. 12.—Buch. Pf. 4. 111.
4. Every first line, *Aristophanic*, consisting of a choriambus, and bacchius or amphimacer: Every second line, *Choriambic Alcaic*, consisting of epitritus secundus, two choriambuses, and a bacchius. Hor. I. 8.
5. The first line, (*Trochaic*), consisting of three trochees and a cæsura; or of an amphimacer and two iambuses. The second line, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. Hor. II. 18.
6. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second (*Dactylic Archilochian*), two dactyls and a cæsura. Hor. IV. 7.—Buch. Pf. 12.
7. The first line, *Iambic Trimeter*; and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11.—Hor. Epod. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 7, 8, 9, 10.—Buch. Pf. 3, 6, 10, 21, 22, 27, 34, 38, 39, 41, 44, 48, 53, 62, 74, 76, 79, 87, 92, 110, 112, 115, 120, 127, 133, 134, 139, 141.
8. The first line, *Iambic Dimeter*; the second (*Sapphic*) consists of two dactyls, a cæsura, and four iambuses, admitting also a spondee, &c. But this verse is commonly divided into two parts; the first, the latter part of a pentameter, N° 2. and the second, iambic dimeter, N° 11. Hor. Epod. 11.
9. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*. Hor. Epod. 14, 15. —Buch. Pf. 81.
10. *Hexameter*, and *Iambic Trimeter*. Hor. Epod. 16. Buch. Pf. 2, 20, 24, 57, 60, 69, 83, 93, 95, 97, 108, 109, 118, 126, 136, 147.
11. The first line, *Sapphic*, N° 5. and the second, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pf. 8.
12. *Sapphic* and *Glyconian*. Buch. Pf. 33, 70, 121, 142.
13. *Iambic Trimeter* and *Pentameter*. Buch. Pf. 36, 63.
14. The first line, *Hexameter*; and the second line, the three last feet of an hexameter, with a long syllable or two short syllables before. Buch. Pf. 68.
15. *Hexameter* and *Pentameter*, or *Elegiac* verse. Buch. Pf. 88, 114, 137.
16. The first line, (*Trochaic*), three trochees and a syllable, admitting sometimes a spondee, tribrachys, &c. The second line, *Iambic Dimeter*, N° 11. Buch. Pf. 100.

III. ODES and PSALMS of two kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The three first lines, *Sapphic*, and the fourth, *Adonian*, N° 5. Horat. Carm. I. 2, 10, 12, 20, 22, 25, 30, 32, 38. II. 2, 4, 6, 8, 10, 16. III. 8, 11, 14, 18, 20, 22, 27. IV. 2, 6, 11. *Carmen Secul.*—Buch. Ps. 5, 17, 51, 55, 65, 67, 72, 90, 101, 103.

2. The three first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, and the fourth, *Glyconian*. Hor. Carm. I. 6, 15, 24, 33. II. 22. III. 10, 16. IV. 5, 12.—Buch. Ps. 23, 42, 75, 99, 102, 144.

3. The two first lines, *Ionic Trimeter*, consisting of three *Ionici minores*; the third line, *Ionic Tetrameter*, having one *Ionicus minor* more. Hor. III. 12.

4. The two first lines have four trochees, admitting, in the second foot, a spondee, dactyl, &c. The third line, the same; only wanting a syllable at the end. Buch. Ps. 66.

5. The three first lines, *Glyconian*, N° 4. admitting also a spondee, or iambus in the first foot; the fourth line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. Buch. Ps. 116, 122, 128.

IV. ODES and PSALMS of three kinds of verse, and three or four lines in each stanza.

1. The two first lines, *Asclepiadēan*, N° 3. the third line, *Pherecratian*, N° 6. and the fourth, *Glyconian*, N° 4. Hor. Carm. I. 5, 14, 21, 23. III. 7, 13, IV. 13.—Buch. Ps. 9, 64, 84, 130.

2. The first two lines, the *Greater Dactylic Alcaic*, N° 8. The third, *Archilochian Iambic*, N° 9. The fourth, the *Lesser Alcaic*, N° 10. Hor. Carm. I. 9, 16, 17, 26, 27, 29, 31, 34, 35, 37. II. 1, 3, 5, 7, 9, 11, 13, 14, 15, 17, 19, 20. III. 1, 2, 3, 4, 5, 6, 17, 21, 23, 26, 29. IV. 4, 9, 14, 15.—Buch. Ps. 7, 11, 15, 19, 30, 46, 50, 56, 58, 77, 82, 91, 123, 125, 140, 146.

3. The first line, *Glyconian*; the second, *Asclepiadēan*; the third a spondee, three choriambuses, and an iambus or pyrrhichius. Buch. Ps. 16.

4. The first line, *Hexameter*; the second, *Iambic Dimeter*; and the third, two dactyls and a syllable; Hor. Epod. 13.—Buch. Ps. 138. Sometimes the two last verses are joined in one or inverted; as, Buch. Ps. 145.

ENGLISH VERSE.

The quantity of syllables in English verse is not precisely ascertained. With regard to this we are chiefly directed by the ear. Our monosyllables are generally either long or short, as occasion requires. And in words of two or more syllables, the accented syllable is always long.

Of English verse there are two kinds, one named *Rhyme*, and the other *Blank verse*.

In rhyme the lines are usually connected two and two, sometimes three and three in the final syllables. Two lines following one another thus connected, are called a *Couplet*, three lines, a *Triplet*.

In blank verse similarity of sound in the final syllables is carefully avoided.

In measuring most kinds of English verse we find long and short syllables succeeding one another alternately; and therefore the accents should rest on every second syllable.

The feet by which English verse is commonly measured, are either *Iambic*, *i. e.* consisting of a short and a long syllable; as, *älöft*, *crëäte*; or *Trochaic*, *i. e.* consisting of a long and a short syllable; as, *höly*, *löfty*. In verses of the former kind the accents are to be placed on the even syllables; in the latter, on the odd syllables. But the measure of a verse in English is most frequently determined by its number of syllables only, without dividing them into particular feet.

I. IAMBIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of four syllables, or of two feet; as,

With ravish'd ears,
The monarch hears. *Dryden.*

2. Of six syllables, or of three feet; as,

Al-oft in awful state,
The godlike hero sat. *Dryden.*

3. Of eight syllables, or of four feet; as,

While dangers hourly round us rise,
No caution guards us from surprise. *Francis' Herat.*

4. Of ten syllables, or of five feet, which is the common measure of heroic and tragic poetry; as,

Poetic fields encompass me around,
And still I seem to tread on Classic ground ;
For here the Muse so oft her harp has strung,
That not a mountain rears its head unsung. *Addison.*

Obs. 1. In measures of this last sort, we sometimes find the last line of a couplet or triplet stretched out to twelve syllables, or six feet, which is termed an *Alexandrine* verse : thus,

A needless Alexandrine ends the song,
Which, like a wounded snake, drags its slow length along. *Pope.*

Waller was smooth ; but Dryden taught to join
The varying verse, the full resounding line,
The long majestic march, and energy divine. } *Pope.*

We also find the last verse of a triplet stretched out to fourteen syllables, or seven feet, but then it has commonly an Alexandrine verse before it ; thus,

For thee the land in fragrant flow'rs is drest ;
For thee the ocean smiles, and smooths her wavy breast, }
And heav'n itself with more serene and purer light is blest. } *Dryden.*

Sometimes also when there is no Alexandrine before it ; thus,
At length by fate to power divine restor'd,
His thunder taught the world to know its lord, }
The god grew terrible again, and was again ador'd. } *Rowe.*

Obs. 2. The more strictly iambic these verses are, the more harmonious. In several of them, however, particularly in those of ten syllables, we often meet with a trochee, and likewise a spondee, instead of an iambus. Verses of heroic measure sometimes also admit a dactyle, or an anapestus, in place of the iambus ; in which case a verse of five feet may comprehend eleven, twelve, thirteen, and even fourteen syllables ; thus,

1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14
And many an humorous, many an am'rous lay													
1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12		
Was fung by many a Bard on many a day.													

This manner of writing every syllable fully is now generally used by the best poets, and seems much more proper than the ancient custom of cutting off vowels by an apostrophe. Our language abounds too much in consonants of itself : the elision of vowels therefore should be avoided as much as possible, and ought only to be admitted where it is absolutely necessary ; as, *o'er* for *over* ; *e'er* for *ever*, &c. The same observation may be applied to every kind of measure.

II. TROCHAIC MEASURE comprises verses,

1. Of three syllables ; as,

Dreadful screams,
Dismal screams, &c. *Pope.*

2. Of

2. Of five syllables ; as,

In the days of old,
Stories plainly told,
Lovers felt annoy.

3. Of seven syllables ; as,

Fairest piece of well form'd earth,
Urge not thus your haughty birth. *Waller.*

These are the measures which are most commonly used in English poetry, especially those of seven, eight, and ten syllables.

We have another measure very quick and lively, and therefore much used in songs, which may be called *Anapestic* measure, *i. e.* a verse consisting of feet of three syllables, two short, and one long, in which the accent rests upon every third syllable. Verses of anapestic measure consist of two, three, or four feet ; that is, of six, nine, or twelve syllables ; thus,

Let the lōnd trumpets sōund,
'Till the rō-ōs all arōund,
The shrill échoes rebōund. *Popé.*

From the pláins, from the wōodlands, and grōves,
How the nightingales wárble their lóves! *Sbenstone.*

May I góvern my pássions with ábsolute swáy,
And grow wiser and bétter, as life wears awáy. *Id.*

In this measure, a syllable is often retrenched from the first foot ; as,

The swórd or the dárт
Shall pięce my sad héart. *Addison.*

Ye shér-herds so chéarful and gáy,
Whose flócks never cáreles-ly róam, *U. C.*

I vów'd to the múses my tímē and my cáre,
Since néither could win me the smíles of the fáir. *Sbenstone.*

These measures are variously combined together in *Stanzas*, particularly in short poems ; for generally in longer works the same measure is always observed.

Stanzas are composed of more or fewer verses, and these variously diversified, according to the nature of the subject, and the taste of the poet. But when they are stretched out to a great length, and consist of verses of many different measures, they are seldom agreeable.

Such poems as consist of Stanzas, which are not confined to a certain number of verses, nor the verses to a certain number

number of syllables, nor the rhymes to a certain distance, are called *Irregular*, or *Pindaric odes*. Of this kind are several of the poems of Cowley. But in the odes of later authors, the numbers are exact, and the strophes regular.

Stanzas of four lines are the most frequent, in which the first verse answers to the third, and the second to the fourth. There is a stanza of this kind, consisting of verses of eight and of six syllables alternately, which is very often used, particularly in sacred poetry. Here for the most part the second and fourth lines only rhyme together ; as,

When all thy mercies, O my God,
My rising soul surveys :
Transported with the view, I'm lost,
In wonder, love, and praise. *Addison.*

Sometimes also the first and third lines answer to one another ; as,

Keep silence, all created things,
And wait your Maker's nod :
The muse stands trembling while she sings
The honours of her God. *Watts.*

This stanza is used in place of what anciently was comprehended in two verses, each consisting of fourteen syllables, having a pause after the eighth syllable.

Several of these measures are often varied by double endings, that is, by putting an additional short syllable at the end of the verse ; as,

1. *In heroic measure, or verses of ten syllables, both in blank verse and rhyme.*

In Blank verse.

"Tis heav'n itself that points out an hereafter. *Addison.*

In Rhyme, where it is called Double Rhyme.

The piece, you think, is incorrect ? Why, take it,
I'm all submission ; what you'd have it, make it. *Pope.*

2. *In verses of eight syllables.*

They neither added nor confounded,
They neither wanted nor abounded.

3. *In verses of six syllables.*

'Twas when the seas were roaring,
With hollow blasts of wind,
A damsel lay deploring,
All on a rock reclin'd. *Gay.*

4. *In verses of seven syllables.*

As Palemon, unsuspecting,
Prais'd the fly musician's art ;
Love, his light disguise rejecting,
Lodg'd an arrow in his heart. *Sheriffone.*

5. *In verses of three syllables.*

Glooms inviting,
Birds delighting. *Addison*

6. *In the Anapaestic measure.*

Ah ! friend, 'tis but idle to make such a pother.
Fate, fate has ordain'd us to plague one another. *Sheriffone.*

Now with furies farrounded,
Despairing, confounded. *Pope.*

Double rhyme is used chiefly in poems of wit and humour, or in burlesque compositions.

Verses with double endings, in blank verse, most frequently occur in tragic poetry, where they often have a fine effect ; thus,

I here devote thee for my prince and country ;
Let them be safe, and let me nobly perish. *Thomson.*

The dropping dews fell cold upon my head,
Darkness inclos'd, and the winds whistled round me. *Osway.*

APPENDIX I.

Of Punctuation, Capitals, Abbreviations, Numerical Characters, and the Division of the Roman Month.

The different divisions of discourse are marked by certain characters called *Points*.

The points employed for this purpose are the *Comma* (,), *Semicolon* (;), *Colon* (:), *Period*, *Punctum*, or full stop (.).

Their names are taken from the different parts of the sentence which they are employed to distinguish.

The *Period* is a whole sentence complete by itself. The *Colon*, or member, is a chief constructive part, or greater division of a sentence. The *Semicolon*, or half member, is a less constructive part, or subdivision, of a sentence or member. The *comma*, or segment, is the least constructive part of a sentence in this way of considering it. For the next subdivision of a sentence would be the resolution of it into *Phrases* and *Words*.

To these points may be added the *Semiperiod* or less point, followed by a small letter. But this is of much the same use with the Colon, and occurs only in Latin books.

A simple sentence admits only of a full point at the end; because its general meaning cannot be distinguished into parts. It is only in compound sentences that all the different points are to be found.

Points likewise express the different pauses which should be observed in a just pronunciation of discourse. The precise duration of each pause, or note, cannot be defined. It varies according to the different subjects of discourse, and the different turns of human passion and thought. The period requires a pause in duration double of the colon, the colon double of the semicolon; and the semicolon, double of the comma.

There are other points which, together with a certain pause, also denote a different modulation of the voice, in correspondence with the sense. These are the *Interrogation* point (?) the *Exclamation* or *Admiration* point (!) and the *Parenthesis* (). The first two generally mark an elevation of the voice, and a pause equal to that of a semicolon,

colon, a colon, or a period, as the sense requires. The *Parenthesis* usually requires a moderate depression of the voice, with a pause somewhat greater than a comma. But these rules are liable to many exceptions. The modulation of the voice in reading, and the various pauses, must always be regulated by the sense.

Besides the points, there are several other *marks* made use of in books, to denote references and different distinctions, or to point out something remarkable or defective, &c. These are, the *Apostrophe* (') ; *Asterisk* (*) ; *Hyphen* (-) ; *Obelisk* (+) ; *Double Obelisk* (‡) ; *Parallel Lines* (||) ; *Paragraph* (¶) ; *Section* (§) ; *Quotation* (“ ”) ; *Crotchets* [] ; *Brace* (>) ; *Ellipsis* (... or —) ; *Caret* (^) ; which last is only used in writing.

References are often marked by letters and figures.

Capitals, or large letters, are used at the beginning of sentences, of verses, and of proper names. Some use them at the beginning of every substantive noun. Adjectives, verbs, and other parts of speech, unless they be emphatical, commonly begin with a small letter.

Capitals, with a point after them, are often put for whole words ; thus, A. marks *Aulus*, C. *Caius*, D. *Decimus*, L. *Lucius*, M. *Marcus*, P. *Publius*, Q. *Quintius*, T. *Titus*. So F. stands for *Filius*, and N. for *Nepos* ; as, M. F. *Marci Filius*, M. N. *Marci Nepos*. In like manner, P. C. marks *Patres Conscripti* ; S. C. *Senatus Consultum* ; P. R. *Populus Romanus* ; S. P. Q. R. *Senatus Populusque Romanus* ; U. C. *Urbs Condita* ; S. P. D. *Salutem plurimam dicit* ; D. D. D. *Dat, dicat, dedicat* ; D. D. C. Q. *Dat, dicat, consecratque* ; H. S. written corruptly for L. L. S. *Sextertius*, equal in value to two pounds of brass and a half ; the two pounds being marked by L. L. *Libra*, *Libra*, and the half by S. *Semis*. So in modern books, A. D. marks *Anno Domini*, A. M. *Artium Magister*, Master of Arts ; M. D. *Medicinae Doctor* ; LL. D. *Legum Doctor* ; N. B. *Nota Bene*, &c.

Sometimes a small letter or two is added to the capital ; as, Etc. *Et cetera* ; Ap. *Appius* ; Cn. *Cneius* ; Op. *Opiter* ; Sp. *Spurius* ; Ti. *Tiberius* ; Sex. *Sextus* ; Cos. *Consul* ; Coss. *Consules* ; Imp. *Imperator* ; Impp. *Imperatores*.

In like manner, in English, *Esq*; *Esquire*; *Dr Doctor* or *Doctor*; *Acct. Account*; *MS. Manuscript*; *MSS. Manuscripts*; *Do. Ditto*; *Rt Hon. Right Honourable*, &c.

Small letters are likewise often put as abbreviations of a word; as, i. e. *id est*; h. e. *hoc est*; e. g. *exempli gratia*; v. g. *verbi gratia*.

Capitals were used by the ancient Romans, to mark numbers. The letters employed for this purpose were C. I. L. V. X. which are therefore called *Numerical Letters*. I. denotes *one*, V. *five*, X. *ten*, L. *fifty*, and C. *a hundred*. By the various combination of these five letters, all the different numbers are expressed.

The repetition of a numerical letter repeats its value. Thus, II. signifies *two*; III. *three*; XX. *twenty*; XXX. *thirty*; CC. *two hundred*, &c. But V. and L. are never repeated.

When a letter of a less value is placed before a letter of a greater, the less takes away what it stands for from the greater; but being placed after, adds what it stands for to the greater; thus,

IV.	Four.	V.	Five.	VI.	Six.
IX.	Nine.	X.	Ten	XI.	Eleven.
XL.	Forty.	L.	Fifty.	LX.	Sixty.
XC.	Ninety.	C.	A hundred.	CX.	A hundred and ten.

A thousand is marked thus, c^o. which in later times was contracted into m. *Five hundred* is marked thus, 1^o. or, by contraction, d.

The annexing of o to 1^o. makes its value ten times greater; thus, 10^o. marks *five thousand*; and 100^o. *five thousand*.

The prefixing of c, together with the annexing of o to the number of c1^o. makes its value ten times greater; thus, cc1^o. denotes *ten thousand*; and ccc1^o. *a hundred thousand*. The ancient Romans, according to Pliny, proceeded no farther in this method of notation. If they had occasion to express a larger number, they did it by repetition; thus, ccc1^occ, ccc1^occ. signified *two hundred thousand*, &c.

We sometimes find *thousands* expressed by a straight line drawn

drawn over the top of the numerical letters. Thus, III. denotes *three thousand*; X. *ten thousand*.

But the modern manner of marking numbers is much more simple, by these ten characters or *figures*, which, from the ten fingers of the hands, were called *Digits*; 1 *one*, 2 *two*, 3 *three*, 4 *four*, 5 *five*, 6 *six*, 7 *seven*, 8 *eight*, 9 *nine*, 0 *nought*, *nothing*. The first nine are called *Significant Figures*. The last is called a *Cypher*.

Significant figures placed after one another increase their value ten times at every remove from the right hand to the left; thus,

8 *Eight*. 85 *Eighty-five*. 856 *Eight hundred and fifty-six*. 8566 *Eight thousand five hundred and sixty-six*.

When cyphers are placed at the right hand of a significant figure, each cypher increases the value of the figure ten times; thus,

1 *One*. 10 *Ten*. 100 *A hundred*. 1000 *A thousand*.
2 *Two*. 20 *Twenty*. 200 *Two hundred*. 2000 *Two thousand*.

Cyphers are often intermixed with significant figures, thus, 20202, *Twenty thousand two hundred and two*.

The superiority of the present method of marking numbers over that of the Romans, will appear by expressing the present year both in letters and figures, and comparing them together; CIO, IOCCXCIVIII. or M, DCCXCIVIII. 1798.

As the Roman manner of marking the days of their months was quite different from ours, it may perhaps be of use here to give a short account of it.

Division of the Roman Months.

The Romans divided their months into three parts, by *Kalends*, *Nones*, and *Ides*. The first day of every month was called the *Kalends*; the fifth day was called the *Nones*; and thirteenth day was called the *Ides*; except in the months of March, May, July, and October, in which the *nones* fell upon the seventh day, and the *ides* on the fifteenth.

In reckoning the days of their months, they counted backwards. Thus, the first day of January was marked

Kalendas Januariis or *Januarii*, or by contraction, *Kal. Jan.* The last day of December, *Pridie Kalendas Januarias* or *Januarii*, scil. *ante*. The day before that, or the 30th day of December, *Tertio Kal. Jan.* scil. *die ante*; or, *Ante diem tertium Kal. Jan.* The twenty-ninth day of December, *Quarto Kal. Jan.* And so on, till they came back to the thirteenth day of December, or to the ides, which were marked *Idibus Decembribus*, or *Decembris*: The day before the ides, *Pridie Idus Dec.* scil. *ante*: The day before that, *Tertio Id. Dec.* and so back to the nones, or the fifth day of the month, which was marked, *Nonis Decembribus* or *Decembris*: The day before the nones, *Pridie Non. Dec.* &c. and thus through all the months of the year.

In *Leap-year*, that is, when February has twenty-nine days, which happens every fourth year, both the 24th and the 25th days of that month were marked, *Sexto Kalendas Martii* or *Martias*; and hence this year is called *Biflextilis*.

JUNIUS, APRILIS, SEPTEMQUE, NOVEMQUE tricenos;
Unum plus reliqui; FEBRUUS tenet octo viginti;
At si biflexitus fuerit, superadditur unus.
Tu primam mensis lucem dic esse kalendas.
SEX MARIUS, nonas OCTOBER, JULIUS, et MARS,
Quatuor at reliqui; dabit idus quilibet octo.
Omnes post idus luces dic esse kalendas,
Nomen fortiri debent a mense sequenti.

Thus, the 14th day of *April*, *June*, *September*, and *October*, was marked XVIII. *Kal.* of the following month; the 15th, XVII. *Kal.* &c. The 14th day of *January*, *August*, and *December*, XIX. *Kal.* &c. So the 16th day of *March*, *May*, *July*, and *October*, was marked XVII. *Kal.* &c. And the 14th day of *February*, XVI. *Kal.* *Martii* or *Martias*. The names of all the months are used as Substantives or Adjectives, except *Aprilis*, which is used only as a Substantive.

APPENDIX II.

Containing RULES from RUDDIMAN'S Grammar, which will be found explained in the Pages of this Book that are marked before each Rule.

I. Concerning the GENDER of NOUNS.

Names of Trees. See page 12.

1. *Arbor* *femineis* *dabitur* : *sed mas oleaster*,
Et rhamnus : *petit hic potius cytisusque rubusque* :
Hic quandoque larix, lotus volet, atque cupressus :
Hoc quod in um, suberque, filer dant, robur acerque.

Nouns in A of the first declension. p. 13. and 18.

2. *Hæc* *dat A* *quod primæ est* : *sed neutrum Pascha requirit.*
Hadria *mas æquor, pariterque cometa, planeta* :
Mascula & interdum talpam *damamque videbis.*

Nouns in US and OS. p. 27. 39. and 48.

4. *Hæc domus & vannus, pro fructu* *ficus & alvus* :
Sic humus atque manus, poscunt : *acus addito quartæ,*
Porticus atque tribus. *Capit hoc virus pelagusque.*

Nomen in OS Græcum, quod in US mutare Latini
Sæpè solent, normam sequitur plerumque virilem :
Femineum sed multa petunt : ut abyssus, eremus,
Antidotusque pharus, dialectus, carbasus : *adde*
Ex ndos & phthongos genitum, quæque à generali
Voce genus plantæ & gemmæ capiunt muliebre.

Hic aut hæc donat balanus, specus, atque phœnix,
Barbitus, atque penus, grossus : sed grus, atomusque
Femineum potius cupiunt : colus addo, virile
Quod raro invenies : muliebre at contraria canthus
Est ubi nonnunquam videoas. Vult hic dat vulgaris,
Sed magis hoc. Ternæ specus & penus adiuto neutris.

Nouns of the Third Declension in O. p. 30. and 31.

7. Hic dat O : femineis *halo* cum *caro* dantur & *echo* ;
 Quæque in IO, seu sint verbo, seu nomine nata,
 Rem (numeris demptis) aliquam fine corpore signant.
 Adjice femineis DO, GO : sed mascula *cudo*,
Harpago, sic *ordo*, simul *udo*, *tendo*, *ligo*que.
 Rariūs hæc *margo* vati est, hic sœpe *cupido*,
Arrhabo cum *cardo*, muliebria vix imitanda.

C and L. p. 32. rule 3.

9. Qued fit in L. vel T, C, vel M, neutralibus adde :
 Mascula *sol*, *mugil*, seu *sal*, quod rarius hoc vult.

N. p. 32. rule 4.

10. Masculeum capit N. Finita in *MEN* dato neutris,
 Quæque secunda creat, cum *gluten* & *inguen* & *unguen* •
 Addideris *pollen*. *Sindon* petit hæc, & *aedon* ;
Alcyonem junges, data postea queis comes *icon*.

AR and UR. p. 33. rule 5.

11. Postulat AR neutrum : sed masculeum *falar* optat.
 Hoc dat UR. Hæc *furfur* capiet, cum *vulture* *turtur*.

ER and OR. p. 33. rule 6.

13. ER capit hic. Neutrum plantæ fructusve requirunt :
 At *tuber* hic *fructus* ; *tuber* quæcumque tumorem
 Significans neutrale petit ; cumque *ubere* *spinther*,
Verque, *cadaver*, *iter*. Dabit hic aut hæc tibi *linter*.
 Hic dat OR. Hæc *arbor* : *cor*, adorque hoc, *marmor*
 & *equor*.

AS. p. 34. rule 7.

15. AS petit hæc. Neutrum est *vas*, *vafis*, quicunque *Pelasgi*
 Dant *atis* in patrio : quibus *antis* masculo funto.

ES. p. 35. rule 8.

16. Hæc dabit ES. Capient *ales* hic hæcve, *palumbes*,
 Atque *dies* ; sed mas proles : mas *poples* & *ames*,
Fomes,

*Fomes, pes, paries, palmes, cum limite stipes,
Quæ addes trames, termes, cum gurgite cespes ;
Et quæ fonte fluunt Graio ; sed neutra capessunt
Hippomanes, panaces, nepenthes, sic cacoethes.*

IS. p. 36. rule 9.

17. IS dabo feminineis. Sunt mascula *piscis* & *axis*,
Glis, callis, vermis, vedis, mensis, cucumisque,
Mugilis & postis cum sanguine fascis & orbis,
Fusilis item collis, caulisque, & follis & ensis,
Serpentemque notans cencbris, cum vomere, torris,
In NIS finitum Latium, lapis, unguis, aqualis.
Hic aut hæc *finis, clunis, cum torque canalic,*
Dant *scrobis, ac anguis : corbis* muliebre præoptat ;
Masculo potius gaudent *pubois, cinis, amnis.*

OS. p. 38. rule 10.

19. Os maribus detur. Sunt neutra *chaos, melos, os, os,*
Postulat hæc *arbos, eos, dos, & origine Græcā.*
Orta *eos, ardos, perimetros cum diametro.*

US, p. 38. rule 11.

20. Postulat US neutrum, quoties id tertia flectit.
Femineum voluere *palus, subfuscusque, salusque,*
Quæque senex, juvenis, cum servis, nomina formant,
Et *Virtus, incus.* At mascula sunt *lepus & mus,*
Et *pus* compositum : petit at muliebre *lagopys.*

ÆS and AUS. p. 39. rule 13.

21. Æs neutrale petit : *laus, fraus, muliebria* funto.

S with a consonant before it. p. 40. rule 14.

22. S dato feminis, si consona ponitur ante.

Mascula sed *pons, fons, mons, seps,* dum denatat anguem ;
Et queis P præit S polysyllaba, *forcipe* dempto,
Denique, chalybs, cum gryphe, rudens, quod rarius
hæc vult.

Hic aut hæc *serpens* dat, *scrobs*, *stirps* *truncus*, *adepsque*.

Dans *animans* genus omne, tamen muliebre præoptat.

X. p. 41. rule 16.

23. Hæc petit X. *Ax*, *ex* maribus poly syllaba junge :
Dic tamen hæc *fornax*, *smilax*, *carex*, *velut balex*,
Et cum prole *panax*, & *forsex* atque *supellex*.

Mascula sunt *calix*, *phænix*, pro *verme* que *bombyx*,
Et *coccyx*, *fornix*, & *onyx* *vas*, aut *lapis* unde
Vas fit ; *oryx*, *tradux*, *grex* his adjunge *calyxque*.
Femineo interdum data *tradux* cum *grege* cernes.

Hæc modò femineis, maribus modò juncta videbis ;
Calx pro parte pedis metâve laboris & *hystrix*,
Imbrex ; *sardonychem* jungas, *rumicem*, *silicemque* :
Hic mage vult *cortex* & *obex*, cum *pumice*, *varix* :
Hæc potius *linax*, *lynæ*, & cum *sandice* *perdix* ;
Atriplici neutrum melius dabo quam muliebre.

II. RULES concerning the OBLIQUE CASES.

The Accusative Singular of the Third Declension, p. 43.

Finit in EM quartus. Petit *im* *sibi ravis*, *amussis*,

Vis cucumisque *simul*, *tussis*, *sitis* atque *sinapis*,

Cannabis & *gummis*, *buris*, conjunge *mephitim*.

Adde urbes, aliosque locos, amnesque, deosque,

IS quibus est recto : sed & hæc dant in quoque quarto.

Sæpius *qn*, *turris*, *puppis*, cum *restis* *securis* :

Em, sed & *im* quandoque, volunt *sibi febris aqualis*,

Et *novis*, *polvis*, *clavis* ; sic *lens*, *strigilisque*,

Sementisque, *cutis*. Cumulant his plura vetusti.

Impurè in patrio casu crescentia Græca,

Sæpe & *Tros*, *Minos*, *beros*, quartum per a formant :

EUS ea vult. Vix em dato *Pan*, cumque *athere delphin*.

Ablative Singular. p. 44.

Sextus e vult : quibus at rectus per E clauditur i dant,
(Propria ni fuerint :) AL & AR neutralia junge.

Deme *jubar*, *sal*, *far*, *par* fixum, *neñtar* & *hepar*,
Sed solet has leges migrare licentia vatum.

I quoque dant *in* & *im* tantum facientia quarto.
Cannabis at *Bætis*, *Tigris*, voluistis utrumque.
Ym quibus in quarto est, *ye* dant, aut *m* modo demunt.
Dant *e* vel *i* sexto, quicis quartus in *em* vel in *im* fit.
Excipe sed *restis*, quod *e* semper, cum *cute*, donat.
I mage *sementis*, *strigilis* petit atque *securis*.
Quod simul *im* vel *idem* format, capit *i* sibi raro.
Hæc quoque dant *e* vel *i*: *finis*, cum *rure supplex*,
Occiput & *vedis*: per *UBI* cum quæritur, *urbes*,
Et *pugil* & *mugil*, *jungas*. Per *e* sæpius effer,
I raro, *civis*, *classis*, *sors*, *anguis*, & *imber*,
Unguis, *avis*, *poslis*, *fusis*, simul *annis* & *ignis*.
Ufus plura tulit priscus, quæ respuit ætas
Cultior. *I* tantum sexto retineto *canalis*.

Genitive Plural. p. 45.

Præbet *ium* patrius, si sextus in *i* fuit antè.
Tolle vigil, *vetus*, *uber*, *inops*, *supplexque memorque*,
Mugilis & *consors*, quibus & *pugil* & *celer* adde;
Atque gradus medios; (sed *ium* plus poscit.) Adhæ-
rent

His composta *genus*, *capio*, facioque *caputque*.

Sextus *e* si tantum dederit, capit *um* genitivus.
AS sed *ium* *Latiale* petit: polysyllaba deme,
Queis magis *um* placuit.. Sed *ium* quærentibus adde
Nomen in *IS* vel in *ES* non crescens: *jungito* & *NS*:
Tolle parens, *vates*, *panis*, *juvenisque*, *canisque*.

Donat *ium Samnis*, *linter*, *caro*, *dos*, & *os offis*,
Glis, *nix*, noxque *cohors*, *mus*, *faux*, *uter*: adde *Qui-*
ritem,
Atque *larem*, *litem*, *cotem*, *cor*; *compositumque*
Uncia, quod simul *as* genuit: monosyllaba *junge*
Confona quæ duplex claudit. *Bos* ritè *boum* dat.

Dative Plural of the Fourth Declension, p. 48.

Partus *ubus*, *specus*, *artus*, *acus*, dant & *lacus*, *arcus*,
Atque *tribus*: sed utrumque *genu*, *portusque*, *veruque*,

III. RULES concerning ADJECTIVES.

Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE. p. 71.

Hæc viduata gradu sunt pauca sequentia primo ;
Ultimus, ulterior, prior, & primus, propiorque,
Proximus, oxytor atque oxyssimus adjiciantur :
Deterior jungi quibus & deterrimus ambit.

Adjectives wanting the COMPARATIVE. p. 71.

Nuperus, orba gradu medio, novus ac meritus sunt ;
Par, sacer, invidus, persuasus, & inclytus adde.

Adjectives wanting the SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.

Hæc superante carent : *satur, & diuturnus, & ingens,*
Atque senex, juvenis, adolescent, pronus, optimus ;
Et finita BILIS propè cuncta, vel ILIS, & ALIS :
Cum multis aliis quæ nunc perscribere longum est.

Adjectives wanting the POSITIVE and SUPERLATIVE. p. 71.

Anterior solum, sequior, satiorque leguntur.

IV. RULES concerning VERBS.

VERBS of the FIRST CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and SUPINE. p. 108.

— *Labo, nexo, cum pllico nil dant.*

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE. p. 108.

*Quod dat UI neutrum, timeo, fileoque, supina
 Nulla dabunt. Valeo, placebo, caret & licet aufer,
 Paret, item jaceo, caleo, noceo, doleoque ;
 Quies coalet, latet atque meret sociabis, oletque.
 Arceo quod simplex nescit, dant nata supinum :
 Quod retinent taceo, lateo, sobolique recusant.*

— *Viduata supinis*

Si capiunt urget, cum fulget, turget, & alget.

VERBS of the SECOND CONJUGATION wanting both PRETERITE and SUPINE. p. 111.

*Nil formant latet, livet, scateoque renidet,
 Maret, avet, pollet, flavet, cum denseo glabret.*

VERBS of the THIRD CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE ;
and some also the PRETERITE. p. 113.

SCO. p. 114.

Disco

Vult *didici* primam *geminans* : sic *posco*, *poposci* ;
Dispescit, *compescit* UI dant : cuncta supinis
Orba. Nihil *glisco*, nihil *Inceptiva* crearunt.

UO. p. 113.

Nulla supina dabunt *metuo*, *pluo*, *congruo*, sicut
Annuo, cum *sociis* ; quibus *ingruo*, *respuo* junges.

DO. p. 116.

Tundo facit *tutudi*, *tunsum*, *compostaque tufum*.
Et *cado* vult *cecidi* *cafum* ; sed *nata* supinum
(*Incido* si demas, *rerido*, *simul occido*,) *spernunt*.
Præterito DI *frido*, *rudo*, dant, absque supinis,
Sidoque, sed *loboli* *sedeo* dat mutuo *sedē*.

GO. p. 118.

Nil virgo capessit.

XI *clango*, *ningo*, dat et *ango*, supinaque nulla.

VERBS of the FOURTH CONJUGATION wanting the SUPINE. p. 124.

Cæcutit, *geslit*, *glocit*, & *dementit*, *inepit*,
Nulla supina dabunt, cum *profilit* atque *ferocit*.

DEPONENT VERBS wanting the PARTICIPLE PEFECT. p. 128.

Nil formant *vescor*, *liquor*, *medeor*, *reminiscor*,
Irascor, *ringor*, *prævertor*, *diffiteor*que :
Quies demum adjungas *divertor*, *dequefetiscor*,

Verbs wanting the first person singular. p. 134.
Dor, *furo*, *for*, *der*, *fer*, vix unquam suscipit usus.

V. RULES concerning the QUANTITY of SYLLABLES, &c.

I. Concerning FIRST and MIDDLE SYLLABLES.

A vowel before another. p. 253.

Vocalem breviant aliâ subeunte Latini.

Ni capit *r*, *fio* produc : & nomina quintæ
E servant longum, si præsit *i*, ceu *speciei*.*Anceps ius* erit patrio : sed protrahe *alius*,
Alterius brevia tantum ; commune sit *obe*,
Pompei, *Cai*, produc, conformia jungens.
Dianam varia : longa *aer*, *dius*, & *ebeu*,
Et patrius primæ cum sese solvit in *ai*.

Hic Græci variant, nec certâ lege tenentur.

A vowel before a mute and a liquid. p. 254.Si mutæ liquida est subjuncta in syllabâ cädem,
Quæ brevis antevenit vocalis, redditur anceps.
Hanc tamen in prosa semper breviare memento.
Sunt *l*, *r*, liquidæ, queis raro jungimus *m*, *n*.*Contracted Syllables and Diphthongs.* p. 254.

Vocalem efficiet semper contractio longam.

Diphthongum produc in Græcis atque Latinis ;
In Græcis semper : at PRÆ compolta sequente
Vocali brevia ; veluti *præit* atque *præuslus*.*Preterites and Supines.* p. 255.

Præterita assumunt primam diffyllaba longam.

Tolle *bibit*, *scidit*, & *fudit*, ac *tulit*, ortaque *do*, *flo*.Præteritum geminans primam, breviabit utramque,
Ut *pario*, *peperi* ; veret id nisi consona bina.At quod *cedo* creat tardat, ceu *perdo*, secundam.

Cuncta Supina tenent primam diffyllaba longam :

Præter nata *sero*, *cico*, *tino*, cum *fino*, *fijo*.Quæ breviant ; *eo*, *doque*, *ruo*, *queo* jungere, reorque.

Cætera præsentis mensuram verba reservant.

Excipe sed *posui* *positum*, *genui* *genitumque*,Et *potui* ; quæ dant quoque *solvo* & *volvo* supina.

Præ *tum* vocalem poly syllaba cuncta supina.
 Producunt, *atum*, quibus, *etum* finis, & *utum* :
Ivi præterito veniens sociabis & *itum*.
 Cætera corripies in *itum* quæcunque residunt.

II. FINAL SYLLABLES.

A in the end of a word. p. 261.

Casibus A flexum brevia. Sed protrahe sextum,
 Et quintum, Græco quando hic de nomine in *as* fit.
 Casibus haud flexum produc. *Ita*, cum *quia*, & *eja*,
 Et *puta* non verbum subduxeris, *hallequeluja*.
 Curta quoque interdum, *contra*, *ultra*, & *ginta* creata.

E in the end of a word. p. 261.

E brevia. Primæ produc, et nomina quintæ
 Cum natis. Addes pluralia cuncta : secundæ
 Induperativum socians. Monosyllaba, demptis
 Encliticis ac syllabicis, quoque longa repones.
 Adde à mobilibus flexūs quæcunque secundi
 Manarunt, summiq[ue] gradūs adverbia quævis.
 Sed *bene* cum *male* corripies, *infernè*, *supernè*,
 Productis ferme atque *ferè* jungantur, & obe.

I in the end of a word. p. 261.

I longum pono. Vocitantem corripe Græcis.
 His tamen at ternus dabitur cr̄scentibus anceps.
 Sic variato *mibi*, *tibi* cum *sibi*: sed magè curtis
 Vult *ibi*, vultque *cui*, *nisi*, mox *ubi*, cum *quasi*, jungi.
 Sicuti sed breviant, cum *necubi*, *sicubi*, vates.

O in the end of a word. p. 262.

O commune loces. Dabis at monosyllaba longis,
 Græcaque ceu *Dido*, ternum sextumque secundæ,
 Et patrium Græcum, atque adverbia nomine nata,
 Quò jungens & cò. Variant at *denuò*, *serò*,
Mutuò, *postremò*, *verò*; *modò* sed breve pones,
Sæpiùs ambo, *duo*, *scio* corripe, & *illicò* & *imò*,
 Et *cedo da* signans, *ego* queis *homo*, cum *citò* junge.
 Sunt aliis variata Gerundia, longa Maroni.
Ergò pro causa produc : secus editur anceps.

U and Y in the end of a word. p. 262.

U semper longis, sed Y raptis jungere oportet.

B, D, L, M, R, and T, in the end of a word. p. 262.

Corripe B Latium : peregrinum at tendere malim.

D breve ponatur. Variare at Barbara possis.

L breve fit. Cum *sol*, *sal*, *nil*, tolluntur Hebræa.

M nunc vocalis perimit : rapuere vetusti.

R brevies. Produc cujus dat patrius *eris* ;

Addito *Iber*, *aer*, *aether*. Sit *Celtiber* anceps.

At *par*, *far*, *lar*, *Nar*, quoque *cur*, *fur*, adjice longis.

T breve semper erit nisi quondam syncopa tardet.

C and N in the end of a word. p. 262.

C produc, præter *nec*, *donec* : sed variabis

Hic benè pronomen : *fac* verbum jungimus isti.

N produc. Demas *en* *inis* dans, quæque priore

Græca per *on* casus numero tenuere secundæ ;

Et quartum casum, si fit brevis ultima recti.

Sin quoque pluralis ternæ conjunge Pelasgum :

Forfitan, *in*, *forsan*, *tamen*, *an* *viden'* insuper addens.

AS, ES, and OS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

AS produc. Patrio sed *adis* quod flectit, *an* *asque*,
Sit breve : plurales ternæ quibus addito quartos.

Ponitur *es* longum. Pluralia corripe Græca

Quæ crescunt ; velut *es* de *sum* ; *penes* additur illi ;

Cum neutrīs ; & queis patrii penultima curta est

Ternæ. Tolle *Ceres*, *paries*, *aries*, *abies*, *pes*.

OS produc. Patrius brevis est, & *compos* & *impos*,

Osque *offis* præbens. Rectos breviato secundæ

(*O* nisi det patrius :) neutra his dein addito Graiūm.

IS, US, and YS, in the end of a word. p. 263.

IS brevio. Verūm plurales protraho casus ;

ISque quod in patrio mutatur in *itis* & *inis*,

Aut *entis* ; *gratisque* *foris*, *glis*, *vis* quoque, nomen

Seu verbum fuerit : sicut & persona secunda

Protrahit IS, quoties *itis* plurale reponit.

In subjunctivi *ris* est commune futuro.

US correpta datur. Monosyllaba cum genitivis
 Ternæ vel quartæ produc : numerique secundi
 In quarta primum, quartum, quintumque ; & in *uris*,
 Dumve in *utis* patrius, vel in *udis*, & *antis*, *odis*ve est ;
 Aut quintus sit in *u*, longus tum rectus habetur.
 Ergo produces venerabile nomen IESUS.

YS junges brevibus. *Tetbys* reperitur at anceps.
 Longaque sunt rectis aliter quæ casibus yn dant.

The last Syllable of a verse. p. 264.

Ultima cujsque est communis syllaba versūs.

III. The QUANTITY of DERIVATIVES and COMPOUNDS.

1. The Quantity of Derivatives. p. 264.

Derivata tenent mensuram primigenorum :
 Orta tamen brevibus, *suspicio*, *regula*, *fedes*,
Seciūs, *humana*s, *penuria*, *mobilis*, *humor*,
Jumentum, *fomes*, primam producere gaudent.
 Corripiunt sed *arista*, *vadum*, *sopor* atque *lucerna*,
Duxque ducis, *flabilisque*, *fides*, *ditioque*, *quafillus*,
 Nata licet longis ; quæ pluraque suggeret usus.

2. The Quantity of Compounds. p. 264.

Simplicium servant legem composta suorum,
 Quamvis diphthongus vel vocalis varietur.
 At breviant *nibilum* cum *pejero*, *degero*, nec non
Veridkus, sociis junctis, & *semisopitus*.
Cognitus his addes, velut *agnitus*, *innubus*, atque
Pronubus : at longis *ambitus* mobile junges,
Imbecillus item : sed *connubium* variabis.

Quam disjuncta dabat mensuram præpositura,
 Juncta tenet : subiens illam nisi litera mutet.
 Est PRO breve in Græcis, PRO longum ritè Latinis.
 At rape quæ *fundys*, *fugio*, *neptisque* *neposque*,
 Est *seflum*, *fari*, *fateor*, *fanumque* creârunt.
 Hifē *profecī* addes, pariterque *procella*, *protervus*.
 Atque *propago* genus, *propago* protrahe vitis.
Propino varia, verbum *propago*, *profundo* :
 Cum *pello*, *curo* genitis, *Proserpina* junge.

Se produc & dicitur, præter *dirimo* atque *disertus*.
 Est *RE* breve: at viduum personis protrahe *refert*.
 Pars si componens fini priori vel o donat,
 Sit breve: *vaticinor* monstraverit, *Arctopbylaxque*.
I quibus est flexu mutabile jungito longis,
 Quæque queunt sensu salvo divellier, addens
 De quibus aut *Crasis* aliquid vel *Syncopa* tollit.
Idem masculineum produc, & *ubique* & *ibidem*;
 Huic dein agglomerans turbæ composta *dicit*.
 His *intro*, *retro*, *contraque* & *quando* creata
 (*Quandoquidem* excepto,) bene junxeris, atque *alioquin*
 Quæque per o magnum scribuntur nomina *Graii*.

FIGURES of PROSODY.

Synalæpha and *Eæblipſis*. p. 275.

Vocalem *Synalæpha*, *Eæblipſis* & m quoque tollit,
 Altera cum voci est vocalis prima sequenti.

Synæſis and *Dieræſis*. p. 276.

Syllaba de binis conflata *Synæſis* esto.
 Distrahit in geminas resoluta *Dieræſis* unam.

Systole and *Diastole*. p. 277.

Systola præcipitat vocales ritè trahendas.
 Protrahit huic adversa *Diastola* corripiendas.

Figures of DICTION. p. 277.

PROSTHESIS apparet capiti, sed APHÆRESIS auferit.
 SYNCOPA de medio tollit, sed EPENTHESIS addit.
 Abstrahit APOCOPE fini, sed dat PARAGOGUE.
 Constringit CRASIS, distraet DIERÆSIS effert.
 Litera si legitur transposita, METATHESIS exit.
 ANTITHESIS dices, tibi litera si varietur.



John

John

John

John



1.

41
C. amplus
var. ^{lutea} lutea

var. lutea

stellata

